English: Acts

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

A picture containing text, clipart

Description automatically generated

TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

### Introduction to the Book of Acts

#### Who wrote this letter?

Luke wrote the book of Acts. He was a Gentile doctor from Antioch, He also wrote the gospel of Luke

See: [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

See Map: Antioch

#### To whom did Luke write?

Luke wrote this book to Theophilus. This was the same man to whom he wrote the gospel of Luke to Theophilus. Theophilus can be translated as “friend of God.” Some scholars think that Theolophilis was a man who helped Luke. Perhaps he helped him to write this book by giving him money. Other scholars think Luke wrote to anyone who loves God. That is, he wrote to all Christians.

See: [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

#### What did Luke write about in Acts?

Luke wrote about church as more people believed in Jesus. He wrote about the days immediately after Jesus’ death and resurrection until the time when Paul arrived in Rome. Luke wrote about the great things the Holy Spirit did to help people to know about Jesus. He also wrote about how both the Jews and Gentiles believed in Jesus.

See: [Church](../articles/church.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md);[Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

See Map: Rome

#### Why did Luke write this letter?

Luke wrote this letter so that people would know what happened to the Christians after Jesus died and was resurrected. He wanted people to know that both the Jews and the Gentiles could be Christians. He wanted all people to believe in Jesus.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### Outline of the Book of Acts

1. The beginning of the church (1:1–2:41)
2. The early church in Jerusalem (2:42–6:7)
3. Increasing opposition to the gospel and persecution (6:8–7:60)
4. The persecution of the church and Philip's ministry (8:1–40)
5. Paul becomes an apostle (9:1–31)
6. The ministry of Peter and the first Gentile Christians (9:32–12:24)
7. Paul, the apostle to the Gentiles, Law of Moses, and the gathering of church leaders in Jerusalem (12:25–16:5)
8. The church growing and many people becoming Christians (16:6–19:20)
9. Paul travels to Jerusalem and becomes a prisoner in Rome (19:21–28:31)

See: [Church](../articles/church.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

## Acts

### Chapter 1

**1** The former account I wrote, Theophilus, told all that Jesus began to do and to teach, **2** until the day that he was taken up, after he had given commands through the Holy Spirit to the apostles he had chosen. **3** After his suffering, he presented himself alive to them with many convincing proofs. For forty days he appeared to them, and he spoke about the kingdom of God. **4** When he was meeting together with them, he commanded them not to leave Jerusalem, but to wait for the promise of the Father, about which he said, "You heard from me **5** that John indeed baptized with water, but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit in a few days."

**6** When they were assembled together they asked him, "Lord, is this the time you will restore the kingdom to Israel?" **7** He said to them, "It is not for you to know the times or the seasons which the Father has determined by his own authority. **8** But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses both in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth." **9** When the Lord Jesus had said these things, as they were looking up, he was raised up, and a cloud hid him from their eyes. **10** While they were looking intensely to heaven as he went, suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing. **11** They said, "You men of Galilee, why do you stand here looking into heaven? This Jesus who has been taken up from you into heaven, will return in the same manner as you saw him going into heaven."

**12** Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mountain that is called Olives, which is near to Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's journey. **13** When they arrived, they went up into the upper chamber, where they were staying. They were Peter, John, James, Andrew, Philip, Thomas, Bartholomew, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas son of James. **14** They all were devoted with one purpose to prayer, together with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and his brothers.

**15** In those days Peter stood up in the midst of the brothers, about 120 names, and said, **16** "Brothers, it was necessary that the scripture should be fulfilled, that the Holy Spirit spoke before by the mouth of David concerning Judas, who guided the ones who arrested Jesus. **17** For he was one of us and received a share of this ministry." **18** (Now this man bought a field with the earnings he received for his wickedness, and there he fell headfirst, and his body burst open, and all his intestines poured out. **19** All those living in Jerusalem heard about this, so they called that field in their language "Akeldama," that is, "Field of Blood.") **20** "For it is written in the Book of Psalms,

'Let his field be made desolate,

and do not let even one person live there';

'Let someone else take his position of leadership.'

**21** It is necessary, therefore, that one of the men who accompanied us all the time the Lord Jesus went in and out among us, **22** beginning from the baptism of John to the day that he was taken up from us, become a witness with us of his resurrection." **23** They put forward two men, Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also called Justus, and Matthias. **24** They prayed and said, "You, Lord, know the hearts of all people, so reveal which of these two is the one whom you have chosen **25** to take the place in this ministry and apostleship from which Judas turned away to go to his own place." **26** They cast lots for them, and the lot fell to Matthias, and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.

### Acts 1 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter records an event, commonly known as the "Ascension," when Jesus returned to heaven after he became alive again. He will not come back until he returns at his "second coming." (See: heaven and resurrection)

The UDB has set the words "Dear Theophilus" apart from the other words. This is because English speakers often start letters this way. You might want to start this book the way people start letters in your culture.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the two quotes from Psalms in 1:20.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Baptize

The word "baptize" has two meanings in this chapter. It refers to the water baptism of John and to the baptism of the Holy Spirit ([Acts 1:5](../../act/01/05.md)). (See: baptize)

##### "He spoke about the kingdom of God"

Some scholars believe that when Jesus "spoke about the kingdom of God," he explained to the disciples why the kingdom of God did not come before he died. Others believe that the kingdom of God did begin while Jesus was alive and that here Jesus was explaining that it was beginning in a new form.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

##### Akeldama

This is a phrase in Hebrew or Aramaic. Luke used Greek letters so his readers would know how it sounded, and then he told what it means. You should probably spell it the way it sounds in your language and then explain the meaning.

### Acts 1 Commentary

#### 1:1-11

#### What does the kingdom of God mean in this passage?

[1:3]

In this passage, the “kingdom of God” means two different things.

God rules over everything. However, some scholars think that Christians agree for him to rule over themselves now in this life. This is why they obey him and trust in him. When Luke says that God rules over his kingdom, he means that these Christians agree to trust in him and obey him. But this is not the same as God ruling over the whole world, because most people still reject Jesus.

God rules over everything, but other scholars believe that he will also rule over the earth when Jesus comes back to earth and stays here. These scholars think that this is what Jesus was talking about in 1:3.

Most Jews thought that the Messiah would free Israel from the Gentiles ruling them. Some scholars believe that this meant that the nation of Israel would be free once again. They believe that Jesus will do this for Israel in the future and it will last forever.

Other scholars think that Jesus was talking about a new kind of kingdom. In this kingdom, Christians agree for God to rule over themselves, and they will obey him. While Jesus has always ruled over everything, he now rules over Christians in a special way. They also believe that Christians are the new “people of God” and therefore can also be called Israel.

See: [Glory (Glorify)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/glory.md); [People of God](../articles/peopleofgod.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Jesus' Return to Earth](../articles/jesusreturn.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Glory (Glorify)](../articles/glory.md)

#### Why did the disciples wait for the Holy Spirit?

[1:4, 1:5]

What the disciples waited for was for the Holy Spirit to do something new and different. They waited for him to give them his power in a new way. This new way would begin a new time when God would do new things for mankind.

See: [Disciple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/disciple.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md)

#### How is a person baptized with the Holy Spirit?

[1:5]

To baptize something means to dip it into water or to cover it with water. The Jews dipped things in water to make them pure, that is, so they could use them as the Law of Moses instructed them. They also bathed themselves in order to make themselves pure or clean, that is, so that God would continue to accept them as his people.

In the same way, some scholars think that God baptizes people with the Holy Spirit when they begin to believe in Jesus. When God does that, he joins that person to himself. That person then becomes part of the Church, which is also called the “body of Christ.”

However, other scholars think that when God baptizes a person with the Spirit, he makes that person able to do miracles, such as speaking in unknown languages. However, only some Christians experience this.

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/indwelling.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md)

#### How does one receive the Holy Spirit?

[1:8]

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/indwelling.md)

#### Why did Jesus talk about how the church would grow?

[1:8]

In 1:8 Jesus told his disciples how the Church will grow, that is, how more people would believe in him. Jesus said, “In Jerusalem, in all of Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.” In the book of Acts, Luke tells how the Christians announced the gospel to people in these places, first in Jerusalem, next in Judea and Samaria, and finally much farther away, in Greece and in Rome.

See: [Samaria](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/samaria.md); [Israel](../articles/israel.md); [Samaria](../articles/samaria.md)

#### What is the purpose of the church?

[1:8]

Christians are to tell people about God. They are also to share the gospel with everyone, no matter where they come from. They are to continue doing this until the whole world hears the gospel. This is the work that the church must do.

The church is able to do this by the power of the Holy Spirit, who is always with the church. The nation of Israel did not always have the Holy Spirit with it. But in the church, the Holy Spirit lives in all Christians. Because of this, Christians have become the primary means by which God draws people to himself.

See: [Israel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/israel.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md); [Israel](../articles/israel.md)

See Map: Jerusalem and Judea

#### 1:12-26

#### Who were the apostles?

[1:13]

Eleven apostles were mentioned in 1:13. They are not always called by the same name in Scripture. However, they were the same eleven men.

Jewish people often had Greek names in addition to their Hebrew names. For example, Simon Peter had a Hebrew name (Simon) and a Greek name (Peter). He is sometimes called by one name, sometimes by the other, and sometimes by both.

Judas, son of James, is also called Thaddeus. Simon the zealot is also called Simon the Canaanite. Thomas is also called Didymus ("twin" in Greek). James is identified as a son of Zebedee (see: Matthew 4:21)

See: Mark 6:7-13, Matthew 10, and Luke 9:1-6

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md)

#### Who were the “zealous people”?

[1:13]

The “zealous people” were a group of Jews who wanted to stop the Romans from ruling their own nation. The zealous people were often willing to fight with violent force in order to stop the Romans. They may have even murdered leaders in the government.

In 1:13 Luke shows that Simon was a member of this group. Scripture probably referred to Simon as a zealous person in order to tell him apart from Simon Peter. Scholars think that Simon did not continue to act as a zealous person after he started following Jesus.

See: Matthew 10:4

See: [Zeal (Zealous, Zealot)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/zeal.md)

#### Who were Jesus’ “brothers”?

[1:14]

“Brothers” usually referred to brothers born from the same mother. However, it also refers to Christians together. They are brothers because they believe in Jesus. Most scholars believe 1:14 referred to Jesus’ brothers who were born from Mary, his mother. But perhaps “brothers” in 1:14 referred to Christians.

See: [Family of Jesus](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyjesus.md); [Family of Jesus](../articles/familyjesus.md)

#### Why were Jesus’ brothers praying?

[1:14]

If brothers referred to other Christians, then they were obeying Jesus’ command to pray.

Brothers might have also referred to Jesus’ brothers who were also born from Mary. However, these brothers did not believe in Jesus before he died on the cross. It would have been surprising for them to obey the commands of Jesus if they did not believe in him. Therefore, they probably came to believe in Jesus after he died and rose again.

See: Matthew 12:46-50, Galatians 1:18-19, 1 Corinthians 15:7, and Mark 6:3

See: [Family of Jesus](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyjesus.md); [Family of Jesus](../articles/familyjesus.md)

#### How did Judas Iscariot die?

[1:18]

Matthew said that Judas hanged himself (see: Matthew 27:5). In the book of Acts, Luke perhaps told what happened to Judas’ body after he died. If no one found his body, it would have decomposed and, after some time, have fallen down to the ground. The rotten corpse could easily have burst open.

#### Was the role of apostle possible only in the very early Church?

[1:20, 1:21, 1:22]

Some scholars think that only the first Christians could be “apostles.” They think this, because in 1:21-22 Luke says who could be an apostle. To be an apostle, a man had to be someone who had followed Jesus while Jesus lived on earth. He also had to have seen Jesus after he rose from the dead. This is why only people who lived in the time of Jesus could be apostles.

However, some scholars think that God still makes certain people able to be apostles. These people are of course different from the twelves apostles in the time of the first Christians.

Still other scholars think that the apostles sinned in selecting Matthias as the twelfth apostles. They do not think that God wanted Matthias to replace Judas Iscariot; they think that God wanted Paul instead.

These scholars say that the disciples sinned when they cast lots in order to find out what God wanted. It is true that Israelites cast lots in order to know what God wanted (see: Leviticus 16:8-10 and Numbers 26:55-56. Also, the book of Proverbs appears to permit the casting of lots (see: Proverbs 16:33.

However, most scholars do not think that Christians should cast lots. Few Christians cast lots today. Some scholars say that people who cast lots do sorcery. Others scholars say that Christians do not need to cast lots, because the Holy Spirit now lives in them and guides them.

See: Acts 6:2

See: [Will of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/willofgod.md); [Cast Lots](../articles/castlots.md); [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md);[Will of God](../articles/willofgod.md)

#### Why were there twelve apostles?

[1:26]

In Matthew 19:28, Jesus prophesied that the twelve apostles would judge the twelve tribes of Israel. This is probably the reason that the apostles appointed another disciple to replace Judas Iscariot.

In addition to this, some scholars believe that the Church has replaced Israel as the people of God. They think that the twelve apostles represent this new Israel. However, other scholars believe that the church and Israel remain distinct groups.

See: Luke 22:30

See: [Israel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/israel.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Church](../articles/church.md); [Israel](../articles/israel.md)

#### Acts 1:1

##### The former account I wrote

The "former account" is the Gospel of Luke.

##### Theophilus

Luke wrote this book to a man named Theophilus. Some translations follow their own culture's way of addressing a letter and write "Dear Theophilus" at the beginning of the sentence. Theophilus means "friend of God"

#### Acts 1:2

##### until the day that he was taken up

This refers to Jesus's ascension into heaven. Alternate translation: "until the day on which God took him up to heaven" or "until the day that he ascended into heaven"

##### he had given commands through the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit had led Jesus to instruct his apostles on certain things.

#### Acts 1:3

##### After his suffering

This refers to Jesus's suffering and death on the cross.

##### he presented himself alive to them

Jesus appeared to his apostles and to many other disciples.

#### Acts 1:4

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Jesus. Except where otherwise noted, the word "you" in the book of Acts is plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

This event happened during the 40 days that Jesus appeared to his followers after he had risen from the dead.

##### When he was meeting together with them

"When Jesus was meeting together with his apostles"

##### the promise of the Father, about which he said

This is a reference to the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit, whom the Father promised to send, about whom Jesus said"

#### Acts 1:5

##### John indeed baptized with water ... baptized with the Holy Spirit

Jesus contrasts how John baptized people in water with how God would baptize believers in the Holy Spirit.

##### John indeed baptized with water

"John indeed baptized people with water"

##### you will be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will baptize you"

#### Acts 1:6

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the apostles.

##### is this the time you will restore the kingdom to Israel

"will you now make Israel a great kingdom again"

#### Acts 1:7

##### the times or the seasons

Possible meanings are 1) the words "times" and "seasons" refer to different kinds of time. Alternate translation: "the general period of time or the specific date" or 2) the two words are basically synonymous. Alternate translation: "the exact time"

#### Acts 1:8

##### you will receive power ... and you will be my witnesses

The apostles will receive power that will enable them to be witnesses for Jesus. Alternate translation: "God will empower you ... to be my witnesses"

##### to the ends of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) "all over the world" or 2) "to the places on earth that are farthest away"

#### Acts 1:9

##### as they were looking up

"as they watched." The apostles "were looking" at Jesus because Jesus rose into the sky. Alternate translation: "as they were looking up at the sky"

##### he was raised up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he rose up into the sky" or "God raised him up into the sky"

##### a cloud hid him from their eyes

"a cloud blocked their view so that they could no longer see him"

#### Acts 1:10

##### looking intensely to heaven

"staring at the sky" or "gazing at the sky"

#### Acts 1:11

##### of Galilee

"from Galilee"

##### will return in the same manner

Jesus ascended into the sky, through the clouds, and the clouds hid him [Acts 1:9](./09.md). He will return from the sky, through (or on) the clouds, and people will be able to see him.

#### Acts 1:12

##### Then they returned

"The apostles returned"

##### a Sabbath day's journey

This refers to the distance which, according to Rabbinical tradition, a person was allowed to walk on a Sabbath day. Alternate translation: "about one kilometer away"

#### Acts 1:13

##### When they arrived

"When they reached their destination." Verse 12 says they were returning to Jerusalem.

##### the upper chamber

"the room on the upper level of the house"

#### Acts 1:14

##### They all were devoted ... to prayer

They all spent much time ... praying

##### with one purpose

The phrase "with one purpose" translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 1:15

##### Connecting Statement:

This event happened during the time that Peter and the other believers were staying together in the upper room.

##### In those days

These words mark the beginning of a new part of the story. They refer to the period of time after Jesus ascended. On many days after Jesus ascended, the disciples met in the upper chamber. Alternate translation: "During that time"

##### 120 names

"one hundred and twenty names"

##### names

The word "names" is a metonym for the people whose names they were. Alternate translation: "people"

##### in the midst of the brothers

Here the word "brothers" refers to fellow believers and includes both men and women.

#### Acts 1:16

##### it was necessary that the scripture should be fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that we read about in scripture had to take place"

##### by the mouth of David

The word "mouth" refers to the words that David wrote. Alternate translation: "through the words of David"

#### Acts 1:17

##### General Information:

Although Peter is addressing the entire group of people, here the word "us" refers only to the apostles.

##### Connecting Statement:

In verse 17 Peter continues his speech to the believers that he began in Acts 1:16.

#### Acts 1:18

##### General Information:

The author begins to tell the reader background information about how Judas died and what people called the field where he died. This is not part of Peter's speech.

##### Now this man

The words "this man" refers to Judas Iscariot.

##### the earnings he received for his wickedness

"the money that he earned from the evil thing that he did." The words "his wickedness" refer to Judas Iscariot's betraying Jesus to the people who killed him.

##### there he fell headfirst, and his body burst open, and all his intestines poured out

This suggests that Judas fell from a high place, rather than just falling down. The fall was severe enough to cause his body to burst open. Other passages of scripture mention that he hanged himself.

#### Acts 1:19

##### General Information:

The author finishes telling the reader background information about how Judas died and what people called the field where he died. This is not part of Peter's speech.

##### Field of Blood

When the people living in Jerusalem heard of the way in which Judas died, they renamed the field.

#### Acts 1:20

##### General Information:

Based on the situation with Judas that Peter just recounted, he recalls two Psalms of David that relate to the incident. The quote ends at the end of this verse.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the believers that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### For it is written in the Book of Psalms

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For David wrote in the Book of Psalms"

##### Let his field be made desolate, and do not let even one person live there

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words.

##### Let his field be made desolate

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "field" refers to the field where Judas died or 2) that the word "field" refers to Judas's dwelling place and is a metaphor for his family line.

##### be made desolate

"become empty"

#### Acts 1:21

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the apostles and does not include the audience to whom Peter is speaking.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the believers that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### It is necessary, therefore

Based on the scriptures that he quoted and on what Judas had done, Peter tells the group what they must do.

##### the Lord Jesus went in and out among us

Going in and out among a group of people is a metaphor for openly being part of that group. Alternate translation: "the Lord Jesus lived among us"

#### Acts 1:22

##### beginning from the baptism of John ... become a witness with us of his resurrection

The qualification for the new apostle that began with the words "It is necessary ... that one of the men who accompanied us" in verse 21 ends here. The subject of the verb "become" is thus "one of the men." Here is a reduced form of the sentence: "It is necessary ... that one of the men who accompanied us ... beginning from the baptism of John ... must become a witness with us."

##### beginning from the baptism of John

The noun "baptism" can be translated as a verb. Possible meanings: 1) "beginning from when John baptized Jesus" or 2) "beginning from when John baptized people"

##### to the day that he was taken up from us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until the day when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven" or "until the day that God took him up from us"

##### become a witness with us of his resurrection

"must begin to testify with us about his resurrection"

#### Acts 1:23

##### They put forward two men

Here the word "They" refers to all of the believers who were present. Alternate translation: "They proposed two men who fulfilled the requirements that Peter listed"

##### Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also called Justus

This can be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Joseph, whom people also called Barsabbas and Justus"

#### Acts 1:24

##### They prayed and said

Here the word "They" refers to all of the believers, but it was probably one of the apostles who spoke these words. Alternate translation: "The believers prayed together and one of the apostles said"

##### You, Lord, know the hearts of all people

Here the word "hearts" refers to the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: "You, Lord, know the thoughts and motives of everyone"

#### Acts 1:25

##### to take the place in this ministry and apostleship

Here the word "apostleship" defines what kind of "ministry" this is. Alternate translation: "to take Judas's place in this apostolic ministry" or "to take Judas's place in serving as an apostle"

##### from which Judas turned away

Here the expression "turned away" means that Judas stopped performing this ministry. Alternate translation: "which Judas stopped fulfilling"

##### to go to his own place

This phrase refers to Judas's death and likely to his judgment after death. Alternate translation: "to go where he belongs"

#### Acts 1:26

##### They cast lots for them

The apostles cast lots to decide between Joseph and Matthias.

##### the lot fell to Matthias

The lot indicated that Matthias was the one to replace Judas.

##### he was numbered with the eleven apostles

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the believers considered him to be an apostle with the other eleven"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 1:1

##### To whom did Luke address this book?

Luke addressed this book to Theophilus.

#### Acts 1:3

##### What did Jesus do for forty days after his suffering?

Jesus appeared alive to his apostles, saying things about the kingdom of God.

#### Acts 1:4

##### For what did Jesus command his apostles to wait?

Jesus told his apostles to wait for the promise of the Father.

#### Acts 1:5

##### With what would the apostles be baptized in a few days?

The apostles would be baptized with the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 1:7

##### When the apostles wanted to know the timing of the restoration of the kingdom, how did Jesus answer them?

Jesus told them that it was not for them to know the time.

#### Acts 1:8

##### What did Jesus tell the apostles they would receive from the Holy Spirit?

Jesus said the apostles would receive power.

##### Where did Jesus say the apostles would be his witnesses?

Jesus said the apostles would be witnesses in Judea, Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.

#### Acts 1:9

##### How did Jesus depart from his apostles?

Jesus was raised up and a cloud hid him from their eyes.

#### Acts 1:11

##### How did the angels say that Jesus would return again to the earth?

The angels said that Jesus would return in the same way he went into heaven.

#### Acts 1:14

##### What were the apostles, the women, Mary, and Jesus' brothers doing in the upper chamber?

They were diligently praying.

#### Acts 1:16

##### What had been fulfilled in the life of Judas, who betrayed Jesus?

The scripture had been fulfilled by Judas.

#### Acts 1:18

##### What happened to Judas after he received the money for betraying Jesus?

Judas bought a field, fell head first, his body burst wide open, and all his bowels poured out.

#### Acts 1:20

##### In the book of Psalms, what did it say should happen with Judas' position of leadership?

The Psalms said that Judas' position of leadership should be fulfilled by someone else.

#### Acts 1:21

##### What were the requirements for the man who would take Judas' position of leadership?

The man taking the position must have accompanied the apostles from the time of the baptism of John, and must have witnessed the resurrection of Jesus.

#### Acts 1:22

##### What were the requirements for the man who would take Judas' position of leadership?

The man taking the position must have accompanied the apostles from the time of the baptism of John, and must have witnessed the resurrection of Jesus.

#### Acts 1:24

##### How did the apostles determine which of the two candidates should take Judas' position?

The apostles prayed that God would reveal His choice, and then they cast lots.

#### Acts 1:25

##### How did the apostles determine which of the two candidates should take Judas' position?

The apostles prayed that God would reveal His choice, and then they cast lots.

#### Acts 1:26

##### How did the apostles determine which of the two candidates should take Judas' position?

The apostles prayed that God would reveal His choice, and then they cast lots.

##### Who was then numbered with the eleven apostles?

Matthias was then numbered with the eleven apostles.

### Chapter 2

**1** When the day of Pentecost came, they were all together in the same place. **2** Suddenly a sound like the rush of a violent wind came from heaven, and it filled the whole house where they were sitting. **3** There appeared to them tongues like fire that were distributed, and they sat upon each one of them. **4** They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues, as the Spirit gave them the ability.

**5** Now there were Jews who were living in Jerusalem, godly men, from every nation under heaven. **6** When this sound was heard, the multitude came together and was confused because everyone heard them speaking in his own language. **7** They were amazed and marveled; they said, "Really, are not all these who are speaking Galileans? **8** Why is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born? **9** Parthians and Medes and Elamites, and those who live in Mesopotamia, in Judea and Cappadocia, in Pontus and Asia, **10** Phrygia and Pamphylia, in Egypt and the parts of Libya toward Cyrene, and visitors from Rome, **11** Jews and proselytes, Cretans and Arabians, we hear them telling in our languages about the mighty works of God." **12** They were all amazed and perplexed; they said to one another, "What does this mean?" **13** But others mocked and said, "They are full of new wine."

**14** But Peter stood with the eleven, raised his voice, and declared to them, "Men of Judea and all of you who live at Jerusalem, let this be known to you; pay attention to my words. **15** For these people are not drunk as you assume, for it is only the third hour of the day. **16** But this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel:

**17** 'It will be in the last days,' God says,

'I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh.

Your sons and your daughters will prophesy,

your young men will see visions,

and your old men will dream dreams.

**18** Surely on my servants

and my female servants in those days

I will pour out my Spirit, and they will prophesy.

**19** I will show wonders in the sky above

and signs on the earth below,

blood, fire, and vapor of smoke.

**20** The sun will be turned to darkness

and the moon to blood

before the great and remarkable

day of the Lord comes.

**21** It will be that everyone who calls

on the name of the Lord will be saved.'

**22** Men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus of Nazareth was a man accredited to you by God with the mighty deeds and wonders and signs which God did through him in your midst, as you yourselves know. **23** This man was handed over by God's predetermined plan and foreknowledge; and you, by the hand of lawless men, put him to death by nailing him to a cross. **24** But God raised him up, freeing him from the agonies of death, because it was impossible for him to be held by it. **25** For David says about him,

'I saw the Lord always before my face,

for he is beside my right hand

so that I should not be moved.

**26** Therefore my heart was glad

and my tongue rejoiced.

Also, my flesh will live in hope.

**27** For you will not abandon my soul to Hades,

neither will you allow

your Holy One to see decay.

**28** You have made known to me the ways of life;

you will make me full of gladness with your face.'

**29** Brothers, it is proper for me to speak to you confidently about the patriarch David, that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day. **30** Therefore, he was a prophet and knew that God had sworn with an oath to him that he would set one of the fruit of his loins on his throne. **31** He saw what was to happen in the future and spoke about the resurrection of the Christ, that he was neither abandoned to Hades, nor did his flesh see decay.

**32** This Jesus—God raised him up, of which we all are witnesses. **33** Therefore, having been exalted to the right hand of God and having received the promised Holy Spirit from the Father, he has poured out what you see and hear.

**34** For David did not ascend to the heaven, but he says,

'The Lord said to my Lord,

"Sit at my right hand

**35** until I make your enemies

the footstool for your feet."'

**36** Therefore, let all the house of Israel certainly know that God has made him both Lord and Christ, this Jesus whom you crucified."

**37** Now when they heard this, they were pierced in their hearts, and said to Peter and the rest of the apostles, "Brothers, what must we do?"

**38** Then Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized, each of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. **39** For the promise is to you and to your children and to all who are far off, as many people as the Lord our God will call." **40** With many other words he testified and exhorted them, saying, "Be saved from this perverse generation." **41** Then they received his word and were baptized, and there were added in that day about three thousand souls. **42** They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and fellowship, in the breaking of bread and in prayers.

**43** Fear came upon every soul, and many wonders and signs were done through the apostles. **44** All who believed were together and had all things in common, **45** and they sold their property and possessions and distributed them to all, according to the needs anyone had. **46** So day after day they devoted themselves with one purpose in the temple. They also broke bread in homes, and they shared food together with glad and generous hearts, **47** praising God and having favor with all the people, and every day the Lord added to their number those who were being saved.

### Acts 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 2:17-21, 25-28, and 34-35.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 2:31.

The events described in this chapter are commonly called "Pentecost." Many people believe that the church began to exist when the Holy Spirit came to live inside believers at Pentecost.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Tongues

The word "tongues" has two meanings in this chapter. Luke describes what came down from heaven (Acts 2:3](../../act/02/03.md)) as tongues that looked like fire. This is different from "a tongue of flame," which is a fire that looks like a tongue. Luke also uses the word "tongues" to describe the languages that the people spoke after the Holy Spirit filled them ([Acts 2:4).

##### Last days

No one knows for sure when the "last days" ([Acts 2:17](../../act/02/17.md)) began. Your translation should not say more than the ULB does about this. (See: lastday)

##### Baptize

The word "baptize" in this chapter refers to Christian baptism (Acts 2:38-41). Though the event described in [Acts 2:1-11](./01.md) is the baptism of the Holy Spirit that Jesus promised in [Acts 1:5](../../act/01/05.md), the word "baptize" here does not refer to that event. (See: baptize)

##### The prophecy of Joel

Many of the things that Joel said would happen did happen on the day of Pentecost (Acts 2:17-18), but some things Joel spoke of have not happened yet (Acts 2:19-20). (See: prophet)

##### Wonders and signs

These words refer to things that only God could do, things that showed that Jesus was who the disciples said he was.

### Acts 2

#### 2:1-4

#### What was the day of Pentecost?

[2:1]

Pentecost was a Jewish festival. This festival came 50 days after the Passover week ended. It was one of the three most important festivals in the Jewish faith. For these three festivals, the Law of Moses made all Jewish men come to Jerusalem to “appear before the Lord” (see: Deuteronomy 16:16). These men brought offerings of the grain from the summer wheat harvest. These offerings gave thanks to God for helping the harvest. Pentecost was also called “The Feast of Weeks.” It was celebrated seven weeks after the Passover week ended (see: Leviticus 23:15).

The Feast of Pentecost brought the most visitors of Jews and Gentiles who believed in God to Jerusalem. It was the best time of year to travel. Some scholars think this is why God chose the Pentecost festival to baptize the followers of Jesus with the Holy Spirit. That is, the most people possible were there to see it.

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md); [Pentecost](../articles/pentecost.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md); [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md)

#### Who was there when the Holy Spirit came?

[2:1]

Scholars disagree on how many people were there when the Holy Spirit came. They do not know if it was only the twelve apostles or if Jesus’ relatives and the 120 disciples were also there (see:1:14-15). The house or upper room was big enough for the twelve apostles (see:1:13). If 120 disciples were there, then the “house” where they met was thought to be a large house with many rooms. Or some scholars think they met in part of the outer courts of the temple.

See: [Temple Courts](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/templecourts.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Temple Courts](../articles/templecourts.md)

#### How did Luke describe the coming of the Holy Spirit?

[2:2]

The Holy Spirit came with the sound of a strong “rushing” (φέρω/g5342) “wind”(πνοή/g4466). Luke said all the people in the house heard this sound. The word wind, or “breath”(πνοή/g4466), is used other places in the Bible to talk about the Holy Spirit (see: 17:25; Ezekiel 37:9-10). In those places, it is the Spirit who gives life. The Holy Spirit is also a part of giving Christians a new life after they believe in Jesus (see: Titus 3:5).

Luke also talked about the Holy Spirit coming in little flames in the shape of tongues. These tongues laid on top of all those in the house. Some scholars think Luke was talking about the Holy Spirit’s coming in the same way John the Baptist spoke of it (see: Luke 3:16-17).

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/indwelling.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md)

#### What did it mean that the disciples spoke in other tongues?

[2:4]

When the disciples spoke in other “tongues”(γλῶσσα/g1100) on the day of Pentecost, it meant they spoke in commonly known languages. But, the disciples did not know these languages. That is, they did not learn these languages by studying them or learning them. The Holy Spirit caused the disciples to speak in other languages. In this way, the Jews from many language groups heard the disciples speaking in their own languages.

See: [Speak in Tongues](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tongues.md)

#### 2:5-13

#### What places did Luke speak about?

[2:5, 2:9, 2:10, 2:11]

See Map: Ancient Middle East

#### Why did many in the crowd think the disciples were drunk?

[2:13]

Many in the crowd thought the disciples were drunk because they did not know what the disciples said. Because they spoke in languages that the people did not know, they thought they just spoke from drunkenness. Others became confused and amazed when they heard the disciples speaking in their own language. This confusion and amazement allowed Peter to tell them about what really happened.

#### 2:14-21

#### What was the third hour of the day?

[2:15]

The Jews counted time each day beginning with the sunrise. The third hour of the day was about nine o’clock in the morning. Three hours after the sun rose where they lived. When are the “the last days”?

Some scholars think the “last days” began when Jesus first came to earth. That is, they began at his birth. These scholars think the last days continue until Jesus comes back to earth. Other scholars think the last days began after Jesus came back from the dead and the Holy Spirit came to the disciples. These scholars also think the last days will end when Jesus comes back to earth.

See: [Last Days](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lastdays.md)

#### Who are “all flesh”?

[2:17]

Some scholars think Luke said “all flesh” to say all kinds of Jewish people. In the past, God only spoke to certain people, that is, prophets, kings, or priests with messages from the Holy Spirit. Other scholars think the words “all flesh” meant the Gentile nations of the world along with the Jews.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Priest (Priesthood)](../articles/priest.md) ; [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### When did the people think Joel’s prophecy was going to happen?

[2:17]

Peter knew the signs of flames of fire and the speaking of foreign languages to be the “signs on the earth below.” Some scholars think the prophecy of the “wonders in the heavens” happened on the day when Jesus died (see:Luke 23:44-45). Other scholars think the signs of blood, fire, smoke, the sun changing to darkness, and the moon changing to blood all speak about when Jesus is going to some back to earth.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/jesusreturn.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Jesus' Return to Earth](../articles/jesusreturn.md)

#### What is the “great and glorious day of the Lord”?

[2:20]

The ‘great and glorious day of the Lord’ is the day of judgment. It is the time when Jesus comes back to earth and judges the whole human race (see: Matthew 24:30-31 and 2 Thessalonians 2:1-4) Scholars think the word glorious also meant fearful or dreadful.

See: [Day of Judgment](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/dayofjudgment.md); [Glory (Glorify)](../articles/glory.md); [Day of Judgment](../articles/dayofjudgment.md)

#### 2:22-36

#### What does it mean that God “accredited” Jesus to the men of Israel?

[2:22]

When Peter said God “accredited” Jesus to the men of Israel, he said that through the many miracles he did, God helped people to know that Jesus was the promised messiah.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### What was meant by “God’s predetermined plan and foreknowledge”?

[2:23]

God’s predetermined(ὁρίζω/g3724) plan spoke about God’s specific and unchangeable will. That is, God knew what would happen before it happen because he wanted it to happen or allowed it to happen. God planned Jesus’ death on the cross before he created the world (see: 2 Timothy 1:9; Revelation 13:8). God’s foreknowledge(πρόγνωσις/g4268) spoke about God setting the time for Jesus to be crucified by “lawless”(ἄνομος/g0459) men. Some scholars think “lawless men” spoke about the Romans who beat Jesus and nailed him to the cross. Other scholars think both the Jewish leaders and the Romans were guilty of having Jesus killed.

See: [Will of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/willofgod.md); [Foreknow (Foreknowledge)](../articles/foreknowledge.md); [Will of God](../articles/willofgod.md)

#### Why was death not able to keep Jesus?

[2:24]

In the same way that God planned Jesus dying on the cross, he also planned to make Jesus live again. God controls living and dying. Dying could not stop Jesus because he is God.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md)

#### What is “Hades”?

[2:27]

Here, Hades means the general place where the dead people go. Peter said David was a prophet because he spoke about Jesus dying and that his body would not decay or rot.

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### What did the people see and hear that showed the Holy Spirit came to them?

[2:33]

The people saw and heard the disciples speaking in languages that the disciples did not know how to speak (see: 2:6-8). This showed the fulfillment of the promise Jesus made. Also, it showed that the Holy Spirit came to the disciples. The Holy Spirit came with power in the same way Jesus said the Holy Spirit was going to come.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### What do the words, “The Lord said to my Lord” mean?

[2:34]

Scholars think the words, “The Lord said to my Lord” spoke about God saying that Jesus is also the Lord. That is, Jesus is God. Only God could be a master of God.

See: Psalm 110:1

See: [Trinity](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/trinity.md); [Jesus is God](../articles/jesusisgod.md); [Trinity](../articles/trinity.md)

#### How is Jesus at the right hand of the Father?

[2:34]

Some scholars think the words meant “having been exalted by the right hand of God” instead of “to the right hand of God.” That is, Jesus was given back the honor he had in heaven before he came to earth. By coming to earth, he humbled himself and was not honored as much while he was on the earth. When someone sat at the right hand of a king, he was honored greatly. They were given power and permission to rule.

When someone sat down, it meant that they were finished working. The writer of Hebrews talks about the difference between Jesus finishing the things he wanted to do and the Jewish priests who continuously stand because they never finish the things they need to do (see:Hebrews 10:11-12). Jesus was given the highest place of honor and permission to rule in heaven.

See Psalm 110

See: [Heaven](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heaven.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Heaven](../articles/heaven.md)

#### How do Jesus’ enemies become a stool for his feet?

[2:35]

This is a prophecy from Psalm 110:1. God placed the enemies of Jesus under Jesus, who was given permission to rule them. That is, Jesus holds complete rule over his enemies.

See: [Prophecy (Prophesy)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophecy.md)

#### 2:36-41

#### Who was “the whole house of Israel”?

[2:36]

The whole house of Israel was all the Jewish people who rejected Jesus (see: Mark 14:61-65).

#### What did Peter mean when he called Jesus both Lord and Christ?

[2:36]

Peter called Jesus lord and christ. He meant that Jesus completed the prophecy David wrote in Psalm 110:1. Jesus is “lord”(κύριος/g29362) because God placed him at his right hand after he rose from the dead (see: Psalm 16:8). Jesus is ruler over everything.

Jesus is the “christ.” That is, he is the messiah, the one to complete God’s plan for saving people from their sins. Paul also spoke of Jesus as the Christ. Jesus showed that he was the Christ because he did not stay dead (see: Romans 1:4).

See: [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/save.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md)

#### What does it mean to be pierced to the heart?

[2:37]

Scholars think to be “pierced to the heart” spoke of when a person would know something quickly and very strongly. They think the people knew quick and strong sorrow and felt guilty. They understood they killed their messiah. Their words of “what shall we do” were desperate words.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### What was meant by the word “repent”?

[2:38]

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md)

#### Why did Peter command the Jews to be baptized in the name of Jesus?

[2:38]

Scholars think several things happened when baptism “in the name of Jesus” happened:

1. By calling on the name of Jesus, the Jews acknowledged that Jesus is Israel’s messiah and savior. They knew that Jesus did not stay dead and is sitting at God’s right hand.
2. By calling on the name of Jesus, the Jews accepted that forgiveness for sins was only possible by believing in Jesus.
3. By calling on the name of Jesus, the Jews publicly said that only Jesus can cleanse them from their sin and impurity.

See: [Clean and Unclean](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/cleanunclean.md); [Name](../articles/name.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Savior](../articles/savior.md); [Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon)](../articles/forgive.md); [Clean and Unclean](../articles/cleanunclean.md)

#### What was the “gift of the Holy Spirit”?

[2:38]

The gift of the Holy Spirit was the comforter that Jesus promised (see: John 14:16). The Holy Spirit comes to live inside those who believe in Jesus (see: Romans 8:9-11; Ephesians 1:13-14). Scholars agree that the gift of the Holy Spirit is different from the gifts of the Holy Spirit. All Christians are given the gift of the Holy Spirit. But the gifts the Holy Spirit gives each Christian are different. He chooses to give different people different gifts to help the church (see: 1 Corinthians 12:11).

See: [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/giftsholyspirit.md); [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md)

#### Why does Peter say this promise is “for you, your children and to all those who are far off?

[2:39]

This promise of the Holy Spirit is for all Christians of all ages everywhere. The promise of the Holy Spirit was not only for the first Christians but also for all who will become Christians. Luke also wrote that the promise of the Holy Spirit was for the Jews and the Gentiles (see Acts 10:45; 11:16,17). Peter did not fully know that the Holy Spirit was also for the Gentiles when he spoke. But the Holy Spirit spoke this through him.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md)

#### What did it mean when Peter said, “to as many as the Lord our God will call”?

[2:39]

Peter again quoted from the prophet Joel when he said, “to as many as the Lord our God will call.” The prophecy spoke of both those who call on the name of the Lord, and of those whom the Lord will call.

See: Romans 1:6; 9:1-33, John 3:16

See: [Call (Calling)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/call.md)

#### Why did Peter say “save yourselves from this wicked generation”?

[2:40]

Scholars think Peter told the Jews to “save themselves”(σῴζω/g4982) because he told the Jews to allow themselves to be saved by Jesus. The book of Acts speaks about God being the one who saves (see: 2:21, 39; 4:11-12). These scholars think that God’s call offers salvation. The people who are called must respond to the gospel with faith and by repenting (see: 2:38; 16:14-15, 30-34).

A “wicked generation” spoke about people who continually reject God and the things he says. Moses wrote about a wicked generation in the Old Testament (see: Deuteronomy 32:5), and Paul wrote about a wicked generation in the New Testament (see: Philippians 2:15).

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md)

#### 2:42-47

#### What was the “apostles’ teaching”?

[2:42]

The apostles taught about the things Jesus said and did. The apostles saw the power of Jesus in the miracles he did while they were with him. The teaching also talked about God’s plans and promises. God planned to save people from their sins even before he created the world. That is, he planned for Jesus to die on the cross, be buried, and be brought back to life even before he created the world. The apostles strongly taught that Jesus is the messiah whom God promised to come. They taught that it was through Jesus alone that someone could be at peace with God (see: 2:36-39; 3:17-23).

See: [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/save.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md)

#### What was meant by “the fellowship”?

[2:42]

The word “fellowship” meant to share or be a part of something. Here, it meant sharing in each other’s lives. That is, in the same way they shared life in Jesus, they also shared life together. To share life with each other meant to know others, care for others, and allow them to care for you and to help one another in times of suffering (see: Romans 12:10-13; 1 Peter 4:8-10).

See: [Fellowship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fellowship.md)

#### What was meant by “the breaking of bread”?

[2:42]

Some scholars think the “breaking of bread” took place at any ordinary meal time where people gathered together to eat. They think Jesus gave this command when he celebrated his last Passover meal with the disciples (see: Luke 22:14-19). That is, they took the loaves of bread they ate, broke them into small pieces, and shared them with one another. Other scholars think the “breaking of bread” was for Christians to regularly be a part of, so that they specifically remembered Jesus’ death on the cross, the forgiveness of sins, and the new covenant made by God with Christians (see: 1 Corinthians 11:23-26).

See: [New Covenant](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/newcovenant.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [New Covenant](../articles/newcovenant.md)

#### What were the prayers about which Luke wrote?

[2a:42]

Scholars think the prayers were Jewish prayers and possibly the Jewish times of prayer as well (see: 3:1). Certainly, the Christians prayed together. They also went to the prayer times in the temple together (see: 2:46).

See: [Pray (Prayer](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Why did those gathered experience “awe”?

[2:43]

Because the apostles did signs and wonders similar to the miracles done by Jesus, the people felt great “awe”(φόβος/g5401) about God. This means the people felt great respect and reverence for God.

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md); [Sign](../articles/sign.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md)

#### What did it mean to have all things in common?

[2:44]

Some scholars think “to have all things in common” meant the Christians wanted to share the things they owned. Though they kept the things they owned, they willingly sold them to help people with needs near them (see: 4:32). When someone needed something, the Christians sold some of their things, land, or other things they owned. Then they brought the money to the leaders or apostles to give to all with needs (See:Acts 4:32-37).

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md)

#### Why did the early Christians worship at the Temple?

[2:46]

The Christians went to the temple daily for prayers because the first Christians were Jewish. This was before they were not allowed to go to the temple because they believed in Jesus. They went there to pray Jewish prayers and to praise God who sent the messiah into the world (see: John 17:18).

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Pray (Prayer](../articles/prayprayer.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### What did Luke mean when he wrote “the Lord added to their number”?

[2:47]

Scholars think Luke wrote “the Lord added to their number” because it was God’s church. He is the one who adds people to his church (see: 11:21).

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

#### Acts 2:1

##### General Information:

This is a new event; it is now the Day of Pentecost, 50 days after Passover. Here the word "they" refers to the apostles and the other 120 believers that Luke mentions in Acts 1:15.

#### Acts 2:2

##### Suddenly

This word explains that no one expected to hear the sound or to have it fill the house.

##### a sound like the rush of a violent wind came from heaven

Possible meanings are 1) "heaven" refers to the place where God lives. Alternate translation: "a sound came from heaven" or 2) "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sound came from the sky"

##### the whole house

This may have been a house or a larger building.

#### Acts 2:3

##### There appeared to them tongues like fire

These might have been something that looked like tongues or like fire, not actual tongues or fire. Possible meanings are 1) tongues that looked like they were made of fire or 2) small flames of fire that looked like tongues. When fire burns in a small space, such as on a lamp, the flame can be shaped like a tongue.

##### that were distributed, and they sat upon each one of them

This means that the "tongues like fire" spread out so that there was one on each person.

#### Acts 2:4

##### They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled all of those who were there and they"

##### speak in other tongues

They were speaking in languages that they did not already know.

##### as the Spirit gave them the ability

The Holy Spirit gave them the ability to speak; they were dependent on the Spirit to speak in different languages.

#### Acts 2:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to the believers; the word "his" refers to each person in the multitude. Verse 5 gives background information about the large number of Jews who were living in Jerusalem, many of whom were present during this event.

##### godly men

Here "godly men" refers to people who were devout in their worship of God and tried to obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### every nation under heaven

"every nation in the world." The word "every" is an exaggeration that emphasizes that the people came from many different nations. Alternate translation: "many different nations"

#### Acts 2:6

##### When this sound was heard

This refers to the sound that was similar to a strong wind. Alternate translation: "When they heard this sound"

##### the multitude

"the large crowd of people"

#### Acts 2:7

##### They were amazed and marveled

These two words share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the intensity of amazement. Alternate translation: "They were greatly amazed"

##### Really, are not all these who are speaking Galileans?

The people ask this question to express their amazement. The question could be changed to an exclamation. Alternate translation: "All of these Galileans could not possibly know our languages!"

#### Acts 2:8

##### Why is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses how amazed they were or 2) this is a real question for which the people wanted an answer.

##### in our own language in which we were born

"in our own languages that we have learned from birth"

#### Acts 2:9

##### Parthians ... Medes ... Elamites

These are names of people groups.

##### Mesopotamia ... Judea ... Cappadocia ... Pontus ... Asia

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:10

##### Phrygia ... Pamphylia ... Egypt ... Libya ... Cyrene

These are names of large areas of land.

#### Acts 2:11

##### Cretans ... Arabians

These are names of people groups.

##### proselytes

converts to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 2:12

##### amazed and perplexed

These two words share similar meanings. Together they emphasize that the people could not understand what was happening. Alternate translation: "surprised and confused"

#### Acts 2:13

##### They are full of new wine

Some people accuse the believers of having drunk too much wine. Alternate translation: "They are drunk"

##### new wine

This refers to wine that is in the process of fermentation.

#### Acts 2:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins his speech to the Jews who were there on the Day of Pentecost.

##### stood with the eleven

All the apostles stood up in support of Peter's statement.

##### raised his voice

This is an idiom for "spoke loudly."

##### declared to them

Made a formal, important speech to them. See how you translated "make declarations" in Acts 2:4.

##### let this be known to you

This means that Peter is about to explain the meaning of what the people had witnessed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "know this" or "let me explain this to you"

##### pay attention to my words

Peter was referring to what he was saying. Alternate translation: "listen carefully to what I am saying"

#### Acts 2:15

##### it is only the third hour of the day

"It is only nine o'clock in the morning." Peter expected his audience to know that people do not get drunk that early in the day.

#### Acts 2:16

##### General Information:

Here Peter tells them a passage about which the prophet Joel wrote in the Old Testament that relates to what is happening with the languages in which the believers spoke. This is written in the form of poetry as well as being a quotation.

##### this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this is what God told the prophet Joel to write" or "this is that which the prophet Joel spoke"

#### Acts 2:17

##### It will be

"This is what will happen" or "This is what I will do"

##### I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh

Here the words "pour out" mean to give generously and abundantly. Alternate translation: "I will give my Spirit abundantly to all flesh"

##### all flesh

This is a hyperbolic metonym that refers to all people by speaking of them as all living creatures, who have flesh. Alternate translation: "all people"

#### Acts 2:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to quote the prophet Joel.

##### my servants and my female servants

"both my male and my female servants." These words emphasize that God will pour out his Spirit on all of his servants, both men and women.

##### I will pour out my Spirit

Here the words "pour out" mean to give generously and abundantly. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:17]

#### Acts 2:19

##### vapor of smoke

"thick smoke" or "clouds of smoke"

#### Acts 2:20

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes quoting the prophet Joel.

##### The sun will be turned to darkness

This means that the sun will appear to be dark instead of light. Alternate translation: "The sun will become dark"

##### the moon to blood

This means that the moon will appear to be red like blood. Alternate translation: "the moon will be turned to blood" or "the moon will appear to be red"

##### the great and remarkable day

The words "great" and "remarkable" share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of greatness. Alternate translation: "the very great day"

##### remarkable

great and beautiful

#### Acts 2:21

##### everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord will save everyone who calls on him"

#### Acts 2:22

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### hear these words

"listen to what I am about to say"

##### accredited to you by God with the mighty deeds and wonders and signs

This means that God proved that he had appointed Jesus for his mission, and proved who he was by his many miracles.

#### Acts 2:23

##### by God's predetermined plan and foreknowledge

The nouns "plan" and "foreknowledge" can be translated as verbs. This means that God planned out and knew beforehand what would happen to Jesus. Alternate translation: "because God planned out and knew beforehand everything that would happen"

##### This man was handed over

Possible meanings: 1) "you handed Jesus over into the hands of his enemies" or 2) "Judas betrayed Jesus to you."

##### you, by the hand of lawless men, put him to death by nailing him to a cross

Although "lawless men" actually crucified Jesus, Peter accuses the crowd of having killed him because they demanded his death.

##### by the hand of lawless men

Here "hand" refers to the actions of the lawless men. Alternate translation: "through the actions of lawless men" or "by what lawless men did"

##### lawless men

Possible meanings are 1) the unbelieving Jews who accused Jesus of crimes or 2) the Roman soldiers who performed the execution of Jesus.

#### Acts 2:24

##### But God raised him up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "But God caused him to live again"

##### freeing him from the agonies of death

He speaks of the agonies of dying as if God were freeing Christ from ropes that were binding Jesus. Alternate translation: "ending the pains of death"

##### for him to be held by it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for death to hold him"

##### for him to be held by it

Peter speaks of Christ remaining dead as if death were a person who held him captive. Alternate translation: "for him to remain dead"

#### Acts 2:25

##### General Information:

Here Peter quotes a passage that David wrote in a Psalm which relates to Jesus's crucifixion and resurrection. Since Peter says that David said these words about Jesus, the words "I" and "my" refer to Jesus and the words "Lord" and "he" refer to God.

##### For David says about him, 'I saw

The context makes it plain that this is an elliptical way of saying that David was speaking as if David were the Messiah. Alternate translation: "For David spoke these words as if he were the Christ: 'I saw"

##### before my face

"in front of me." Alternate translation: "in my presence" or "with me"

##### beside my right hand

To be at someone's "right hand" often means to be in a position to help and sustain. Alternate translation: "right beside me" or "with me to help me"

##### I should not be moved

Here the word "moved" means to be troubled. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will not be able to cause me trouble" or "nothing will trouble me"

#### Acts 2:26

##### my heart was glad and my tongue rejoiced

People consider the "heart" the center of emotions and the "tongue" voices those emotions. Alternate translation: "I was glad and rejoiced"

##### my flesh will live in hope

Possible meanings of the phrase "my flesh" are 1) it indicates that the writer is a mortal who will die. Alternate translation: "even though I am only mortal, I will live in hope" or 2) it is a synecdoche for the writer's entire person. Alternate translation: "I will live in hope"

##### will live in hope

Here the word "hope" refers to a person's confidence that what he desires will happen. Since the speaker hoped that God would rescue him, "in hope" could be translated as "in confidence in God." The phrase "live in hope" can also be translated with the phrases "confidently expect," "confidently wait," or "trust." Alternate translation: "will live with confidence in God" or "will confidently wait for God to rescue me"

#### Acts 2:27

##### General Information:

Since Peter says that David said these words about Jesus, the words "my," "Holy One," and "me" refer to Jesus and the words "you" and "your" refer to God.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes quoting David.

##### neither will you allow your Holy One to see decay

The Messiah, Jesus, refers to himself with the words "your Holy One." Alternate translation: "neither will you allow me, your Holy One, to see decay"

##### to see decay

Here the word "see" means to experience something. The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. Alternate translation: "to decay"

#### Acts 2:28

##### the ways of life

"the ways that lead to life"

##### full of gladness with your face

Here the word "face" refers to the presence of God. Alternate translation: "very glad when I see you" or "very glad when I am in your presence"

##### gladness

joy, happiness

#### Acts 2:29

##### General Information:

The words "he" and "his" refer to David.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues the speech to the Jews that surround him and the other believers in Jerusalem, which he began in Acts 1:16.

##### Brothers, it

"My fellow Jews, it"

##### it is proper for me to speak

Or "it is possible." He is able to speak because it is proper for him to do so.

##### he both died and was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he died and people buried him"

#### Acts 2:30

##### he would set one of the fruit of his loins on his throne

"God would set one of David's fruit upon David's throne." Alternate translation: "God would appoint one of David's fruit to be king in David's place"

##### one of the fruit of his loins

This is a metaphor for a child or other descendant. Alternate translation: "one of his children" or "one of his descendants"

#### Acts 2:31

##### he was neither abandoned to Hades, nor did his flesh see decay

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Neither did God abandon him to Hades nor did his flesh see decay" or "God did not abandon him to Hades, and his flesh did not see decay"

##### did his flesh see decay

Here the word "see" means to experience something. The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:27]

#### Acts 2:32

##### This Jesus—God raised him up

Peter talks again about Jesus. Alternate Translation: "It is this Jesus whom God raised up" or "God raised up this Jesus"

##### God raised him up

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "God caused him to live again"

#### Acts 2:33

##### having been exalted to the right hand of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because God has exalted Jesus up to his right hand"

##### having been exalted to the right hand of God

"Right hand of God" here is an idiom that means that Christ will rule as God, with God’s authority. Alternate translation: "Christ is in the position of God"

##### he has poured out what

Here the words "poured out" mean that Jesus, who is God, made these events to happen. It is implicit that he did this by giving the Holy Spirit to the believers. Alternate translation: "he has caused to happen these things that"

##### has poured out

"has given generously and abundantly." See how you translated a similar phrase in Acts 2:17. Alternate translation: "given abundantly"

#### Acts 2:34

##### General Information:

Peter again quotes one of David's Psalms. David is not speaking of himself in this Psalm. "The Lord" and "my" refer to God; "my Lord" and "your" refer to Jesus the Messiah.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 1:16.

##### Sit at my right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Acts 2:35

##### until I make your enemies the footstool for your feet

This means that God will completely defeat the Messiah's enemies and make them subject to him. Alternate translation: "until I make you victorious over all of your enemies"

#### Acts 2:36

##### all the house of Israel

This refers to the entire nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "every Israelite"

#### Acts 2:37

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the people in the crowd to whom Peter spoke.

##### Connecting Statement:

The Jews respond to Peter's speech and Peter answers them.

##### when they heard this

"when the people heard what Peter had said"

##### they were pierced in their hearts, and said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Peter's words pierced their hearts, and they said"

##### pierced in their hearts

This means that the people felt guilty and became very sad. Alternate translation: "deeply troubled"

#### Acts 2:38

##### be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "allow us to baptize you"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ

"In the name of" here is a metonym for "by the authority of" Alternate translation: "by the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 2:39

##### all who are far off

This means either 1) "all people who live far away" or 2) "all people who are far from God."

#### Acts 2:40

##### he testified and exhorted them

"he seriously told them." Here the word "testified" and "begged" share similar meanings and emphasize that Peter urged them strongly to respond to what he was saying. Alternate translation: "he strongly urged them"

##### exhorted

or "pleaded with"

##### Be saved from this perverse generation

The implication is that God will punish "this perverse generation." Alternate translation: "Be saved from the punishment that these wicked people will suffer"

##### Be saved

Possible meanings are 1) Peter was urging people to let God save them. Alternate translation: "Let God save you," or 2) Peter was simply urging them in a general way to avoid being punished. Alternate translation: "Save yourselves" or "Flee" or "Escape"

#### Acts 2:41

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that happened on the Day of Pentecost.

##### they received his word

Here the word "received" means that they accepted what Peter said to be true. Alternate translation: "they believed what Peter said"

##### were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people baptized them"

##### there were added in that day about three thousand souls

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "about three thousand souls joined the believers on that day"

##### about three thousand souls

Here the word "souls" refers to people. Alternate translation: "about 3,000 people"

#### Acts 2:42

##### Connecting Statement:

This section explains how the believers continued to live after the Day of Pentecost.

##### the breaking of bread

Bread was part of their meals. These words could refer to 1) any meals they might eat together. Alternate translation: "eating meals together" or 2) meals they would eat together in order to remember Christ's death and resurrection. Alternate translation: "eating the Lord's Supper together"

#### Acts 2:43

##### Fear came upon every soul

Here the word "Fear" refers to deep respect and awe for God. The word "soul" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "Each person felt a deep respect and awe for God"

##### many wonders and signs were done through the apostles

Possible meanings are 1) "the apostles performed many wonders and signs" or 2) "God performed many wonders and signs through the apostles"

##### wonders and signs

"miraculous deeds and supernatural events." See how you translated this in Acts 2:22.

#### Acts 2:44

##### All who believed were together

Possible meanings are 1) "All of them believed the same thing" or 2) "All who believed were together in the same place."

##### had all things in common

"shared their belongings with one another"

#### Acts 2:45

##### property and possessions

"land and things they owned"

##### distributed them to all

Here the word "them" refers to the profit that they made from selling their property and possessions. Alternate translation: "distributed the proceeds to all"

##### according to the needs anyone had

They distributed the proceeds that they earned from selling their property and possessions to any believer who had a need.

#### Acts 2:46

##### they devoted themselves with one purpose in the temple

You may need to supply the words that have been omitted in this ellipse. What they devoted themselves to doing is stated in verse 42. Alternate translation: "they devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching with one purpose in the temple"

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### They also broke bread in homes

Bread was part of their meals. Alternate translation: "They also ate meals together in their homes"

#### Acts 2:47

##### praising God and having favor with all the people

"praising God. All the people approved of them"

##### those who were being saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom the Lord saved"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 2:1

##### On what Jewish festival day were all the disciples together?

The disciples were together on the day of Pentecost.

#### Acts 2:4

##### When the Holy Spirit came into the house, what did the disciples begin to do?

The disciples began to speak with other languages.

#### Acts 2:5

##### At this time in Jerusalem, there were godly Jews from where?

There were godly Jews from every nation under heaven.

#### Acts 2:6

##### Why was the multitude confused when they heard the disciples speaking?

The multitude was confused because everyone heard them speaking in his own language.

#### Acts 2:11

##### About what were the disciples speaking?

The disciples were telling about the mighty works of God.

#### Acts 2:13

##### What did some think who were mocking the disciples?

Some mocked and thought they were full of new wine.

#### Acts 2:16

##### What did Peter say was being fulfilled at this time?

Peter said the prophecy of Joel was being fulfilled that said God would pour out his Spirit upon all flesh.

#### Acts 2:17

##### What did Peter say was being fulfilled at this time?

Peter said the prophecy of Joel was being fulfilled that said God would pour out his Spirit upon all flesh.

#### Acts 2:21

##### In Joel's prophecy, who are the ones that are saved?

Everyone who calls on the name of the Lord are the ones that are saved.

#### Acts 2:22

##### How was Jesus' ministry authenticated by God?

Jesus' ministry was authenticated by the mighty works and wonders and signs which God did through him.

#### Acts 2:23

##### Whose plan was it that Jesus be crucified?

Jesus was crucified by God's determined plan.

#### Acts 2:25

##### In the Old Testament, what did King David prophecy about God's Holy One?

King David said that God would not allow his Holy One to see decay.

#### Acts 2:27

##### In the Old Testament, what did King David prophecy about God's Holy One?

King David said that God would not allow his Holy One to see decay.

#### Acts 2:30

##### What promise had God made to King David about his descendants?

God had promised King David that one of his descendants would sit upon the throne.

#### Acts 2:31

##### In the Old Testament, what did King David prophecy about God's Holy One?

King David said that God would not allow his Holy One to see decay.

#### Acts 2:32

##### Who was God's Holy One who did not see decay and would sit upon the throne?

Jesus was the prophesied Holy One and King.

#### Acts 2:36

##### Peter preached that God had now given Jesus what two titles?

God had made Jesus both Lord and Christ.

#### Acts 2:37

##### When the multitude heard Peter's preaching, what was their response?

The multitude asked what they should do.

#### Acts 2:38

##### What did Peter tell the multitude to do?

Peter told the multitude to repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of their sins.

#### Acts 2:39

##### For whom did Peter say was God's promise?

Peter said God's promise was for the multitude, their children, and all who were far off.

#### Acts 2:41

##### How many people were baptized that day?

About three thousand people were baptized.

#### Acts 2:42

##### In what did the baptized people continue?

They continued in the apostles' teaching and fellowship, in the breaking of bread and in prayers.

#### Acts 2:44

##### What did those who believed do to help those in need?

They sold their property and possessions and distributed them to all, as anyone had need.

#### Acts 2:45

##### What did those who believed do to help those in need?

They sold their property and possessions and distributed them to all, as anyone had need.

#### Acts 2:46

##### Where were the believers meeting at this time?

The believers met in the Temple.

#### Acts 2:47

##### Who was adding day by day to the group of believers?

The Lord added day by day those that were being saved.

### Chapter 3

**1** Now Peter and John were going up into the temple at the hour of prayer, the ninth hour. **2** Now a man who was lame from his mother's womb was being carried to the temple gate called Beautiful. They would place him there every day so he could ask those who were going into the temple for alms. **3** When he saw Peter and John about to enter the temple, he asked them for alms. **4** Peter, fastening his eyes upon him, with John, said, "Look at us." **5** The lame man looked at them, expecting to receive something from them. **6** But Peter said, "Silver and gold I do not have, but what I do have, I will give to you. In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, walk." **7** Taking him by the right hand, Peter raised him up, and immediately the man's feet and ankles were made strong. **8** Leaping up, the lame man stood and began to walk; and he entered with Peter and John into the temple, walking, leaping, and praising God. **9** All the people saw him walking and praising God. **10** They noticed that it was the man who had been asking people for alms at the Beautiful Gate of the temple; and they were filled with wonder and amazement because of what had happened to him.

**11** As he was holding on to Peter and John, all the people ran together to them in the porch that is called Solomon's, greatly marveling. **12** When Peter saw this, he answered the people, "You Israelite men, why do you marvel? Why do you fix your eyes on us, as if we made him walk by our own power or godliness? **13** The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, has glorified his servant Jesus. He is the one whom you handed over and rejected before the face of Pilate, when he had decided to release him. **14** You rejected the Holy and Righteous One, and you asked instead for a murderer to be given to you. **15** You killed the Founder of life, whom God raised from the dead—and we are witnesses of this. **16** On the basis of faith in his name, his name made this man, whom you see and know, strong. The faith that is through Jesus has given him this perfect health in the presence of you all. **17** Now, brothers, I know that you acted in ignorance, as did also your rulers. **18** But the things which God foretold by the mouth of all the prophets, that his Christ should suffer, he has now fulfilled. **19** Repent, therefore, and turn, so that your sins may be blotted out, **20** so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord; and that he may send the Christ who has been appointed for you, Jesus. **21** He is the One heaven must receive until the time of the restoration of all things, about which God spoke from ancient times by the mouth of his holy prophets. **22** Moses indeed said, 'The Lord God will raise up a prophet like me from among your brothers. You must listen to everything he tells you. **23** It will happen that every person who does not listen to that prophet will be completely destroyed from among the people.' **24** Yes, and all the prophets from Samuel and those who came after him, they spoke out and announced these days. **25** You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant that God made with your ancestors, as he said to Abraham, 'In your seed all the families of the earth will be blessed.' **26** After God raised up his servant, he sent him to you first, in order to bless you by turning every one of you from your wickedness."

### Acts 3 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### The covenant God made with Abraham

This chapter explains that Jesus came to the Jews because God was fulfilling part of the covenant he had made with Abraham. Peter thought that the Jews were the ones who were truly guilty of killing Jesus, but he wanted them to understand that Jesus, by living and dying, had fulfilled God's promise to Abraham and that if they repented, God would forgive them.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### "You delivered up"

The Romans were the ones who killed Jesus, but they killed him because the Jews captured him, brought him to the Romans, and told the Romans to kill him. For this reason Peter thought that they were the ones who were truly guilty of killing Jesus. But he tells them that they are also the first ones to whom God has sent Jesus's followers to invite them to repent ([Acts 3:26](../../act/03/26.md)). (See: repent)

### Acts 3

#### 3:1-10

#### What was the “hour of prayer”?

[3:1]

The Jewish people went to the temple three times a day to pray. The “ninth hour” was in the middle of the afternoon. Jews also prayed in the middle of the morning at the middle of the day (see: Psalm 55:16-19). Peter and John were Christians. But they were also Jews. So they continued to pray at the temple three times a day after they became Christians.

#### Why did Luke write that the man was “lame from birth”?

[3:2]

Some scholars think Luke wrote that the man was “lame from birth” because it showed how powerful Jesus was because he healed this man. Scholars think “lame”(χωλός/g5560) meant a man with legs, ankles and feet not formed correctly. That made this man not strong enough to walk or stand (see: 3:7). What was the “Beautiful Gate”?

The “Beautiful Gate” was one of many gates that went into the Jewish temple. Scholars think the greatest number of people entered into the temple through this gate. Perhaps they carried the lame man to this gate so that they could ask people for gifts of money.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md)

#### Why did Peter “fasten his eyes” on the lame man?

[3:4]

The phrase “fastening his eyes”(ἀτενίζω/g0816) meant that Peter looked specifically and closely at the lame beggar. Also, Peter commanded the man saying, “Look at us.” Scholars think the lame man looked at Peter and this man had expected a great gift.

**Advice to Translators:** A beggar was someone who asked people for money because they were poor or because they could not do anything.

#### Why did Peter tell the man to stand and walk, “in the name of Jesus”?

[3:6]

The lame man did not stand up and walk before Peter spoke the name of Jesus. The phrase “in the name of Jesus” meant that Jesus gave him permission to heal this man and the power to do so. People knew Jesus’ power because of what Peter did (see: 3:16). Some scholars say the power that caused the lame man to stand up and “walk”(περιπατέω/g4043) and he was strong enough to walk for the rest of his life (see: 3:16).

See: [Name](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/name.md)

#### 3:11-16

#### Where was Solomon’s porch?

[3:11]

Solomon’s porch was on the east side of the temple courts. Scholars think the court of the Gentiles was near this area. Jesus taught on this porch to many people (see: John 10:23).

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

See Map: Show map of Jewish temple with its various gates, and porches

#### Why did Peter speak about the “God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob”?

[3:13]

Peter spoke about God in a way that the Jewish people would understand. Scholars think Peter wanted the Jews to think about God promised to do certain things. God not only healed a lame man, but he made it so that people would know that Jesus is the promised messiah. The things Peter said also helped people to know he and the apostles served the God of Israel. They did not worship another god.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### Why did Peter say that Jesus was God’s servant?

[3:13]

Scholars think Peter said the same thing the prophet Isaiah said to show that Jesus is the messiah. Jesus is the servant who brings the justice of God, he brings people back to God, and he is the servant who suffers for the people of God (see: Isaiah 42:1; 49:5-6; 52:13-15). The Jewish people knew what Isaiah said and expected a suffering servant to come.

See: [Serve (Servant, Slave)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/serve.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Justice (Just, Unjust)](../articles/justice.md); [Serve (Servant, Slave)](../articles/serve.md)

#### Who is the “Holy and Righteous One”?

[3:14]

Jesus is the holy and righteous one.

See: [Righteous (Righteousness)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/righteous.md); [Righteous (Righteousness)](../articles/righteous.md)

#### How is Jesus the “Founder of Life”?

[3:15]

Peter spoke about Jesus as the “founder of life”(ἀρχηγός/g0747). This meant that Jesus created the universe and created everything on earth. It also meant that Jesus was the leader of the whole world.Jesus also made it so that Christians would live together with God in heaven forever.

See: [Create (Creation, Creature)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/create.md)

#### 3:17-21

#### What was meant by the words, “you acted in ignorance”?

[3:17]

Peter knew the people and the religious leaders did not fully understand the plan of God for Jesus. God made this plan before the beginning of the world (see: Ephesians 1:4). The prophets spoke how the messiah must suffer and die (see: Isaiah 531-12; Zechariah 12:10). Some scholars think Jesus spoke about how those who crucified him did not really know what they were doing (see: Luke 23:34).

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### Why did Peter command the people to “repent and turn back”?

[3:19]

Peter told the Jewish people and leaders they must “repent.” This meant they must believe that Jesus is the messiah. It also meant they must think differently about what the Scriptures teach about the messiah (see: 2 Corinthians 3:12-16). The people refused to believe that Jesus was God’s servant. They did not think that Jesus was the “holy one.” They refused to believe that Jesus was the one who created everything and was the messiah. Peter’s told the people that they needed to repent and believe in Jesus. In this way, their sins were to be “blotted out, ” that is, the penalty for their sins was removed because Jesus served the penalty for their sins. They were made clean.

See: [Clean and Unclean](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/cleanunclean.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Serve (Servant, Slave)](../articles/serve.md); [Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)](../articles/holy.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md); [Clean and Unclean](../articles/cleanunclean.md)

#### What were “periods of refreshing”?

[3:19]

Some scholars think “refreshing” meant to experience a relief from trouble or to have a time of peace before Jesus returns. They think that Scripture teaches that there will be a time of peace and forgiveness when God would not judge people. Other scholars think the “periods of refreshing” spoke about the time when Peter lived. They think that Luke was speaking about God given them peace from different things. Still other scholars think the periods of refreshing came when the people repented and trusted in God. That is, the Holy Spirit brings refreshing in the life of a person who repents (see: Acts 2:38; John 14:15-21).

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### What does “the final restoration of all things” mean?

[3:21]

Some scholars think when Luke spoke about “restoration,” he wanted to say that God will bring Israel back to their land (see: 1:6). That is, he will bring back the kingdom of Israel. These scholars also think this is a time when God will fulfill his promises made through the prophet Malachi (see: Malachi 4:2-6). This is when the messiah returns to the world to judge the world for its sin. Other scholars think Peter spoke about the world being restored. That is, the world will be returned to be perfect in the same way it was perfect before Adam and Eve sinned (see: Genesis 3). These scholars think Peter spoke about something still to have that the prophets spoke about (see: Isaiah 65:17; 66:22).

However, God began the restoring people making it possible for them to be at peace with him because Jesus died. In Scripture, there is a metaphor about people who reject God are far away from him. People who were far away from God because of sin, were brought near to God because of the sacrifice for sin made by Jesus on the cross. That is, But, most scholars think there will still be a future time in which all of creation will be brought back to God.

See: [Metaphor](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/metaphor.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md)

#### 3:22-26

#### Who was the prophet that was like Moses?

[3:22]

The Old Testament spoke of a prophet coming in the future (see: Deuteronomy 18:15-18). The Jews thought of Moses as the first and greatest of all prophets. They thought Moses said that the prophet coming in the future was the messiah. Peter said clearly that the people needed to “listen” to the prophet, that is, to obey the prophet God sent, the messiah. This meant they needed to listen and obey the words of the messiah. That is, they needed to do what Jesus told them to do. Peter said that the people who did not listen to the prophet from God were going to be punished. God raised this prophet up to a high position in the same way he raised up Moses to a high position (see: Deuteronomy 18:19). Scholars think the punishment which Peter spoke was the removing of the people from being in the family of God.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### Why did Peter mention the prophet Samuel?

[3:24]

God told him to anoint King David (see: 1 Samuel 16:11-13). God gave David promises from the prophet Nathan that spoke of someone to come. This person was to reign forever. This person to come was the messiah (see: 2 Samuel 7:8-17).

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### What was meant by the words, “these days”?

[3:24]

Scholars think the words “these days” spoke about the times when Peter and the other apostles lived. They think it was the beginning of the days of the promised New Covenant (see: Jeremiah 31:31-34). Scholars think the phrase “these days” also meant the beginning of the last days spoken of by the prophet Joel (see: 2:17-21).

See: [Last Days](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lastdays.md); [New Covenant](../articles/newcovenant.md); [Last Days](../articles/lastdays.md)

#### What was the covenant that God made with Abraham?

[3:25]

God made a covenant with Abraham. He promised to bless all the nations of the world through Abraham (see: Genesis 22:15-18). One promise was that one of Abraham’s descendants would bring about a certain blessing. That is, the messiah was going to be a descendant of Abraham (see: Galatians 16-18).

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md); [Bless (Blessing)](../articles/bless.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### Why did Peter say that God sent his servant, Jesus, to the Jewish people first?

[3:26]

The Old Testament spoke about God’s covenant with the nation of Israel as the people. He made Israel his people. The Jewish people thought about Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob as their fathers. They thought about Moses as their greatest prophet. Keeping his covenant with Abraham and Israel, God sent the promised messiah to the Jews (see: Genesis 22:18; Jeremiah 31:31-34). God’s plan from the beginning of the world was to give his favor to all the nations of the world. Jesus was how God gave his favor to the world. Paul also spoke about God’s plan to save people from all of the nations. God gave the gospel first to the Jews and then to the rest of the world (see: Romans 1:16).

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md);[Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](../articles/oldtestament.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Covenant with Abraham](../articles/covenantabraham.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

#### Acts 3:1

##### Connecting Statement:

One day Peter and John go to the temple.

##### into the temple

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "to the temple courtyard" or "into the temple area"

#### Acts 3:2

##### a man who was lame from his mother's womb was being carried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people were carrying a man who was lame from from his mother's womb"

##### from his mother's womb

"ever since he was born"

##### the temple gate called Beautiful

This was one of the gates in the high, strong wall that surrounded the temple. People sometimes gathered near the gate.

##### lame

unable to walk

#### Acts 3:3

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 3:4

##### Peter, fastening his eyes upon him, with John, said

Both Peter and John looked at the man, but only Peter spoke.

##### fastening his eyes upon him

Possible meanings are 1) "looking directly at him" or 2) "looking intently at him"

#### Acts 3:5

##### The lame man looked at them

Here the word "looked" means to pay attention to something. Alternate translation: "The lame man paid close attention to them"

#### Acts 3:6

##### Silver and gold I do not have

"I do not own any silver or gold"

##### Silver and gold

These words refer to money.

##### what I do have

It is understood that Peter has the ability to heal the man.

##### In the name of Jesus Christ

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "With the authority of Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 3:7

##### Peter raised him up

"Peter caused him to stand"

#### Acts 3:8

##### he entered ... into the temple

He did not go inside the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "he entered ... the temple area" or "he entered ... into the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 3:9

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 3:10

##### noticed that it was the man

"realized that it was the man" or "recognized him as the man"

##### the Beautiful Gate

This was the name of one of the entrances to the temple area. See how you translated a similar phrase in Acts 3:2.

##### they were filled with wonder and amazement

Here the words "wonder" and "amazement" share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of the people's amazement. Alternate translation: "they were extremely amazed"

#### Acts 3:11

##### General Information:

The phrase "in the porch that is called Solomon's" makes it clear that they were not inside the temple where only the priests were allowed to enter. Here the words "us" and "we" refer to Peter and John but not to the crowd to whom Peter is talking.

##### Connecting Statement:

After healing the man who could not walk, Peter talks to the people.

##### the porch that is called Solomon's

"Solomon's Porch." This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon. It was in the temple courtyard.

##### greatly marveling

"extremely surprised"

#### Acts 3:12

##### When Peter saw this

Here the word "this" refers to the amazement of the people.

##### You Israelite men

"Fellow Israelites." Peter was addressing the crowd.

##### why do you marvel?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that they should not be surprised by what had happened. Alternate translation: "you should not be surprised."

##### Why do you fix your eyes on us, as if we made him walk by our own power or godliness?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that the people should not think that he and John had healed the man by their own abilities. This could be written as two statements. Alternate translation: "Do not fix your eyes on us. We did not make him walk by our own power or godliness."

##### fix your eyes on us

This means that they looked intently at them without stopping. Alternate translation: "stare at us" or "look at us"

#### Acts 3:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 3:12.

##### rejected before the face of Pilate

Here the phrase "before the face of" means "in the presence of." Alternate translation: "rejected in Pilate's presence"

##### when he had decided to release him

"when Pilate had decided to release Jesus"

#### Acts 3:14

##### for a murderer to be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Pilate to release a murderer to you"

#### Acts 3:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" includes just Peter and John.

##### the Founder of life

This refers to Jesus. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who gives people eternal life" or 2) "the ruler of life" or 3) "the one who leads people to life"

#### Acts 3:16

##### On the basis of faith in his name

Possible meanings are 1) this is the reason the man was made strong. Alternate translation: "Because of faith in his name" or 2) this is how the man was made strong. Alternate translation: "By faith in his name"

##### On the basis of faith in his name

The word "his" refers to the Founder of life, Jesus. The abstract noun "faith" can be translated with the verb "believe." Possible meanings are 1) the lame man had faith in Jesus. Alternate translation: "Because he believed in Jesus name" or 2) Peter and John, and perhaps the lame man, had faith in Jesus. Alternate translation: "Because we believed in Jesus's name"

##### his name

The phrase "his name" is a metonym either for Jesus or for Jesus's power.

##### made this man ... strong

"made this man ... well"

##### The faith that is through Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) this is the faith that Jesus enables people to have. Alternate translation: "The faith that comes from Jesus" or 2) this is faith in Jesus.

#### Acts 3:17

##### Now

Here Peter shifts the audience's attention from the lame man and continues to talk to them directly.

##### you acted in ignorance

Possible meanings are 1) that the people did not know that Jesus was the Messiah or 2) that the people did not understand the significance of what they were doing.

#### Acts 3:18

##### God foretold by the mouth of all the prophets

When the prophets spoke, it was as though God himself was speaking because he told them what to say. Alternate translation: "God foretold by telling all of the prophets what to speak"

##### God foretold

"God spoke about ahead of time" or "God told about before they happened"

##### the mouth of all the prophets

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that the prophets spoke and wrote down. Alternate translation: "the words of all the prophets"

#### Acts 3:19

##### and turn

"and turn to the Lord." Here "turn" is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: "and start obeying the Lord"

##### so that your sins may be blotted out

Here "blotted out" is a metaphor for forgiving. Sins are spoken of as if they are written in a book and God erases them from the book when he forgives them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that God will forgive you for sinning against him"

#### Acts 3:20

##### times of refreshing

Possible meanings are 1) "times when God will strengthen your spirits" or 2) "times when God will revive you"

##### from the presence of the Lord

Here the words "presence of the Lord" is a metonym for the Lord himself. Alternate translation: "from the Lord"

##### that he may send the Christ

"that he may again send the Christ." This refers to Christ's coming again.

##### who has been appointed for you

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom he has appointed for you"

#### Acts 3:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues the speech that he began in Acts 3:12 to the Jews who stood in the temple area.

##### He is the One heaven must receive

"He is the One heaven must welcome." Peter speaks of heaven as if it were a person who welcomes Jesus into his home.

##### heaven must receive until

This means that it is necessary for Jesus to remain in heaven because that is what God has planned.

##### until the time of the restoration of all things

Possible meanings are 1) "until the time when God will restore all things" or 2) "until the time when God will fulfill everything that he foretold."

##### about which God spoke from ancient times by the mouth of his holy prophets

When the prophets spoke long ago, it was as if God himself was speaking because he told them what to say. Alternate translation: "about which things God spoke long ago by telling his holy prophets to speak about them"

##### the mouth of his holy prophets

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that the prophets spoke and wrote down. Alternate translation: "the words of his holy prophets"

#### Acts 3:22

##### General Information:

Peter begins to quote something Moses told the Israelites before the Messiah came.

##### will raise up a prophet like me from among your brothers

"will cause one of your brothers to become a true prophet, and everyone will know about him"

##### your brothers

"your nation"

#### Acts 3:23

##### that prophet will be completely destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that prophet, God will completely destroy"

#### Acts 3:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the Jews that he began in Acts 3:12.

##### Yes, and all the prophets

"In fact, all the prophets." Here the word "Yes" adds emphasis to what follows.

##### from Samuel and those who came after him

"beginning with Samuel and continuing with the prophets who lived after he did"

##### these days

"these times" or "the things that are happening now"

#### Acts 3:25

##### You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant

Here the word "sons" refers to heirs who will receive what the prophets and the covenant promised. Alternate translation: "You are the heirs of the prophets and heirs of the covenant"

##### In your seed

"Because of your offspring"

##### all the families of the earth will be blessed

Here the word "families" refers to people groups or nations. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will bless all the people groups in the world"

#### Acts 3:26

##### After God raised up his servant

"After God caused Jesus to become his servant and made him famous"

##### his servant

This refers to the Messiah, Jesus.

##### turning every one of you from your wickedness

Here "turning ... from" is a metaphor for causing someone stop doing something. Alternate translation: "causing every one of you to stop doing wicked things" or "causing every one of you to repent from your wickedness"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 3:2

##### Who did Peter and John see on their way into the Temple?

Peter and John saw a man lame from birth who begged at the Temple door.

#### Acts 3:6

##### What did Peter not give to the man?

Peter did not give to the man silver and gold.

#### Acts 3:7

##### What did Peter do for the man?

Peter gave the man the ability to walk.

#### Acts 3:8

##### How did the man react to what Peter gave him?

The man entered the Temple walking, leaping, and praising God.

#### Acts 3:10

##### How did the people react who saw the man in the Temple?

The people were filled with wonder and amazement.

#### Acts 3:15

##### What did Peter remind the people they had done with Jesus?

Peter reminded the people that they had killed Jesus.

#### Acts 3:16

##### What did Peter say had made the man well?

Peter said that faith in Jesus' name had made the man well.

#### Acts 3:19

##### What did Peter tell the people to do?

Peter told the people to repent.

#### Acts 3:21

##### Peter said that the heavens would receive Jesus until what time?

Peter said that until the time of restoration of all things, Jesus would be received in the heavens.

#### Acts 3:22

##### What did Moses say about Jesus?

Moses said that the Lord God would raise up a prophet like himself to whom the people would listen.

#### Acts 3:23

##### What will happen to every person who does not listen to Jesus?

The person who does not listen to Jesus will be completely destroyed.

#### Acts 3:25

##### Of what Old Testament covenant promise did Peter remind the people?

Peter reminded the people that they were sons of the covenant God made with Abraham when God said, "In your seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed".

#### Acts 3:26

##### How was God desiring to bless the Jews?

God desired to bless the Jews by sending Jesus to them first to turn them from their wickedness.

### Chapter 4

**1** As Peter and John were speaking to the people, the priests and the captain of the temple and the Sadducees came upon them. **2** They were deeply troubled because Peter and John were teaching the people and proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead. **3** They laid hands on them and put them in custody until the next morning, since it was now evening. **4** But many of the people who had heard the message believed; and the number of the men who believed was about five thousand.

**5** It came about on the next day that their rulers, elders, and scribes gathered together in Jerusalem. **6** Annas the high priest was there, and Caiaphas, and John, and Alexander, and all who were relatives of the high priest. **7** When they had set Peter and John in their midst, they asked them, "By what power, or in what name, have you done this?" **8** Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said to them, "You rulers of the people, and elders, **9** if we are on trial today concerning a good deed done to a sick man, and by what means this man was healed, **10** let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel that this man stands before you healthy in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom you crucified, but whom God raised from the dead. **11** Jesus Christ is the stone which you builders rejected but which has been made the cornerstone. **12** There is no salvation in any other person, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved."

**13** Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John and realized that they were ordinary, uneducated men, they were surprised, becoming aware that Peter and John had been with Jesus. **14** Because they saw the man who was healed standing with them, they had nothing to say against this. **15** But after they had commanded the apostles to leave the council meeting, they talked among themselves. **16** They said, "What should we do with these men? For a remarkable sign has been done through them, and this is evident to everyone who lives in Jerusalem, and we cannot deny it. **17** But in order that it spreads no further among the people, let us warn them not to speak anymore to anyone in this name." **18** Then they called them in and commanded them not to speak or teach at all in the name of Jesus. **19** But Peter and John answered and said to them, "Whether it is proper in the sight of God to obey you rather than him, you judge. **20** We are not able to stop speaking about the things we have seen and heard." **21** After further warning Peter and John, they let them go. They were unable to find any excuse to punish them, because all of the people were glorifying God for what had been done. **22** The man who had experienced this sign of healing was more than forty years old.

**23** After they were set free, Peter and John came to their own people and reported all that the chief priests and the elders had said to them. **24** When they heard it, they raised their voices with one purpose to God and said, "Lord, you made the heavens and the earth and the sea, and all that is in them. **25** You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David,

'Why did the Gentile nations rage,

and the peoples imagine useless things?'

**26** You said,

'The kings of the earth set themselves together,

and the rulers gathered together

against the Lord, and against his Christ.'

**27** Indeed, both Herod and Pontius Pilate, together with the Gentiles and the people of Israel, gathered together in this city against your holy servant Jesus, whom you anointed. **28** They gathered together to do all that your hand and your plan had decided in advance would happen. **29** Now, Lord, look upon their warnings and grant to your servants to speak your word with all boldness. **30** Stretch out your hand to heal and to give signs and wonders through the name of your holy servant Jesus." **31** After they had prayed, the place where they were gathered together was shaken, and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they spoke the word of God with boldness.

**32** The great number of those who believed were of one heart and soul. No one said that anything he possessed was his own, but they had everything in common. **33** With great power the apostles were proclaiming their testimony about the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and great grace was upon them all. **34** There was no person among them who lacked anything, for all who owned title to lands or houses sold them and brought the money from the things that were sold **35** and laid it at the apostles' feet, and it was distributed to each one according to their need.

**36** Joseph, whom the apostles called Barnabas (which is translated Son of Encouragement), a Levite, a man from Cyprus, **37** sold a field that belonged to him and brought the money and laid it at the apostles' feet.

### Acts 4 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 4:25-26.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Unity

The first Christians wanted very much to be united. They wanted to believe the same things and share everything they owned and help those who needed help.

##### "Signs and wonders"

This phrase refers to things that only God can do. The Christians wanted God to do what only he can do so that people would believe that what they said about Jesus was true.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Cornerstone

The cornerstone was the first piece of stone that people put down when they were building a building. This is a metaphor for the most important part of something, the part on which everything depends. To say that Jesus is the cornerstone of the church is to say that nothing in the church is more important than Jesus and that everything about the church depends on Jesus. (See: and faith)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Name

"There is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved" ([Acts 4:12](../../act/04/12.md)). With these words Peter was saying that no other person who has ever been on the earth or will ever be on earth can save people.

### Acts 4

#### 4:1-7

#### Who were the captains of the temple and the priests?

[4:1]

The captain of the temple controlled soldiers. These soldiers protected the temple area. This made the temple a peaceful area to worship. The priests offered sacrifices and worshiped in the temple (see Exodus 28).

See: [Priest (Priesthood)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/priest.md) ; [Priest (Priesthood)](../articles/priest.md)

#### Who were the Sadducees?

[4:1]

See: [Sadducees](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sadducees.md)

#### Why did the Sadducees questioned Peter and John?

[4:2]

Some scholars think the priests and Sadducees questioned Peter and John because they taught that after people died, they would be resurrected. That is, their bodies will be made alive again. The Sadducees did not believe anyone would be made alive again (see: 4:2; 5:17). Peter and John taught that some people will be made alive again to live in heaven, and other people will be made alive again to live in hell. They taught that by believing in Jesus, people will be made alive again to live in heaven. That is, they will live together with God in heaven forever. Those who do not believe in Jesus will live separated from God forever and be punished for their sins. Other scholars think the priest and Sadducees questioned Peter and John because Peter and John taught in the temple area without permission from the Sadducees.

See: [Sadducees](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sadducees.md)

#### Why did the Sanhedrin arrest the apostles, Peter and John?

[4:3]

The Sanhedrin arrested the apostles because it was evening. The Sanhedrin, a group of Jewish leaders, could not gather together until the morning. They did not want the apostles to leave without questioning them. They wanted to know how the lame man was healed.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### How did people respond to the apostles’ preaching after the healing miracle?

[4:4]

People responded to the apostles’ preaching that day in two different ways. First, the religious leaders opposed the apostles. Second, Luke wrote that about 5,000 men who came to believe the apostles’ teaching about Jesus. Some scholars think this number is the total number of men and women who believed in Jesus at that time. Other scholars think the number is simply the men who believe in Jesus that day. Fewer scholars think Luke wrote the total number of Christians from the entire area, including Galilee.

See: [Preach (Preacher)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/preach.md); [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md)

See Map: Galilee

#### Who came together to discuss the actions of Peter and John?

[4:5, 4:6]

Verse 5 talks about three types of people: the rulers, the elders, and the teachers of religious laws. Scholars think these three groups combined to make the Sanhedrin. At that time, Rome allowed the Sanhedrin to make many decisions for the nation. The elders were the ordinary people. They were leaders of the community and the leaders of powerful families. They were mostly Sadducees. The teachers of the law were scribes. They were also the lawyers. They were mostly Pharisees. The rulers were mostly priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.

The ruling High Priest, Caiaphas, was the Chief (or High) Priest. He was the High Priest when Jesus was killed (see Matthew 26:3; John 18:28). The former High Priest, Annas, was the father-in-law of Caiaphas. Therefore, though the verse says Annas was the High Priest, he was the former High Priest. Many still called Annas High Priest to honor him. So, it was Caiaphas who was the High Priest at the time.

See: [High Priest](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/highpriest.md); Jewish Council (Sanhedrin); [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](../articles/rome.md); [Sadducees](../articles/sadducees.md); [Pharisees](../articles/pharisees.md); [Scribe](../articles/scribe.md); [Chief Priest](../articles/chiefpriest.md); [High Priest](../articles/highpriest.md)

#### Why did the leaders ask the apostles who gave them permission to heal the crippled man?

[4:7]

The Jews at that time believed that the power to heal a lame man came either from God or from Satan. So the Sanhedrin wanted to know if God or Satan gave him permission to heal this man (see: Luke 11:15; Matthew 9:34).

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md); [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](../articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### 4:8-12

#### Why did Luke write, “Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit”?

[4:8]

Scholars think God gave Peter special power to speak what God needed him to say to the Jewish leaders. This fulfilled the promise Jesus made to his followers (see: Luke 12:11; 21:14-15).

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md)

#### What did Peter say to the people listening?

[4:8, 4:9, 4:10]

Some scholars think the things Peter said confronted the Jewish leaders for arresting them. People normally gave thanks when a sick person was healed. Instead, they arrested Peter and John. Other scholars think Peter wanted to know why the Sanhedrin arrested him and John. Peter said clearly that Jesus has the power and permission to heal the man.

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### What was a cornerstone?

[4:11]

Builders used a cornerstone to make buildings. This was the first stone used when building. They used this stone to know the direction the building needed to go and where the building needed to be placed. They did not bury this stone, but they always made it so that people could see it. The prophet Isaiah spoke of this cornerstone. He said that God placed this cornerstone in Jerusalem. It was firm, tested, precious, and it prevented people from needing to be afraid (see: Isaiah 28:16). Finally, Jesus used this metaphor when speaking about himself (see: Mark 12:1-12).

Peter quoted the well-known passage about the messiah from Psalm 118:22: “The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone.” However, Peter added the words, “by you.” He used the words “by you” to say that the religious leaders rejected God’s cornerstone, Jesus the messiah.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### How is Jesus the only way to be saved?

[4:12]

Peter said there “is no other name… by which we must be saved.” He was talking about Jesus. He wanted to say that people could only be at peace with God by believing in Jesus.

See: John 14:6; 1 Timothy 2:5

See: [Name](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/name.md); [Name](../articles/name.md)

#### 4:13-22

#### How were Peter and John “ordinary, uneducated men”?

[4:13]

Luke wrote that Peter and John were ordinary, uneducated men. That is, they did not have any formal training in the Old Testament from certain teachers. The Jewish teachers did not teach them about the Old Testament in the synagogues.

See: [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/oldtestament.md); [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](../articles/oldtestament.md)

#### Why did the Sanhedrin not know what to do with the apostles?

[4:16]

The Sanhedrin did not know what to do to stop the apostles from talking about Jesus. Everyone knew about the miracle they did in Jesus’ name.

**Advice to Translators:** To do something in Jesus’ name means that they did something to honor Jesus and that Jesus gave permission to them to do these things.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### Why did the Sanhedrin tell the apostles not to speak or teach in the name of Jesus?

[4:18]

The Sanhedrin didn’t want the apostles to speak or teach in the name of Jesus because they did not think Jesus was the messiah. They did not think Jesus was the reason the crippled man was healed (see: 4:10). They thought Jesus was dead. Therefore, they did not think that Jesus was the messiah.

**Advice to Translators:** To do something in Jesus’ name means that they did something to honor Jesus and that Jesus gave permission to them to do these things.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Name](../articles/name.md): [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### What did it mean for Peter to obey God rather than man?

[4:19]

Obeying God meant not doing what people said to do if what they said to do was something God said not to do. Jesus said to tell the whole world about him and to feed his sheep (see: Matthew 28: 18-20; John 21:15-20; Acts 1:8) The apostles had to obey Jesus (See: Acts 5:29).

See: Joshua 24:15; 1 Samuel 15:22

See: [Shepherd](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/shepherd.md); [Shepherd](../articles/shepherd.md)

#### Why did Luke say the crippled man was over 40 years old?

[4:22]

Luke said the crippled man was over 40 years old to say that a great healing occurred. Everyone knew this man. He lived in that area all of his life.

#### 4:23-31

#### How did the other Christians pray and praise God together?

[4:24]

Some scholars think one person led the group by praying aloud. The others repeated what he said or agreed with him by saying “Amen.” Other scholars think the Christians prayed one at a time. That is, one prayed and then another prayed until all the people prayed.

See: [Pray (Prayer](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Why did the disciples of Jesus call God Lord?

[4:24]

The disciples of Jesus called God “Lord”(δεσπότης/g1203). This is how the Jewish people began their prayers.

See: Isaiah 37:16-20

See: [Pray (Prayer](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md); [Lord](../articles/lord.md); [Pray (Prayer](../articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Why did Peter say, “You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David?”

[4:25]

Peter said, “You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David.” God spoke through King David. God fulfilled the prophecy he gave to David (see: Psalm 2:1-3). Some scholars think this makes known that God spoke to the prophets and apostles. He inspired them to write the words of the Bible.

See: 2 Timothy 3:16; Ephesians 3:5; 2 Peter 1:20; 1 Thessalonians 1:5

See: [Inspired](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/inspired.md); [Serve (Servant, Slave)](../articles/serve.md); [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](../articles/fulfill.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Inspired](../articles/inspired.md)

#### What does Psalm 2 say about Jesus?

[4:25, 4:26]

The Jewish religious teachers taught that Psalm 2 was about the messiah. The words “his anointed,” “my king,” and “my son” were ways of talking about the messiah. The apostles knew the “holy servant Jesus” was the “Son of God” in Psalm 2. The “raging gentiles” were the Roman soldiers who killed Jesus. The “peoples” were the Jewish leaders. The “kings of the earth” was Herod Antipas (ruler of Galilee; see Luke 23:7-12). And the “rulers” was Pontius Pilate (v. 27).

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md); [Anoint (Anointing)](../articles/anoint.md); [Son of God](../articles/sonofgod.md); [King Herod](../articles/kingherod.md); [King Herod](../articles/kingherod.md)

#### Why did Luke say, “your hand and your plan”?

[4:28]

The Christians knew Jesus suffered because God wanted him to and because he made a plan for him. The words “your hand” means God used the gentiles, rulers, and king to kill Jesus (see Exodus 3:20, 13:3; 15:6).

See: Acts 2:23; 3:18; Ephesians 1:4,5; Exodus 3:20, 13:3, 15:6)

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md)

#### How did they “speak the word with all boldness”?

[4:29]

Jesus’ disciples prayed for God “boldness”(παρρησία/g3954). They wanted boldness to “speak the word.” That is, they wanted boldness to speak of the gospel to other people clearly and without fear. They wanted God’s word to be proven true. That is, they wanted more great things through the name of Jesus. This would make people know that Jesus was the messiah.

**Advice to Translators:** To do something in Jesus’ name means that they did something to honor Jesus and that Jesus gave permission to them to do these things.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### What was meant by the words, “they were all filled with the Holy Spirit”?

[4:31]

God filled the Christians with the Holy Spirit. This made them speak boldly about Jesus. This same power gave Peter the boldness to speak about Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fillingholyspirit.md)

#### 4:32-37

#### How were the Christians "of one heart and soul”?

[4:32]

The Christians we “of one heart and soul.” First, the Christians did not say they owned anything. They knew God owned everything. That is, their property was not truly theirs. Knowing this made them want to share. Second, the apostles spoke powerfully about Jesus being made alive again (v.33). Third, Luke said, “there was no person among them who lacked anything.” That is, all the Christians had everything they needed to live. The Christians gave generously after selling their fields, properties, and houses.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Soul](../articles/soul.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### How did they place the money “at the apostles’ feet?”

[4:35]

The Christians brought the money to the apostles. The apostles decided who received the money. It was given to other Christians when they needed it to live.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md)

#### Barnabas was a Levite. Why did he own a field?

[4:37]

God did not give the Levites any land in the Old Testament (see: Numbers 18:20; Deuteronomy 10:9). Some scholars think the Old Testament laws of inheritance were not being followed during the time of the New Testament. Other scholars think Barnabas’s wife owned the land that he sold.

See: [Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/inherit.md); [Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)](../articles/inherit.md)

#### Acts 4:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders arrest Peter and John after Peter's having healed the man who was born lame.

##### came upon them

"approached them" or "came to them"

#### Acts 4:2

##### They were deeply troubled

"They were very angry." The Sadducees, in particular, would have been angry about what Peter and John were saying because they did not believe in resurrection.

##### proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead

Peter and John were saying that God would raise people from the dead in the same way as he had raised Jesus from among the dead. Translate this in a way that allows "the resurrection" to refer to both Jesus's resurrection and the general resurrection of other people.

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 4:3

##### They laid hands on them

"The priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees arrested Peter and John"

##### since it was now evening

It was common practice not to question people at night.

#### Acts 4:4

##### the number of the men who believed

This refers only to men and does not include how many women or children believed.

##### was about five thousand

"grew to about five thousand"

#### Acts 4:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "their" refers to the Jewish people as a whole.

##### Connecting Statement:

The rulers question Peter and John, who answer without fear.

##### It came about ... that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### their rulers, elders, and scribes

This is a reference to the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling court, which consisted of these three groups of people.

#### Acts 4:6

##### John, and Alexander

These two men were members of the high priest's family. This is not the same John as the apostle.

#### Acts 4:7

##### By what power

"Who gave you power"

##### in what name

Here the word "name" refers to authority. Alternate translation: "by whose authority"

#### Acts 4:8

##### Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:4]

#### Acts 4:9

##### we are on trial today

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are questioning us today"

##### by what means this man was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by what means we have made this man well"

#### Acts 4:10

##### let it be known to you all and to all the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May all of you and all of the people of Israel know this"

##### to you all and to all the people of Israel

"to you who are questioning us and to all the other people of Israel"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "by the power of Jesus Christ of Nazareth"

##### whom God raised from the dead

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "whom God caused to live again"

#### Acts 4:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter completes his speech to the Jewish religious rulers that he began in Acts 4:8.

##### Jesus Christ is the stone ... which has been made the cornerstone

Peter is quoting from the Psalms. This is a metaphor that means the religious leaders, like builders, rejected Jesus, but God will made him the most important in his kingdom, as a cornerstone in a building is important.

##### you builders rejected

"you builders thought was worth nothing"

#### Acts 4:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Peter as well as those to whom he is speaking.

##### There is no salvation in any other person

The noun "salvation" can be translated as a verb. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "He is the only person who is able to save"

##### no other name under heaven given among men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no other name under heaven that God has given among men"

##### no other name ... given among men by which

The phrase "name ... given among men" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "no other person under heaven, who is given among men, by whom"

##### under heaven

This is a way of referring to everywhere in the world. Alternate translation: "in the world"

##### by which we must be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which can save us" or "who can save us"

#### Acts 4:13

##### General Information:

Here the second instance of "they" refers to Peter and John. All other occurrences of the word "they" in this section refer to the Jewish leaders.

##### the boldness of Peter and John

Here the abstract noun "boldness" refers to the way in which Peter and John responded to the Jewish leaders, and can be translated with an adverb or an adjective. Alternate translation: "how boldly Peter and John had spoken" or "how bold Peter and John were"

##### boldness

bravery, courage, lack of fear. A person with boldness is not afraid.

##### realized that they were ordinary, uneducated men

The Jewish leaders "realized" this because of the way Peter and John spoke.

##### and realized

"and understood"

##### ordinary, uneducated men

The words "ordinary" and "uneducated" share similar meanings. They emphasize that Peter and John had received no formal training in Jewish law.

#### Acts 4:14

##### the man who was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the man whom Peter and John had healed"

##### nothing to say against this

"nothing to say against Peter and John's healing of the man." Here the word "this" refers to what Peter and John had done.

#### Acts 4:15

##### the apostles

This refers to Peter and John.

#### Acts 4:16

##### What should we do with these men?

The Jewish leaders ask this question out of frustration because they could not think of what to do with Peter and John. Alternate translation: "There is nothing that we can do with these men!"

##### For a remarkable sign has been done through them, and this is evident to everyone who lives in Jerusalem

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For God has done a remarkable sign through them, and everyone who lives in Jerusalem has seen it" or "For everyone who lives in Jerusalem knows that they have done a remarkable sign"

##### sign

The miracle of healing was a sign that Peter and John were obeying God, who did the healing.

##### everyone who lives in Jerusalem

This is a generalization. It may also be an exaggeration to show that the leaders think that this is a very big problem. Alternate translation: "many of the people who live in Jerusalem" or "people who live throughout Jerusalem"

#### Acts 4:17

##### in order that it spreads no further

Here the word "it" refers to any miracles or teaching Peter and John might continue to do. Alternate translation: "in order that news of this miracle spreads no further" or "in order that no more people hear about this miracle"

##### not to speak anymore to anyone in this name

Here the word "name" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "not to speak anymore to anyone about this person, Jesus"

#### Acts 4:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 4:19

##### Whether it is proper in the sight of God

Here the phrase "in the sight of God" refers to God's opinion. Alternate translation: "Whether God thinks it is right"

#### Acts 4:20

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Peter and John but not to those whom they are addressing.

#### Acts 4:21

##### After further warning

The Jewish leaders again threatened to punish Peter and John.

##### They were unable to find any excuse to punish them

Although the Jewish leaders threatened Peter and John, they could not find a reason to punish them without causing the people to riot.

##### for what had been done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for what Peter and John had done"

#### Acts 4:22

##### General Information:

This verse gives background information about the age of the lame man who was healed.

##### The man who had experienced this sign of healing

"The man whom Peter and John had miraculously healed"

##### this sign

The miracle of healing was a sign that Peter and John were obeying God, who did the healing.

#### Acts 4:23

##### came to their own people

The phrase "their own people" refers to the rest of the believers. Alternate translation: "went to the other believers"

#### Acts 4:24

##### General Information:

Speaking together, the people quote a Psalm of David from the Old Testament. Here the word "they" refers to the rest of the believers, but not to Peter and John.

##### they raised their voices with one purpose to God

To raise the voice is an idiom for speaking. "they began speaking with one purpose to God"

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 4:25

##### You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the mouth of your servant, our father David

This means that the Holy Spirit caused David to speak or write down what God said.

##### through the mouth of your servant, our father David

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that David spoke or wrote down. Alternate translation: "by the words of your servant, our father David"

##### our father David

Here the word "father" refers to an ancestor.

##### Why did the Gentile nations rage, and the peoples imagine useless things?

This is a rhetorical question that emphasizes the futility of opposing God. Alternate translation: "The Gentile nations should not have raged, and the peoples should not have imagined useless things."

##### the peoples imagine useless things

These "useless things" consist of plans to oppose God. Alternate translation: "the peoples imagine useless things against God"

##### peoples

people groups

#### Acts 4:26

##### Connecting Statement:

The believers complete their quotation from King David in the Psalms that they began in Acts 4:25.

##### The kings of the earth set themselves together, and the rulers gathered together against the Lord

These two lines mean basically the same thing. The two lines emphasize the combined effort of the earth's rulers to oppose God.

##### set themselves together ... gathered together

These two phrases mean that they joined their armies together to fight a battle. Alternate translation: "set their armies together ... gathered their troops together"

##### against the Lord, and against his Christ

Here the word "Lord" refers to God. In the Psalms, the word "Christ" refers to the Messiah or God's anointed one.

#### Acts 4:27

##### Connecting Statement:

The believers continue praying.

##### in this city

"this city" refers to Jerusalem.

##### your holy servant Jesus

"Jesus, who serves you faithfully"

#### Acts 4:28

##### to do all that your hand and your plan had decided

Here the word "hand" is used to mean God's power. Additionally, the phrase "your hand and your desire decided" shows God's power and plan. Alternate translation: "to do all that you in your power had decided and planned they would do"

#### Acts 4:29

##### look upon their warnings

Here the words "look upon" are a request for God to take notice of the way in which the Jewish leaders threatened the believers. Alternate translation: "notice how they threaten to punish us"

##### speak your word with all boldness

The word "word" here is a metonym for God's message. The abstract noun "boldness" can be translated as an adverb. Alternate translation: "speak your message boldly" or "be bold when we speak your message"

#### Acts 4:30

##### Connecting Statement:

The believers complete the prayer that they began in Acts 4:24.

##### Stretch out your hand to heal and to give

Here the word "hand" refers to God's power. This is a request for God to show how powerful he is. Alternate translation: "Show your power by healing people and by giving"

##### through the name of your holy servant Jesus

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "through the power of your holy servant Jesus"

##### your holy servant Jesus

"Jesus, who serves you faithfully." See how you translated this in Acts 4:27.

#### Acts 4:31

##### the place ... was shaken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place ... shook"

##### they were all filled with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in Acts 2:4. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit had filled them all" or "God had filled them all with the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 4:32

##### were of one heart and soul

Here the word "heart" refers to the thoughts and the word "soul" refers to the emotions. Together they refer to the total person. Alternate translation: "thought the same way and wanted the same things"

##### they had everything in common

"they shared their belongings with one another." See how you translated this in Acts 2:44.

#### Acts 4:33

##### great grace was upon them all

Possible meanings are: 1) that God was greatly blessing the believers or 2) that the people in Jerusalem held the believers in very high esteem.

#### Acts 4:34

##### all who owned title to lands or houses

The word "all" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Many people who owned title to lands or houses" or "People who owned title to lands or houses"

##### owned title to lands or houses

"owned land or houses"

##### the money from the things that were sold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the money that they received from the things that they sold"

#### Acts 4:35

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

This means that they presented the money to the apostles. Alternate translation: "presented it to the apostles" or "gave it to the apostles"

##### it was distributed to each one according to their need

The noun "need" can be translated with a verb. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they distributed the money to each believer who needed it"

#### Acts 4:36

##### General Information:

Luke introduces Barnabas into the story.

##### Son of Encouragement

The apostles used this name to show that Joseph was a person who encouraged others. "Son of" is an idiom used to describe a person's behavior or character. Alternate translation: "Encourager" or "one who encourages"

#### Acts 4:37

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

This means that they presented to money to the apostles. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:35]

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 4:2

##### What were Peter and John teaching the people in the Temple?

Peter and John were teaching about Jesus and his resurrection from the dead.

#### Acts 4:3

##### How did the rulers of the Temple, the priests, and the Sadducees react to Peter and John's teaching?

They arrested Peter and John and put them in jail.

#### Acts 4:4

##### How did the people react to Peter and John's teaching?

Many people believed, about five thousand.

#### Acts 4:10

##### By what power or in what name did Peter say he had healed the man in the Temple?

Peter said that in the name of Jesus Christ he had healed the man in the Temple.

#### Acts 4:12

##### What did Peter say was the only way by which we may be saved?

Peter said that there is no other name except Jesus by which we may be saved.

#### Acts 4:14

##### Why could the Jewish leaders say nothing against Peter and John?

The leaders could say nothing because the man who had been healed was standing with Peter and John.

#### Acts 4:18

##### What did the Jewish leaders command Peter and John not to do?

The Jewish leaders commanded Peter and John not to speak or teach about Jesus.

#### Acts 4:20

##### How did Peter and John answer the Jewish leaders?

Peter and John said that they could not help but speak about the things they had seen and heard.

#### Acts 4:29

##### What did the believers ask for from God in response to the warnings from the Jewish leaders?

The believers asked for boldness to speak the word, and for signs and wonders to be done in Jesus' name.

#### Acts 4:30

##### What did the believers ask for from God in response to the warnings from the Jewish leaders?

The believers asked for boldness to speak the word, and for signs and wonders to be done in Jesus' name.

#### Acts 4:31

##### What happened after the believers finished their prayer?

After the believers finished their prayer, the place they were gathered was shaken, they were filled with the Holy Spirit, and they spoke the word with boldness.

#### Acts 4:32

##### How were the needs of the believers provided for?

The believers had all things in common, and those who owned property sold it and gave the money to be distributed according to need.

#### Acts 4:34

##### How were the needs of the believers provided for?

The believers had all things in common, and those who owned property sold it and gave the money to be distributed according to need.

#### Acts 4:35

##### How were the needs of the believers provided for?

The believers had all things in common, and those who owned property sold it and gave the money to be distributed according to need.

#### Acts 4:36

##### What was the new name, meaning the "Son of Encouragement," given to the man who sold his field and gave the money to the apostles?

The man named "Son of Encouragement" was Barnabas.

#### Acts 4:37

##### What was the new name, meaning the "Son of Encouragement," given to the man who sold his field and gave the money to the apostles?

The man named "Son of Encouragement" was Barnabas.

### Chapter 5

**1** Now a certain man named Ananias, with Sapphira his wife, sold a piece of property, **2** and he kept back part of the sale money (his wife also knew it), and brought the other part of it and laid it at the apostles' feet. **3** But Peter said, "Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price of the land? **4** While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own, and after it was sold, was it not under your authority? Why did you put it in your heart to do this? You have not lied to men, but to God." **5** Hearing these words, Ananias fell down and breathed his last, and great fear came upon all who heard it. **6** The young men arose and wrapped him up, and they carried him out and buried him.

**7** After about three hours, his wife came in, not knowing what had happened. **8** Peter said to her, "Tell me whether you sold the land for so much." She said, "Yes, for so much." **9** Then Peter said to her, "How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord? Look, the feet of the men who buried your husband are at the door, and they will carry you out." **10** She immediately fell down at his feet and breathed her last. When the young men came in, they found her dead, and carried her out and buried her beside her husband. **11** Great fear came upon the whole church and upon all who heard these things.

**12** Many signs and wonders were taking place among the people through the hands of the apostles. They were all together in Solomon's Porch. **13** But none of the rest had the courage to join them; however, they were held in high esteem by the people. **14** Still more believers were being added to the Lord, multitudes of men and women, **15** so that they even carried the sick into the streets and laid them on beds and couches, so that as Peter came by, his shadow might fall on some of them. **16** There also came together a great number of people from the towns around Jerusalem, bringing the sick and those afflicted with unclean spirits, and they were all healed.

**17** But the high priest rose up, and all those who were with him (which is the sect of the Sadducees); and they were filled with jealousy **18** and laid hands on the apostles, and held them in custody in the common prison. **19** Yet during the night an angel of the Lord opened the doors of the prison and led them out, and said, **20** "Go, stand in the temple and speak to the people all the words of this life." **21** When they heard this, they entered into the temple about daybreak and taught. But the high priest came, and those who were with him, and called the council together, all the elders of the people of Israel, and sent to the prison to have the apostles brought. **22** But the officers that went did not find them in the prison, and they returned and reported, **23** "We found the prison securely shut and the guards standing at the door, but when we had opened it, we found no one inside." **24** Now when the captain of the temple and the chief priests heard these words, they were much perplexed concerning them as to what would come of it. **25** Then someone came and told them, "The men whom you put in the prison are standing in the temple and teaching the people." **26** So the captain went with the officers and brought them back, but without violence, for they feared the people, that they might be stoned. **27** When they had brought them, they set them before the council. The high priest interrogated them, **28** saying, "We ordered you with a command not to teach in this name, and yet you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching and desire to bring this man's blood upon us." **29** But Peter and the apostles answered, "We must obey God rather than men. **30** The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom you killed by hanging him on a tree. **31** God exalted him to his right hand to be a Prince and a Savior, to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins. **32** We are witnesses of these things, and so is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those who obey him."

**33** When the council members heard this, they were furious and they wanted to kill the apostles. **34** But a Pharisee named Gamaliel, a teacher of the law who was honored by all the people, stood up in the council and gave a command to take the men outside for a little while. **35** Then he said to them, "Men of Israel, pay close attention to what you propose to do with these people. **36** For before these days, Theudas rose up claiming to be somebody, and a number of men, about four hundred, joined him. He was killed, and all who had been obeying him were scattered and came to nothing. **37** After this man, Judas of Galilee rose up in the days of the census and drew away some people after him. He also perished, and all who had been obeying him were scattered. **38** Now I say to you, keep away from these men and let them alone, for if this plan or work is of men, it will be overthrown. **39** But if it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; you may even find that you are fighting against God." So they were persuaded. **40** Then they called the apostles in and beat them and commanded them not to speak in the name of Jesus, and let them go. **41** They went away from before the council rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name. **42** Thereafter every day, in the temple and from house to house, they were continuously teaching and proclaiming the good news that the Christ is Jesus.

### Acts 5 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit"

No one knows for sure if Ananias and Sapphira were truly Christians when they decided to lie about the land that they sold (Acts 5:1-10), because Luke does not say. However, Peter knew that they lied to the believers, and he knew that they had listened to and obeyed Satan.

When they lied to the believers, they also lied to the Holy Spirit. This is because the Holy Spirit lives inside believers.

### Acts 5

#### 5:1-11

#### What did it mean to keep back part of the price of the land?

[5:2]

Luke wrote that Annanias and Sapphira kept back part of the price of the land. They sold a piece of land and gave the money to the apostles. However, they did not give all of the money to the apostles. It was not wrong for them to do this. However, they made the apostles think they gave all of the money to them. They wanted to be honored for doing this. This was wrong.

#### What did Peter mean about Satan filling Ananias’ heart?

[5:3]

Peter said that Satan filled Annaias’ heart. Peter said that Satan wanted Ananias to lie to the apostles. Satan put the idea for doing the wrong thing into the heart of Ananias. He made Annanias think about doing the wrong thing.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Heart (Metaphor)](../articles/heart.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### How did Ananias lie to the Holy Spirit?

[5:3]

Annanias lied to the Holy Spirit. Some scholars think that when Ananias lied to the apostles, this was the same as lying to the Holy Spirit. This was because the Holy Spirit had created Christians. Other scholars think Ananias lied to the Holy Spirit because he lied to the apostles who have the Holy Spirit in them.

See: Hebrews 4:12-13

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/indwelling.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md)

#### How did Peter know that Ananias lied?

[5:3]

Luke wrote that Peter knew Annanias lied to the apostles. Luke does not write how Peter knew this. Some scholars thought there was someone told Peter. Other scholars think the Holy Spirit told Peter in some way.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### Why did Peter write, “You have not lied to men but to God?

[5:4]

Scholars think when Peter said, “you have not lied to men but to God,” he wanted people to know that Annanias lied to the apostles and to God. This was because Ananias gave and offering to God when he gave money to the apostles.

See: [Sacrifice](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sacrifice.md); [Offer (Offering)](../articles/offer.md); [Sacrifice](../articles/sacrifice.md)

#### How did someone test the Spirit of the Lord?

[5:4]

How did someone test the Spirit of the Lord. Annanias and Sapphira tested the Holy Spirit when they lied to the apostles. When the did this it also tested the Holy Spirit. This is because they did not think the Holy Spirit knew what they were doing.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Test](../articles/test.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### When speaking to Sapphira, why did Peter say, “they will carry you out”?

[5:9]

When speaking to Sapphira, Paul said, “they will carry you out.” Some scholars think that because Peter watched Ananias die for lying to the Holy Spirit, he also thought Sapphira was also going to die. Other scholars think the Holy Spirit helped Peter to know that Sapphira was going to die for deceiving the Holy Spirit. Peter was not judging them. God judged Ananias and Sapphira.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

#### How did great fear come upon the whole church?

[5:11]

Great fear came upon the whole church. He was speaking about a certain group of Christians. Scholars think the Christians suddenly became afraid because God quickly judged Anania and Sapphira.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md)

#### 5:12-16

#### What were “signs and wonders”?

[5:12]

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md)

#### Why were the people afraid of joining the apostles in the Temple area?

[5:12]

People were afraid of joining the apostles in the Temple area. Scholars think the people were afraid of what happened to Ananias and Sapphira or that they feared the Jewish leaders. The Jewish leaders rejected Jesus and they arrested the apostles.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md)

#### Why did people hope that Peter’s shadow might fall on some of them?

[5:15]

People hoped that Peter’s shadow would fall on them. This is a metaphor. Scholars think that because many signs and wonders were being done through the apostles, the people hoped that Peter would heal them. They think the people believed that if the crowds were too large, that even if Peter’s shadow crossed over a sick person, they would be healed. Luke wanted people to know that the people who were brought before the apostles were all healed.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Sign](../articles/sign.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### 5:17-21

#### Why did the high priest and Sadducees arrest the apostles?

[5:18]

The high priest and Sadducees arrested the apostles. Some scholars think the high priest and the Sadducees were filled with “jealousy”(ζῆλος/g2205) because many people believed the things the apostles taught about Jesus (see 13:45). The Jewish leaders believed the apostles taught the wrong things so they arrested the apostles. Other scholars think that the Jewish leaders really wanted to protect the Temple, the Law of Moses, and what they believed about God. The Sadducees zealously protected the things they taught would honor God.

#### What is an angel?

[5:19]

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### What were “all the words of this life”?

[5:20]

The angel of the Lord told the apostles to speak “all the words of this life.” He wanted them to preach the gospel and help people to know how to be at peace with God by believing in Jesus.

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

#### Who were “all the elders” and “the council”?

[5:21]

Scholars think the assembly, which was the council and all the elders was made up of the Sadducees, the Pharisees, and even Gamiel, an honorable teacher of the Law of Moses (see: Acts 5:34).

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Sadducees](../articles/sadducees.md); [Pharisees](../articles/pharisees.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### 5:22-26

#### Why did the Captain of the Temple guard and the guards fear that the people might stone them when they arrested the apostles?

[5:24]

The people thought the apostles were great because of the things they did. They did many miracles and healed many people (see: Acts 5:12-16). The guards thought the people would begin to throw stones at them if they were to hurt the apostles in any way. For this reason the guards feared the people.

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md)

#### 5:27-32

#### What was meant by the words, “to bring this man’s blood upon us”?

[5:28]

The words, “to bring this man’s blood upon us” meant to make someone responsible for a death. They were willing to be the reason people died. Perhaps the Jewish leaders were willing to have people blame them for Jesus dying.

#### Why did God exalt Jesus to his right hand?

[5:31]

In ancient times, a person on the right hand side of the king was greatly honored. The kind gave this permission to do things for the king. Some scholars think Luke wrote this so that people would know that God gave Jesus permission to do all things and power to do anything. Other scholars think Luke wrote this so people would know that Jesus should be honored.

See: Psalm 110:1-8

See: [Right Hand](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/righthand.md); [Right Hand](../articles/righthand.md)

#### How was the Holy Spirit a witness to these things?

[5:32]

The Holy Spirit was a witness to things. Some scholars think the Holy Spirit was causing people to understand the things the apostles taught. Other scholars think the Holy Spirit enabled the apostles to perform miracles to prove to people that they were saying true things about Jesus.

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md); [Witness (Martyr)](../articles/witness.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md)

#### 5:33-42

#### What kind of beating did the apostles receive from the Sanhedrin?

[5:40]

The apostle were beaten because of the Sanhedrin. Scholars think the apostles were beaten with whips. A whip is made from leather strips. Other scholars think the apostles were beaten with rods In ancient Israel, they would not hit someone 40 times because of something taught in the Law of Moses (see: Deuteronomy 25:3). Instead, they hit someone 39 times.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](../articles/sanhedrin.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### Why did the apostles rejoice to be counted worthy to suffer dishonor for Jesus?

[5:41]

The apostles left the Sanhedrin rejoicing because they believed they were suffering to honor Jesus.

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md); [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](../articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### Acts 5:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Continuing the story of how the new Christians shared their belongings with other believers, Luke tells about two believers, Ananias and Sapphria.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story to tell a new part of the story.

#### Acts 5:2

##### his wife also knew it

"his wife also knew that he kept back part of the sale money"

##### laid it at the apostles' feet

This means that they presented to money to the apostles. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:35]

#### Acts 5:3

##### General Information:

If your language does not use rhetorical questions, you may reword these as statements.

##### why has Satan filled your heart to lie ... land?

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "you should not have let Satan fill your heart to lie ... land."

##### Satan filled your heart

Here the word "heart" is a metonym for the will and emotions. The phrase "Satan filled your heart" is a metaphor. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "Satan completely controlled you" or 2) "Satan convinced you"

##### to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price

This implies that Ananias had told the apostles that he was giving the entire amount that he had received from selling his land.

#### Acts 5:4

##### While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own ... authority?

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "While it remained unsold, it was your own ... authority."

##### While it remained unsold

"Before you sold it"

##### after it was sold, was it not under your authority?

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "after it was sold, you had control over the money that you received."

##### after it was sold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after you sold it"

##### Why did you put it in your heart to do this?

Peter used this question to rebuke Ananias. Here the word "heart" refers to the will and emotions. Alternate translation: "You should not have thought of doing this thing." or "It is Satan who has put this activity in your heart."

#### Acts 5:5

##### fell down and breathed his last

Here "breathed his last" means "breathed his final breath" and is a polite way of saying that he died. Ananias fell down because he died; he did not die because he fell down. Alternate translation: "died and fell to the ground"

#### Acts 5:6

##### The young men arose

This means that they began to act. This does not necessarily mean that they had been sitting or that Peter and Ananias had been at the front of the room or a meeting hall. If your language has a phrase that speaks of people responding to something by beginning to act, you may use it.

#### Acts 5:7

##### his wife came in

"Ananias' wife came in" or "Sapphira came in"

##### what had happened

"that her husband had died"

#### Acts 5:8

##### for so much

"for this much money." This refers to the amount of money that Ananias had given to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:9

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to both Ananias and Sapphira.

##### How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord?

Peter asks this question to rebuke Sapphira. Alternate translation: "You should not have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord!"

##### you have agreed together

"the two of you have agreed together"

##### to test the Spirit of the Lord

Here the word "test" means to challenge or to prove. They were trying to see if they could get away with lying to God without receiving punishment.

##### Look, the feet of the men

The word "Look" is an idiom for "Pay attention!" Peter is probably telling Sapphira to pay attention to the sound of the men's footsteps, which indicate that they are about to enter the building, not to look at their feet. Here the phrase "the feet" can be either a synecdoche for the men whose feet they are or a metonym for the sound that they make. Alternate translation: "Pay attention! The men" or "Listen! The footsteps of the men"

##### they will carry

"the men will carry"

#### Acts 5:10

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Ananias and Sapphira.

##### fell down at his feet

This means that when she died, she fell on the floor in front of Peter. This expression should not be confused with falling down at a person's feet as a sign of humility.

##### breathed her last

Here "breathed his last" means "breathed her final breath" and is a polite way of saying "she died." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 5:5]

#### Acts 5:11

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 5:12

##### General Information:

It is not clear whether here the word "They" refers to the believers or only to the apostles.

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues to tell what happens in the early days of the church.

##### Many signs and wonders were taking place among the people through the hands of the apostles

"Many signs and wonders took place among the people through the hands of the apostles." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The apostles performed many signs and wonders among the people"

##### signs and wonders

"supernatural events and miraculous deeds." See how you translated these terms in Acts 2:22

##### through the hands of the apostles

Here the word "hands" refers to the apostles. Alternate translation: "through the apostles"

##### all together

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose. The people were more than just in the same place at the same time.

##### Solomon's Porch

This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon. See how you translated "the porch that is called Solomon's" in Acts 3:11.

#### Acts 5:13

##### General Information:

The words "them" and "they" refer to the apostles.

##### none of the rest

Possible meanings are 1) the apostles were in Solomon's Porch, but the rest of the believers were afraid to join them there, or 2) all the believers were in Solomon's Porch, and the word "none" is a hyperbole that means that most of the people who were not believers were afraid to join them.

##### they were held in high esteem by the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people held the believers in high esteem"

#### Acts 5:14

##### more believers were being added to the Lord

This could be stated in active form. See how you translated "were added" in [Acts 2:41]

#### Acts 5:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the people who lived in Jerusalem.

##### his shadow might fall on some of them

It is implied that God would heal them if Peter's shadow touched them.

#### Acts 5:16

##### those afflicted with unclean spirits

"those whom unclean spirits had afflicted"

##### they were all healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God healed them all" or "the apostles healed them all"

#### Acts 5:17

##### Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders began to persecute the believers.

##### But

This begins a contrasting story. You may translate this in the way that your language introduces a contrasting narrative.

##### the high priest rose up

Here the phrase "rose up" means that the high priest decided to take action, not that he stood up from a seated position. Alternate translation: "the high priest took action"

##### they were filled with jealousy

The abstract noun "jealousy" can be translated as an adjective. This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they became very jealous"

#### Acts 5:18

##### laid hands on

This means they had the believers arrested. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:3]

#### Acts 5:19

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:20

##### in the temple

This phrase here refers to the temple courtyard, not to the temple building, where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard"

##### all the words of this life

The word "words" here is a metonym for the message that the apostles had already proclaimed. Possible meanings are 1) "all this message of eternal life" or 2) "the whole message of this new way of living"

#### Acts 5:21

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the apostles.

##### into the temple

They went into the temple courtyard, not into the temple building, where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "into the temple courtyard"

##### about daybreak

"as it began to be light." Although the angel led them out of the jail during the night, the sun was rising by the time the apostles reached the temple courtyard.

##### sent to the prison to have the apostles brought

This implies someone went to the jail. Alternate translation: "sent someone to the jail to bring the apostles"

#### Acts 5:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 5:23

##### we found no one inside

Possible meanings are 1) they found no one inside the apostles' cell Alternate translation: "we did not find them inside" or 2) the apostles had been the only prisoners and now there were no prisoners at all in the jail.

#### Acts 5:24

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the captain of the temple and the chief priests.

##### they were much perplexed

"they were very puzzled" or "they were very confused"

##### concerning them

"concerning the words they had just heard" or "concerning these things"

##### as to what would come of it

"and what would happen as a result" or "what would happen next"

#### Acts 5:25

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the captain of the temple and the chief priests.

##### standing in the temple

They did not go into the part of the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "standing in the temple courtyard"

#### Acts 5:26

##### Connecting Statement:

The captain and the officers bring the apostles before the Jewish religious council.

##### brought them back

"brought the apostles back"

##### they feared the people, that they might be stoned

This can be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: "they feared that the people might stone them"

#### Acts 5:27

##### they had brought them, they set them ... interrogated them

"the captain and officers had brought the apostles, the captain and the officers set the apostles ... interrogated the apostles"

##### interrogated

questioned to find out what was true

#### Acts 5:28

##### We ... us

The speakers were referring to themselves, but not to the apostles, so these words are exclusive.

##### you ... your

These words refer to the apostles and so are plural.

##### in this name

Here the word "name" refers to the person of Jesus. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:17]

##### you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching

Teaching many people in a city is spoken of as if they were filling the city with a teaching. Alternate translation: "you have taught many people in Jerusalem about him" or "you have taught about him throughout the Jerusalem"

##### desire to bring this man's blood upon us

Here the word "blood" is a metonym for death, and to bring someone's blood on people is a metaphor for saying that they are guilty of that person's death. Alternate translation: "desire to make us responsible for this man's death"

#### Acts 5:29

##### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers to the apostles, and not to the audience.

##### Peter and the apostles answered

Peter spoke on behalf of all of the apostles when he said the following words.

#### Acts 5:30

##### The God of our fathers raised up Jesus

Here "raised up" is an idiom. Alternate translation: "The God of our fathers caused Jesus to live again"

##### by hanging him on a tree

Here Peter uses the word "tree" to refer to the cross, which was made of wood. Alternate translation: "by hanging him on a cross"

#### Acts 5:31

##### God exalted him to his right hand

To be at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "God exalted him to the place of honor beside him"

##### give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins

The words "repentance" and "forgiveness" can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: "give the people of Israel an opportunity to repent and have God forgive their sins"

##### Israel

The word "Israel" refers to the Jewish people.

#### Acts 5:32

##### those who obey him

"those who submit to God's authority"

#### Acts 5:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 5:34

##### Connecting Statement:

Gamaliel addresses the council members.

##### Gamaliel, a teacher of the law who was honored by all the people

Luke introduces Gamaliel and provides background information about him.

##### who was honored by all the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom all the people honored"

##### to take the men outside

The words "the men" refers to the apostles.

#### Acts 5:35

##### pay close attention to

"think carefully about" or "be cautious about." Gamaliel was warning them not to do something that they would later regret.

#### Acts 5:36

##### Theudas rose up

Possible meanings are 1) "Theudas rebelled" or 2) "Theudas appeared."

##### claiming to be somebody

"claiming to be somebody important"

##### He was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People killed him"

##### all who had been obeying him were scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the people scattered who had been obeying him" or "all who had been obeying him went in different directions"

##### came to nothing

This means that they did not do what they had planned to do.

#### Acts 5:37

##### After this man

"After Theudas"

##### in the days of the census

"during the time of the census"

##### drew away some people after him

This means that he persuaded some people to rebel with him against the Roman government. Alternate translation: "caused many people to follow him" or "caused many people to join him in rebellion"

#### Acts 5:38

##### keep away from these men and let them alone

Gamaliel is telling the Jewish leaders not to punish the apostles any more and not to put them back in jail.

##### if this plan or work is of men

"if men have devised this plan or are doing this work"

##### it will be overthrown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will overthrow it"

#### Acts 5:39

##### Connecting Statement:

Gamaliel finishes addressing the council members.

##### if it is of God

Here the word "it" refers to "this plan or work." Alternate translation: "if God has devised this plan or commanded these men to do this work"

##### So they were persuaded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So Gamaliel persuaded them"

#### Acts 5:40

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the council members and all instances of "them" refer to the apostles.

##### they called the apostles in and beat them

The council members would have ordered the temple guards to do these things.

##### to speak in the name of Jesus

Here "name" refers to the authority of Jesus. See how you translated a similar phrase in Acts 4:18. Alternate translation: "to speak anymore in the authority of Jesus"

#### Acts 5:41

##### General Information:

All instances of "they" refer to the apostles.

##### they were counted worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name

The apostles rejoiced because God had honored them by letting the Jewish leaders dishonor them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God had counted them worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name"

##### for the Name

Here "the Name" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "for Jesus"

#### Acts 5:42

##### General Information:

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

##### Thereafter every day

"After that day, every day." This phrase marks what the apostles did every day through the following days.

##### in the temple and from house to house

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests went. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard and in different people's houses"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 5:1

##### What sin did Ananias and Sapphira commit?

Ananias and Sapphira lied, saying that they were giving the entire sale price of their property, but actually only giving a part of the sale price.

#### Acts 5:2

##### What sin did Ananias and Sapphira commit?

Ananias and Sapphira lied, saying that they were giving the entire sale price of their property, but actually only giving a part of the sale price.

#### Acts 5:3

##### To whom did Peter say Ananias and Sapphira had lied?

Peter said that Ananias and Sapphira had lied to the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 5:5

##### What was God's judgment on Ananias?

God killed Ananias.

#### Acts 5:10

##### What was God's judgment on Sapphira?

God killed Sapphira.

#### Acts 5:11

##### What was the reaction of the church and all who heard about Ananias and Sapphira?

Great fear came upon the church and all who heard about Ananias and Sapphira.

#### Acts 5:15

##### What were some people doing to have the sick healed?

Some were carrying the sick into the streets so Peter's shadow might fall on them, and others brought the sick from other towns to Jerusalem.

#### Acts 5:16

##### What were some people doing to have the sick healed?

Some were carrying the sick into the streets so Peter's shadow might fall on them, and others brought the sick from other towns to Jerusalem.

#### Acts 5:17

##### How did the Sadducees react to all of the sick being healed in Jerusalem?

The Sadducees were filled with jealousy and put the apostles in jail.

#### Acts 5:18

##### How did the Sadducees react to all of the sick being healed in Jerusalem?

The Sadducees were filled with jealousy and put the apostles in jail.

#### Acts 5:19

##### How did the apostles get out of jail?

An angel came and opened the doors of the jail and let them out.

#### Acts 5:23

##### What did the officers of the high priest find when they went to the jail?

The officers found the jail securely shut, but no one inside.

#### Acts 5:26

##### Why did the officers bring the apostles back to the high priest and council without violence?

The officers feared that the people might stone them.

#### Acts 5:29

##### When questioned about why they were teaching in Jesus' name when they had been charged not to, what did the apostles say?

The apostles said, "We must obey God rather than men".

#### Acts 5:30

##### Who did the apostles say was responsible for killing Jesus?

The apostles said that the high priest and council members were responsible for killing Jesus.

#### Acts 5:33

##### How did the council members react to the statement that they were responsible for killing Jesus?

The council members were furious and wanted to kill the apostles.

#### Acts 5:38

##### What was Gamaliel's advice to the council?

Gamaliel advised the council to leave the apostles alone.

#### Acts 5:39

##### What did Gamaliel warn the council they might end up doing if they tried to overthrow the apostles?

Gamaliel warned the council that they might end up fighting against God.

#### Acts 5:40

##### What did the council finally do with the apostles?

The council beat them and commanded them not to speak in the name of Jesus, and let them go.

#### Acts 5:41

##### How did the apostles react to the treatment they received from the council?

The apostles rejoiced that they were counted worthy to suffer dishonor for Jesus' name.

#### Acts 5:42

##### What did the apostles do every day after their meeting with the council?

The apostles preached and taught every day that Jesus was the Christ.

### Chapter 6

**1** Now in these days, when the number of the disciples was multiplying, a complaint by the Grecian Jews began against the Hebrews, because their widows were being overlooked in the daily distribution of help. **2** The twelve called the multitude of the disciples to them and said, "It is not right for us to give up the word of God in order to serve tables. **3** You should therefore choose, brothers, seven men from among yourselves, men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business. **4** As for us, we will always continue in prayer and in the ministry of the word." **5** Their speech pleased the whole multitude. So they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, and Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus, a proselyte from Antioch. **6** The believers brought these men before the apostles, who prayed and then placed their hands upon them.

**7** So the word of God continued to spread, and the number of disciples in Jerusalem increased greatly, and a large number of the priests became obedient to the faith.

**8** Now Stephen, full of grace and power, was doing great wonders and signs among the people. **9** But there arose some people who belonged to the synagogue called the synagogue of the Freedmen, of the Cyrenians and Alexandrians, and some from Cilicia and Asia. These people were debating with Stephen. **10** But they were not able to stand against the wisdom and the Spirit with which Stephen spoke. **11** Then they bribed some men to say, "We have heard Stephen speak blasphemous words against Moses and against God." **12** They stirred up the people, the elders, and the scribes, and they approached Stephen and seized him and brought him before the council. **13** They brought false witnesses, who said, "This man does not stop speaking words against this holy place and the law. **14** For we have heard him say that this Jesus of Nazareth will destroy this place and change the customs that Moses handed down to us." **15** Everyone who sat in the council fixed their eyes on him and saw his face was like the face of an angel.

### Acts 6 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### The distribution to the widows

The believers in Jerusalem gave help—probably money but possibly food—every day to women whose husbands had died. All of these widows had been raised as Jews, but some of them had lived in Judea and spoke Hebrew. Others had lived in Gentile areas and spoke Greek. Those who gave out the money or food gave it to the Hebrew-speaking widows but not to the Greek-speaking widows. To please God, the church leaders appointed Greek-speaking men to make sure the Greek-speaking widows received their share of help. One of these Greek-speaking men was Stephen.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### "His face was like the face of an angel"

No one knows for sure what it was about Stephen's face that was like the face of an angel, because Luke does not tell us. It is best for the translation to say only what the ULB says about this.

### Acts 6

#### 6:1-7

#### What was a disciple?

[6:1]

See: [Disciple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/disciple.md)

#### Who were the “Grecian” Jews and the Hebrews?

[6:1]

Scholars think the “Grecian Jews” were to Greek-speaking Jewish Christians. They think these were Jews were raised in other countries and only spoke Greek. The Hebrews referred to Jewish Christians who spoke Hebrew or Aramaic.

#### What did it mean that the “widows were being overlooked in the daily distribution of food”?

[6:1]

The widows that were among the Grecian Jews were being “overlooked”(παραθεωρέω/g3865) when the daily food was distributed. That is, they were not given food regularly. Instead, the Hebrew widows were given food instead.

#### What did Luke mean by saying, “give up the word of God in order to serve tables”?

[6:2]

Luke wrote about giving up the Word of God. He did not want the apostles to stop telling people about Jesus in order to do something else. The apostles did not think that it was right for them to stop teaching so they could make sure people were given food. Some scholars think this was because Jesus specifically commanded the apostles to preach and teach the message of the gospel. The apostles were not too great to serve people by giving them food.

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

#### Who were men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom?

[6:3]

A man of “good reputation” was a man who other people spoke well about. People trusted this type of man to do the right things. It was the Holy Spirit who gave these men the wisdom they needed to serve other people.

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fillingholyspirit.md)

#### Why did Luke write, we will always continue in prayer and in the ministry of the word?

[6:4]

Scholars think the apostles wanted to “devote”(προσκαρτερέω/G4674) themselves completely to prayer and teaching people about Jesus. They wanted to pray for people. They also wanted to preach and teach about Jesus and the things he taught.

See: [Pray (Prayer](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md); [Pray (Prayer](../articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Why did the apostles place their hands upon the men chosen to the community?

[6:6]

When someone laid their hands on someone, they gave this permission to do something. The apostles then prayed for them while they laid their hands on these men.

See 13:1-3; 1 Tim. 4:14

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

#### How did the priests became obedient to the faith?

[6:7]

When the priests became “obedient”(ὑπακούω/G5219) to the faith, they accepted that Jesus was the messiah God promised to Israel.

See: [Faith (Believe in)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/faith.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md)

#### 6:8-14

#### How was Stephen full of grace and power?

[6:8]

How was Stephen full of grace and power. Because of God’s favor toward Stephen, God gave Stephen power in the Holy Spirit. Some scholars think the power God gave him was the power to do amazing miracles. Other scholars think that God gave Stephen great wisdom and courage to speak the truth about Jesus in a bold way.

See: Grace; [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md)

#### What was the “Synagogue of the Freedmen”?

[6:9]

The synagogue of freedom was a place where certain people went to worship God. These people were once slaves or prisoners of war who now lived in Jerusalem as free people.

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

#### How were the freedmen not able to stand against Stephen?

[6:10]

Stephen was wise and full of the Spirit. Because of this, some scholars think that when Luke said the freedmen “were not able to stand against” Stephen, he wanted to say that they could not prove that what Stephen was saying was wrong.

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/indwelling.md)

#### How did someone blaspheme Moses and God?

[6:11]

The people from the synagogue charged Stephen with blaspheming against Moses and against God. When he wrote about Moses, he was writing about the Law of Moses. These people accused Stephen of saying things that were untrue about the Law of Moses and God.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Synagogue](../articles/synagogue.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### What were the “holy place” and the “law” about which Luke wrote?

[6:13]

The “holy place” was the temple and the “law” referred to the rules for the running of the temple.

See: [Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holy.md); [Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)](../articles/holy.md)

#### Were the witnesses right about what Stephen said about Jesus?

[6:13]

The witnesses misunderstood what Jesus taught about the temple and the Law of Moses. Jesus did say he would destroy the temple and in three days he would rebuild it again (see: John 2:19, 20). However, Jesus was using a metaphor. He was speaking about dying and being resurrected.

They said the same thing Stepehen said. Stephen taught about what Jesus said, but people did not understand what Jesus meant about dying and resurrecting on the third day (see: Matthew 12:40). Jesus body was a temple of the Holy Spirit.

Jesus also prophesied about the destruction of the Jewish Temple (see Luke 21:6). This happened about 40 years after Jesus died. So Stephen knew the current temple was temporary and the Law of Moses had been replaced after Jesus’ resurrection.

See: [Atone (Atonement)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/atone.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ;[Atone (Atonement)](../articles/atone.md)

#### What did Luke mean when he said Stephen’s face was “like the face of an angel”?

[6:15]

Luke wrote that Stephen’s face was like the face of an angel. Some scholars think Stephen’s face was shining in the same way that Moses’ face shone after God had talked with Moses (see: Exodus 34:29-35). Other scholars think Stephen’s face was shining because the Holy Spirit was completely controlling Stephen.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### Acts 6:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story. Luke gives important background information to understand the story.

##### Now in these days

Consider how new parts of a story are introduced in your language.

##### was multiplying

"was greatly increasing"

##### Grecian Jews ... Hebrews

These were both groups of Jews who had become believers. The writer assumes that the reader understands that these people were all believers because at this point all believers had grown up as Jews.

##### Grecian Jews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts living somewhere in the Roman Empire outside of Israel and speaking Greek. Their language and culture were somewhat different from those who had grown up in Israel.

##### the Hebrews

These were believers who had grown up as Jews or become converts in Israel speaking Hebrew or Aramaic.

##### widows

A widow is a woman who has not remarried since her husband died.

##### their widows were being overlooked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Hebrew believers were overlooking the Grecian widows"

##### being overlooked

"being ignored" or "being forgotten." There were so many who needed help that some were missed.

##### daily distribution of help

The disciples were able to help the widows because believers were giving money to the apostles Acts 4:34-35. Possible meanings are 1) the disciples used the money to buy food, which they would give to the widows, or 2) the disciples gave the money directly to the widows.

#### Acts 6:2

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the 12 apostles and not to their hearers, so it is exclusive.

##### The twelve

This refers to the eleven apostles plus Matthias, who was selected in Acts 1:26.

##### the multitude of the disciples

"all of the disciples" or "all the believers"

##### give up the word of God

This is an exaggeration in order to emphasize the importance of their task of teaching the word of God. Alternate translation: "stop preaching and teaching the word of God"

##### serve tables

This is a phrase meaning to serve food to the people.

#### Acts 6:3

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" refers to the believers and so is plural.

##### men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom

Possible meanings are 1) the men have three qualities—a good reputation, being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom or 2) the men have a reputation for two qualities—being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom .

##### men of good reputation

"men that people know are good" or "men whom people trust"

##### over this business

"to be responsible to do this task"

#### Acts 6:4

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the 12 apostles and not to their hearers, so it is exclusive.

##### the ministry of the word

"the ministry of teaching and preaching the message"

#### Acts 6:5

##### Their speech pleased the whole multitude

"All the disciples liked their suggestion"

##### Stephen ... Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus

These are Greek names, so it seems that all of the men elected were from the Grecian Jewish group of believers.

##### proselyte

a Gentile who converted to the Jewish religion

#### Acts 6:6

##### placed their hands upon them

This represented giving a blessing and imparting responsibility and authority for the work to the seven.

#### Acts 6:7

##### General Information:

This verse gives an update on the church's growth.

##### the word of God continued to spread

The writer speaks of the growing number of people who believed the word as if the word of God itself were covering a larger area. Alternate translation: "the number of people who believed the word of God increased" or "the number of people who believed the message from God increased"

##### became obedient to the faith

"followed the teaching of the new belief"

##### the faith

Possible meanings are 1) the gospel message of trust in Jesus or 2) the teaching of the church or 3) the Christian teaching.

#### Acts 6:8

##### General Information:

The writer begins to give background information about Stephen and other people that is important to understanding the story.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### Now Stephen

This introduces Stephen as the main character in this part of the story.

##### Stephen, full of grace and power, was doing

The words "grace" and "power" here refer to power from God. This could be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "God was giving Stephen power to do"

#### Acts 6:9

##### General Information:

The writer continues giving background information about Stephen and other people that is important to understanding the story.

##### there arose some people ... Asia. These people were debating with Stephen

The word "arose" is an idiom that represents beginning to act. These people did not begin to rise into the air, nor did they necessarily get up from a sitting position. Alternate translation: "some people ... Asia, began to debate against Stephen"

##### the synagogue of the Freedmen, of the Cyrenians and Alexandrians, and some from Cilicia and Asia

Possible meanings are 1) the Cyrenians, the Alexandrians and those from Cilicia and Asia were all members of the synagogue of the Freedmen; 2) the Cyrenians and the Alexandrians were members of the synagogue of the Freedmen, but those from Cilicia and Asia were not; or 3) there were three separate groups of people: those from the synagogue, those from Cyrene and Alexandria, and those from Cilicia and Asia.

##### synagogue of the Freedmen

"Freedmen" were probably ex-slaves from these different locations. It is unclear if the other people listed were part of the synagogue or just participated in the debate with Stephen.

##### the Cyrenians and Alexandrians

"people from Cyrene and Alexandria." Cyrene and Alexandria were cities in Northern Africa. They were south of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### some from Cilicia and Asia

Cilicia was a city and Asia was a Roman province, both north of the Mediterranean Sea.

##### debating with Stephen

"arguing with Stephen"

#### Acts 6:10

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer finishes giving background information about Stephen and other people that is important to understanding the story.

##### not able to stand against

This phrase means they could not prove false what he said. Alternate translation: "could not argue against"

##### Spirit

this refers to the Holy Spirit

#### Acts 6:11

##### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers only to the men they persuaded to lie. The word "they" refers back to the people from the synagogue of the freemen

##### some men to say

They were given money to give false testimony. Alternate translation: "some men to lie and say"

##### blasphemous words against

"bad things about"

#### Acts 6:12

##### General Information:

The word "they" most likely refers back to the people from the synagogue of the Freedmen (Acts 6:9). They were responsible for the false witnesses and for inciting the council, the elders, the scribes, and the other people.

##### stirred up the people, the elders, and the scribes

"caused the people, the elders, and the scribes to be very angry at Stephen"

##### seized him

"grabbed him and held him so he could not get away"

#### Acts 6:13

##### General Information:

The word "they" most likely refers back to the people from the synagogue of the Freedmen (Acts 6:9).

##### does not stop speaking

"continually speaks"

#### Acts 6:14

##### General Information:

The words "we" and "us" refer only to the speakers, not to the hearers, and so is exclusive.

##### handed down to us

The phrase "handed down" means "passed on." Alternate translation: "taught our ancestors"

#### Acts 6:15

##### fixed their eyes on him

This is an idiom that means they looked intently at him. Here "eyes" is a metonym for sight. Alternate translation: "looked intently at him" or "stared at him"

##### was like the face of an angel

This phrase compares his face to that of an angel but does not say specifically what they have in common.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 6:1

##### What complaint arose from the Grecian Jews against the Hebrews?

The Grecian Jews complained that their widows were being overlooked in the daily food distribution.

#### Acts 6:3

##### Who chose the seven men to take care of the business of food distribution?

The disciples (brothers) chose the seven men.

##### What were the qualifications for being chosen as one of the seven men?

The seven men had to be of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom.

#### Acts 6:4

##### In what would the apostles continue?

The apostles would continue in prayer and in the ministry of the word.

#### Acts 6:6

##### What did the apostles do when the believers brought the seven men?

The apostles prayed and placed their hands upon them.

#### Acts 6:7

##### What was happening with the disciples in Jerusalem?

The number of disciples was greatly increasing, including a great number of the priests.

#### Acts 6:10

##### Who was winning the debates between the unbelieving Jews and Stephen?

The unbelieving Jews could not stand against the wisdom and Spirit with which Stephen spoke.

#### Acts 6:14

##### What accusation was made by false witnesses against Stephen to the council?

The false witnesses claimed that Stephen said Jesus would destroy this place and change the customs of Moses.

#### Acts 6:15

##### When the council looked at Stephen, what did they see?

They saw that his face was like the face of an angel.

### Chapter 7

**1** The high priest said, "Are these things true?" **2** Stephen said,

"Brothers and fathers, listen to me: The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham when he was in Mesopotamia, before he lived in Haran; **3** he said to him, 'Leave your land and your relatives, and go into the land that I will show you.'

**4** "Then he left the land of the Chaldeans and lived in Haran; from there, after his father died, God brought him into this land, where you live now. **5** He gave none of it as an inheritance to him, no, not even enough to set a foot on. But he promised—even though Abraham had no child yet—that he would give the land as a possession to him and to his descendants after him. **6** God was speaking to him like this, that his descendants would live for a while in a foreign land, and that the inhabitants there would bring them into slavery and mistreat them for four hundred years. **7** 'But I will judge the nation that they serve,' said God, 'and after that they will come out and worship me in this place.' **8** Then God gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision, so Abraham became the father of Isaac and circumcised him on the eighth day; Isaac became the father of Jacob, and Jacob the father of the twelve patriarchs.

**9** "Because the patriarchs were jealous of Joseph, they sold him into Egypt; but God was with him **10** and rescued him from all his tribulation. He gave Joseph favor and wisdom in the presence of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, who appointed him governor over Egypt and over all his household.

**11** "Now a famine and great tribulation came over all Egypt and Canaan, and our fathers could find no food. **12** But when Jacob heard that there was grain in Egypt, he sent out our fathers on their first trip. **13** On their second trip Joseph made himself known to his brothers, and Joseph's family became known to Pharaoh. **14** Joseph sent his brothers back to invite Jacob his father to come to Egypt, along with all his relatives, seventy-five persons in all. **15** So Jacob went down into Egypt, and he died, he and our fathers. **16** They were carried over to Shechem and laid in the tomb that Abraham had bought for a price in silver from the sons of Hamor in Shechem.

**17** "As the time of the promise approached, the promise that God had made to Abraham, the people grew and multiplied in Egypt, **18** until there arose another king over Egypt, a king who did not know about Joseph. **19** He deceived our people and mistreated our fathers, forcing them to expose their newborn infants so they would not be kept alive.

**20** "At that time Moses was born; he was very beautiful before God and was nourished for three months in his father's house. **21** When he was placed outside, Pharaoh's daughter adopted him and raised him as her own son. **22** Moses was educated in all the wisdom of the Egyptians, and he was mighty in his words and works.

**23** "But when he was about forty years old, it came into his heart to visit his brothers, the descendants of Israel. **24** Seeing an Israelite being mistreated, Moses defended him and avenged him who was oppressed by striking the Egyptian: **25** he thought that his brothers would understand that God, by his hand, was giving them salvation, but they did not understand. **26** On the next day he appeared to them when they were fighting, and he tried to make peace between them, saying, 'Men, you are brothers; why are you wronging one another?'

**27** "But the one who had wronged his neighbor pushed him away, and said, 'Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us? **28** Would you like to kill me, as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?' **29** Moses ran away after hearing this statement; he became a foreigner in the land of Midian, where he became the father of two sons.

**30** "When forty years were past, an angel appeared to him in the wilderness of Mount Sinai, in a flame of fire in a bush. **31** When Moses saw the fire, he marveled at the sight; and as he approached to look at it, the voice of the Lord came, saying, **32** 'I am the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob.' Moses trembled and did not dare to look.

**33** "The Lord said to him, 'Take off the sandals from your feet, for the place where you are standing is holy ground. **34** I have certainly seen the oppression of my people who are in Egypt; I have heard their groaning, and I have come down to rescue them; now come, I will send you to Egypt.'

**35** "This Moses whom they rejected, when they said, 'Who appointed you a ruler and a judge?'—he was the one whom God sent as both a ruler and deliverer. God sent him by the hand of the angel who appeared to Moses in the bush. **36** Moses led them out of Egypt, after doing miracles and signs in Egypt and at the Sea of Reeds, and in the wilderness during forty years.

**37** "It is the same Moses who said to the people of Israel, 'God will raise up a prophet for you from among your brothers, a prophet like me.' **38** This is the man who was in the assembly in the wilderness with the angel who had spoken to him on Mount Sinai, who was with our fathers, and who received living words to give to us.

**39** "But our fathers refused to obey him; they pushed him away from themselves, and in their hearts they turned back to Egypt. **40** At that time they said to Aaron, 'Make us gods who will lead us. As for this Moses, who led us out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.' **41** So they made a calf in those days and brought a sacrifice to the idol, and rejoiced because of the work of their hands. **42** But God turned and gave them up to worship the stars in the sky, as it is written in the book of the prophets,

'Did you bring me offerings and sacrifices

during the forty years in the wilderness, house of Israel?

**43** You accepted the tabernacle of Molech

and the star of the god Rephan,

and the images that you made to worship them:

and I will carry you away beyond Babylon.'

**44** "Our fathers had the tabernacle of the testimony in the wilderness, just as God commanded when he spoke to Moses, that he should make it like the pattern that he had seen. **45** Later, our fathers, under Joshua, received the tabernacle and brought it with them when they took possession of the land. God took the land from the nations and drove them out before the face of our fathers. The tabernacle remained in the land until the time of David, **46** who found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob *[*[1](#fn-044-007-046-1)*]* . **47** But it was Solomon who built the house for God.

**48** "However, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands, as the prophet says,

**49** 'Heaven is my throne,

and the earth is the footstool for my feet.

What kind of house can you build for me? says the Lord,

or what is the place for my rest?

**50** Did my hand not make all these things?'

**51** "You stiff-necked people, uncircumcised in heart and ears, you always resist the Holy Spirit; you act just as your fathers acted. **52** Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute? They killed the prophets who appeared in advance of the coming of the Righteous One; and you have now become the betrayers and murderers of him also, **53** you people who received the law that angels had ordained, but you did not keep it."

**54** Now when the council members heard these things, they were furious in their hearts and they ground their teeth at Stephen. **55** But he, being full of the Holy Spirit, looked up intently into heaven and saw the glory of God; and he saw Jesus standing at the right hand of God. **56** Stephen said, "Look, I see the heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God."

**57** At this the council members covered their ears, and shouting out with a loud voice, they rushed at him with one purpose. **58** They forced him out of the city and began to stone him. The witnesses laid down their outer clothing at the feet of a young man named Saul.

**59** As they were stoning Stephen, he was calling out to the Lord and saying, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit." **60** He knelt down and cried out with a loud voice, "Lord, do not hold this sin against them." When he had said this, he fell asleep.

#### Footnotes

7:46 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-007-046-1)*]*The phrase:

### Acts 7 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 7:42-43 and 49-50.

It appears that 8:1 is part of the narrative of this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "Stephen said"

Stephen told the history of Israel very briefly. He paid special attention to the times that the Israelites had rejected the people God had chosen to lead them. At the end of the story, he said that the Jewish leaders he was talking to had rejected Jesus just as the evil Israelites had always rejected the leaders God had appointed for them.

##### "Full of the Holy Spirit"

The Holy Spirit completely controlled Stephen so that he said only and all of what God wanted him to say.

##### Foreshadowing

When an author speaks of something that is not important at that time but will be important later in the story, this is called foreshadowing. Luke mentions Saul, also known as Paul, here, even though he is not an important person in this part of the story. This is because Paul is an important person in the rest of the Book of Acts.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Implied information

Stephen was talking to Jews who knew the law of Moses well, so he did not explain things that his hearers already knew. But you may need to explain some of these things so that your readers will be able to understand what Stephen was saying. For example, you may need to make explicit that when Joseph's brothers "sold him into Egypt"

##### Metonymy

Stephen spoke of Joseph ruling "over Egypt" and over all of Pharaoh's household. By this he meant that Joseph ruled over the people of Egypt and of the people and possessions in Pharaoh's household.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Background knowledge

The Jewish leaders to whom Stephen spoke already knew much about the events he was telling them about. They knew what Moses had written in the Book of Genesis. If the Book of Genesis has not been translated into your language, it may be difficult for your readers to understand what Stephen said.

### Acts 7

#### 7:1-8

#### Why did Stephen call the council members his “brothers” and his “fathers”?

[7:2]

Stephen called these members of the council his “brothers” because they were all Jews. He called them “fathers” because they were older so he wanted to honor them when he spoke.

#### What did Stephen mean by calling their God “the God of glory?”

[7:2]

Scholars think the words “God of glory” referred to God’s glory. Though Stephen did not write how God showed himself to Abraham, scholars think it was in a way that Abraham knew that it was God.

See: [Glory (Glorify)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/glory.md)

#### Where were Mesopotamia and Haran?

[7:4]

See Map: Mesopotamia; Haran

#### Why did Stephen say God gave none of the land as an inheritance to Abraham?

[7:5]

Stepehen said that God did not give any of the land as an inheritance to Abraham. Abraham did not possess the land that was promised to him. Instead, his descendants inherited the land promised to Abraham.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancestor.md); [Covenant with Abraham](../articles/covenantabraham.md); [Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)](../articles/inherit.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md)

#### Where was the land where the descendants of Abraham went and became slaves?

[7:6]

The descendants of Abraham first went to the land of Egypt when Abraham’s great-grandson, Joseph, was sold into slavery there (see: Genesis 39:1-4; 46:3-4). They were slaves in Egypt for 400 years.

See: [Serve (Servant, Slave)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/serve.md); [Serve (Servant, Slave)](../articles/serve.md)

See Map: Egypt

#### Where was the place where God said Abraham’s descendants will worship him?

[7:7]

God said that Abraham’s descendants will worship him in Canaan.

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md)

See Map: Canaan

#### What was the covenant of circumcision that God made with Abraham?

[7:8]

See: [Covenant with Abraham](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/covenantabraham.md); [Covenant with Abraham](../articles/covenantabraham.md)

#### What was a Patriarch?

[7:8]

The Patriarchs are the 12 sons of Jacob. The twelve tribes of Israel are named for each of the sons of Jacob.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancestor.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md)

#### 7:9-19

#### Why were Joseph’s brothers jealous of Joseph?

[7:9]

Scholars think Joseph’s brothers were “jealous”(ζηλόω/g2206) of him because their father, Jacob, showed more favor to Joseph than he did to the other brothers (see: Genesis 37:3-4).

#### What did Stephen mean by saying “our fathers”?

[7:11]

When Stephen spoke the words, “our fathers” he was referring to the twelve sons of Jacob.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancestor.md)

#### Why did Joseph have to reveal himself to his brothers?

[7:13]

Scholars think that because Joseph lived in Egypt for thirteen years after his brothers sold him, Joseph acted and spoke in the same way the Egyptians did. Because of this, his brothers did not know him immediately. Joseph also spoke to his brothers through a translator to cause them to think he was an Egyptian (see: Genesis 42:23).

See Map: Egypt

#### Where was Shechem?

[7:16]

See Map: Shechem

#### Who was buried in Shechem?

[7:16]

Scholars think that Stephen was speaking about the twelve sons of Jacob when he spoke of those buried in Shechem.

#### What was “the time of the promise”?

[7:17]

Stephen spoke about the time of promise. Some scholars think Stephen was speaking about two different parts of the same promise. That is, God promised Abraham that he would give the land of Canaan to his descendants. The second part of the promise was that Abraham’s descendants would first be enslaved in Egypt for 400 years (see: Genesis 15:13).

See: [Serve (Servant, Slave)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/serve.md);[Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md); [Serve (Servant, Slave)](../articles/serve.md)

See Map: Canaan

#### What is important about the new king not knowing Joseph?

[7:18]

While Joseph was in Egypt, he became one of their most recognized leaders under Pharoah. That is, everyone in Egypt knew Joseph. However, sixty years after Joseph died, a new king began to rule in Egypt. The new king hated and was very afraid of the people of Israel.

See Map: Egypt; Israel

#### 7:20-36

#### How was something “beautiful before God”?

[7:20]

Scholars disagree about how something was beautiful before God. Some scholars think it meant that God was very pleased with Moses. Other scholars think this was something the Israelites said when they wanted to say that someone was a very beautiful child.

#### How was Moses placed outside?

[7:21]

Moses’ parents hid Moses for three months without Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, knowing. Some scholars think that after three months, Moses’ parents could no longer keep him hidden, so they placed him in a basket that was then placed in the river. This basket floated. They think this was done so that the king’s daughter would find him (see: Exodus 2:3-10)

#### How had the daughter of Pharaoh adopted Moses and raised him as her own son”?

[7:21]

Pharaoh was the king of Egypt. Pharaoh’s daughter adopted Moses. Stephen meant that Pharaoh’s daughter took Moses and cared for him, raising him up in her family as if Moses was her own son. She made him part of her own family.

#### How did Moses avenge an Israelite by “striking the Egyptian”?

[7:24]

When Stephen said that Moses avenged an Israelite by “striking the Egyptian,” he wanted people to know that Moses killed the Egyptian. The Old Testament does not say how Moses killed the Egyptian (see: Exodus 2:12).

See: [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/oldtestament.md)

#### Why did the people ask, “Who made you a ruler and a judge over us”?

[7:27]

The people asked Moses, “who made you a ruler and a judge over us.” These people wanted to say that Moses was not a ruler over them and could not judge them.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md)

#### Where was the land of Midian?

[7:29]

See Map: Midian

#### Where is the wilderness of Mt. Sinai?

[7:30]

See Map: Mt. Sinai

See: [Sinai](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sinai.md)

#### Who was the “angel” who appeared to Moses?

[7:30]

The “angel” who appeared in a flame of fire to Moses was the angel of God. That is, God showed himself to Moses in the form of a flame (see: Exodus 3:2).

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### Why did God say that he was the God of Moses’ fathers--Abraham, Isaac and Jacob?

[7:32]

God revealed himself to Moses as the God of his fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Scholars think God wanted Moses to know that God kept his promises. That is, Moses experienced part of the covenant promise God made with Abraham.

See: [Reveal (Revelation)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/reveal.md); [Covenant with Abraham](../articles/covenantabraham.md); [Reveal (Revelation)](../articles/reveal.md)

#### Why did God command Moses to remove his sandals?

[7:33]

God commanded Moses to remove his sandals because God declared the place where he was standing was holy. When he did this, it was a sign of great respect and honor for God.

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md); [Sign](../articles/sign.md)

#### How did God “come down” to rescue His people from their sufferings in Egypt?

[7:34]

God came down in the form of an angel to speak to Moses and to send Moses to rescue the Israelites. God was going with Moses to be with him to tell him what to say and do.

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### Where did God send Moses to deliver God’s people?

[7:35]

God sent Moses back to Egypt to deliver his people from the suffering and slavery.

See: [People of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/peopleofgod.md); [People of God](../articles/peopleofgod.md)

See Map: Egypt

#### Why did Stephen speak about the people of Israel rejecting Moses?

[7:35]

Stephen spoke about the people of Israel rejecting Moses. Scholars think Stephen spoke about Israel rejecting Moses to show that Israel rejected many of the prophets God sent to them. Ultimately, the people of Israel rejected Jesus, the one Moses declared would come after him (see: 1 Corinthians 7:37, 51-52).

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md)

#### How did Moses lead Israel out of Egypt?

[7:36]

Moses did many miracles so the king of Egypt would let the Israelites leave Egypt. However, he did not let them leave. Then God used Moses to punish Egypt and help the Israelites leave Egypt.

See: Exodus 7-14

See: [Exodus](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/exodus.md); [Exodus](../articles/exodus.md)

#### Where was the Red Sea and the wilderness of Mt. Sinai?

[7:36]

See Map: Red Sea; Mt. Sinai

#### 7:37-43

#### What did Stephen mean by saying, “God will raise up a prophet”?

[7:37]

The words, “God will raise up a prophet” meant that God was going to appoint and send a prophet to the people of Israel. Scholars think Moses was speaking about the Messiah. Just as Moses was the mediator between the people of Israel and God, so the Messiah is the greatest mediator who mediates between all the peoples of the world and God.

See: [Mediator](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/mediator.md); [Appoint](../articles/appoint.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Mediator](../articles/mediator.md)

#### What were the “living words” Moses received to give to the Israelites?

[7:38]

Scholars think the “living words” about which Stephen spoke were the messages from God that told people how to live in a way that honored God. They think these “living words” were also seen in the laws given to Moses (see: Deuteronomy 30:15-20).

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### What did Stephen mean when he said, “in their hearts they turned back to Egypt?”

[7:39]

Some scholars think that when Stephen spoke about the fathers who “in their hearts they turned back to Egypt,” he was speaking about the Israelites who wanted to return to Egypt where they had plenty to eat and drink. Fewer scholars think the fathers wanted to return to Egypt to reject God and worship the idols of Egypt.

See: Exodus 16:3; Numbers 11:4-6

See: [Idolatry (Idol)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/idolatryidol.md); [Idolatry (Idol)](../articles/idolatryidol.md)

#### Where was Moses when the Israelites asked Aaron to make other gods to lead them?

[7:40]

Moses was on Mount Sinai receiving the laws from God when the Israelites asked Aaron to make other gods. The Israelites were impatient, and wanted instead the kind of gods they worshipped in Egypt.

See: Exodus 32:1-6

See: [Idolatry (Idol)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/idolatryidol.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md); [Idolatry (Idol)](../articles/idolatryidol.md)

See Map: Mount Sinai

#### Why did Aaron and the people make a calf as their idol?

[7:41]

Scholars think Aaron and the people made a calf as an idol because it was like the bull worship of the Egyptians.

See: [Idolatry (Idol)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/idolatryidol.md)

#### How did God give them up?

[7:42]

The words “God gave them up” meant that God let the Israelites go and follow their own desires. That is, God let the Israelites do the sins they wanted to do. Some scholars think that the Israelites sinned more and more, so God let them suffer the consequences of sinning.

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md)

#### What was the “book of the prophets”?

[7:42]

The “book of the prophets” referred to the last twelve books of the Old Testament. These books were also known as the books of the minor prophets. Stephen quoted from one of the minor prophets (see: Amos 5:25-27).

See: [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/oldtestament.md); [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](../articles/oldtestament.md)

#### What was the “tabernacle of Molech” and the “star of the god Rephan?”

[7:43]

Scholars think the Israelites misused the tabernacle to worship false gods, Molech and the star of Rephan. Scholars think Molech represented the planet Venus, while the star of the god Rephan was the planet Saturn.

See: [Tabernacle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tabernacle.md); [Tabernacle](../articles/tabernacle.md)

#### What and where was Babylon?

[7:43] Babylon was in modern day Iraq and it represented a far away place from home and captivity as slaves. Stephen quoted the passage from Amos where God threatened to send the Israelites there as slaves because they worshipped idols.

See: [Idolatry (Idol)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/idolatryidol.md); [Serve (Servant, Slave)](../articles/serve.md); [Idolatry (Idol)](../articles/idolatryidol.md)

See Map: Babylon

#### 7:44-53

#### What was the tabernacle of the testimony?

[7:44]

See: [Testify (Testimony)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/testify.md); [Testify (Testimony)](../articles/testify.md)

#### How did Israel gain possession of the promised land?

[7:45]

God gave the Israelites the land by driving out the people who were there. He did this by giving the Israelites good leaders like Joshua and by doing miracles (see: Joshua 6).

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md)

#### What did it mean that David “found favor in the sight of God”?

[7:46]

David “found favor in the sight of God.” That is he lived in a way that honored God.

#### What was a dwelling place for the God of Jacob?

[7:46]

David wanted to build a beautiful temple for God and for the Ark of the Covenant that represented God’s presence with the people. Jacob was the father of the 12 tribes of Israel.

See: [Tribes of Israel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tribesisrael.md); [Ark of the Covenant](../articles/arkcovenant.md); [Presence of God](../articles/presenceofgod.md); [Tribes of Israel](../articles/tribesisrael.md)

#### Who was Solomon?

[7:47]

Solomon was David’s son from his wife Bathsheba. He ruled Israel.

See: 1 Kings 6

#### What was the house that Solomon built?

[7:47]

Solomon built a house, which is the temple. This was a place where Israel could go to worship God. It was a house because it was where God’s presence was on the earth at that time.

See: [Presence of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/presenceofgod.md); [Tribes of Israel](../articles/tribesisrael.md); [Presence of God](../articles/presenceofgod.md)

#### Did the Most High live in houses made with hands?

[7:48]

Stephen said the same thing that Isaiah wrote (see: Isaiah 66:1-2). He wanted to show that God is far greater than any house that can be made with human hands.

#### How did Stephen say the people of Israel acted?

[7:51] Stephen spoke about four different ways in which the people of Israel acted:

1. Stephen said the people were “stiff-necked.” This was a way of saying the people were very stubborn in doing wrong. Scholars think the people did not want to obey God.
2. Stephen said the Israelites were “uncircumcised in heart and ears.” This meant that though the Israelites has the outward signs of belonging to God, they did not obey God, or even listen to him. That is, they acted like the people who did not believe in God.
3. Stephen said to the Israelites “you always resist the Holy Spirit.” This meant the Israelites had a history of rejecting or fighting against the Holy Spirit (see Isaiah 63:10).
4. Stephen said to the Israelites “you act just as your fathers acted.” This meant the Israelites were doing the same thing as their ancestors who resisted the Holy Spirit by rejecting the messages of the prophets.

See: 1 Kings 19:14; Nehemiah 9:26; Luke 6:22-23; 11:49; 13:34

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Heart (Metaphor)](../articles/heart.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### Did the people of Israel persecute every prophet?

[7:52]

Stephen asked a rhetorical question. That is, he did not expect any answer from the Israelites. The Israelites persecuted most of the prophets. They repeatedly rejected Moses, even though they said that Moses was their greatest teacher.

See: Matthew 23:29-36

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

[7:52]### Who was the righteous one?

The righteous one was the Messiah. People knew that Stephen was talking about Jesus.

See: Isaiah 53:11; Jeremiah 23:5; 33:15

See: [Righteous (Righteousness)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/righteous.md); [Righteous (Righteousness)](../articles/righteous.md)

#### What was Stephen accusing these members of the Jewish council of doing?

[7:52, 7:53]

Stephen accused the members of the Jewish council of being traitors (προδόται /g4273) and killing Jesus because they helped the Romans to kill Jesus (see John 19:11).

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### What was the law the “angels had established”?

[7:53]

Scholars think that God used angels to give the Law of Moses to the Israelites. That is, God created the Law of Moses and then sent his angels to deliver the Law of Moses (see: Deuteronomy 33:2; Galatians 3:19; Hebrews 2:2).

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### 7:54-60

#### Who were the council members?

[7:54]

The Council members were the religious leaders of the people, that is, the Sanhedrin.

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### What was meant by the words, “cut to the heart”?

[7:54]

When Luke wrote that the council members were “cut to the heart,” it was a metaphor. It meant that the council members were extremely angry.

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md); [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](../articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### What did Luke mean when he said the council “ground their teeth at Stephen”?

[7:54]

When Luke wrote the words “ground their teeth at Stephen” he meant the council members were so angry they closed their mouths tightly. Perhaps they did this to not do some bad because they were angry.

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md))

#### How was Stephen “full of the Holy Spirit”?

[7:55]

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fillingholyspirit.md)

#### Why was Jesus “standing at the right hand of God”?

[7:56]

Scholars think that Jesus being at the “right hand of God” was to show that Jesus had all the power of God and God gave him permission to rule everything. Some scholars think Jesus was “standing” to welcome Stephen into heaven. Stephen also called Jesus the “Son of Man.” Those who heard Stephen understood that Stephen was claiming that Jesus was God.

See: [Jesus is God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/jesusisgod.md); [Son of Man](../articles/sonofman.md); [Jesus is God](../articles/jesusisgod.md)

See: Mark 14:62; Daniel 7:13-14

#### How were the heavens opened?

[7:56]

The words that the heavens were opened was a way to say that God revealed things about heaven. God did this to honor Jesus. At the baptism of Jesus, the heavens were also opened and the Holy Spirit came upon Jesus.

See Matthew 3:16; Ezekiel 1:1

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Reveal (Revelation)](../articles/reveal.md)); [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### Why did the council members stone stephen?

[7:58]

Scholars think the Jewish council stoned Stephen to death because they believed he blasphemed God. They think he did this when he said that Jesus is God. However, this is not blasphemy because Jesus is God.

See: [Jesus is God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/jesusisgod.md); [Blaspheme (Blasphemy)](../articles/blaspheme.md); [Jesus is God](../articles/jesusisgod.md)

#### Why did the witnesses lay their clothing at Saul’s feet?

[7:58]

Scholars think the witnesses laid their clothing at Saul’s feet simply so that he would guard the clothes while they cast stones at Stephen. Some scholars do not know if Saul was leading this stoning. Other scholars think he was just watching Stephen being stoned.

#### Who was Saul?

[7:58]

Saul was the same one who had the name Paul (see: Acts 13:9) He became an apostle.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md)

#### What did Stephen mean when he cried out, “Lord Jesus, receive my spirit”?

[7:59]

Scholars think that when Stephen cried out, “Lord Jesus, receive my spirit” he was asking Jesus to welcome him into heaven, that he might be with Jesus. This prayer is very similar to that which Jesus himself prayed (see: Luke 23:6).

See: [Heaven](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heaven.md); [Heaven](../articles/heaven.md)

#### What did Stephen mean when he asked God to “not hold this sin against them”?

[7:59]

Scholars think Stephen prayed that Jesus would forgive the people who were stoning him. This prayer is very similar to the prayer Jesus prayed (see: Luke 23:34).

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md)

#### How did Stephen fall asleep?

[7:59]

When Luke wrote that Stephen “fell asleep, ” he wanted to write that Stephen died.

#### Acts 7:1

##### Connecting Statement:

The part of the story about Stephen, which began in Acts 6:8, continues. Stephen begins his response to the high priest and the council by talking about things that happened in Israel's history. Most of this history comes from Moses's writings.

#### Acts 7:2

##### General Information:

The word "our" includes both Steven, the Jewish council to whom he spoke, and the entire audience.

##### Brothers and fathers, listen to me

Stephen was being very respectful to the council in greeting them as extended family.

#### Acts 7:3

##### General Information:

The word "your" refers to Abraham and so is singular.

#### Acts 7:4

##### General Information:

In verse 4 the words "he," "his," and "him" refer to Abraham. In verse 5 the words "He" and "he" refer to God, but the word "him" refers to Abraham. Here the word "you" refers to the Jewish council and audience.

#### Acts 7:5

##### He gave none of it

"He did not give any of it"

##### enough to set a foot on

Possible meanings for this phrase are 1) enough ground to stand on or 2) enough ground to take a step. Alternate translation: "a very tiny piece of ground"

##### as a possession to him and to his descendants after him

"for Abraham to own and to give to his descendants"

#### Acts 7:6

##### God was speaking to him like this

It may be helpful to state that this occurred later than the statement in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "Later God told Abraham"

##### four hundred years

"400 years"

#### Acts 7:7

##### I will judge the nation

"nation" refers to the people in it. Alternate translation: "I will judge the people of the nation"

##### the nation that they serve

"the nation that they will serve"

#### Acts 7:8

##### gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision

The Jews would have understood that this covenant required Abraham to circumcise the males of his family. Alternate translation: "made a covenant with Abraham to circumcise the males of his family"

##### so Abraham became the father of Isaac

The story transitions to Abraham's descendants.

##### Jacob the father

"Jacob became the father." Stephen shortened this.

#### Acts 7:9

##### the patriarchs

"the founders of our tribes" or "our ancestors." A patriarch is a man who rules a family.

##### sold him into Egypt

The Jews knew their ancestors sold Joseph to be a slave in Egypt. Alternate translation: "sold him as a slave in Egypt"

##### was with him

This is an idiom for helping someone. Alternate translation: "helped him"

#### Acts 7:10

##### over Egypt

This refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: "over all the people of Egypt"

##### all his household

This refers to all his possessions. Alternate translation: "everything he owned"

#### Acts 7:11

##### Now a famine and great tribulation came

"a famine came." The ground stopped producing food and this caused a terrible suffering.

##### our fathers

This refers Jacob and his sons, who were the ancestors of the Jewish people.

#### Acts 7:12

##### grain

Grain was the most common food at that time.

##### our fathers

Here this phrase refers to Joseph's older brothers, who were Jacob's sons.

#### Acts 7:13

##### On their second trip

"On their next trip"

##### made himself known

Joseph revealed to his brothers his identity as their brother.

##### Joseph's family became known to Pharaoh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh learned that they were Joseph's family"

#### Acts 7:14

##### sent his brothers back

"sent his brothers back to Canaan" or "sent his brothers back home"

#### Acts 7:15

##### he died

Make sure it does not sound as though he died as soon as he arrived in Egypt. Alternate translation: "eventually Jacob died"

##### he and our fathers

"Jacob and his sons, who became our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:16

##### They were carried over ... and laid

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jacob's descendants carried Jacob's body and his son's bodies over ... and buried them"

##### for a price in silver

"with money"

#### Acts 7:17

##### As the time of the promise ... the people grew and multiplied

In some languages it may be helpful to say that the people increased in number before saying that the time of the promise arrived.

##### time of the promise approached

It was close to the time that God would fulfill his promise to Abraham.

#### Acts 7:18

##### there arose another king

"another king began to rule"

##### over Egypt

"Egypt" refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: "over the people of Egypt"

##### who did not know about Joseph

"Joseph" refers to the reputation of Joseph. Alternate translation: "who did not know that Joseph had helped Egypt"

#### Acts 7:19

##### General Information:

The word "our" includes Stephen and his audience.

#### Acts 7:20

##### At that time Moses was born

This introduces Moses into the story.

##### very beautiful before God

This phrase is an idiom that means Moses was very beautiful.

##### was nourished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his parents nourished him" or "his parents cared for him"

#### Acts 7:21

##### When he was placed outside

Moses was "placed outside" because of Pharaoh's command. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When his parents placed him outside" or "When they abandoned him"

##### Pharaoh's daughter ... raised him as her own son

She did for him every good thing a mother would do for her own son. Use your language's normal word for what a mother does to make sure her son becomes a healthy adult.

##### adopted him

If your language has a word for an informal procedure, not a formal legal procedure, in which one family takes a child in and raises him, you may want to use that here. Pharaoh's daughter did do for Moses what any mother would do for her child, but this involved no formal legal procedure.

##### as her own son

"as if he were her own son"

#### Acts 7:22

##### Moses was educated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Egyptians educated Moses"

##### all the wisdom of the Egyptians

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that he was trained in the best schools in Egypt.

##### mighty in his words and works

"effective in his speech and actions" or "influential in what he said and did"

#### Acts 7:23

##### it came into his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for "mind." The phrase "it came into his heart" is an idiom that means to decide something. Alternate translation: "it came into his mind" or "he decided"

##### visit his brothers, the descendants of Israel

This refers to his people, and not just to his family. Alternate translation: "see how his own people, the children of Israel, were doing"

#### Acts 7:24

##### Seeing an Israelite being mistreated ... the Egyptian

This can be stated in active form by rearranging the order. Alternate translation: "Seeing an Egyptian mistreating an Israelite, Moses defended and avenged the Israelite by striking the Egyptian who was oppressing him"

##### striking the Egyptian

Moses hit the Egyptian so hard that he died.

#### Acts 7:25

##### he thought

"he imagined"

##### by his hand, was giving them salvation

Here "hand" refers to the actions of Moses. Alternate translation: "was giving them salvation through what he, Moses, was doing"

##### was giving them salvation

The abstract noun "salvation" can be translated using the verb "save." Alternate translation: "was saving them" or "was rescuing them"

#### Acts 7:26

##### when they were fighting

Some translations make it clear that two men were fighting. Alternate translation: "when two men of Israel were fighting"

##### make peace between them

"make them stop fighting"

##### Men, you are brothers

Moses was addressing the Israelites who were fighting.

##### why are you wronging one another?

Moses asked this question to encourage them to stop fighting. Alternate translation: "you should not do wrong to each other!"

#### Acts 7:27

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the Israelites but does not include Moses.

##### Who appointed you a ruler and a judge over us?

The man used this question to rebuke Moses. Alternate translation: "No one appointed you ruler or judge over us." or "You have no authority over us!"

#### Acts 7:28

##### Would you like to kill me, as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?

The man used this question to warn Moses that he and probably others knew Moses had killed the Egyptian.

#### Acts 7:29

##### General Information:

Stephen's audience already knew that Moses had married a Midianite woman when he fled Egypt.

##### after hearing this

The implied information is that Moses understood that the Israelites knew that he had killed an Egyptian the day before (Acts 7:28).

#### Acts 7:30

##### When forty years were past

"After 40 years passed." This was the amount of time Moses had been in Midian. Alternate translation: "Forty years after Moses fled from Egypt"

##### an angel appeared

Stephen's audience knew that God spoke through the angel.

#### Acts 7:31

##### he marveled at the sight

Moses was surprised that the bush was not burning up in the fire. This was previously known by Stephen's audience. Alternate translation: "because the bush was not burning up"

##### as he approached to look at it

This may mean Moses initially drew close to the bush to investigate.

#### Acts 7:32

##### I am the God of your fathers

"I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped"

##### Moses trembled and did not dare to look

This may mean Moses drew back in fear when he heard the voice.

##### Moses trembled

Moses shook from fear. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Moses trembled with fear"

#### Acts 7:33

##### Take off the sandals

God told Moses this so he would honor God.

##### for the place where you are standing is holy ground

The implied information is that where God is present, the immediate area around God is considered holy or is made holy by God.

#### Acts 7:34

##### certainly seen

"seen for sure." The word "certainly" adds emphasis to "seen."

##### the oppression of my people

The abstract noun "oppression" can be translated using the verb "oppress." Alternate translation: "the way the Egyptians are oppressing my people"

##### my people

The word "my" emphasizes that these people belonged to God. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob"

##### I have come down to rescue them

"will personally cause their release"

##### now come

"get ready." God uses an order here.

#### Acts 7:35

##### General Information:

Verses 35-38 contain a series of connected phrases referring to Moses. Each phrase begins with statements such as "This Moses" or "This same Moses" or "This is the man" or "It is the same Moses." If possible, use similar statements to emphasize Moses. After the Israelites left Egypt, they spent 40 years wandering around the wilderness before God led them into the land he had promised them.

##### This Moses whom they rejected

This refers back to the events recorded in Acts 7:27-28.

##### deliverer

"rescuer"

##### by the hand of the angel ... bush

The hand is a metonym for the action performed by the person. In this case, the angel had commanded Moses to return to Egypt. Stephen speaks as if the angel had a physical hand. You may need to make explicit what action the angel did. Alternate translation: "by the action of the angel" or "by having the angel ... bush command him to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:36

##### during forty years

Stephen's audience knew about the forty years the Israelites spent in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "during the 40 years that the Israelite people lived in the wilderness"

#### Acts 7:37

##### raise up a prophet

"cause a man to be a prophet"

##### from among your brothers

"from among your own people"

#### Acts 7:38

##### This is the man who was in the assembly

"This is the man Moses who was among the Israelites"

##### This is the man

The phrase "This is the man" throughout this passage refers to Moses.

##### who received living words to give to us

God was the one who gave those words. Alternate translation: "to whom God spoke living words to give to us"

##### living words

Possible meanings are 1) "a message that endures" or 2) "words that give life."

#### Acts 7:39

##### pushed him away from themselves

This metaphor emphasizes their rejection of Moses. Alternate translation: "they rejected him as their leader"

##### in their hearts they turned back

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's thoughts. To do something in the heart means to desire do to something. Alternate translation: "they desired to turn back"

#### Acts 7:40

##### General Information:

The quotation in this verse is from the writings of Moses.

##### At that time

"When they decided to return to Egypt"

#### Acts 7:41

##### they made a calf

Stephen's audience knew the calf they made was a statue. Alternate translation: "they made a statue that looked like a calf"

##### a calf ... the idol ... the work of their hands

These phrases all refer to the same statue of the calf.

#### Acts 7:42

##### General Information:

Stephen's quotation here is from the prophet Amos.

##### God turned

"God turned away." This action expresses that God was not pleased with the people and no longer helped them. Alternate translation: "God stopped correcting them"

##### gave them up

"abandoned them"

##### the stars in the sky

Possible meanings for the original phrase are 1) the stars only or 2) the sun, moon, and stars.

##### the book of the prophets

This was apparently a collection of the writings of several of the Old Testament prophets into one scroll. It would also have included the writings of Amos.

##### Did you bring me offerings and sacrifices ... Israel?

God asked this question to show Israel they did not worship him with their sacrifices. Alternate translation: "You did not honor me when brought offerings and sacrifices ... Israel."

##### house of Israel

This refers to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "all you Israelites"

#### Acts 7:43

##### General Information:

The quotation from the prophet Amos continues here.

##### Connecting Statement:

Stephen continues his response to the high priest and the council which he began in Acts 7:2.

##### You accepted

It is implied that they took these idols with them as they traveled in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "you carried with you from place to place"

##### tabernacle of Molech

the tent that housed the false god Molech

##### the star of the god Rephan

the star that is identified with the false god Rephan

##### the images that you made

They made statues or images of the gods Molech and Rephan in order to worship them.

##### I will carry you away beyond Babylon

"I will remove you to places even farther than Babylon." This would be God's act of judgment.

#### Acts 7:44

##### the tabernacle of the testimony

The tent that housed the ark (a box) with the 10 commandments carved in stone inside it

#### Acts 7:45

##### our fathers, under Joshua, received the tabernacle and brought it with them

The phrase "under Joshua" means that their ancestors did these things in obedience to Joshua's direction. Alternate translation: "our fathers, in accordance with Joshua's instructions, received the tabernacle and brought it with them"

##### God took the land from the nations and drove them out before the face of our fathers

This sentence tells why the ancestors were able to take possession of the land. Alternate translation: "God forced the nations to leave the land before the face of our fathers"

##### God ... drove them out before the face of our fathers

Here "the face of our fathers" refers to the presence of their ancestors. Possible meanings are 1) "As our ancestors watched, God ... drove them out" or 2) "When our ancestors came, God ... drove them out"

##### the nations

This refers to the people who lived in the land before Israel. Alternate translation: "the people who previously lived here"

##### drove them out

"forced them to leave the land"

#### Acts 7:46

##### he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob

Here "house" is probably a metonym for the ark of the covenant. David wanted to build a place for the ark, which represented God's presence, so people could go there to worship God. Alternate translation: "he might build a place where people could worship the God of Jacob"

##### the house of Jacob

Many versions read, "the God of Jacob."

#### Acts 7:47

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 7:48

##### made with hands

The hand is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "made by people"

#### Acts 7:49

##### General Information:

In verses 49 and 50, Stephen quotes from the prophet Isaiah. In the quotation, God is speaking about himself.

##### Heaven is my throne ... the earth is the footstool for my feet

The prophet is comparing the greatness of God's presence to how impossible it is for man to build a place for God to rest on earth since the whole earth is nothing but a place for God to rest his feet.

##### What kind of house can you build for me?

God asks this question to show how useless man's efforts are to take care of God. Alternate translation: "You can not build a house adequate enough for me!"

##### what is the place for my rest?

God asks this question to show man that he cannot provide God any rest. Alternate translation: "There is no place of rest good enough for me!"

#### Acts 7:50

##### General Information:

In verses 49 and 50, Stephen quotes from the prophet Isaiah. In the quotation, God is speaking about himself.

##### Did my hand not make all these things?

God asks this question to show that man did not create anything. Alternate translation: "My hand made all these things!"

#### Acts 7:51

##### Connecting Statement:

With a sharp rebuke, Stephen finishes his response to the high priest and the council, which he began in Acts 7:2.

##### You stiff-necked people

Stephen shifts from identifying with the Jewish leaders to rebuking them.

##### uncircumcised in heart and ears

The Jews regarded uncircumcised people as disobedient to God. Stephen uses "hearts and ears" to represent to the Jewish leaders who acted the way Gentiles act when they do not obey or listen to God. Alternate translation: "you refuse to obey and hear"

#### Acts 7:52

##### Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute?

Stephen asked this question to show them that they learned nothing from the errors of their forefathers. Alternate translation: "Your forefathers persecuted every prophet!"

##### Righteous One

This refers to the Christ, the Messiah.

##### you have now become the betrayers and murderers of him also

"you have also betrayed and murdered him"

##### murderers of him

"murderers of the Righteous One" or "murderers of the Christ"

#### Acts 7:53

##### the law that angels had ordained

"the laws that God caused angels to give to our ancestors"

#### Acts 7:54

##### Connecting Statement:

The council reacts to Stephen's words.

##### Now when the council members heard these things

This is the turning point; the sermon ends and the council members react.

##### they were furious in their hearts

This means that they were extremely angry.

##### ground their teeth at Stephen

This action expressed their strong anger at Stephen or hatred of Stephen. Alternate translation: "they became so angry that they ground their teeth together" or "moved their teeth back and forth as they looked at Stephen"

#### Acts 7:55

##### looked up intently into heaven

"stared up into heaven." It appears that only Stephen saw this vision and not anyone else in the crowd.

##### saw the glory of God

People normally experienced the glory of God as a bright light. Alternate translation: "saw a bright light from God"

##### and he saw Jesus standing at the right hand of God

To stand at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "and he saw Jesus standing in the place of honor and authority beside God"

#### Acts 7:56

##### Son of Man

Stephen refers to Jesus by the title "Son of Man."

#### Acts 7:57

##### covered their ears

"put their hands on their ears." They did this to show that they did not want to hear any more of what Stephen said.

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 7:58

##### They forced him out of the city

"They seized Stephen and forcefully took him out of the city"

##### outer clothing

These are cloaks or robes they would wear outside to stay warm, similar in function to a jacket or coat.

##### at the feet

"in front of." They were placed there so Saul could watch them.

##### a young man

Saul was probably around 30 years old at the time.

#### Acts 7:59

##### receive my spirit

"take my spirit." It may be helpful to add "please" to show that this was a request. Alternate translation: "please receive my spirit"

#### Acts 7:60

##### Connecting Statement:

This ends the story of Stephen.

##### He knelt down

This is an act of submission to God.

##### do not hold this sin against them

This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "forgive them for this sin"

##### fell asleep

Here to fall asleep is a euphemism for dying. Alternate translation: "died"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 7:2

##### Stephen began to review the history of the Jewish people beginning with God's promise to whom?

Stephen began his history by talking about God's promise to Abraham.

#### Acts 7:5

##### What was God's promise to Abraham?

God promised land to Abraham and his descendants.

##### Why did God's promise to Abraham seem impossible to fulfill?

God's promise seemed impossible because Abraham had no children.

#### Acts 7:6

##### What did God say would first happen to Abraham's descendants for four hundred years?

God said Abraham's descendants would be slaves in a foreign land for four hundred years.

#### Acts 7:8

##### What covenant did God give to Abraham?

God gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision.

#### Acts 7:9

##### How did Joseph become a slave in Egypt?

His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into Egypt.

#### Acts 7:10

##### How did Joseph become governor over Egypt?

God gave Joseph favor and wisdom in the presence of Pharaoh.

#### Acts 7:12

##### What did Jacob do when there was famine in Canaan?

Jacob sent his sons to Egypt because he heard there was grain there.

#### Acts 7:13

##### What did Jacob do when there was famine in Canaan?

Jacob sent his sons to Egypt because he heard there was grain there.

#### Acts 7:14

##### Why did Jacob and his relatives move to Egypt?

Joseph sent his brothers to tell Jacob to come to Egypt.

#### Acts 7:17

##### What happened to the number of Israelites in Egypt as the time promised to Abraham drew near?

The number of Israelites in Egypt grew and multiplied.

#### Acts 7:19

##### How did the new king of Egypt try to reduce the number of Israelites?

The new king of Egypt forced the Israelites to throw out their infants so they would not survive.

#### Acts 7:21

##### How did Moses survive being thrown out?

Pharaoh's daughter took Moses and raised him as her own son.

#### Acts 7:22

##### How was Moses educated?

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians.

#### Acts 7:24

##### When he was forty years old, what did Moses do when he saw an Israelite being mistreated?

Moses defended the Israelite and struck the Egyptian.

#### Acts 7:29

##### To where did Moses flee?

Moses fled to Midian.

#### Acts 7:30

##### When Moses was eighty years old, what did Moses see?

Moses saw an angel in a flame of fire in a bush.

#### Acts 7:34

##### Where did the Lord command Moses to go, and what was God going to do there?

The Lord commanded Moses to go to Egypt, because God was going to rescue the Israelites.

#### Acts 7:36

##### How long did Moses lead the Israelites in the wilderness?

Moses led the Israelites in the wilderness for forty years.

#### Acts 7:37

##### What did Moses prophesy to the Israelites?

Moses prophesied to the Israelites that God would raise up a prophet like him from among their brothers.

#### Acts 7:41

##### How did the Israelites turn their hearts back to Egypt?

The Israelites made a calf and sacrificed to the idol.

#### Acts 7:42

##### How did God respond to the Israelites turning away from him?

God turned from the Israelites and gave them up to serve the host of heaven.

#### Acts 7:43

##### To where did God say he would carry away the Israelites?

God said he would carry the Israelites away to Babylon.

#### Acts 7:44

##### In the wilderness, what did God command the Israelites to build, which they later carried into the land?

In the wilderness, the Israelites built the tabernacle of the testimony.

#### Acts 7:45

##### In the wilderness, what did God command the Israelites to build, which they later carried into the land?

In the wilderness, the Israelites built the tabernacle of the testimony.

##### Who drove out the nations ahead of the Israelites?

God drove out the nations ahead of the Israelites.

#### Acts 7:46

##### Who asked to build a dwelling place for God?

David asked to build a dwelling place for God.

#### Acts 7:47

##### Who actually built God a house?

Solomon built God a house.

#### Acts 7:49

##### Where does the Most High have his throne?

The Most High has heaven as his throne.

#### Acts 7:51

##### What did Stephen accuse the people of always doing, just as their forefathers had done?

Stephen accused the people of resisting the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 7:52

##### What did Stephen say the people were guilty of concerning the Righteous One?

Stephen said the people had betrayed and murdered the Righteous One.

#### Acts 7:54

##### How did the council members respond to Stephen's accusations?

The council members were cut to the heart and ground their teeth at Stephen.

#### Acts 7:55

##### What did Stephen say he saw as he looked up into heaven?

Stephen said he saw Jesus standing on the right hand of God.

#### Acts 7:56

##### What did Stephen say he saw as he looked up into heaven?

Stephen said he saw Jesus standing on the right hand of God.

#### Acts 7:57

##### What did the council members then do to Stephen?

The council members rushed upon him, threw him out of the city, and stoned him.

#### Acts 7:58

##### What did the council members then do to Stephen?

The council members rushed upon him, threw him out of the city, and stoned him.

##### Where did the witnesses lay down their outer clothes during the stoning of Stephen?

The witnesses laid their outer clothes at the feet of a young man named Saul.

#### Acts 7:60

##### What was the last thing Stephen asked for before he died?

Stephen asked God not to hold this sin to the people's responsibility.

### Chapter 8

**1** Saul was in agreement with his death.

So there began on that day a great persecution against the church that was in Jerusalem; and the believers were all scattered throughout the regions of Judea and Samaria, except the apostles. **2** Devout men buried Stephen and made great lamentation over him. **3** But Saul tried to destroy the church. He would enter house after house, drag off both men and women, and put them in prison.

**4** Yet the believers who had been scattered went about preaching the word. **5** Philip went down to the city of Samaria and proclaimed to them the Christ. **6** Crowds of people were giving close attention to what was being said by Philip; with one mind they heard him, and they saw the signs he did. **7** Unclean spirits came out of many who were possessed, crying out with a loud voice, and many who were paralyzed and lame were healed. **8** So there was much joy in that city.

**9** But there was a certain man in the city named Simon, who had earlier been practicing sorcery; he used to astonish the people of Samaria while claiming that he was an important person. **10** All the Samaritans, from the least to the greatest, paid attention to him; they said, "This man is that power of God which is called Great." **11** They listened to him because he had astonished them for a long time with his sorceries. **12** But when they believed Philip as he proclaimed the gospel about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women. **13** Even Simon himself believed, and after he was baptized he stayed with Philip constantly. When he saw signs and mighty works taking place, he was amazed.

**14** Now when the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent to them Peter and John. **15** When they had come down, they prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Spirit. **16** For until that time, the Holy Spirit had not come upon any of them; they had only been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus. **17** Then Peter and John placed their hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit. **18** Now when Simon saw that the Holy Spirit was given through the laying on of the apostles' hands, he offered them money. **19** He said, "Give me this authority, too, that whoever I place my hands on might receive the Holy Spirit."

**20** But Peter said to him, "May your silver perish along with you, because you thought to obtain the gift of God with money. **21** You have no part or allotted portion in this matter, because your heart is not right with God. **22** Therefore repent of this wickedness of yours, and pray to the Lord, so that he might perhaps forgive you for the intention of your heart. **23** For I see that you are in the poison of bitterness and in the bonds of unrighteousness."

**24** Simon answered and said, "Pray to the Lord for me, so that nothing you have said may happen to me."

**25** When they had testified and spoken the word of the Lord, Peter and John returned to Jerusalem, proclaiming the gospel to many villages of the Samaritans.

**26** Now an angel of the Lord spoke to Philip and said, "Arise and go toward the south to the road that goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza." (This road is in a desert.) **27** He arose and went. Behold, there was a man from Ethiopia, a eunuch of great authority under Candace, queen of the Ethiopians. He was in charge of all her treasure. He had come to Jerusalem to worship. **28** He was returning and sitting in his chariot, and was reading the prophet Isaiah.

**29** The Spirit said to Philip, "Go over and stay close to this chariot."

**30** So Philip ran to him, and heard him reading Isaiah the prophet, and said, "Do you understand what you are reading?"

**31** Then he said, "How can I, unless someone guides me?" He invited Philip to come up into the chariot and sit with him.

**32** Now the passage of the scripture which the Ethiopian was reading was this,

"He was led like a sheep to the slaughter,

and like a lamb before his shearer is silent,

so he did not open his mouth.

**33** In his humiliation

justice was taken away from him.

Who can give a full account of his descendants?

For his life was taken from the earth."

**34** So the eunuch asked Philip, and said, "I beg you, tell me who is the prophet speaking about, himself, or someone else?" **35** Philip began to speak, and beginning with this scripture he proclaimed the gospel about Jesus to him. **36** As they went on the road, they came to some water and the eunuch said, "Look, there is water here. What prevents me from being baptized?" **37***[*[1](#fn-044-008-037-1)*]***38** So the Ethiopian commanded the chariot to stop. They went down into the water, both Philip and the eunuch, and Philip baptized him. **39** When they came up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away, and the eunuch saw him no more, but went on his way rejoicing. **40** But Philip appeared at Azotus and he went through that region, proclaiming the gospel to all the cities until he came to Caesarea.

#### Footnotes

8:37 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-008-037-1)*]*The best ancient copies do not have Acts 8:37,

### Acts 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 8:32-33.

The first sentence of verse 1 ends the description of the events in chapter 7. Luke begins a new part of his history with the words "So there began."

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Receiving the Holy Spirit

In this chapter for the first time Luke speaks of people receiving the Holy Spirit (Acts 8:15-19). The Holy Spirit had already enabled the believers to speak in tongues, to heal the sick, and to live as a community, and he had filled Stephen. But when the Jews started putting believers in prison, those believers who could leave Jerusalem did leave, and as they went, they told people about Jesus. When the people who heard about Jesus received the Holy Spirit, the church leaders knew that those people had truly become believers.

##### Proclaimed

This chapter more than any other in the Book of Acts speaks of the believers proclaiming the word, proclaiming the good news, and proclaiming that Jesus is the Christ. The word "proclaim" translates a Greek word that means to tell good news about something.

### Acts 8

#### 8:1-3

#### How was Saul “in agreement” with Stephen’s death?

[8:1]

Saul thought that Stephen should die. When the angry people threw stones at Stephen, Saul guarded their clothes they took off themselves (see: Acts 7:58). Scholars think Saul later changed his name to Paul after he became a Christian.

See Acts 22:20

#### What was a “great persecution”?

[8:1]

A “strong and violent persecution” began when the angry people killed Stephen. The people from a certain synagogue organized attacks in Jerusalem. They put many Christians in prison. Saul went from house to house and put Christians in prison (see: Acts 8:3). The Christians who were not in prison quickly left Jerusalem and went to Samaria and other places in Judea to escape persecution. Only the apostles stayed in Jerusalem at that time.

Some scholars think those who left Jerusalem were the Greek-speaking Jewish Christians and not the Hebrew and Aramaic speaking Jewish Christians. The Hebrew and Aramic speaking Jewish Christians were more loyal to Jerusalem. Other scholars think the persecution was stronger against the Greek-speaking Jewish Christians. Thus, the apostles, who were Hebrew and Aramaic speaking Jewish Christians, were able to stay in Jerusalem.

See: 1 Thessalonians 2:14

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Synagogue](../articles/synagogue.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

See Map: Jerusalem; Samaria; Judea

#### Who were the “devout men” who buried Stephen?

[8:2]

The “devout men” were men who feared God and lived in a way that honored God. These men took Stephen’s body to bury it in the way the Law of Moses required. Scholars think these men believed in Jesus.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### 8:4-8

#### What was “preaching the word”?

[8:4]

See: Galatians 2:19-20

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Word of God](../articles/wordofgod.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

#### What was “proclaimed to them the Christ”?

[8:5]

Philip told those in Samaria the important story about the messiah. He told them that Jesus was the messiah of the Jewish and Samaritan people, and that he lived a perfect life. Jesus did many miracles and taught them about God. Jesus suffered, died, and became alive again on the third day.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md); [Atone (Atonement)](../articles/atone.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md)

See Map: Samaria

#### Who was Philip?

[8:5]

Philip was one of the seven brothers the Christians chose to help widows (see: Acts 6:5).

#### How did people give “close attention”?

[8:6]

The crowds listened together with complete attention. All of the people watched and listened to what Philip said because he did miracles and he spoke strongly.

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md)

#### What was a sign?

[8:6]

A sign was a miracle that God did and people were able to see it (see: Acts 8:7).

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md); [Sign](../articles/sign.md)

#### What is an unclean spirit?

[8:7]

An unclean spirit is an evil spirit. It is also called a demon. Unclean spirits and demons obey Satan.

See: [Satan (The Devil)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/satan.md); [Demon](../articles/demon.md); [Satan (The Devil)](../articles/satan.md)

#### What was a paralyzed person? A lame person?

[8:7]

A paralyzed person was someone who was partially or completely unable to move.

A lame person was someone who was injured or had an illness and were not able to walk well or they were not able to walk at all.

#### 8:9-13

#### Why did the people think God gave power to the man who did sorcery?

[8:9]

The people believed God gave power to the man who did sorcery because he did amazing things for a long time and he claimed to be someone great (see: Acts 8:9,11).

See: [Sorcery](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sorcery.md)

#### What was the gospel of the kingdom of God?

[8:12]

See: [Kingdom of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingdomofgod.md); [Kingdom of God](../articles/kingdomofgod.md)

#### What did the people do after they believed the good news about Jesus and the kingdom of God?

[8:12]

The people, both men and women, were baptized immediately after they believed the good news about Jesus and the kingdom of God.

See: [Kingdom of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingdomofgod.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Kingdom of God](../articles/kingdomofgod.md)

#### Why did Simon, who had great power of God, believe and be baptized?

[8:13]

Simon believed and was baptized because he was surprised when he saw the signs and mighty works Philip did with God’s power. That is, the Samaritans thought Simon had great power of God, but Simon himself was amazed when he saw God’s power through Philip. Simon knew about power from God and he knew something more powerful than his power worked through Philip. His trust in miracles and power was not enough for him to believe for very long. He soon became more interested in power than in believing (see: Acts 8:18-19). Jesus knew Simon was thinking in the wrong way (see: John 2:23-24).

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md); [Sign](../articles/sign.md)

#### 8:14-25

#### What did the apostles in Jerusalem think about the Samaritans believing in Jesus, the Messiah?

[8:14]

The apostles in Jerusalem were glad the Samaritans believed in Jesus and they were not surprised. They did, however, feel it was their duty to inspect the new work to make sure it was true and good (see: Acts 11:22). Before, John went to Samaria because before that he wanted Jesus to call down fire from heaven on the Samaritans for rejecting Jesus since Jesus was on his way to Jerusalem (see: Luke 9:52-55). Now, John went to see for himself if the Samaritans believed in Jesus. Then, John told other Samaritan villages about Jesus and the gospel (see: Acts 8:25).

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Samaria](../articles/samaria.md); [Fire](../articles/fire.md); [Heaven](../articles/heaven.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

See Map: Jerusalem

#### How did Samaria receive the “word” of God?

[8:14]

Samaria received the “word”(λόγος/g3056) of God when they believed Jesus is the messiah, the Son of God, and the power of salvation (see: Romans 1:2-5). It was a way to say they believed the things Philip said about Jesus, who is the “Word” of God (see: John 1:1).

See: [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/save.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Son of God](../articles/sonofgod.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md)

#### Why did the apostles send Peter and John to Samaria?

[8:14]

Scholars give several reasons why the apostles sent Peter and John to Samaria.

The Jewish Christians in Jerusalem needed evidence that God accepted the Samaritans. The Jews in general did not accept the Samaritans because the Samaritans were a mixed race of Jews who married Gentiles (see: 2 Kings 17:26). So the apostles sent Peter and John to see the new work of God in Samaria.

It was necessary for the apostles from Jerusalem to welcome the Samaritan Christians. Then the Christians in Jerusalem would be able to fully include Samaritan Christians into the Christian community. The Christian community was only Jewish people until that time.

It was not necessary for the apostles from the Jerusalem church to welcome the Samaritan Christians. Luke did not write it was necessary. Later, Paul wrote that other Christians who were not apostles baptized people (see: 1 Corinthians 1:14-17).

God wanted to use the apostles when the first Gentiles received the Holy Spirit.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Samaria](../articles/samaria.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

See Map: Samaria

#### Why did Luke write “to come down” to Samaria?

[8:15]

Samaria was lower in elevation from Jerusalem. Jerusalem is high in elevation. So they came down to Samaria from Jerusalem.

See: [Samaria](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/samaria.md)

#### What happened when the apostles Peter and John prayed and laid hands on the Samaritans for them to receive the Holy Spirit?

[8:15, 8:16, 8:17]

Luke did not write what happened when the apostles Peter and John prayed and laid hands on the Samaritans for them to receive the Holy Spirit. Some scholars think they spoke in tongues because that happened at other times when the Holy Spirit filled people in Acts (see: Acts 2:4; 10:44-46; 19:6). Other scholars think there were other gifts of the Spirit or signs because Luke did not write the Samaritans spoke in tongues.

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md); [Pray (Prayer](../articles/prayprayer.md); [Laying on of Hands](../articles/layinghands.md) ;[Samaria](../articles/samaria.md); Speaking in Tongues; [Sign](../articles/sign.md)

#### Why did Simon want to give the apostles money to give the Holy Spirit to people?

[8:18]

Simon wanted to do the same things an apostle did. Then he will have the power to give people the Holy Spirit when he laid his hands on people. He liked having power and this was another way for him to have power over people and bring glory to himself.

See: [Glory (Glorify)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/glory.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Laying on of Hands](../articles/layinghands.md) ; [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md); [Glory (Glorify)](../articles/glory.md)

#### Why did Peter rebuke Simon for wanting to buy the power of God from the apostles?

[8:20, 8:21]

Peter rebuked Simon for wanting to buy the free gift of God with money. The Holy Spiritwas not for sale. People did not need money to have the gifts of God (see: Acts 8:20). Instead, a person repented and believed in Jesus. God’s gift of the Holy Spirit to live in everyone was a free gift for all who believed in him.

See: Acts 3:6

See: [Redeem (Redemption)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/redeem.md); [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md); [Redeem (Redemption)](../articles/redeem.md)

#### What did Peter wish will perish?

[8:20]

Peter wanted Simon to not have money. Peter did not wish for Simon to die.

#### What was the “part or allotted portion” for which Simon did not have the right heart?

[8:21]

Peter and John knew Simon did not have the right heart. That is, he did not think the right things and they did not think Simon should be a leader.

See: [Heart (Metaphor)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heart.md)

#### When was a person’s heart not right with God?

[8:21]

A person’s heart was not right with God when a person did not live in a way that honors God or does not want to live in a way that honors God.

See: [Heart (Metaphor)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heart.md)

#### Why did Peter say God “might perhaps forgive”?

[8:22]

Peter did not question if God was able to forgive Simon. He said these words because he did not know if God will forgive Simon. His sin of offering money for the gift of God was a serious sin. God will not allow man to control God (see: 2 Samuel 6:1-7).

See: Joshua 7:1

#### How did a person repent?

[8:22]

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md)

#### How was Simon “in the poison of bitterness and in the bonds of unrighteousness”?

[8:23]

Some scholars think Simon was still controlled by his old self. That is he sinfully wanted power and glory. Simon was a Christian. He believed the message from Philip and he was baptized, but he still wanted to do evil (see: Romans 7:8,19). Other scholars think Simon was not a Christian. He was not part of the kingdom of God (see: John 8:31,44-47). Simon really wanted to have power over others by having the permission to give the Holy Spirit to others. If he repented and asked God’s forgiveness, then God would forgive and heal him. Then, God would give him the Holy Spirit to help him to stop sinning and wanting to sin

See: Deuteronomy 29:17-18

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md); [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md); [Old and New Self](../articles/oldnewself.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md)

#### How did Simon respond to Peter?

[8:24]

Simon did not respond according to what Peter said. Peter told Simon to pray and repent. Instead Simon asked Peter to pray for him.

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md)

#### 8:26-31

#### What is an angel?

[8:26]

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### Where was Gaza?

[8:26]

See Map: Gaza

#### Where was Ethiopia?

[8:27]

Ethiopia, or Cush, was where the ancient kingdom of Nubia was located. It was in the southern part of Egypt in what today includes part of Sudan.

See Map: Ethiopia; Sudan; Cush.

#### What was a eunuch?

[8:27]

A eunuch was a man whose testicles were cut off. This was usually done for a certain purpose Sometimes this was done so the man could guard the women in a royal palace. This eunuch was the treasurer for the queen of the Ethiopians. He had great power. In Israel, a eunuch was not allowed in the military and could not worship God with other people. God did not want the people of Israel to make their boys eunuchs (see: Genesis 1:27-28).

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articlesworship.md)

#### Why did the eunuch go to Jerusalem to worship?

[8:27]

The eunuch went to Jerusalem to worship God because he feared the God of Israel. However, because this man was an eunuch and a gentile, he was not allowed to go into the temple area. He was reading the book of Isaiah. Some scholars say he wanted to see the memorial for eunuchs inside the temple (see Isaiah 56:3-5). Other scholars say the prophecy of Isaiah became complete when this eunuch believed in Jesus and was baptized (see: Isaiah 56:3-7). There was also another Ethiopian eunuch who went to Jerusalem (see Jeremiah 38:7-13).

See: Leviticus 23

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md); [Fear of God](../articles/fearofgod.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md)

#### What was a chariot?

[8:28]

A chariot was a two-wheel vehicle pulled by horses or a horse. It was often used for war or racing. Certain leads travelled in chariots to go from one place to another place. Since this eunuch was the treasurer of the queen of the Ethiopians, this was a larger chariot.

See: [Chariot](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/chariot.md)

#### How was the man reading?

[8:28]

The man was reading aloud from the book of Isaiah and Philip heard him reading. In ancient times, people did not often read silently.

See: Isaiah 53:7-8

#### Why did the man not understand the things Isaiah wrote about?

[8:30, 8:31]

The man did not understand the things Isaiah wrote about because he did not have anyone to explain this prophecy. He asked Philip to sit beside him and tell him about what Isaiah wrote (see: Isaiah 53).

#### Whom did the prophet Isaiah write about in Isaiah 53?

[8:32, 8:33, 8:34, 8:35]

The prophet Isaiah wrote about Jesus in Isaiah 53. It was a prophecy about a servant of God who was persecuted. Isaiah wrote about Jesus. The servant of God suffered and was rejected for other people. That is, God forgave others because Jesus died. However, the suffering servant prophesied about Jesus’ resurrection when Isaiah spoke about Jesus seeing the light of life again (see: Isaiah 53:11).

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md)

#### What things did the eunuch read from Isaiah 53 about the death of Jesus?

[8:32, 8:33, 8:34, 8:35]

The eunuch read several things read from Isaiah 53 about the death of Jesus.

Jesus was led like sheep to the slaughter. This is a metaphor. Jesus died in the same way sheep died. Sheep follow and go where they are led, even if they will die. Jesus died to obey God and was willing to die to obey God.

Jesus was silent like a lamb before his shearer. This is a metaphor. Jesus did not argue with God to try to keep living. He did not try to stop people from killing him. He did not open his mouth (see: Matthew 26:62, 63).

In his humiliation, justice was taken away from Jesus. That is, Jesus was humble and did not speak and try to defend himself. People said he was guilty and punished him even though he was innocent.

No can give a full account of all of Jesus’ descendants. That is, Jesus has more children than anyone can count. Jesus did not have any children and never had sex. However, all Christians are part of Jesus’ family and are children of God.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancestor.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md); [Crucify (Crucifixion)](../articles/crucify.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md); [Lamb of God](../articles/lambofgod.md); [Punish (Punishment)](../articles/punish.md); [Family of God](../articles/familyofgod.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md)

#### Why did the eunuch ask to be baptized?

[8:36]

The eunuch asked to be baptized because Philip explained the prophet Isaiah’s words about Jesus. That is, if someone believed in Jesus, then they should be baptized. The eunuch believed in Jesus so he asked to be baptized. There was much more about “the gospel about Jesus” Philip told the eunuch that Luke did not write. This was why Luke wrote, “Beginning with this Scripture.” Philip began with the Scripture from Isaiah that the eunuch was reading, but Philip explained more than just those few verses.

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### Did Luke write verse 37?

[8:37]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have verse 37. More and older copies of the Greek New Testament do not have verse 37. Scholars do not think Luke wrote the words in verse 37.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/differencesbible.md)

#### How did the Spirit of the Lord take Phillp away?

[8:39]

The Spirit of the Lord took Philip away miraculously. That is, Philip vanished quickly and then he appeared somewhere else. The Spirit of the Lord is also called the Holy Spirit.

See: 1 Kings 18:12; 2 Kings 2:16; Ezekiel 3:14; 8:3

See: [Lord](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lord.md); [Lord](../articles/lord.md)

#### Why did the eunuch go on his way with rejoicing?

[8:39]

The eunuch experienced the same joy the Samaritans did when they believed in Jesus (see: Acts 8:8). The eunuch continued on the road home “rejoicing” (χαίρω/G5463) or “being glad.” It did not matter to him that God took away Philip.

See: [Samaria](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/samaria.md);[Samaria](../articles/samaria.md)

#### Where were Azotus and Caesarea?

[8:40]

Azotus was the Greek name of the city of Ashdod in the Old Testament.

See: [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/oldtestament.md)

See Map: Azotus

#### Acts 8:1

##### General Information:

It may be helpful to your audience to move these parts of the story about Stephen together by using a verse bridge as the UDB does.

##### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts from Stephen to Saul in these verses.

##### So there began ... except the apostles

This part of verse 1 is background information about the persecution that began after Stephen's death. This explains why Saul was persecuting the believers in verse 3.

##### that day

This refers to the day that Stephen died (Acts 7:59-60).

##### the believers were all scattered

The word "all" is a generalization to express that a large number of the believers left Jerusalem because of the persecution.

##### except the apostles

This statement implies that the apostles remained in Jerusalem even though they also experienced this great persecution.

#### Acts 8:2

##### Devout men

"God-fearing men" or "Men who feared God"

##### made great lamentation over him

"greatly mourned his death"

#### Acts 8:3

##### house after house

"houses one by one"

##### drag off both men and women

"took away both men and women by force." Saul forcefully took Jewish believers out of their homes and put them into prison.

##### men and women

This refers to men and women who believed in Jesus.

#### Acts 8:4

##### who had been scattered

The cause for the scattering, the persecution, was stated previously. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who had fled the great persecution"

##### the word

This is a metonym for "the message." You may need to make explicit that the message was about Jesus. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 8:5

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the story of Philip, whom the people had chosen as a deacon.

##### went down to the city of Samaria

The phrase "went down" is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### the city of Samaria

Possible meanings are 1) Luke expected the readers to know which city he was writing about. Alternate translation: "the main city in Samaria" or 2) Luke did not expect his readers to know which city he was writing about. Alternate translation: "a city in Samaria"

##### proclaimed to them the Christ

The title "Christ" refers to Jesus, the Messiah. Alternate translation: "told them about Jesus Christ" or "told them about Jesus the Messiah"

#### Acts 8:6

##### Crowds of people

"Many people in the city of Samaria." The location was specified in Acts 8:5.

##### were giving close attention

The reason people paid attention was because of all the healing Philip did.

##### with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

#### Acts 8:7

##### who were possessed

"who had them" or "who were controlled by them"

#### Acts 8:8

##### So there was much joy in that city

The phrase "that city" refers to the people who were rejoicing. Alternate translation: "So the people of the city were rejoicing"

#### Acts 8:9

##### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse gives the beginning of the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans.

##### But there was a certain man ... named Simon

This is a way of introducing a new person into the story. Your language may use different wording to introduce a new person into the story.

##### the city

"the city in Samaria" (Acts 8:5)

#### Acts 8:10

##### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse continues to give the beginning of the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans.

##### All the Samaritans

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Many of the Samaritans" or "The Samaritans in the city"

##### from the least to the greatest

These two phrases refer to everyone from one extreme to the other. Alternate translation: "no matter how important they were"

##### This man is that power of God which is called Great

People were saying that Simon was the divine power known as "The Great Power."

##### that power of God which is called Great

Possible meanings are 1) the powerful representative of God or 2) God or 3) the most powerful man or 4) an angel. Since the term is unclear, it may be best to simply translate it as "the Great power of God."

#### Acts 8:11

##### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse ends the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans.

#### Acts 8:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Verses 12 and 13 give more information about Simon and some of the Samaritans coming to believe in Jesus.

##### they were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip baptized them" or "Philip baptized the new believers"

#### Acts 8:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Verses 12 and 13 give more information about Simon and some of the Samaritans coming to believe in Jesus.

##### Simon himself believed

The word "himself" is here used to emphasize that Simon believed. Alternate translation: "Simon was also one of those who believed"

##### he was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip baptized Simon"

#### Acts 8:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues the news of what was happening in Samaria.

##### Now when the apostles in Jerusalem heard

This marks the beginning of a new part of the story of the Samaritans.

##### Samaria

This refers to the many people who had become believers throughout the district of Samaria.

##### had received

"had believed" or "had accepted"

#### Acts 8:15

##### When they had come down

"when Peter and John had come down"

##### come down

This phrase is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### they prayed for them

"Peter and John prayed for the Samaritan believers"

##### that they might receive the Holy Spirit

"that the Samaritan believers might receive the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 8:16

##### they had only been baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip had only baptized the Samaritan believers"

##### they had only been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus

Here "name" represents authority, and being baptized into his name represents being baptized in order to be under his authority. Alternate translation: "they had only been baptized to become disciples of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 8:17

##### Peter and John placed their hands on them

The word "them" refers to the Samaritan people who believed Stephen's message of the gospel.

##### placed their hands on them

This symbolic action shows that Peter and John wanted God to give the Holy Spirit to the believers.

#### Acts 8:18

##### the Holy Spirit was given through the laying on of the apostles' hands

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the apostles gave the Holy Spirit by laying their hands on people"

#### Acts 8:19

##### that whoever I place my hands on might receive the Holy Spirit

"that I can give the Holy Spirit to anyone on whom I place my hands"

#### Acts 8:20

##### General Information:

Here the words him, your, you, and yours all refer to Simon.

##### May your silver perish along with you

"May you and your money be destroyed"

##### the gift of God

Here this refers to the ability of a person to give the Holy Spirit by laying his hands on someone.

#### Acts 8:21

##### You have no part or allotted portion in this matter

The words "part" and "allotted portion" mean the same thing and are used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You may not participate in this work"

##### your heart is not right

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or motives. Alternate translation: "you are not right in your heart" or "the motives of your mind are not right"

#### Acts 8:22

##### this wickedness

"these evil thoughts"

##### he might perhaps forgive

"he may be willing to forgive"

##### for the intention of your heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts. Alternate translation: "for what you intended to do" or "for what you were thinking of doing"

#### Acts 8:23

##### in the poison of bitterness

Here "in the poison of bitterness" is a metaphor for being very envious. It speaks of envy as if it tastes bitter and poisons the person who is envious. Alternate translation: "very envious"

##### in the bonds of unrighteousness

The phrase "bonds of unrighteousness" is spoken as if unrighteousness could make Simon a prisoner. It is metaphor that means Simon is not able to stop himself from sinning. Alternate translation: "because you continue sinning you are like a prisoner" or "sin has made you its prisoner"

#### Acts 8:24

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" refers to Peter and John.

##### so that nothing you have said may happen to me

This refers to Peter's rebuke about Simon's silver perishing along with him.

##### nothing you have said may happen to me

This can be stated another way. Alternate translation: "the things you have said may not happen to me"

#### Acts 8:25

##### Connecting Statement:

This is concludes the part of the story about Simon and the Samaritans.

##### testified

Peter and John told what they personally knew about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### spoken the word of the Lord

Here "word" is a metonym for "message." Peter and John explained the message about Jesus to the Samaritans.

##### to many villages of the Samaritans

Here "villages" refers to the people in them. Alternate translation: "to the people in many Samaritan villages"

#### Acts 8:26

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the part of the story about Philip and the man from Ethiopia.

##### Now

This marks a transition in the story.

##### Arise and go

These verbs work together to emphasize that he should get ready to start a long journey that will take some time. Alternate translation: "Get ready to travel"

##### goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza

The phrase "goes down" is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Gaza.

##### This road is in a desert

Most scholars believe Luke added this comment to describe the area through which Philip would travel.

#### Acts 8:27

##### General Information:

This verse gives background information about the man from Ethiopia.

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### eunuch

The emphasis of "eunuch" here is about the Ethiopian's being a high government official, not so much his physical state of being castrated.

##### Candace

This was a title for the queens of Ethiopia. It is similar to the way the word Pharaoh was used for the kings of Egypt.

##### He had come to Jerusalem to worship

This implies that he was a Gentile who believed in God and had come to worship at the Jewish temple. Alternate translation: "He had come to worship God at the temple in Jerusalem"

#### Acts 8:28

##### chariot

Possibly "wagon" or "carriage" is more fitting in this context. Chariots are normally mentioned as a vehicle for war, not as a vehicle for long-distance travel. Also, people stood to ride in chariots.

##### reading the prophet Isaiah

This is the Old Testament book Isaiah. Alternate translation: "reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:29

##### stay close to this chariot

Philip understood that this meant he was to stay close to the person riding in the chariot. Alternate translation: "accompany the man in this chariot"

#### Acts 8:30

##### reading Isaiah the prophet

This is the Old Testament book Isaiah. Alternate translation: "reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah"

##### Do you understand what you are reading?

The Ethiopian was intelligent and could read, but he lacked spiritual discernment. Alternate translation: "Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?"

#### Acts 8:31

##### How can I, unless someone guides me?

This question was asked to state emphatically that he could not understand without help. Alternate translation: "I cannot understand unless someone guides me."

##### He invited Philip to ... sit with him

It is implied here that Philip agreed to travel down the road with him to explain the scriptures.

##### He invited

Possible meanings are that 1) he offered a sincere invitation or 2) he made a sincere request.

#### Acts 8:32

##### General Information:

This a passage from the book of Isaiah. Here the word "he" refers to the Messiah.

##### like a lamb before his shearer is silent

A shearer is a person who cuts the wool off the sheep so that it may be used.

#### Acts 8:33

##### General Information:

This verse continues quoting a passage from the book of Isaiah. Here the words "his" and "him" refer to the Messiah.

##### In his humiliation justice was taken away from him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He was humiliated and they did not judge him fairly" or "He allowed himself to be humbled before his accusers and he suffered injustice"

##### Who can give a full account of his descendants?

This question was used to emphasize that he will not have descendants. Alternate translation: "No one will be able to speak about his descendants, for there will not be any."

##### his life was taken from the earth

This referred to his death. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "men killed him" or "men took his life from the earth"

#### Acts 8:34

##### I beg you

"Please tell me"

#### Acts 8:35

##### this scripture

This refers to Isaiah's writings in the Old Testament. Alternate translation: "the writings of Isaiah"

#### Acts 8:36

##### they went on the road

"they continued to travel along the road"

##### What prevents me from being baptized?

The eunuch uses this question as a way of asking Philip for permission to be baptized. Alternate translation: "Please allow me to be baptized."

#### Acts 8:37

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 8:38

##### commanded the chariot to stop

"told the driver of the chariot to stop"

#### Acts 8:39

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Philip and the man from Ethiopia. The story of Philip ends at Caesarea.

##### the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away

The words "took Philip away" imply that the Spirit took forceful, physical action, perhaps a miracle that moved Philip in an instant. The angel probably did not just suggest or even command that Philip leave the eunuch and go elsewhere.

##### the eunuch saw him no more

"the eunuch did not see Philip again"

#### Acts 8:40

##### Philip appeared at Azotus

There was no indication of Philip's traveling between where he baptized the Ethiopian and Azotus. He just suddenly disappeared along the road to Gaza and reappeared at the town of Azotus.

##### that region

This refers to the area around the town of Azotus.

##### to all the cities

"to all the cities in that region"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 8:1

##### What did Saul think about Stephen's stoning?

Saul was in agreement with Stephen's death.

##### What began on the day Stephen was stoned?

A great persecution against the church in Jerusalem began on the day Stephen was stoned.

##### What did the believers in Jerusalem do?

The believers in Jerusalem were scattered throughout the regions of Judea and Samaria.

#### Acts 8:6

##### Why did the people of Samaria pay attention to what Philip said?

The people paid attention when they saw the signs that Philip did.

#### Acts 8:9

##### Why had the people of Samaria paid attention to Simon?

The people paid attention to Simon because they saw the amazing things he did by sorcery.

#### Acts 8:10

##### Why had the people of Samaria paid attention to Simon?

The people paid attention to Simon because they saw the amazing things he did by sorcery.

#### Acts 8:11

##### Why had the people of Samaria paid attention to Simon?

The people paid attention to Simon because they saw the amazing things he did by sorcery.

#### Acts 8:13

##### When Simon heard Philip's message, what did he do?

Simon also believed and was baptized.

#### Acts 8:17

##### What happened when Peter and John laid hands on the believers in Samaria?

The believers in Samaria received the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 8:18

##### What offer did Simon make to the apostles?

Simon offered the apostles money in exchange for the power to give the Holy Spirit by the laying on of hands.

#### Acts 8:19

##### What offer did Simon make to the apostles?

Simon offered the apostles money in exchange for the power to give the Holy Spirit by the laying on of hands.

#### Acts 8:23

##### After Simon made this offer to the apostles, what did Peter say was his spiritual condition?

Peter said that Simon was in the poison of bitterness and the bonds of sin.

#### Acts 8:26

##### What did an angel tell Philip to do?

An angel told Philip to go south to the desert road toward Gaza.

#### Acts 8:27

##### Who did Philip meet and what was the person doing?

Philip met a eunuch of great authority from Ethiopia who was sitting in his chariot reading the prophet Isaiah.

#### Acts 8:28

##### Who did Philip meet and what was the person doing?

Philip met a eunuch of great authority from Ethiopia who was sitting in his chariot reading the prophet Isaiah.

#### Acts 8:30

##### What question did Philip ask the man?

Philip asked the man, "Do you understand what you are reading?"

#### Acts 8:31

##### What did the man ask Philip to do?

The man asked Philip to come up into the chariot and explain what he was reading.

#### Acts 8:32

##### What happens to the person being described in the scripture from Isaiah that was being read?

The person is led as a sheep to the slaughter, but does not open his mouth.

#### Acts 8:34

##### What question did the man ask Philip about the scripture he was reading?

The man asked Philip if the prophet was speaking about himself or about some other person.

#### Acts 8:35

##### Who did Philip say was the person in the scripture from Isaiah?

Philip explained that the person in the scripture from Isaiah was Jesus.

#### Acts 8:38

##### What did Philip then do to the man?

Philip and the eunuch both went into the water and Philip baptized him.

#### Acts 8:39

##### What happened to Philip when he came out of the water?

When Philip came out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away.

##### What did the eunuch do when he came out of the water?

When the eunuch came out of the water, he went on his way rejoicing.

### Chapter 9

**1** But Saul, still speaking threats even of murder against the disciples of the Lord, went to the high priest **2** and asked him for letters for the synagogues in Damascus, so that if he found any who belonged to the Way, whether men or women, he might bring them bound to Jerusalem. **3** As he was traveling, it happened that as he came near to Damascus, suddenly there shone all around him a light out of heaven; **4** and he fell upon the ground and heard a voice saying to him, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?" **5** Saul replied, "Who are you, Lord?" The Lord said, "I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting; **6** but rise, enter into the city, and it will be told you what you must do." **7** The men who traveled with Saul stood speechless, hearing the voice, but seeing no one. **8** Saul arose from the ground, and when he opened his eyes, he could see nothing; so they led him by the hand and brought him into Damascus. **9** For three days he was without sight, and he neither ate nor drank.

**10** Now there was a disciple at Damascus named Ananias. The Lord said to him in a vision, "Ananias!" He said, "See, I am here, Lord."

**11** The Lord said to him, "Arise, and go to the street which is called Straight, and at the house of Judas ask for a man from Tarsus named Saul, for he is praying. **12** He has seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in and laying his hands on him, so that he might see again."

**13** But Ananias answered, "Lord, I have heard from many about this man, how much harm he has done to your holy people in Jerusalem. **14** He has authority from the chief priests to put in bonds everyone here who calls upon your name."

**15** But the Lord said to him, "Go, for he is a chosen instrument of mine, to carry my name before the Gentiles and kings and the children of Israel; **16** for I will show him how much he must suffer for the cause of my name."

**17** So Ananias departed, and entered into the house. Laying his hands on him, he said, "Brother Saul, the Lord Jesus, who appeared to you on the road when you were coming, has sent me so that you might receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **18** Immediately something like scales fell from Saul's eyes, and he received his sight; he arose and was baptized; **19** and he ate and was strengthened.

He stayed with the disciples in Damascus for several days. **20** Right away he proclaimed Jesus in the synagogues, saying that he is the Son of God. **21** All who heard him were amazed and said, "Is not this the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name? He has come here to take them bound to the chief priests." **22** But Saul became more and more powerful, and he was causing distress among the Jews who lived in Damascus by proving that Jesus is the Christ.

**23** After many days, the Jews planned together to kill him. **24** But their plan became known to Saul. They watched the gates day and night in order to kill him. **25** But his disciples took him by night and let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket.

**26** When he had come to Jerusalem, Saul attempted to join the disciples, but they were all afraid of him, not believing that he was a disciple. **27** But Barnabas took him and brought him to the apostles, and he told them how Saul had seen the Lord on the road and that the Lord had spoken to him, and how at Damascus Saul had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus. **28** He was with them, going in and out around Jerusalem. He spoke boldly in the name of the Lord Jesus **29** and debated with the Grecian Jews; but they kept trying to kill him. **30** When the brothers learned of this, they brought him down to Caesarea and sent him away to Tarsus.

**31** So then, the church throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria had peace and was built up; and, walking in the fear of the Lord and in the comfort of the Holy Spirit, the church grew in numbers. **32** Now it came about that, as Peter went throughout the whole region, he came down also to God's holy people who lived in the town of Lydda. **33** There he found a certain man named Aeneas, who had been in his bed for eight years, for he was paralyzed. **34** Peter said to him, "Aeneas, Jesus Christ heals you. Get up and make your bed," and right away he got up. **35** So everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon saw the man and they turned to the Lord.

**36** Now there was in Joppa a certain disciple named Tabitha (which is translated "Dorcas"). This woman was full of good works and merciful deeds that she did for the poor. **37** It came about in those days that she fell sick and died; when they had washed her, they laid her in an upper room. **38** Since Lydda was near Joppa, and the disciples had heard that Peter was there, they sent two men to him, pleading with him, "Come to us without delay." **39** Peter arose and went with them. When he had arrived, they brought him to the upper room, and all the widows stood by him weeping, showing him the tunics and garments that Dorcas had made while she had been with them. **40** Peter put them all out of the room, knelt down, and prayed; then, turning to the body, he said, "Tabitha, arise." Then she opened her eyes, and seeing Peter she sat up. **41** Peter then gave her his hand and raised her up; and when he called God's holy people and the widows, he presented her alive to them. **42** This matter became known throughout all Joppa, and many people believed on the Lord. **43** It happened that Peter stayed for many days in Joppa with a man named Simon, a tanner.

### Acts 9 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "The Way"

No one knows for sure who first started calling believers "followers of the Way." This is probably what the believers called themselves, because the Bible often speaks of a person living his life as if that person were walking on a path or "way." If this is true, the believers were "following the way of the Lord" by living in a way that pleased God.

##### "Letters for the synagogues in Damascus"

The "letters" Paul asked for were probably legal papers that permitted him to put Christians in prison. The synagogue leaders in Damascus would have obeyed the letter because it was written by the high priest. If the Romans had seen the letter, they also would have allowed Saul to persecute the Christians, because they permitted the Jews to do as they desired to people who broke their religious laws.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### What Saul saw when he met Jesus

It is clear that Saul saw a light and that it was because of this light that he "fell upon the ground." Some people think that Saul knew that it was the Lord speaking to him without seeing a human form, because the Bible often speaks of God as being light and living in light. Other people think that later in his life he was able to say, "I have seen the Lord Jesus" because it was a human form that he saw here.

### Acts 9

#### 9:1-9

#### What was a high priest?

[9:1]

See: [High Priest](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/highpriest.md)

#### How was the high priest in Jerusalem able to approve Saul’s request to bring people back to Jerusalem?

[9:2]

At that time the high priest in Jerusalem had permission to bring back a prisoner to Jerusalem from other areas under Roman control. Saul looked for Christians who left Jerusalem when the people persecuted Christians (see: Acts 8:1).

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md)

See Map: Jerusalem

#### What was a synagogue?

[9:2]

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

#### Where was Damascus?

[9:2]

See Map: Damascus

#### What was “the way”?

[9:2]

“The way” was a name for Chrisitans (see: Acts 19:9, 23; 22:4; 24:14, 22).

See: John 14:6

#### What did Saul want to do when he found Christians in Damascus?

[9:2]

Saul wanted to bring Christians back to Jerusalem in ropes or chains to punish them (see Acts 22:5). The high priest and the Jewish council in Jerusalem gave permission to Paul to bring Christians back to Jerusalem. He also planned to kill Christians and destroy the church (see: Acts 8:3; 9:1; 22:4-5).

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Punish (Punishment)](../articles/punish.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

#### Why did Saul fall to the ground?

[9:4]

Saul fell to the ground because he was blinded by the very bright light from heaven. It was mid-day so the light shone even more than the sun. He was not able to see any more. Luke used the same word for a lightning flash. Thus, Saul saw a light bigger than a lightning flash around him that blinded him. However, it did not make the men with him blind.

See: [Heaven](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heaven.md); [Heaven](../articles/heaven.md)

#### Why did Saul call the person speaking “Lord”?

[9:5]

Some scholars think Saul did not know who spoke, so he used the word “sir” or “master” out of respect or fear. Other scholars think he said “Lord”(κύριος/g2962) to talk to God because the voice he heard seemed to be God. However, Saul did not know at first who it was because he had to ask who spoke to him (see: Acts 9:17,27; 1 Corinthians 15:8). The voice replied to Saul’s question and told Saul it was Jesus who spoke.

See: [Lord](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lord.md)

#### Why were the men with Saul speechless?

[9:7]

The flash of light from above and then heard Saul speak but could not see to whom he was speaking. This made the men afraid so that they were not able to speak. They heard the voice but the words of the voice came only to Saul. They saw the bright light shining all around but it did not blind them and they did not see anyone.

See Acts 22:9

See: [Light and Darkness (Metaphor)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lightdarkness.md)

#### Why did Saul not eat or drink for three days?

[9:9]

Saul was not able to see for three days. Some scholars think he was still in shock so he did not want to eat. Other scholars think he was praying and fasting to repent (see: Acts 9:11). He felt terrible about killing and persecuting Christians because Jesus told him when he persecuted Christians, Saul actually persecuted Jesus.

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md); [Pray (prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### 9:10-19

#### How did Ananias become a disciple?

[9:10]

Luke did not write how Ananias became a disciple of Jesus. Some scholars think he came from Jerusalem after people began persecuting Christians. Other scholars think he lived in Damascus and heard the gospel.

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

See Map: Jerusalem; Damascus

#### What was a vision?

[9:10]

See: [Vision](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### Why did the Lord tell Ananias the name of the street?

[9:11]

Jesus told Ananias the name of the street so he was able to find the right house where Saul was staying. Straight Street was the long street that ran east to west through Damascus.

See Map: Damascus

#### Who was Judas?

[9:11]

Judas was a Jew and the host of Saul when Saul came to Damascus. He was not the same person as Judas Iscariot.

See Map: Damascus

#### Where was Tarsus?

[9:11]

Paul was from Tarsus, but he moved from Tarsus to Jerusalem to study Judaism (see: Acts 22:3). He came to Damascus directly from Jerusalem.

See Map: Tarsus

#### Why did the Lord want Ananias to lay hands on Saul?

[9:12]

Some scholars think Jesus wanted Ananias to lay hands on Saul so Saul will see again and be filled with the Holy Spirit. That is, the laying on of hands made Saul receive the Holy Spirit in the same way Peter and John prayed and laid hands on the Samaritans to receive the Holy Spirit (see: Acts 8:14-17). Other scholars think Jesus called Saul to serve him and then Saul was filled with the Holy Spirit after his baptism (see: Acts 9:18). In ancient Israel, the Israelites laid on hands so people were able to know God wanted someone to do something (See Numbers 8:10; 27:18).

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Laying on of Hands](../articles/layinghands.md) ; [Pray (prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md); [Samaria](../articles/samaria.md); [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md)

#### Who were the Lord’s holy people?

[9:13]

The Lord’s holy people or holy ones were Christians. The New Testament wrote Christians were holy people because God forgave them (see Ephesian 1:1,4,7).

See: [People of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/peopleofgod.md); [Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)](../articles/holy.md); [People of God](../articles/peopleofgod.md)

#### What was a chief priest?

[9:14]

See: [Chief Priest](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/chiefpriest.md)

#### Why did people call upon the Lord’s name”?

[9:14]

People called upon the Lord’s name to ask Jesus to save them. That is, anyone who believed in Jesus became a Christian (See Acts 4:12; 26:16-18). Saul was coming to get any Christians and bring them to Jerusalem in chains.

See: [Lord](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lord.md)

#### How was Saul a chosen instrument for God?

[9:15]

God chose Saul to be an apostle to bring the gospel to people. Saul was going to tell kings and rulers of the Gentiles and the Jews about Jesus. He told them he has seen and heard Jesus after Jesus died (see: Acts 22:15).

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md)

#### How did Saul “suffer for the cause of my name”?

[9:16]

Saul will suffer to serve Jesus. He was persecuted because he told many people about Jesus. Saul was often put in prison for telling people about Jesus.

See: Acts 16:16-40; 17:-9; 21:30-36; 22:21-29; 27:27-28:6; 2 Corinthians 6:4-5; 11:23-27

#### How was someone filled with the Holy Spirit?

[9:17]

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fillingholyspirit.md)

#### Why was Ananias able to call Saul “brother”?

[9:17]

Ananias was able to call Saul “brother”(ἀδελφός/g0080) because Jesus told Ananias that Saul was a different man. The word “brother”(ἀδελφός/g0080) was a gentle term to tell Saul he was no longer an enemy of Christians. Saul was now part of the family of God.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md)

#### Why was Saul baptized?

[9:18]

Saul was baptized to obey Jesus (see: Matthew 28:18-20). Saul was also able to receive the promise of the Holy Spirit (see: Matthew 3:16; Acts 19:5-6).

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/indwelling.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md)

#### Why did Saul stay with the disciples in Damascus for several days?

[9:19]

Some scholars think Saul stayed with the disciples in Damascus to learn from them about Jesus. Other scholars think Jesus revealed to Saul everything he needed to know about Jesus (see: Galatians 1:11-12).

The Christians in Damascus wanted to give Saul a safe place to stay. The Jews wanted to harm him (see: Acts 9:23).

See: [Reveal (Revelation)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/reveal.md); [Reveal (Revelation)](../articles/reveal.md)

See Map: Damascus

#### 9:20-25

#### How did Saul right away proclaim “Jesus in the synagogues”?

[9:20]

Some scholars think the high priest and Jewish council in Jerusalem gave permission to Saul to teach people about Jesus. Other scholars think Jesus gave Saud permission to do this. Saul told the Jews Jesus is the Son of God and he proved Jesus is the messiah. He told the Jews about what he saw and heard on the road to Damascus (see: Acts 9:20). He wanted them to know Jesus was resurrected and Jesus spoke to him.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md); [Son of God](../articles/sonofgod.md);[Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Heresy](../articles/heresy.md); [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](../articles/sanhedrin.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md)

See Map: Damascus

#### Why did Luke write, “But Saul became more and more powerful?”

[9:22]

Luke wrote, “But Saul became more and more powerful,” because Saul became more effective in proving that Jesus is the Son of God and the promised messiah. It did not mean Saul was getting stronger physically.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### Why did Saul distress the Jews in Damascus?

[9:22]

Saul distressed the Jews in Damascus because they thought Saul went there to bring Christians back to Jerusalem. Instead, he became a Christian and persuaded other Jews to also believe in Jesus.

See Map: Damascus

#### Why did the Jews in Damascus want to kill Saul?

[9:23]

The Jews in Damascus wanted to kill Saul because they thought he tried to make Jews worship other gods (see: Deuteronomy 13:6-11). The Jews were wrong to think that. They did not believe Jesus is the Son of God and the messiah.

See: [False gods](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/falsegods.md)d; [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md)

#### Who were Saul’s disciples?

[9:25]

Scholars think Saul’s disciples were people in Damascus who Saul helped to believe that Jesus is the Son of God and the messiah.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Son of God](../articles/sonofgod.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### 9:26-30

#### Why were the disciples in Jerusalem afraid of Saul?

[9:26]

The disciples in Jerusalem remembered how Saul helped people to stone Stephen and other Christians. They had not heard that Saul became a Chrsitian.

#### Who were the Grecian Jews?

[9:29]

The Grecian Jews were the ones who made trouble for Stephen and who stoned him when Saul looked upon this.

#### Where was Caesarea?

[9:30]

See Map: Caesarea

#### 9:31-35

#### Where were Judea, Galilee, and Samaria?

[9:31]

See Map: Judea; Galilee; Samaria

#### How was the church one?

[9:31]

The church was one. That is, they all served Jesus together.

#### How was the church built up?

[9:31]

The church in Jerusalem was built up. That is, more people became Christians.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md)

#### How did the church “walk in the fear of the Lord and in the comfort of the Holy Spirit”?

[9:31]

The church walked in fear of the Lord. They honored God and did the things God wanted them to do. They knew God has power and is very holy. Yet, they did not fear people because the Holy Spirit comforted them.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Fear of God](../articles/fearofgod.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### Who were God’s holy people?

[9:32]

See: [People of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/peopleofgod.md);[Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)](../articles/holy.md); [People of God](../articles/peopleofgod.md)

#### Where was Lydda?

[9:32]

See Map: Lydda

#### How did God completely heal Aenaes?

[9:33, 9:34]

God completely healed Aenaes when he was no longer paralyzed after eight years. That is, there was nothing to make him paralyzed. It was the same as if he was not paralyzed for eight years. Also, God healed him right away. Peter told him to make his bed because he was not going to need it there anymore. He was healed.

#### How did everyone in Lydda and Sharon turn to the Lord?

[9:35]

Everyone in Lydda and Sharon saw the healed man and they heard how he was healed, so they believed in Jesus. That is, they turned away from the things God did not want them to do and believed in Jesus.

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md)

See Map: Sharon; Lydda

#### 9:36-43

#### Where was Joppa?

[9:36]

See Map: Joppa

#### Why did Luke write Tabitha was translated to Dorcas?

[9:36]

Luke wrote Tabitha was translated to Dorcas because Tabitha was the woman’s name in the Aramaic language. Dorcas was her name in the Greek language. Peter and others called her Tabitha.

#### Why did they wash the dead woman and place her in the upper room?

[9:37]

In ancient times, some people washed a body before they buried it. These people heard Peter healed the paralyzed man in Lydda. So they put her body in the upper room and asked Peter to come there. They were Christians, and because Tabitha helped the poor, they hoped God will make her alive again.

According to the Law of Moses, these people needed to bury Tabitha before sundown so they sent two men to ask Peter to come right away. Even though Lydda was near Joppa, it took three or four hours for him to walk from Lydda to Joppa.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md) ; [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

See Map: Lydda; Joppa

#### Why did the widows show Peter the tunics and garments Tabitha made?

[9:39]

The widows showed Peter the clothes Tabitha made. They wanted Peter to know how generous and kind Tabitha was to them. It was a way for Peter to know who she really was and convince him to ask God to make her alive again.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md)

#### Why did Peter ask everyone to leave the room?

[9:40]

Peter asked everyone to leave the upper room so he was able to pray for her without anyone doing or saying anything against him praying to God. He prayed a similar prayer that Jesus prayed when Jesus made Jairus’s daughter alive again (see: Mark 5:41).

See: Matthew 10:8

See: [Pray (prayer)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Why did Peter stay in Joppa?

[9:43]

Luke did not write why Peter stayed in Joppa. Scholars think he stayed to teach the many Chrsitians there because of the miracle God did for Tabitha (see Acts 9:42).

#### Acts 9:1

##### General Information:

Verses 1-2 give background information telling us what Saul has been doing since the stoning of Stephen.

##### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts back to Saul and his salvation.

##### still speaking threats even of murder against the disciples

The noun "murder" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "still speaking threats, even to murder the disciples"

#### Acts 9:2

##### General Information:

Verses 1-2 give background information telling us what Saul has been doing since the stoning of Stephen. Here the word "him" refers to the high priest and "he" refers to Saul.

##### for the synagogues

This refers to the people in the synagogues. Alternate translation: "for the people in the synagogues" or "for the leaders in the synagogues"

##### if he found any

"when he found people" or "if he found people"

##### who belonged to the Way

"who followed the teachings of Jesus Christ"

##### the Way

This term appears to have been a title for Christianity at that time.

##### he might bring them bound to Jerusalem

"he might take them as prisoners to Jerusalem." Paul's purpose can be made clear by adding "so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them"

#### Acts 9:3

##### Connecting Statement:

After the high priest gave Saul the letters, Saul left for Damascus.

##### As he was traveling

Saul left Jerusalem and now travels to Damascus.

##### it happened that

This is an expression that marks a change in the story to show something different is about to happen.

##### there shone all around him a light out of heaven

"a light from heaven shone all around him"

##### out of heaven

Possible meanings are 1) out of heaven, where God lives or 2) out of the sky. The first meaning is preferable. Use that meaning if your language has a separate word for it.

#### Acts 9:4

##### he fell upon the ground and heard

Possible meanings are that 1) "Saul threw himself to the ground and heard" or 2) "the light caused Saul to fall to the ground, and he heard" or 3) "Saul fell to the ground the way one who faints falls, and he heard"

##### why are you persecuting me?

This rhetorical question communicates a rebuke to Saul. Alternate translation: "You are persecuting me!" or "Stop persecuting me!"

#### Acts 9:5

##### General Information:

Every occurrence of the word "you" here is singular.

##### Who are you, Lord?

Saul was not acknowledging that Jesus is the Lord. He uses that title because he understood that he spoke to someone of supernatural power.

#### Acts 9:6

##### but rise, enter into the city

"get up and go into the city Damascus"

##### it will be told you

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "someone will tell you"

#### Acts 9:7

##### stood speechless, hearing the voice, but seeing no one

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "stood speechless. They heard the voice, but they did not see anyone"

##### but seeing no one

"but they saw no one" or "but they did not see anyone." Apparently only Saul experienced the light.

#### Acts 9:8

##### when he opened his eyes

This implies that he had closed his eyes because the light was too bright.

##### he could see nothing

"he could not see anything." Saul was blind.

#### Acts 9:9

##### was without sight

"was blind" or "could not see anything"

##### he neither ate nor drank

It is not stated whether he chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship, or if he had no appetite because he was too distressed from his situation. It is preferable not to specify the reason.

#### Acts 9:10

##### General Information:

The story of Saul continues, and Luke introduces another man named Ananias. This is not the same Ananias who died earlier in Acts [Acts 5:3]

##### Now there was

This introduces Ananias as a new character.

##### He said

"Ananias said"

#### Acts 9:11

##### go to the street which is called Straight

"go to Straight Street"

##### house of Judas

This Judas was not the disciple who had betrayed Jesus. This Judas was owner of a house in Damascus where Saul was staying.

##### a man from Tarsus named Saul

"a man from the city of Tarsus named Saul" or "Saul of Tarsus"

#### Acts 9:12

##### laying his hands on him

This was a symbol of giving a spiritual blessing to Saul.

##### he might see again

"he might regain his ability to see"

#### Acts 9:13

##### your holy people in Jerusalem

Here "holy people" refers to Christians. Alternate translation: "the people in Jerusalem who believe in you"

#### Acts 9:14

##### authority ... to put in bonds everyone here

It is implied that the extent of the power and authority granted Saul was limited to the Jewish people at this point in time.

##### put in bonds

Putting someone in bonds is a metonym for arresting that person. Alternate translation: "arrest"

##### calls upon your name

Here "your name" refers to Jesus.

#### Acts 9:15

##### he is a chosen instrument of mine

"chosen instrument" refers to something that is set apart for service. Alternate translation: "I have chosen him to serve me"

##### to carry my name

This is an expression for identifying or speaking out for Jesus. Alternate translation: "in order that he might speak about me"

#### Acts 9:16

##### for the cause of my name

This is an expression meaning "for telling people about me."

#### Acts 9:17

##### General Information:

The word "you" here is singular and refers to Saul.

##### Connecting Statement:

Ananias goes to the house where Saul is staying. After Saul is healed, the story shifts from Ananias back to Saul.

##### So Ananias departed, and entered into the house

It may be helpful to state that Ananias went to the house before he entered into it. Alternate translation: "So Ananias went, and after he found the house where Saul was, he entered it"

##### Laying his hands on him

Ananias put his hands on Saul. This was a symbol of giving a blessing to Saul.

##### so that you might receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that you might see again and that the Holy Spirit might fill you"

#### Acts 9:18

##### something like scales fell

"something that appeared like fish scales fell"

##### he received his sight

"he was able to see again"

##### he arose and was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he got up and Ananias baptized him"

#### Acts 9:19

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 9:20

##### General Information:

Here the first "he" refers to Saul. The second "he" refers to Jesus, the Son of God.

##### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

#### Acts 9:21

##### General Information:

Here "him" and "He" refer to Saul.

##### All who heard him

The word "All" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Those who heard him" or "Many who heard him"

##### Is not this the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name?

This is a rhetorical and negative question that emphasizes that Saul was indeed the man who had persecuted the believers. Alternate translation: "This is the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name Jesus!"

##### this name

Here "name" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "the name of Jesus"

#### Acts 9:22

##### causing distress among the Jews

They were distressed in the sense that they could not find a way to refute Saul's arguments that Jesus was the Christ.

#### Acts 9:23

##### General Information:

The word "him" in this section refers to Saul.

##### the Jews

This refers to the leaders of the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

#### Acts 9:24

##### But their plan became known to Saul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But someone told their plan to Saul" or "But Saul learned about their plan"

##### They watched the gates

This city had a wall surrounding it. People could normally only enter and exit the city through the gates.

#### Acts 9:25

##### his disciples

people who believed Saul's message about Jesus and were following his teaching

##### let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket

"used ropes to lower him in a large basket through an opening in the wall"

#### Acts 9:26

##### General Information:

Here the words "he" and "him" refer to Saul.

##### but they were all afraid of him

Here "they were all" is a generalization, but it is possible that it refers to every person. Alternate translation: "but they were afraid of him"

#### Acts 9:27

##### General Information:

Here "him" refers to Saul and "he" refers to Barnabas.

##### had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus

This is a way of saying he preached or taught the gospel message of Jesus Christ without fear. Alternate translation: "had openly preached the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 9:28

##### He was with them, going in and out around Jerusalem

Here the word "He" refers to Saul, and the word "them" probably refers to the apostles and other disciples in Jerusalem. This is an idiom meaning that Paul was able to associate freely with the believers in Jerusalem.

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

Possible meanings are 1) this simply refers to the Lord Jesus and tells who Paul spoke about. Alternate translation: "about the Lord Jesus" or 2) "name" is a metonym for authority. Alternate translation: "under the authority of the Lord Jesus" or "with the authority that the Lord Jesus gave him"

#### Acts 9:29

##### debated with the Grecian Jews

Saul tried to reason with the Jews who spoke Greek.

#### Acts 9:30

##### the brothers

Here the words "the brothers" refer to the believers in Jerusalem.

##### brought him down to Caesarea

The phrase "brought him down" is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

##### sent him away to Tarsus

Caesarea was a seaport. They brothers probably sent Saul to Tarsus by ship.

#### Acts 9:31

##### General Information:

Verse 31 is a statement that gives an update on the church's growth.

##### the church throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria

This is the first use of the singular "church" to refer to more than one local congregation. Here it refers to all the believers in all the groups throughout Israel.

##### had peace

"lived peacefully." This means the persecution that started with the murder of Stephen was finished.

##### was built up

The agent was either God or the Holy Spirit. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God helped them grow" or "the Holy Spirit built them up"

##### walking in the fear of the Lord

"Walking" here is a metaphor for "living." Alternate translation: "living in obedience to the Lord" or "continuing to honor the Lord"

##### in the comfort of the Holy Spirit

"with the Holy Spirit strengthening and encouraging them"

#### Acts 9:32

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the story shifts from Saul to a new part of the story about Peter.

##### Now it came about

This phrase is used to mark a new part of the story.

##### throughout the whole region

This is an generalization for Peter's visiting the believers in many places in the region of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria.

##### he came down

The phrase "came down" is used here because Lydda is lower in elevation than the other places where he was traveling.

##### Lydda

Lydda is a city located about 18 kilometers southeast of Joppa. This city is called Lod in the Old Testament and in modern Israel.

#### Acts 9:33

##### There he found a certain man

Peter was not intentionally searching for a paralyzed person, but happened upon him. Alternate translation: "There Peter met a man"

##### a certain man named Aeneas

This introduces Aeneas as a new character in the story.

##### who had been in his bed ... was paralyzed

This is background information about Aeneas.

##### paralyzed

This means he was unable to walk. He probably was unable to move any part of his body below his waist.

#### Acts 9:34

##### make your bed

"roll up your mat"

#### Acts 9:35

##### everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon

This is a generalization referring to many of the people there. Alternate translation: "those who lived in Lydda and in Sharon" or "many people who lived in Lydda and Sharon"

##### in Lydda and in Sharon

The city of Lydda was located in the Plain of Sharon.

##### saw the man

It may be helpful to state that they saw that he was healed. Alternate translation: "saw the man whom Peter had healed"

##### and they turned to the Lord

Here "turned to the Lord" is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: "and they repented of their sins and started obeying the Lord"

#### Acts 9:36

##### General Information:

Verses 36 and 37 give background information about the woman named Tabitha.

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues the story with a new event about Peter.

##### Now there was

This introduces a new part in the story.

##### Tabitha (which is translated "Dorcas"). This woman

Tabitha is her name in the Aramaic language, and Dorcas is her name in the Greek language. Both names mean "gazelle." Alternate translation: "Tabitha, which in the Greek language was Dorcas. This woman"

##### was full of good works and merciful deeds

"doing many good things and performed merciful deeds"

#### Acts 9:37

##### General Information:

Verses 36 and 37 give background information about the woman named Tabitha.

##### It came about in those days

This refers to the time when Peter was in Joppa. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "It came about while Peter was nearby"

##### washed her

This was washing to prepare for her burial.

##### they laid her in an upper room

This was a temporary display of the body during the funeral process.

#### Acts 9:38

##### they sent two men to him

"the disciples sent two men to Peter"

#### Acts 9:39

##### to the upper room

"to the upstairs room where Dorcas' body was lying"

##### all the widows

It is possible that all the widows of the town were there since it was not a large town.

##### widows

women whose husbands had died and therefore needed help

##### while she had been with them

"while she was still alive with the disciples"

#### Acts 9:40

##### put them all out of the room

"told them all to leave the room." Peter had everyone leave so he could be alone to pray for Tabitha.

#### Acts 9:41

##### gave her his hand and raised her up

Peter took hold of her hand and helped her to sit up in the bed and then stand up on the floor.

##### God's holy people and the widows

The widows were possibly also believers but are mentioned specifically because Tabitha was so important to them.

#### Acts 9:42

##### Connecting Statement:

The story of Tabitha ends in verse 42. Verse 43 tells us what happens to Peter after the story ends.

##### This matter became known throughout all Joppa

This refers to the miracle of Peter's raising Tabitha from the dead. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People throughout all Joppa heard about this matter"

##### believed on the Lord

"believed in the gospel of the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 9:43

##### Connecting Statement:

The story of Tabitha ends in verse 42. Verse 43 tells us what happens to Peter after the story ends.

##### It happened that

"It came about that." This introduces the beginning of the next event in the story.

##### Simon, a tanner

"a man named Simon who made leather from animal skins"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 9:1

##### What did Saul ask the high priest in Jerusalem permission to do?

Saul asked for letters so that he could travel to Damascus and bring back bound any who belonged to the Way.

#### Acts 9:2

##### What did Saul ask the high priest in Jerusalem permission to do?

Saul asked for letters so that he could travel to Damascus and bring back bound any who belonged to the Way.

#### Acts 9:3

##### As Saul neared Damascus, what did he see?

As Saul neared Damascus, he saw a light out of heaven.

#### Acts 9:4

##### What did the voice say to Saul?

The voice said, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me".

#### Acts 9:5

##### When Saul asked who was speaking to him, what was the answer?

The answer was, "I am Jesus whom you are persecuting".

#### Acts 9:8

##### When Saul arose from the ground, what had happened to him?

When Saul arose, he could see nothing.

#### Acts 9:9

##### Where did Saul then go and what did he do?

Saul went to Damascus and did not eat or drink for three days.

#### Acts 9:11

##### What did the Lord tell Ananias to do?

The Lord told Ananias to go and lay hands on Saul, so that Saul would receive his sight.

#### Acts 9:12

##### What did the Lord tell Ananias to do?

The Lord told Ananias to go and lay hands on Saul, so that Saul would receive his sight.

#### Acts 9:13

##### What concern did Ananias express to the Lord?

Ananias was concerned because he knew Saul had come to Damascus to arrest everyone who called upon the Lord's name.

#### Acts 9:14

##### What concern did Ananias express to the Lord?

Ananias was concerned because he knew Saul had come to Damascus to arrest everyone who called upon the Lord's name.

#### Acts 9:15

##### What mission did the Lord say he had for Saul as his chosen instrument?

The Lord said Saul would carry the Lord's name before the Gentiles, kings, and the children of Israel.

#### Acts 9:16

##### Did the Lord say Saul's mission would be easy or difficult?

The Lord said that Saul would suffer greatly for the cause of the Lord's name.

#### Acts 9:19

##### After Ananias laid hands on Saul, what happened?

After Ananias laid hands on Saul, Saul received his sight, was baptized, and ate.

#### Acts 9:20

##### What did Saul immediately begin to do?

Saul immediately began to proclaim Jesus in the synagogues, saying that he is the Son of God.

#### Acts 9:25

##### When the Jews finally planned to kill Saul, what did he do?

When the Jews planned to kill him, Saul escaped by being let down through the wall in a basket.

#### Acts 9:26

##### When Saul came to Jerusalem, how did the disciples receive him?

In Jerusalem, the disciples were afraid of Saul.

#### Acts 9:27

##### Who then brought Saul to the apostles and explained what had happened to Saul in Damascus?

Barnabas brought Saul to the apostles and explained what had happened to Saul in Damascus.

#### Acts 9:29

##### What did Saul do in Jerusalem?

Saul spoke boldly in the name of the Lord Jesus.

#### Acts 9:31

##### After Saul was sent away to Tarsus, what was the condition of the church in Judea, Galilee, and Samaria?

The church in Judea, Galilee, and Samaria had peace and was built up, growing in numbers.

#### Acts 9:33

##### What happened in Lydda that caused everyone there to turn to the Lord?

In Lydda, Peter spoke to a paralyzed man who was healed by Jesus.

#### Acts 9:34

##### What happened in Lydda that caused everyone there to turn to the Lord?

In Lydda, Peter spoke to a paralyzed man who was healed by Jesus.

#### Acts 9:35

##### What happened in Lydda that caused everyone there to turn to the Lord?

In Lydda, Peter spoke to a paralyzed man who was healed by Jesus.

#### Acts 9:40

##### What happened in Joppa that caused many people to believe in the Lord?

Peter prayed for a dead woman named Tabitha, who was raised back to life.

### Chapter 10

**1** Now there was a certain man in the city of Caesarea, Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Company of Soldiers. **2** He was a devout man, one who feared God with all his household, gave many alms to the people, and prayed to God constantly. **3** About the ninth hour of the day, he clearly saw in a vision an angel of God coming to him. The angel said to him, "Cornelius!" **4** Cornelius stared at the angel and was very afraid and said, "What is it, sir?"

The angel said to him, "Your prayers and your alms have gone up as a memorial offering into God's presence. **5** Now send men to the city of Joppa to bring a man named Simon who is called Peter. **6** He is staying with a tanner named Simon, whose house is by the seaside."

**7** When the angel who spoke to him had left, Cornelius called two of his house servants, and a devout soldier from among those who served him. **8** Cornelius told them all that had happened and sent them to Joppa.

**9** Now on the next day at about the sixth hour, as they were on their journey and were approaching the city, Peter went up upon the housetop to pray. **10** He then became hungry and wanted something to eat, but while the people were cooking some food, a trance came on him, **11** and he saw the sky open and a certain container descending, something like a large sheet coming down to the earth, let down by its four corners. **12** In it were all kinds of four-footed animals and things that crawled on the earth, and birds of the sky. **13** Then a voice spoke to him: "Rise, Peter, kill and eat."

**14** But Peter said, "Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten anything that was defiled and unclean."

**15** But the voice came to him again a second time: "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled." **16** This happened three times; then the container was immediately taken back up into the sky.

**17** Now while Peter was very confused about what the vision that he had seen could mean, behold, the men who were sent by Cornelius stood before the gate, after they had asked their way to the house. **18** They called out and asked whether Simon, who was also called Peter, was staying there.

**19** While Peter was still thinking about the vision, the Spirit said to him, "Behold, three men are looking for you. *[*[1](#fn-044-010-019-1)*]***20** Arise and go down and go with them. Do not hesitate to go with them, because I have sent them."

**21** So Peter went down to the men and said, "I am he whom you are seeking. Why have you come?"

**22** They said, "A centurion named Cornelius, a righteous man and one who fears God, and is well spoken of by all the nation of the Jews, was instructed by a holy angel to send for you to come to his house, so he could listen to a message from you." **23** So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him.

On the next morning he got up and went with them, and some of the brothers from Joppa accompanied him. **24** On the following day they came to Caesarea. Cornelius was waiting for them; he had called together his relatives and his close friends. **25** It came about that when Peter entered, Cornelius met him and fell down at his feet to worship him. **26** But Peter helped him up, saying, "Stand up! I too am a man."

**27** While Peter was talking with him, he went in and found many people gathered together. **28** He said to them, "You yourselves know that it is not lawful for a Jewish man to associate with or to visit a foreigner. But God has shown me that I should not call any man defiled or unclean. **29** That is why I came without arguing, when I was sent for. So I ask you why you sent for me."

**30** Cornelius said, "Four days ago at this very hour, I was praying at the ninth hour in my house; and see, a man stood before me in bright clothing. **31** He said, 'Cornelius, your prayer has been heard by God, and your alms have reminded God about you. **32** So send someone to Joppa, and call to you a man named Simon who is called Peter. He is staying in the house of a tanner named Simon, by the seaside.' *[*[2](#fn-044-010-032-2)*]***33** So at once I sent for you. You are kind to have come. Now then, we are all here present in the sight of God to hear everything that you have been instructed by the Lord to say." *[*[3](#fn-044-010-033-3)*]*

**34** Then Peter opened his mouth and said, "Truly I understand that God is not partial. **35** Instead, in every nation anyone who fears him and does what is right is acceptable to him. **36** You know the message that he sent to the people of Israel, when he announced the good news about peace through Jesus Christ, who is Lord of all— **37** you yourselves know the events that took place, which occurred throughout all Judea, beginning in Galilee, after the baptism that John announced; **38** the events concerning Jesus of Nazareth, how God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power. He went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with him. **39** We are witnesses of all the things Jesus did, both in the country of the Jews and in Jerusalem. They killed him by hanging him on a tree, **40** but God raised him up on the third day and caused him to be seen, **41** not by all the people, but to the witnesses who were chosen beforehand by God—by us who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead. **42** He commanded us to proclaim to the people and to testify that this is the one who has been chosen by God to be the Judge of the living and the dead. **43** About him all the prophets testify, that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name."

**44** While Peter was still saying these things, the Holy Spirit fell on all of those who were listening to his message. **45** The people who belonged to the circumcision group of believers—all of those who came with Peter—were amazed, because the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out also on the Gentiles. **46** For they heard these Gentiles speaking in tongues and exalting God. Then Peter answered, **47** "Can anyone keep water from these people so they should not be baptized, these people who have received the Holy Spirit as well as we?" **48** Then he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to stay with them for several days.

#### Footnotes

10:19 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-010-019-1)*]*Some ancient copies have, 10:32 *[*[2](#ref-fn-044-010-032-2)*]*Some ancient copies add: 10:33 *[*[3](#ref-fn-044-010-033-3)*]*Instead of

### Acts 10 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Unclean

The Jews believed that they could become unclean in God's sight if they visited or ate food with a Gentile. This was because the Pharisees had made a law against it because they wanted to keep people from eating foods that the law of Moses said were unclean. The law of Moses did say that some foods were unclean, but it did not say that God's people could not visit or eat with Gentiles. (See: clean and lawofmoses)

##### Baptism and the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit "fell on" those who were listening to Peter. This showed the Jewish believers that Gentiles could receive the word of God and receive the Holy Spirit just as the Jewish believers had. After that, the Gentiles were baptized.

### Acts 10

#### 10: 1-8

#### Where was Caesarea?

[10:1]

See Map: Caesarea

#### What was a centurion in the “Italian Regiment”?

[10:1]

A centurion in the “Italian Regiment” was an officer in the Roman army. He lead about eighty soldiers. The Roman army recruited these soldiers in Italy.

See Map: Italy

#### Why was Cornelius a devout man?

[10:2]

Cornelius was a devout man because he worshipped God, but he was not a Jew. He was not circumcised. He helped the poor and he often prayed (see: Acts 10:4).

See: [Pray (Prayer)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md); [Pray (Prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Who was included in Cornelius’ household?

[10:2]

The household of Cornelius included his wife, children, and all relatives living in his home. It also included his servants and their children.

See: [Serve](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/serve.md)

#### What time was “the ninth hour of the day”?

[10:3]

“The ninth hour of the day” was about 3 PM. It was during the hot part of the day. What was a vision?

See: [Vision](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### Why was Cornelius “very afraid” of the angel?

[10:4]

Cornelius was “very afraid” of the angel because the angel knew him. Cornelius was not dreaming (see: Acts 10:10). Instead, Cornelius was fully awake.

See: Luke 2:9

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### What was a “memorial offering”?

[10:5]

The angel spoke about the prayers of Cornelius and his gifts to the poor as if they were a sacrifice that God had commanded the Israelites to give. Here the angel called what Cornelius had done a “memorial offering.” A “memorial” is something that reminds someone about a person or about something that happened. A memorial offering was an offering that was burned. The aroma of the burnt offering was said to smell good to God. That is, God was pleased with the offering and accepted it. The memorial offering shows the person that God remembers them and hears their prayers. In this situation, God had heard the prayers of Cornelius and had seen what Cornelius had done.

See: [Fragrant Offering (Aroma)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fragrantoffering.md); [Sacrifice](../articles/sacrifice.md); [Offer (Offering)](../articles/offer.md); [Fragrant Offering (Aroma)](../articles/fragrantoffering.md)

#### Where was Joppa?

[10:5]

See Map: Joppa

#### Why did the angel tell Cornelius to send for Peter?

[10:5]

The angel told Cornelius to send for Peter because he was the apostle Jesus called the rock (see: Matthew 16:18-19). Peter’s name was Simon, but Jesus called him Peter. Peter was the name for “rock.” Jesus was going to build his church upon Peter, the rock.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

#### Where was Peter?

[10:6]

Peter was visiting with a tanner named Simon. A tanner worked with leather skin.

#### What was a house servant?

[10:7]

A house servant was a person who helped with housework by preparing good and cleaning. Sometimes they helped a leader of an army and did not do the cleaning. They were trusted servants. Scholars think they took horses since it was fifty kilometers away, and they brought an extra horse for Peter to ride on the way back to Joppa.

See: [Serve](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/artcles/serve.md)

See Map: Joppa

#### How was this man a devout soldier?

[10:7]

Scholars think this soldier worshipped God since Cornelius told them everything about his vision (see: Acts 10:8). For the servants and this soldier to talk with Peter about the vision, they needed to believe and worship God in the way Cornelius did. They also needed to listen to and follow the Holy Spirit.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Vision](../articles/vision.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### 10:9-16

#### What time was the “sixth hour”?

[10:9]

The “sixth hour” was midday, about noon.

#### Why did Peter go up to the housetop to pray?

[10:9]

Peter went to the housetop to pray because he was able to pray to God alone there. The roofs were flat. People used an outer stairway to go up and down from the housetop. Often there was a cover to give people shade.

See: [Pray (Prayer)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md)

#### What was a “trance”?

[10:10]

A “trance” (ἔκστασις/g1611) was something that happened to a person. Sometimes it was a dream. Peter’s trance was stronger than the vision God gave to Cornelius. Often, a person focused on what God showed him and he was no longer aware of anything near him.

See: [Vision](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### Why were there different animals in this large sheet?

[10:12]

The four-footed animals, things that crawled on the earth, and birds of the sky were the three groups of living things God created and delivered in Noah’s ark (see: Genesis 6:20). God was saying all of creation was open to Peter. The news about Jesus was going to all of creation. This includes Gentiles, Jews, slaves, free people, women, and men (see: Galatians 3:28).

See: [Serve](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/artcles/serve.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Serve](../artcles/serve.md)

#### Why did the voice tell Peter to rise, kill, and eat?

[10:13]

God told Peter to rise, kill, and eat the unclean animals because he wanted people to know that it was not evil to eat these things. God did not want people to follow the Law of Moses anymore. God also wanted the Jews to know that the Gentiles could become Christians.

See: [Fellowship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fellowship.md); [Fellowship](../articles/fellowship.md)

#### Why did Peter not want to eat unclean food?

[10:14]

Peter did not want to eat unclean food because he always obeyed the law of Moses (see: Ezekiel 4:14). However, Peter did not know God’s new and bigger plan. The new and bigger plan was that both Jews and Gentiles were joined together in some way and could both become Christians.

#### 10:17-23

#### How many men looked for Peter?

[10:17]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that three men looked for Peter. Some scholars note it was the same number Luke wrote in verse seven. Fewer ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that two men looked for Peter. Some scholars say two men spoke to Peter and the third man was a guard. Some ancient copies did now say how many men looked for Peter. Some scholars say Luke did not write how many men there were in the same way he wrote verse seventeen. Scholars think Luke wrote that three men looked for Peter.

#### What nationality was Cornelius?

[10:22]

Cornelius was a Gentile from Italy (see: Acts 10:1).

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md)

See Map: Italy

#### Who were the brothers from Joppa?

[10:23]

The brothers were Jewish Christian men from Joppa.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md)

See Map: Joppa

#### 10:24-33

#### Why did Cornelius fall down at the feet of Peter?

[10:25]

Cornelius fell down at Peter’s feet and honored him because God sent Peter. Cornelius did not want to worship Peter but Peter wanted to be sure of this so he told Cornelius to get up. Peter was only a man in the same way Cornelius was a man (see: Acts 10:26).

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md)

#### To whom was Peter talking?

[10:26]

Peter was talking with Cornelius when they entered into the house. Then Peter addressed the crowd of relatives and close friends of Cornelius. They were Gentiles so Peter wanted to let them know he was not permitted to come inside a Gentile home. However, God changed this and Peter went into the house of a Gentile (see: Acts 10:28).

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md)

#### How did Peter know God did not want him to call any person unclean or impure?

[10:28]

Peter knew God did not want him to call any person unclean because Peter believed the vision God gave him. The vision was a sheet with all kinds of animals, both pure and impure, that he saw coming from heaven. It was a sign of God accepting all people if they believed in Jesus (see: Acts 10:35).

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md); [Offer (Offering)](../articles/offer.md); [Heaven](../articles/heaven.md); [Sign](../articles/sign.md)

#### Whom did Cornelius see “in bright clothing”?

[10:30]

Cornelius saw an angel of God “in bright clothing” (see: Acts 10:3).

See: [Light and Darkness (Metaphor)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lightdarkness.md); [Light and Darkness (Metaphor)](../articles/lightdarkness.md)

#### What was a tanner?

[10:32]

A tanner was someone who worked with leather to make it certain colors and thicknesses.

#### What did Luke write in verse 32?

[10:32]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words about Peter coming and speaking at the end of verse 32. Older and more copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. Scholars do not think Luke wrote these words.

#### 10:34-43

#### Why did Peter say “God is not partial”?

[10:34]

Peter said “God is not partial” because God is just. God knows what a person thinks. Peter thought about how God equally judges and loves the Jews and the Gentiles.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### Why did Peter say Jesus will be the “Judge of the living and the dead”?

[10:42]

Peter said Jesus will be the “Judge of the living and the dead.” One day, Jesus will judge all people.

See: [Day of Judgment](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/dayofjudgment.md) ; [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md); [Day of Judgment](../articles/dayofjudgment.md)

#### 10:44-48

#### How did the Holy Spirit fall on the Gentiles?

[10:44]

The Holy Spirit “fell”(ἐπιπίπτω/g1968) (see: Acts 10:44) on the Gentiles in the same way the Holy Spirit was “poured out”(ἐκχέω/g1632) (see: Acts 10:45) on the Gentiles to work in them. Some scholars think Peter was thinking about how the Holy Spirit came from heaven. Other scholars think this meant that people began to speak in tongues and began to praise God (see: Acts 2:4,11).

See: [Speaking in Tongues](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tongues.md); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/fillingholyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Speaking in Tongues](../articles/tongues.md)

#### What was the gift of the Holy Spirit poured out on the Gentiles?

[10:44]

Some scholars think the gift of the Holy Spirit was the power of God to help people live in a way that honors God (see: John 14:15-18; 16:5-15). Other scholars think it was the power of God to tell other people in the world about Jesus (see: Acts 1:8). In this story, the power caused the Gentile listeners to speak in tongues and to praise God(see: Acts 10:46,43).

See: [Speaking in Tongues](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tongues.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Speaking in Tongues](../articles/tongues.md)

#### When did God save Cornelius and his household?

[10:44]

God saved Cornelius and his household when Peter they each believed in Jesus (see: Acts 11:14; 10:39-40,43). Before they were able to say they believed in Jesus, God gave them the Holy Spirit. That is, Peter did not even finish speaking. They believed in Jesus while Peter was still speaking.

See: Acts 11:17

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Angel](../articles/angel.md)

#### Who were the people who belong to the “circumcision group”?

[10:45]

The people who belonged to the “circumcision group” were the Jewish Christians who went with Peter from Joppa to the house of Cornelius. They were amazed God gave the Holy Spirit to the uncircumcised Gentiles in the same way God filled Jews with the Holy Spirit at Pentecost (see: Acts 2:4).

See: [Pentecost](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/pentecost.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/fillingholyspirit.md); [Pentecost](../articles/pentecost.md)

See Map: Joppa

#### Why did Peter talk about baptizing Cornelius and his household?

[10:47]

Peter talked about baptizing Cornelius and his household because he saw the Holy Spirit work in these Gentiles. That is, they spoke in tongues in the same way the disciples did at Pentecost (see: Acts 2:4). Because of this, he knew they believed in Jesus in the same way Jewish disciples believed in Jesus (see Acts 11:16-17). Peter knew they must be baptized in the same way other Christians were baptized (see: Acts 2:37-41). They should be baptized because God accepted them (see: Acts 10: 35,46; 15:8).

See: [Pentecost](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/pentecost.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Speaking in Tongues](../articles/tongues.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Pentecost](../articles/pentecost.md)

#### Why did these people ask Peter to stay with them for several days?

[10:48]

These people asked Peter to stay with them for several days because they wanted to learn and ask questions. They had much to learn about Jesus and how to live in a way that honors God.

#### Acts 10:1

##### General Information:

The writer begins to give background information about Cornelius.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of the part of the story about Cornelius.

##### Now there was a certain man

This was a way of introducing a new person to this part of the historical account.

##### in the city of Caesarea, Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Company of Soldiers

"from Caesarea whose name was Cornelius. He was an officer in charge of 60 soldiers from the Italian Company of Soldiers, in the Roman army"

#### Acts 10:2

##### General Information:

The writer finishes giving background information about Cornelius.

##### a devout man

a man who wanted to do what God expected of him

##### feared God

worshiped God with deep respect and awe

##### prayed to God constantly

The word "constantly" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "prayed to God often" or "he prayed to God regularly"

#### Acts 10:3

##### the ninth hour

"three o'clock in the afternoon." This was the normal afternoon prayer time for Jews.

##### he clearly saw

"Cornelius clearly saw"

#### Acts 10:4

##### Your prayers and your alms have gone up ... into God's presence

It is implied that his gifts and prayers had been accepted by God. Alternate translation: "God is pleased by your prayers and alms. They have gone up ... to him"

#### Acts 10:5

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 10:6

##### a tanner

a person who makes leather from animal skins

#### Acts 10:7

##### When the angel who spoke to him had left

"When Cornelius' vision of the angel had ended."

##### a devout soldier

a soldier who wanted to do what God expected of him. See how you translated "devout" in [Acts 10:2](./02.md).

#### Acts 10:8

##### told them all that had happened

Cornelius explained his vision to his two servants and to one of his soldiers.

##### sent them to Joppa

"sent two of his two servants and the one soldier to Joppa."

#### Acts 10:9

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Cornelius' two servants and the soldier under Cornelius' command (Acts 10:7).

##### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts away from Cornelius to tell us what God is doing with to Peter.

##### about the sixth hour

"around noon"

##### up upon the housetop

The roofs of the houses were flat, and people often did many different activities on them.

#### Acts 10:10

##### while the people were cooking some food

"before the people finished cooking the food"

##### a trance came on him

This metaphor means that Peter went into the trance without expecting it or desiring it. Alternate translation: "he went into a trance"

##### trance

Peter saw things in his mind, not with his physical eyes.

#### Acts 10:11

##### he saw the sky open

This was the beginning of Peter's vision. It can be a new sentence.

##### something like a large sheet ... four corners

The container holding the animals had the appearance of a large square piece of cloth.

##### let down by its four corners

"with its four corners suspended" or "with its four corners higher than the rest of it"

#### Acts 10:12

##### things that crawled on the earth

snakes and insects, as opposed to "four-footed animals"

#### Acts 10:13

##### a voice spoke to him

The person speaking is not specified. The "voice" was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God.

#### Acts 10:14

##### Not so

"I will not do that"

##### I have never eaten anything that was defiled and unclean

It is implied that some of the "four-footed animals and things that crawled on the earth, and birds of the sky"

#### Acts 10:15

##### What God has made clean, you must not call defiled

This refers to the animals in the sheet.

##### What God has made clean

If God is the speaker, he is referring to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "What I, God, have made clean"

#### Acts 10:16

##### This happened three times

Possible meanings are 1) Peter heard the words "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled" three times or 2) a total of three times the sheet came down from heaven and Peter heard and responded to the voice. It would be best to translate without adding information here.

#### Acts 10:17

##### Peter was very confused

This means that Peter was having difficulty understanding what the vision meant.

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows, in this case, the two men standing at the gate.

##### stood before the gate

"stood before the gate to the house." It is implied that this house had a wall with a gate one would use to enter the property.

##### after they had asked their way to the house

This happened before they arrived at the house. This could be stated earlier in the verse, as the UDB does.

#### Acts 10:18

##### They called out

Cornelius' men remained outside the gate while asking about Peter.

#### Acts 10:19

##### thinking about the vision

"wondering about the meaning of the vision"

##### the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit"

##### Behold, three

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: three"

##### three men are looking for you

Some ancient texts have a different number of men.

#### Acts 10:20

##### go down

"go down from the roof of the house"

##### Do not hesitate to go with them

It would be natural for Peter not to want to go with them, because they were strangers and they were Gentiles.

#### Acts 10:21

##### I am he whom you are seeking

"I am the man you are looking for"

#### Acts 10:22

##### General Information:

The word "They" here refer to the two servants and the soldier from Cornelius (Acts 10:7).

##### A centurion named Cornelius ... listen to a message from you

This can be divided into several sentences and stated in active form as the UDB does.

##### fears God

worships God with deep respect and awe

##### all the nation of the Jews

This number of people is exaggerated with the word "all" to emphasize how widely this was known among the Jews.

#### Acts 10:23

##### General Information:

The word "them" here refer to the two servants and the soldier from Cornelius (Acts 10:7).

##### So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him

The journey to Caesarea was too long for them to begin that afternoon.

##### stay with him

"be his guests"

##### some of the brothers from Joppa

This refers to believers who lived in Joppa.

#### Acts 10:24

##### On the following day

This was the next day after they left Joppa. The journey to Caesarea took longer than one day.

##### Cornelius was waiting for them

"Cornelius expected them"

#### Acts 10:25

##### when Peter entered

"when Peter entered the house"

##### fell down at his feet to worship him

"he knelt down and put his face close to Peter's feet." He did this to honor Peter.

##### fell down

He purposely did this to show that he was worshiping.

#### Acts 10:26

##### Stand up! I too am a man

Peter was rebuking Cornelius mildly for worshiping Peter. Alternate translation: "Do not worship me! I am only a man, as you are"

#### Acts 10:27

##### General Information:

The word "him" here refers to Cornelius, and "he" refers to Peter.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter addresses the people who are gathered in Cornelius' house.

##### many people gathered together

"many Gentile people gathered together." It is implied that these people Cornelius had invited were Gentiles.

#### Acts 10:28

##### General Information:

Here the words "You" and "yourselves" include Cornelius as well as the Gentiles who were present and so are plural.

##### it is not lawful for a Jewish man

"it is forbidden for a Jewish man." This refers to the Jewish religious law.

##### a foreigner

people who are not Jews

#### Acts 10:29

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "you" include Cornelius as well as the Gentiles who were present and so are plural.

#### Acts 10:30

##### General Information:

In verses 31 and 32 Cornelius quotes what the angel had said to him when he appeared to him at the ninth hour. The words "you" and "your" are all singular. The word "we" here does not include Peter.

##### Connecting Statement:

Cornelius responds to Peter's question.

##### Four days ago

Cornelius is referring to the day before the third night before he is speaking to Peter. Biblical culture counts the current day, so the day before three nights ago is "four days ago." Current Western culture does not count the current day, so many Western translations read, "three days ago."

##### praying

Some ancient authorities say "fasting and praying" instead of simply "praying."

##### at the ninth hour

The normal afternoon time that the Jews pray to God.

#### Acts 10:31

##### your prayer has been heard by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has heard your prayer"

##### reminded God about you

"brought you to God's attention." This does not imply that God had forgotten.

#### Acts 10:32

##### call to you a man named Simon who is called Peter

"tell Simon who is also called Peter to come to you"

#### Acts 10:33

##### at once

"right away"

##### You are kind to have come

This expression is a polite way of thanking Peter for coming. Alternate translation: "I certainly thank you for coming"

##### we are all here

This refers to Cornelius and his family but not to Peter, so this is exclusive.

##### present in the sight of God

"present with God"

##### that you have been instructed by the Lord to say

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the Lord has told you to say"

#### Acts 10:34

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins speaking to everyone in the house of Cornelius.

##### opened his mouth

"began to speak"

##### Truly

This means that what he is about to say is especially important to know.

##### God is not partial

"God does not favor certain people"

#### Acts 10:35

##### anyone who fears him and does what is right is acceptable to him

"he accepts anyone who fears him and does what is right"

##### to him

to God

##### fears

worships with deep respect and awe

#### Acts 10:36

##### General Information:

All instances of "he" here refers to God.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to talk to Cornelius and his guests.

##### who is Lord of all

Here "all" means "all people."

#### Acts 10:37

##### throughout all Judea

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "throughout Judea" or "in many places in Judea"

##### after the baptism that John announced

"after John preached to the people to repent and then baptized them"

#### Acts 10:38

##### the events ... and with power

This long sentence, which begins in verse 36, can be shortened into several sentences as in the UDB.

##### God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power

The Holy Spirit and God's power are spoken of as if they are something that can be poured out onto a person.

##### all who were oppressed by the devil

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "those who were oppressed by the devil" or "many people who were oppressed by the devil"

##### God was with him

The idiom "was with him" means "was helping him."

#### Acts 10:39

##### General Information:

The word "We" refer to Peter and the apostles and believers who were with Jesus when he was on earth, not to his hearers. The word "him" here refers to Jesus.

##### in the country of the Jews

This refers mainly to Judea at that time.

##### hanging him on a tree

This is another expression that refers to crucifixion. Alternate translation: "nailing him to a wooden cross"

#### Acts 10:40

##### General Information:

Both instances of "him" refer to Jesus.

##### God raised him up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "God caused him to live again"

##### the third day

"the third day after he died"

##### caused him to be seen

"permitted many people to see him after he was raised from the dead"

#### Acts 10:41

##### General Information:

The word "us" refers to Peter and the apostles and believers who were with Jesus when he was on earth, not to his hearers. The words "him" and "he" here refers to Jesus.

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

#### Acts 10:42

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" includes Peter and believers. It excludes his audience.

##### that this is the one who has been chosen by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God chose this Jesus"

##### the living and the dead

This refers to people who are still living and people who have died. Alternate translation: "the people who are alive and the people who are dead"

#### Acts 10:43

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to everyone in the house of Cornelius, which he began in [Acts 10:34](./34.md).

##### About him all the prophets testify

"All the prophets testify about Jesus"

##### everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive the sins of everyone who believes in Jesus because of what Jesus has done"

##### through his name

Here "his name" refers to the actions of Jesus. His name means God who saves. Alternate translation: "through what Jesus has done for them"

#### Acts 10:44

##### the Holy Spirit fell

Here the word "fell" indicates that the event happened suddenly. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit suddenly came"

##### all of those who were listening

Here "all" refers to all the Gentiles at the house who were listening to Peter.

#### Acts 10:45

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out also

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God also poured out the Holy Spirit"

##### the gift of the Holy Spirit

That is, the Holy Spirit himself was the gift.

##### poured out

The Holy Spirit is spoken of as if he were something that could be poured out upon people. It implies a generous amount. Alternate translation: "generously given"

##### the gift

"the free gift"

##### also on the Gentiles

Here "also" refers to the fact that the Holy Spirit had already been given to the Jewish believers.

#### Acts 10:46

##### Gentiles speaking in tongues and exalting God

These were known spoken languages that caused the Jews to acknowledge that the Gentiles were indeed praising God.

##### speaking in tongues

Here "tongues" is a metonym for languages. Alternate translation: "speaking in other languages"

#### Acts 10:47

##### Can anyone keep water from these people so they should not be baptized, these people who have received ... we?

Peter uses this question to convince the Jewish Christians that the Gentile believers should be baptized. Alternate translation: "No one should keep water from these people! We should baptize them because they have received ... we!"

#### Acts 10:48

##### General Information:

The words "he" and "him" refer to Peter.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Cornelius.

##### he commanded them to be baptized

It is implied that the Jewish Christians were the ones who would baptize them. Alternate translation: "Peter commanded the Gentile believers to allow the Jewish Christians to baptize them" or "Peter commanded the Jewish Christians to baptize them"

##### be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ

Here "in the name of Jesus Christ" expresses that the reason for their baptism was that they believed in Jesus. Alternate translation: "be baptized as believers in Jesus Christ"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 10:2

##### What kind of man was Cornelius?

Cornelius was a devout man who feared God, was generous, and was always praying to God.

#### Acts 10:4

##### What did the angel say had caused God to be reminded about Cornelius?

The angel said that Cornelius' prayers and gifts to the poor had reminded God about Cornelius.

#### Acts 10:5

##### What did the angel tell Cornelius to do?

The angel told Cornelius to send men to Joppa to bring Peter.

#### Acts 10:11

##### On the next day, what did Peter see while he was praying and in a trance on the housetop?

Peter saw a large sheet filled with all kinds of animals, things that crawled, and birds.

#### Acts 10:12

##### On the next day, what did Peter see while he was praying and in a trance on the housetop?

Peter saw a large sheet filled with all kinds of animals, things that crawled, and birds.

#### Acts 10:13

##### As Peter saw the vision, what did a voice say to him?

A voice said to Peter, "Rise, Peter, kill and eat".

#### Acts 10:14

##### What was Peter's response to the voice?

Peter refused, saying he had never eaten anything defiled and unclean.

#### Acts 10:15

##### What did the voice say to Peter after this?

The voice said, "What God has cleansed, do not call it defiled".

#### Acts 10:20

##### What did the Spirit tell Peter to do when the men from Cornelius arrived at the house?

The Spirit told Peter to go down and go with them.

#### Acts 10:22

##### What did the men from Cornelius expect Peter to come and do in Cornelius' house?

The men from Cornelius expected Peter to come and give a message in Cornelius' house.

#### Acts 10:26

##### What did Peter say when Cornelius bowed down at Peter's feet?

Peter told Cornelius to stand up, for he was only a man.

#### Acts 10:28

##### What was Peter doing that was previously not allowed for Jews, and why was he now doing it?

Peter was associating with people from another nation, because God had shown him that he should not call any man defiled or unclean.

#### Acts 10:35

##### Who did Peter say is acceptable to God?

Peter said that anyone who fears God and does righteous deeds is acceptable to God.

#### Acts 10:38

##### What message about Jesus had the people in Cornelius' house already heard?

The people had already heard that Jesus was anointed by the Holy Spirit and with power, and that he had healed all who were oppressed, for God was with him.

#### Acts 10:40

##### What did Peter announce had happened to Jesus after his death, and how did Peter know this?

Peter announced that God had raised up Jesus on the third day, and that Peter had eaten with Jesus after his resurrection.

#### Acts 10:41

##### What did Peter announce had happened to Jesus after his death, and how did Peter know this?

Peter announced that God had raised up Jesus on the third day, and that Peter had eaten with Jesus after his resurrection.

#### Acts 10:42

##### What did Peter say Jesus had commanded them to preach to the people?

Jesus had commanded them to preach that Jesus had been chosen by God to be the Judge of the living and the dead.

#### Acts 10:43

##### What did Peter say everyone would receive who believes in Jesus?

Peter said that everyone who believes in Jesus would receive the forgiveness of sins.

#### Acts 10:44

##### What happened to the people who were listening to Peter while Peter was still speaking?

The Holy Spirit fell on all those who were listening to Peter.

#### Acts 10:45

##### Why were the believers who belonged to the circumcision group amazed?

The believers who belonged to the circumcision group were amazed because the gift of the Holy Spirit was poured out also on the Gentiles.

#### Acts 10:46

##### What were the people doing which demonstrated that the Holy Spirit had fallen on them?

The people were speaking in other languages and praising God which demonstrated that the Holy Spirit had fallen on them.

#### Acts 10:48

##### After seeing that the people had received the Holy Spirit, what did Peter command to be done with them?

Peter commanded that the people be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ.

### Chapter 11

**1** Now the apostles and the brothers who were in Judea heard that the Gentiles also had received the word of God. **2** When Peter had come up to Jerusalem, they who belonged to the circumcision group criticized him; **3** they said, "You associated with uncircumcised men and ate with them!" **4** But Peter started to explain the matter to them in detail, saying, **5** "I was praying in the city of Joppa, and in a trance I saw a vision of a container coming down, like a large sheet let down from heaven by its four corners. It descended to me. **6** I gazed at it and I thought about it. I saw the four-legged animals of earth, wild beasts, things that crawled, and birds of the sky. **7** Then I heard a voice say to me, 'Get up, Peter; kill and eat!'

**8** I said, 'Not so, Lord; for nothing unholy or unclean has ever entered into my mouth.'

**9** But the voice answered again from heaven, 'What God has made clean, you must not call defiled.' **10** This happened three times, and then everything was taken back up into heaven again.

**11** "Behold, right away there were three men standing in front of the house where we were; they had been sent from Caesarea to me. **12** The Spirit commanded me to go with them, and that I should make no distinction regarding them. These six brothers went with me, and we went into the man's house. **13** He told us how he had seen the angel standing in his house and saying, ‘Send men to Joppa and bring back Simon who is called Peter. **14** He will speak to you a message by which you will be saved—you and all your household.’ **15** As I began to speak to them, the Holy Spirit came on them, just as on us in the beginning. **16** I remembered the words of the Lord, how he said, 'John indeed baptized with water; but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit.' **17** Then if God gave to them the same gift as he gave to us when we believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I, that I could oppose God?"

**18** When they heard these things, they said nothing in response, but they glorified God and said, "Then God has given repentance for life to the Gentiles also."

**19** Now those who had been scattered by the persecution that arose over Stephen spread as far as Phoenicia, Cyprus, and Antioch, speaking the word only to Jews. **20** But some of them, men from Cyprus and Cyrene, came to Antioch and spoke also to Greeks, proclaiming to them the gospel about the Lord Jesus. **21** The hand of the Lord was with them; a great number believed and turned to the Lord. **22** News about them came to the ears of the church in Jerusalem, and they sent out Barnabas as far as Antioch. **23** When he came and saw the grace of God, he was glad and he encouraged them all to remain with the Lord with purpose of heart. **24** For he was a good man and full of the Holy Spirit and of faith, and many people were added to the Lord. **25** Barnabas then went out to Tarsus to search carefully for Saul. **26** When he found him, he brought him to Antioch. It came about, that for an entire year they gathered together with the church and taught many people. The disciples were first called Christians in Antioch.

**27** Now in these days some prophets came down from Jerusalem to Antioch. **28** One of them, Agabus by name, stood up and indicated by the Spirit that a great famine would occur over all the world. This happened in the days of Claudius. **29** So the disciples, as each one was able, determined to send a contribution for the relief of the brothers in Judea. **30** They did this; they sent money to the elders by the hand of Barnabas and Saul.

### Acts 11 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "The Gentiles also had received the word of God"

Almost all of the first believers were Jewish. Luke writes in this chapter that many Gentiles started to believe in Jesus. They believed that the message about Jesus was true and so began to "receive the word of God." Some of the believers in Jerusalem did not believe that Gentiles could truly follow Jesus, so Peter went to them and told them what had happened to him and how he had seen the Gentiles receive the Word of God and receive the Holy Spirit.

### Acts 11

#### 11:1-10

#### Who were the “brothers”?

[11:1]

The “brothers” were men and women who believed in Jesus.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md)

#### Where was Judea?

[11:1]

See Map: Judea

#### How did the Gentiles receive “the word of God”?

[11:1]

The Gentiles “received the word of God” when they believed God’s word about Jesus. That is, they believed Jesus is the messiah.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Word of God](../articles/wordofgod.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### Who was “the circumcision group”?

[11:2]

“The circumcision group” was Jewish Christians.

See: Acts 10:45

See: [Circumcise (Circumcision)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/circumcise.md)

#### Why did the Jewish Christians think it was wrong to be with uncircumcised people and eat with them?

[11:3]

See: Acts 10:34.

#### What was a “trance” and what was a “vision”?

[11:5, 11:6]

See: Acts 10:10

Why did Peter add “wild beasts” to the animals Luke wrote about in Acts 10:12? Peter added “wild beasts” to the animals Luke wrote about in Acts 10:12 because Peter was thinking about how God created the animals (see: Genesis 1:25) when he said this. Elsewhere, Luke was thinking about the animals God delivered in Noah’s ark (see: Genesis 6:20; Acts 10:12).

#### Why did the voice tell Peter to get up, kill and eat?

[11:7]

See: Acts 10:13

#### Why did Peter refuse to kill and eat?

[11:8]

See: Acts 10:13.

See: [Clean and Unclean](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/cleanunclean.md)

#### Why did God say defiled food was clean?

[11:9]

God said defiled food was clean. That is, God said that unclean foods were now clean. God made a way for Jewish Christians to worship God with Gentile Christians and visit Gentile houses. That is, since Jews were able to eat the food Gentiles ate, they were able to do other things with Gentiles.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### 11:11-18

#### Where was Caesarea?

[11:11]

See Map: Caesarea

#### Why did the Holy Spirit tell Peter to “make no distinction” about the men who came to him?

[11:12]

The Holy Spirit told Peter to “make no distinction” about the men who came to him. God wanted Peter to tell the Gentiles at Cornelius’ house about Jesus. God wanted him to do this even though they were Gentiles. He brought other Jewish Christians with him. Six of those Jewish Christians also went him to Jerusalem. They were also able to say what happened at Cornelius’ house.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### Who were the six brothers who went with Peter into the house of Cornelius?

[11:12]

The six brothers were Jewish Christians from Joppa. They went with Peter into the house of Cornelius and saw what happened when the Holy Spirit came upon everyone and everyone spoke in tongues and praised God. They were able to say the good news about Jesus and the gift of the Holy Spirit were available to Gentiles.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Speaking in Tongues](../articles/tongues.md); [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### Where was Joppa?

[11:13]

See Map: Joppa

#### What was the message Peter spoke to the people in the house of Cornelius?

[11:14]

Peter spoke about Jesus to the people in the house of Cornelius. That is, Peter told them about how Jesus healed people, but people killed Jesus and God made him alive again (see: Acts 10:38-40). Then Peter told them that Jesus is the one who all the prophets spoke about.

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### How did the Holy Spirit come upon these people?

[11:15]

See: Acts 10:44-46.

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fillingholyspirit.md)

#### Who is “the Lord” in verse sixteen?

“The Lord” in verse sixteen is Jesus. Jesus is Lord and he is the one who rules from heaven.

See: [Heaven](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heaven.md); [Heaven](../articles/heaven.md)

#### Why did Peter change his mind about salvation for the Gentiles?

[11:17]

Peter changed his mind about salvation for the Gentiles because he saw God give the Holy Spirit to the Gentiles. Peter knew that if God did that, then Peter knew this is what God wanted.

See: [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/indwelling.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md)

#### How did God give “repentance for life to the Gentiles also”?

[11:18]

God gave “repentance for life to the Gentiles also.” That is, God gave them repentance through the Holy Spirit. If the Gentiles repented of their sins, then they were at peace with God and God gave them eternal life and a new life. God also did this for the Jews. God helped them to repent, believe in Jesus, and be at peace with God.

See: [Born Again (New Life, Regeneration)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/bornagain.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon)](../articles/forgive.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Eternal Life](../articles/eternallife.md); [Born Again (New Life, Regeneration)](../articles/bornagain.md)

#### 11:19-30

#### Where were Phoenicia, Cyprus, and Antioch?

[11:19]

See Map: Phoenicia; Cyprus; Antioch

#### Why did the Christian Jews speak only to Jews in the areas where they went?

[11:19]

The Christian Jews from Jerusalem spoke only to the Jews in the areas where they went because they did not think the gospel was for the Gentiles. However, other Christian Jews from Cyprus and Cyrene went and told the Gentiles about Jesus and the gospel.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

See Map: Cyprus; Cyrene

#### Who were “some of them” in verse 20?

[11:20]

“Some of them” in verse twenty were Greek-speaking Jews who believed in Jesus. They were not from Jerusalem but were from Cyprus and Cyrene.

See Map: Cyprus; Cyrene

#### Where is Cyrene?

[11:20]

See Map: Cyrene

#### Whom did the men from Cyprus and Cyrene speak to?

[11:20]

The men from Cyprus and Cyrene spoke about Jesus to both Jews and Gentiles. Luke wrote the word “also” because they treated the Jews and Gentiles the same. The gospel was for everyone.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md)

See Map: Cyprus; Cyrene

#### How was “the hand of the Lord was with them”?

[11:21]

Luke wrote that “the hand of the Lord was with them.” That is, when they taught people about Jesus, they had God’s power with them. God helped them. Because of this, many people believed and turned to the Lord Jesus.

#### How did people “turn to the Lord”?

[11:21]

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md)

#### Who was Barnabas?

[11:22]

Barnabas was a Christian leader named Joseph. He was from the Levite and he came from Cyprus. The apostles called him Barnabas, “son of encouragement” (see: Acts 4:36). He was a prophet and teacher (see: Acts 13:1). He was also an apostle but not one of the twelve apostles (see: Acts 14:14).

See: [Tribes of Israel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tribesisrael.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md); [Tribes of Israel](../articles/tribesisrael.md)

#### Where was Antioch?

[11:22]

See Map: Antioch

#### How did Barnabus tell the people to “remain with the Lord with purpose of heart”?

[11:23]

Barnabus told the people to “remain with the Lord with purpose of heart.” That is, they completely served Jesus.

See: [Heart (Metaphor)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heart.md)

#### How was Barnabas “full of the Holy Spirit and of faith”?

[11:24]

See: Galatians 3:2

See: [Faith (Believe in)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/faith.md); [Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md)

#### Where was Tarsus?

[11:25]

See Map: Tarsus

#### Why did Barnabus bring Saul to Antioch?

[11:26]

Barnabus brought Saul to Antioch because he wanted Paul to serve in Antioch. Many people there believed in Jesus. Later the Christians in Antioch sent out people to tell others about Jesus.

See Map: Antioch

#### Why did people at Antioch first call the disciples “Christians”?

[11:26]

People at Antioch first called the disciples “Christians”(Χριστιανός/g5546) because the people at Antioch knew they followed Jesus, who is the “Christ”(Χριστός/g5547). Scholars think the people at Antioch mocked the disciples of Jesus or were persecuting them when they called these people Christians (see: Acts 26:28; 1 Peter 4:16). In ancient times, Christians did not call themselves Christians. Instead, they called themselves disciples, holy ones, or brothers. They started calling themselves Christians about 100 years after Jesus died.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Holy Ones](../articles/holyones.md); [Family of God](../articles/familyofgod.md)

#### How did some prophets “came down” from Jerusalem?

[11:27]

Jerusalem was higher in elevation than Antioch. Some prophets went down the hill from Jerusalem rather than traveled south to get to Antioch.

See Map: Jerusalem; Antioch

#### Who were the prophets?

[11:27]

The prophets were Christians who had the gift of prophecy.

See: [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/giftsholyspirit.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md)

#### Who was Agabus?

[11:28]

Agabus was a Christian prophet from Jerusalem. God revealed to him bad things that will happen in the future.

See: [Reveal (Revelation)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/reveal.md); [Reveal (Revelation)](../articles/reveal.md)

See: Acts 21:10

#### How did Agabus indicate “by the Spirit” a great famine?

[11:28]

Agabus indicated “by the Spirit” when the Holy Spirit helped Agabus to know to give a prophecy about the coming famine. This famine happened about 15 years after Jesus died.

See: [Famine](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/famine.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Famine](../articles/famine.md)

#### What was “all the world”?

[11:28]

“All the world” was Rome, Greece, and Egypt, and Judaea. That is, it was the whole Roman empire. It was not the entire world.

See: [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/rome.md)

#### What were the “days of Claudius”?

[11:28]

Claudius ruled the Roman Empire. He did this starting about 10 years after Jesus died and stopped about 20 years after Jesus died. There were several famines during this time.

See: [Famine](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/famine.md); [Famine](../articles/famine.md)

#### Where was Judea?

[11:29]

See Map: Judea

#### Why did God give Agabus a prophecy about the famine?

[11:29]

God gave Agabus a prophecy about the famine so the Christians in Antioch had time to prepare to help the Christians in Judea. The time allowed the Christians in Antioch to help them more than if they had not known the famine was going to happen.

See: [Famine](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/famine.md) ; [Famine](../articles/famine.md)

See Map: Judea

#### Acts 11:1

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### Now

This marks a new part of the story.

##### the brothers

The phrase "brothers" here refers to the believers in Judea.

##### who were in Judea

"who were in the province of Judea"

##### had received the word of God

This expression refers to the fact that the Gentiles believed the gospel message about Jesus. Alternate translation: "believed the message of God about Jesus"

#### Acts 11:2

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter arrives in Jerusalem and begins talking to the Jews there.

##### had come up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of coming up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

##### they who belonged to the circumcision group

This is a reference to some of the Jews who believed that every believer must be circumcised. Alternate translation: "some Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted all followers of Christ to be circumcised"

#### Acts 11:3

##### uncircumcised men

The phrase "uncircumcised men" refers to Gentiles.

##### ate with them

It was against Jewish tradition for Jews to eat with Gentiles.

#### Acts 11:4

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter responds to the Jews by telling them about his vision and about what had happened at Cornelius' house.

##### Peter started to explain

Peter did not criticize the Jewish believers but reacted in a friendly, explanatory manner.

##### in detail

"exactly what happened"

#### Acts 11:5

##### in a trance I saw

Peter saw something that was only in his mind. It was not physical. His mind was not working in its usual way. See how you translated similar words in Acts 10:10.

##### like a large sheet

The container holding the animals had the appearance of a large square piece of cloth. See how you translated this in Acts 10:11.

##### by its four corners

"with its four corners suspended" or "with its four corners higher than the rest of it." See how you translated this in Acts 10:11.

#### Acts 11:6

##### four-legged animals of earth

From Peter's response, it can be implied that the law of Moses commanded the Jews not to eat some of them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 10:12]

##### wild beasts

This probably refer to the animals people do not or cannot tame or control.

##### things that crawled

snakes and insects, as opposed to "four-footed animals." See how you translated this in Acts 10:12.

#### Acts 11:7

##### I heard a voice

The person speaking is not specified. The "voice" was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God. See how you translated "a voice" in [Acts 10:13]

#### Acts 11:8

##### Not so

"I will not do that." See how you translated this in Acts 10:14.

##### nothing unholy or unclean has ever entered into my mouth

Apparently the animals in the sheet were animals which the Jewish law in the Old Testament forbade the Jews to eat. This can be said in a positive way. Alternate translation: "I have eaten only meat from holy and clean animals"

##### unclean

In the Old Testament Jewish law, a person became ritually "unclean" in various ways, such as eating certain forbidden animals.

#### Acts 11:9

##### What God has made clean, you must not call defiled

This refers to the animals in the sheet.

#### Acts 11:10

##### This happened three times

Possible meanings are 1) Peter heard the words "What God has made clean, you must not call defiled" three times or 2) a total of three times the sheet came down from heaven and Peter heard and responded to the voice. It would be best to translate without adding information here. See how you translated "This happened three times" in Acts 10:16.

#### Acts 11:11

##### General Information:

Here "we" refers to Peter and the believers in Joppa. It does not include his current audience in Jerusalem.

##### Behold

This word alerts us to the new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### right away

"immediately" or "at that exact moment"

##### they had been sent

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had sent them"

#### Acts 11:12

##### that I should make no distinction regarding them

"that I should not be concerned that they were Gentiles"

##### These six brothers went with me

"These six brothers went with me to Caesarea"

##### These six brothers

"These six Jewish believers"

##### into the man's house

This refers to the house of Cornelius.

#### Acts 11:13

##### Simon who is called Peter

"Simon who is also called Peter." See how you translated the same phrase in Acts 10:32.

#### Acts 11:14

##### all your household

This refers to all the people in the household. Alternate translation: "everyone who lives in your house"

#### Acts 11:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to Peter, the other apostles, and all of the Jewish believers who had received the Holy Spirit at Pentecost.

##### As I began to speak to them, the Holy Spirit came on them

This implies that Peter had not finished speaking but had intended to say more.

##### the Holy Spirit came on them, just as on us in the beginning

Peter leaves out some things to keep the story short. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit came on the Gentile believers, just as he came on the Jewish believers at Pentecost"

##### in the beginning

Peter is referring to the day of Pentecost.

#### Acts 11:16

##### you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will baptize you with the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 11:17

##### General Information:

The word "them" refers to Cornelius and his Gentile guests and household. The word "us" refers to the speaker and his hearers and so is inclusive.

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech (which he began in Acts 11:4) to the Jews about his vision and about what had happened at the house of Cornelius.

##### Then if God gave to them ... who was I, that I could oppose God?

Peter uses this question to emphasize that he was only obeying God. Alternate translation: "Since God gave to them ... I decided that I could not oppose God!"

##### the same gift

Peter refers to the gift of the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 11:18

##### General Information:

The word "they" refers to the Jewish believers to whom Peter spoke.

##### they said nothing in response

"they did not argue with Peter"

##### God has given repentance for life to the Gentiles also

"God has given repentance that leads to life to the Gentiles also." Here "life" refers to eternal life. The abstract nouns "repentance" and "life" can be translated as the verbs "repent" and "live." Alternate translation: "God has also given the Gentiles the ability to repent and then live eternally" or "God has allowed the Gentiles also to repent and live eternally"

#### Acts 11:19

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about what happened to the believers who fled after the stoning of Stephen.

##### Now

This introduces the new part of the story.

##### those who had been scattered by the persecution that arose over Stephen spread

The Jews began persecuting Jesus's followers because Stephen had said and done things that the Jews did not like. Because of this persecution, many of Jesus's followers left Jerusalem and went to many different places.

##### spread

"went in many different directions"

##### who had been scattered by the persecution that arose over Stephen spread

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Jews had been persecuting because of Stephen, and so had left Jerusalem, spread"

##### the persecution that arose over Stephen

the persecution that happened because of what Stephen had said and done

##### only to Jews

The believers thought God's message was for the Jewish people, and not for the Gentiles.

#### Acts 11:20

##### spoke also to Greeks

These Greek-speaking people were Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: "also spoke to Gentiles who spoke Greek"

#### Acts 11:21

##### The hand of the Lord was with them

God's hand signifies his powerful help. Alternate translation: "God was powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively"

##### turned to the Lord

Here "turned to the Lord" is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: "they repented of their sins and began to obey the Lord"

#### Acts 11:22

##### General Information:

The word "he" refers to Barnabas. The word "they" refers to the believers of the church at Jerusalem.

##### ears of the church

Here "ears" refers to the believers' hearing about the event. Alternate translation: "the believers in the church"

#### Acts 11:23

##### General Information:

The word "he" refers to Barnabas. The word "them" refers to the believers he met on his way to Antioch.

##### saw the grace of God

"saw how God acted kindly toward the believers"

##### he encouraged them

"he kept on encouraging them"

##### to remain with the Lord

"to remain faithful to the Lord" or "to continue to trust in the Lord"

##### with purpose of heart

Here the "heart" refers to a person's will and desire. Alternate translation: "with all their will" or "with complete commitment"

#### Acts 11:24

##### General Information:

The word "he" refers to Barnabas.

##### full of the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit controlled Barnabas as he obeyed the Holy Spirit.

##### many people were added to the Lord

Here "added" means they came to believe the same thing as the others. Alternate translation: "many more people also believed in the Lord"

#### Acts 11:25

##### out to Tarsus

"out to the city of Tarsus"

#### Acts 11:26

##### General Information:

The word "he" refers to Barnabas and "him" to Saul.

##### When he found him

It probably took some time and effort for Barnabas to locate Saul.

##### It came about

This begins a new event in the story.

##### they gathered together with the church

"Barnabas and Saul gathered together with the church"

##### The disciples were first called Christians in Antioch

This implies that it was other people who called the believers Christians. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People in Antioch were the fist to call the disciples Christians"

#### Acts 11:27

##### General Information:

Here Luke tells background information about a prophecy in Antioch.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story-line.

##### came down from Jerusalem to Antioch

Jerusalem was higher in elevation than Antioch, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem or going down from it.

#### Acts 11:28

##### Agabus by name

"whose name was Agabus"

##### indicated by the Spirit

"the Holy Spirit enabled him to prophesy"

##### a great famine would occur

"a great shortage of food would happen"

##### over all the world

This was a generalization referring to the part of the world that they were interested in. Alternate translation: "all over the inhabited world" or "throughout the Roman Empire"

##### in the days of Claudius

Luke's audience would know that Claudius was the emperor of Rome at that time. Alternate translation: "when Claudius was the Roman emperor"

#### Acts 11:29

##### So

This word means marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, they sent money because of Agabus' prophesy or the famine.

##### as each one was able

The richer people sent more; the poorer people sent less.

##### the brothers in Judea

"the believers in Judea"

#### Acts 11:30

##### General Information:

The words "They" and "they" refer to the believers in the church in Antioch (Acts 11:27).

##### by the hand of Barnabas and Saul

The hand is a synecdoche for the action of the whole person. Alternate translation: "by having Barnabas and Saul take it to them"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 11:1

##### What news did the apostles and brothers in Judea hear?

The apostles and brothers in Judea heard that the Gentiles had also received the word of God.

#### Acts 11:2

##### What criticism against Peter did those of the circumcision group in Jerusalem have?

Those in the circumcision group criticized Peter for eating with the Gentiles.

#### Acts 11:3

##### What criticism against Peter did those of the circumcision group in Jerusalem have?

Those in the circumcision group criticized Peter for eating with the Gentiles.

#### Acts 11:15

##### What evidence did Peter present to demonstrate that God had accepted the Gentiles?

Peter presented the fact that the Holy Spirit had come upon the Gentiles.

#### Acts 11:18

##### What was the conclusion of those in the circumcision group when they heard Peter's explanation?

They praised God and concluded that God had given repentance for life to the Gentiles also.

#### Acts 11:19

##### What did most of the believers who were scattered do?

Most of the scattered believers told the message only to Jews.

#### Acts 11:20

##### What happened when some of the scattered believers preached the Lord Jesus to Greeks?

When they preached the Lord Jesus to Greeks, a great number believed.

#### Acts 11:21

##### What happened when some of the scattered believers preached the Lord Jesus to Greeks?

When they preached the Lord Jesus to Greeks, a great number believed.

#### Acts 11:22

##### What did Barnabas from Jerusalem tell the believing Greeks in Antioch?

Barnabas encouraged the Greeks to remain with the Lord with all their heart.

#### Acts 11:23

##### What did Barnabas from Jerusalem tell the believing Greeks in Antioch?

Barnabas encouraged the Greeks to remain with the Lord with all their heart.

#### Acts 11:26

##### Who spent an entire year at the church in Antioch?

Barnabas and Saul spent an entire year at the church in Antioch.

##### What name did the disciples first receive in Antioch?

The disciples were called Christians first in Antioch.

#### Acts 11:28

##### What did Agabus the prophet predict would happen?

Agabus predicted that a great famine would occur over all the world.

#### Acts 11:29

##### How did the disciples respond to Agabus' prophecy?

The disciples sent help to the brothers in Judea by the hand of Barnabas and Saul.

#### Acts 11:30

##### How did the disciples respond to Agabus' prophecy?

The disciples sent help to the brothers in Judea by the hand of Barnabas and Saul.

### Chapter 12

**1** Now about that time Herod the king laid hands on some who belonged to the church so that he might mistreat them. **2** He killed James the brother of John with the sword. **3** After he saw that this pleased the Jews, he proceeded to arrest Peter also. That was during the days of unleavened bread. **4** After arresting him, he put him in prison, assigning him over to four squads of soldiers to guard him; he was intending to bring him to the people after the Passover. **5** So Peter was kept in the prison, but prayer was made earnestly to God for him by those in the church. **6** On the night before Herod was going to bring him out for trial, Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains, while guards in front of the door were keeping watch over the prison. **7** Behold, an angel of the Lord suddenly appeared by him, and a light shone in the prison cell. He struck Peter on the side and woke him and said, "Get up quickly," and his chains fell off his hands. **8** The angel said to him, "Gird yourself and put on your sandals." Peter did so. The angel said to him, "Put on your outer garment and follow me." **9** So Peter followed the angel and went out. He did not know that what was done by the angel was real. He thought he was seeing a vision. **10** After they had passed by the first guard and the second, they came to the iron gate that led into the city; it opened for them by itself. They went out and went down a street, and the angel left him right away. **11** When Peter came to himself, he said, "Now I truly know that the Lord has sent his angel and delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from everything the Jewish people were expecting." **12** When he realized this, he went to the house of Mary the mother of John, also called Mark, where many people had gathered and were praying. **13** When he knocked at the door of the gate, a servant girl named Rhoda came to answer. **14** When she recognized Peter's voice, out of joy she failed to open the gate; instead, she came running into the room; she reported that Peter was standing at the gate. **15** So they said to her, "You are insane." But she insisted that it was so. They said, "It is his angel." **16** But Peter continued knocking, and when they had opened the door, they saw him and were amazed. **17** Peter motioned to them with his hand to be silent, and he told them how the Lord had brought him out of prison. He said, "Report these things to James and the brothers." Then he left and went to another place. **18** Now when it became day, there was no small disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter. **19** After Herod had searched for him and could not find him, he questioned the guards and ordered them to be put to death.

Then Herod went down from Judea to Caesarea and stayed there. **20** Now Herod was very angry with the people of Tyre and Sidon. They went to him with one purpose, and after persuading Blastus, the king's assistant, to help them, they asked for peace because their country received its food from the king's country. **21** On a set day Herod dressed himself in royal clothing and sat on a throne; he made a speech to them. **22** The people shouted, "This is the voice of a god, not of a man!" **23** Immediately an angel of the Lord struck him, because he did not give God the glory; he was eaten by worms and died.

**24** But the word of God increased and multiplied.

**25** So when Barnabas and Saul had completed their mission, they returned from Jerusalem, *[*[1](#fn-044-012-025-1)*]* bringing with them John, also called Mark.

#### Footnotes

12:25 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-012-025-1)*]*Some ancient copies read,

### Acts 12 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Chapter 12 tells what happened to King Herod while Barnabas was bringing Saul back from Tarsus and they were delivering money from Antioch Jerusalem (11:25-30). He killed many of the leaders of the church, and he put Peter in prison. After God helped Peter escape the prison, Herod killed the prison guards, and then God killed Herod. In the last verse of the chapter, Luke tells how Barnabas and Saul return to Antioch.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Personification

The "word of God" is spoken of as if it were a living thing that could grow and become many.

### Acts 12

#### 12:1-4

#### Who was king Herod?

[12:1]

This King Herod was Herod Agrippa. The Jewish people liked this Herod. He wanted them to like him. Because of this, he began to persecute the Christian leaders (see: Acts 12:3).

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### How did king Herod “lay hands on” some of the church?

[12:1]

Herod laid hands on people. That is, he persecuted Christians

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md); [Laying on of Hands](../articles/layinghands.md) ; [King Herod](../articles/kingherod.md)

#### Who were “those in the church”?

[12:1]

“Those in the church” were people who believed in Jesus.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md)

#### What did Herod plan to do to Peter?

[11:3]

Herod planned to kill Peter. He planned to bring Peter before the people and kill him in the way he killed James. Herod wanted people to see Peter being killed.

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md)

#### What were the “days of unleavened bread”?

[12:3]

The “days of unleavened bread” were seven days during the festival of Passover. Scholars say the seven days were after the night of Passover.

See: [Passover](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/passover.md); [Passover](../articles/passover.md)

#### How many soldiers were in a squad?

[12:4]

There were four soldiers in a squad. There were a total of sixteen soldiers who guarded Peter.

#### What was the Passover?

[12:4]

See: [Passover](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/passover.md)

#### 12:5-11

#### How did God answer the prayers of the church for Peter?

[12:5]

Some scholars think Luke did not write how God answered the prayers of the church for Peter. Other scholars think the prayers for Peter made God want to send an angel to rescue Peter.

See: Acts 16:25-26

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md); [Angel](../articles/angel.md)

#### What was an angel?

[12:7]

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### How did a light come into the prison cell?

[12:7]

Luke did not write how a light came into the prison cell. Scholars think different things.

The light was part of the glory of God (see: Luke 2:9).

The light was from the glory of God that shone through the angel.

The light was from the angel.

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md); [Light and Darkness (Metaphor)](../articles/lightdarkness.md); [Angel](../articles/angel.md)

#### How did the light help Peter?

[12:7]

The light helped Peter find his clothes and sandals and put them on before they left the prison cell. It was very dark in the night of the prison and the angel wanted Peter to get up quickly before the guards woke up.

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### What was an outer garment?

[12:8]

An outer garment was worn for going outside a house or building. It is a type of coat.

#### What was a vision?

See: [Vision](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### What was an iron gate?

[12:10]

An iron gate was a heavy, metal gate that allowed people to go in and out of a city.

#### How did Peter come to himself?

[12:11]

Peter “came to himself” when he knew his release from prison was real. That is, he knew he was not dreaming and he was thinking clearly. He was not confused. Peter knew God sent an angel.

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

#### 12:12-19

#### Why did Luke write both names of Mary’s son?

[12:12}

Luke wrote both names of Mary’s son because he had both a Jewish name, John, and a Roman name, Mark. There were other people in Acts who had two names. Saul was also Paul (see: Acts 13:9). Scholars think this John Mark was the same Mark in other places in the Bible (see: Colossians 4:10; Philemon 24; 2 Timothy 4:11; 1 Peter 5:13). Scholars also think Mark wrote the gospel of Mark.

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md)

#### How did the servant girl know Peter’s voice?

[12:14]

The servant knew Peter’s voice because Peter was from Galilee. People in Galilee spoke in the same way and this was different than how other people spoke (see: Matthew 26:73). She also knew the sound of Peter’s voice because she heard him speak before this.

See Map: Galilee

#### Why did the people not think it was Peter who was at the door?

[12:15]

Some scholars think the people did not think it was Peter who was at the door because they did not know Peter escaped from prison even though they prayed for him. They prayed for James but Herod killed him. Other scholars think they did not believe what a woman said about Peter in the same way the disciples did not believe the women who told them that Jesus was alive again (see: Luke 24:9-11).

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md); [King Herod](../articles/kingherod.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md)

#### Why did the disciples say, “it is his angel”?

[12:15]

Some scholars think the disciples believed it was Peter’s spirit that was outside the house. They thought Peter became an angel. In ancient times, some Jewish people wrongly thought that certain people become angels after they die. Other scholars think the disciples thought the angel was an angel who protected Peter. They believed there were angels guarding people (see: Psalm 91:11; Matthew 18:10; Hebrews 1:4; Acts 12:7-10).

See: [Disciple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/disciple.md); [Spirit (Spiritual)](../articles/spiritspiritual.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md)

#### Why did Peter want the people to be silent?

[12:17]

Peter wanted the people to be silent so they will not wake the neighbors or attract attention for any guards trying to find him. Perhaps the Jewish leaders lived near this house. Peter did not want to go back to prison and be killed. Also, Peter needed them to listen to him. The people were very excited to see Peter alive and free, and to know God rescued Peter.

#### Why did Peter want them to tell James and the brothers what happened to him?

[12:17]

Peter wanted James and others to know that he escaped prison. This is because they were Christian leaders in this area (see Acts: 15:13; 21:18).

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md)

#### Why did Peter leave so soon?

[12:17]

Luke did not write why Peter left so soon. Scholars give several reasons.

Peter thought it was not safe for him to stay at the house very long.

He left for Antioch and told people in Antioch about Jesus (see: Galatians 2:11-14).

He went to Lydda and Joppa (see: Acts 10:9-48).

He was out of the area for a while but he came back to Jerusalem to meet with other Christian leaders (see: Acts 15:1-7).

See Map: Antioch; Lydda; Joppa

#### Why did Herod kill the guards?

[12:19]

Herod killed the guards because Roman law allowed the same penalty for the guards the prisoner was going to have if the guards let the prisoner escape. They failed to keep Peter in prison and Peter was going to be executed. Therefore, Herod carried out Peter’s penalty on the guards. The guards were killed.

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md)

#### Why did Herod go to Caesarea?

[12:19]

Herod went to Caesarea for two reasons.

He went to make celebrations in honor of Caesar. This was why many important officials from the region were there.

He went to help settle a trade disagreement between his country and the cities of Tyre and Sidon. The people of those cities persuaded King Herod’s assistant, Blastus, to help them settle the dispute because their food came from the place Herod Agrippa ruled. The food was mostly wheat from Galilee. During the festival, Herod spoke so that people would know that there was peace between himself and the cities of Tyre and Sidon.

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md)

See: Map: Judea; Caesarea; Tyre; Sidon; Galilee

#### 12:20-25

#### Why did the people think Herod was a god and not a man?

[12:22]

The people thought Herod was a god and not a man because his royal clothing was made from silver that shone brightly and beautifully. It made the people afraid. Also, the people from Tyre and Sidon praised him in the same way they praised a god.

See: [Praise](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/praise.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md); [Praise](../articles/praise.md)

See Map: Tyre; Sidon

#### What did the angel do to Herod?

[12:23]

The angel made Herod become sick and die. Herod accepted the praise of being a god and did not give God the glory for being God. Another ancient Jewish writer wrote that Herod did not tell the people to stop praising him.

See: [Glory (Glorify)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/glory.md); [King Herod](../articles/kingherod.md); [Praise](../articles/praise.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md); [Glory (Glorify)](../articles/glory.md)

#### What were the “worms”?

[12:23]

The “worms”(σκωληκόβρωτος/g4662) were crawling insects. Some ate plants (see: Exodus 16:20) but others ate meat (see: Job 7:5). Sometimes they were inside a person’s body and made the person ill. Some scholars think they were a metaphor. Luke wrote that Herod died from a disease. Other scholars think Luke wanted to say God judged Herod (see: Isaiah 66:24).

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [King Herod](../articles/kingherod.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

#### How did Herod die?

[12:23]

Herod died from the angel’s blow to him. The angel either hit him or made him sick. Another ancient Jewish writer wrote that it took five days for Herod to die. Luke did not write how long it took for Herod to die but he wrote about how Herod died. When Luke wrote about Herod eating worms, he wanted people to know that Herod died in a terrible way. It was very painful for Herod to die in this way.

See: Deuteronomy 32:39; Luke 1:20; 19:44; Acts 5:1-11; 8:10,20-23

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md); [Angel](../articles/angel.md)

#### How did the word of God increase and multiple?

[12:24]

The word of God increased and multiplied. This is a metaphor. More and more people believed in Jesus (see: Acts 6:7).

See: [Word of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/wordofgod.md)

#### What was the mission of Barnabas and Saul?

[12:25]

Paul and Silas served God in a certain way. The Christians in Antioch gave Barnabas and Saul money to bring to the poor Christians in Judea (see: Acts 11:29-30) to help them because they were about to have a famine.

See: [Famine](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/famine.md)

See Map: Antioch; Judea

#### Did Luke write that Barnabas and Saul returned from or to Jerusalem?

[12:25]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that Barnabas returned from Jerusalem. Older and more ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that Barnabas and Saul returned to Jerusalem. Scholars think Luke wrote that Barnabas and Saul returned to Jerusalem.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/differencesbible.md)

#### Acts 12:1

##### General Information:

This is background information about Herod's killing James.

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the new persecution, first of James's death and then of Peter's imprisonment and then release.

##### Now

This begins a new part of the story.

##### about that time

This refers to the time of the famine.

##### laid hands on

This means Herod had the believers arrested. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:3]

##### some who belonged to the church

Only James and Peter are specified, which implies that these were leaders of the church in Jerusalem.

##### so that he might mistreat them

"in order to cause the believers to suffer"

#### Acts 12:2

##### He killed James ... with the sword

This tells the manner in which James was killed.

##### He killed James

Possible meanings are 1) Herod himself killed James or 2) Herod ordered someone to kill James. Alternate translation: "Herod gave the order and they killed James"

#### Acts 12:3

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Herod (Acts 12:1).

##### After he saw that this pleased the Jews

"When Herod realized that putting James to death pleased the Jewish leaders"

##### pleased the Jews

"made the Jewish leaders happy"

##### That was

"Herod did this" or "This happened"

##### the days of unleavened bread

This refers to the Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season. Alternate translation: "the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast"

#### Acts 12:4

##### four squads of soldiers

"four groups of soldiers." Each squad had four soldiers that guarded Peter, one group at a time. The groups divided the 24 hour day into four shifts. Each time two soldiers would have been at his side and the other two soldiers by the entrance.

##### he was intending to bring him to the people

"Herod planned to judge Peter in the presence of the people" or "Herod planned to judge Peter before the Jewish people"

#### Acts 12:5

##### So Peter was kept in the prison

This implies that the soldiers continually guarded Peter in prison. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the soldiers guarded Peter in the prison"

##### prayer was made earnestly to God for him by those in the church

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the group of believers in Jerusalem earnestly prayed to God for him"

##### earnestly

continuously and with dedication

#### Acts 12:6

##### On the night before Herod was going to bring him out for trial

That Herod planned to execute him can be clarified. Alternate translation: "The happened on the day before Herod was going to bring Peter out from prison to put him on trial and then to execute him"

##### bound with two chains

"tied with two chains" or "fastened with two chains." Each chain would have been attached to one of the two guards who stayed beside Peter.

##### were keeping watch over the prison

"were guarding the prison doors"

#### Acts 12:7

##### General Information:

The words "him" and "his" refer to Peter.

##### Behold

This word alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### by him

"next to him" or "beside him"

##### in the prison cell

"in the prison room"

##### He struck Peter

"The angel tapped Peter" or "The angel poked Peter." Peter was evidently sleeping deeply enough that this was required to wake him.

##### his chains fell off his hands

The angel caused the chains to fall from Peter without touching them.

#### Acts 12:8

##### Gird yourself and put on your sandals

Peter had probably loosened his belt and taken off his sandals so he could go to sleep. The angel was telling Peter to get ready to leave the cell.

##### Peter did so

"Peter did what the angel told him to do" or "Peter obeyed"

#### Acts 12:9

##### General Information:

Here the word "He" refers to Peter. The words "they" and "They" refer to Peter and the angel.

##### He did not know

"He did not understand"

##### what was done by the angel was real

This could be changed to active form. Alternate translation: "the actions of the angel were real" or "what the angel did truly happened"

#### Acts 12:10

##### After they had passed by the first guard and the second

It is implied that the soldiers were not able to see Peter and the angel as they walked by. Alternate translation: "The first and second guards did not see them as they passed by, and then"

##### had passed by

"had walked by"

##### and the second

The word "guard" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "and the second guard"

##### they came to the iron gate

"Peter and the angel arrived at the iron gate"

##### that led into the city

"that opened to the city" or "that went from the prison to the city"

##### it opened for them by itself

Here "by itself" means neither Peter nor the angel opened it. Alternate translation: "the gate swung open for them" or "the gate opened itself for them"

##### went down a street

"walked along a street"

##### left him right away

"left Peter suddenly" or "suddenly disappeared"

#### Acts 12:11

##### When Peter came to himself

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "When Peter became fully awake and alert" or "When Peter became aware that what had happened was real"

##### delivered me out of the hand of Herod

Here "the hand of Herod" refers to "Herod's hold" or "Herod's plans." Alternate translation: "brought me from the harm Herod had planned for me"

##### delivered me

"rescued me"

##### everything the Jewish people were expecting

Here "the people of the Jews" probably referred mainly to the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "all that the Jewish leaders thought would happen to me"

#### Acts 12:12

##### realized this

He became aware that God had rescued him.

##### John, also called Mark

John was also called Mark. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John, whom people also called Mark"

#### Acts 12:13

##### he knocked

"Peter knocked." Tapping on the door was a normal Jewish custom to let others know you wish to visit them. You may need to change this to fit your culture.

##### at the door of the gate

"at the outer door" or "at the door of the entrance from the street to the courtyard"

##### came to answer

"came to the gate to ask who was knocking"

#### Acts 12:14

##### General Information:

Here all instances of "she" refer to the servant girl Rhoda ([Acts 12:13](./13.md)).

##### out of joy

"because she was so joyful" or "being overly excited"

##### failed to open the gate

"did not open the gate" or "forgot to open the gate"

##### came running into the room

You may prefer to say "went running into the room in the house"

##### she reported

"she told them" or "she said"

#### Acts 12:15

##### General Information:

Here the words "she" and "her" both refer to the servant girl Rhoda ([Acts 10:13](./13.md)), and the words "they" and "They" refer to the people who were inside praying ([Acts 10:12](./12.md)).

##### You are insane

The people not only did not believe her, but rebuked her by saying she was crazy. Alternate translation: "You are crazy"

##### she insisted that it was so

"she insisted that what she said was true"

##### They said

"They answered"

##### It is his angel

"What you have seen is Peter's angel." Some Jews believed in guardian angels and may have thought that Peter's angel had come to them.

#### Acts 12:16

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "they" refer to the people in the house. The word "him" refers to Peter.

##### But Peter continued knocking

The word "continued" means that Peter kept knocking the entire time those inside were talking.

#### Acts 12:17

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "them" refer to the people who were inside praying (Acts 12:12).

##### Report these things

"Tell these things"

##### the brothers

"the other believers"

#### Acts 12:18

##### Now

This word is used to mark a break in the story-line. Time has passed; it is now the next day.

##### when it became day

"in the morning"

##### there was no small disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter

This phrase is used to emphasize what really happened. This could be said in a positive way. Alternate translation: "there was a great disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter"

##### there was no small disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter

The abstract noun "disturbance" can be expressed with the words "disturbed" or "upset." Alternate translation: "the soldiers were very disturbed about what had happened to Peter"

#### Acts 12:19

##### General Information:

The word "him" here refers to Peter, and both instances of "he" refers to Herod.

##### After Herod had searched for him and could not find him

"After Herod searched for Peter and could not find him"

##### After Herod had searched for him

Possible meanings are that 1) "Herod" here is a metonym for his soldiers, that is, when Herod heard Peter was missing, he sent other soldiers to search the prison, or 2) when Herod heard Peter was missing, he went himself to search the prison.

##### he questioned the guards and ordered them to be put to death

It was the normal punishment for the Roman government to kill the guards if their prisoner escaped.

##### Then Herod went down

The phrase "went down" is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Judea.

#### Acts 12:20

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues with another event in Herod's life.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark the next event in the story.

##### very angry

This phrase translates a word that speaks of a person being so angry that he is ready to kill other people.

##### They went to him with one purpose

Here the word "They" is a generalization. It is unlikely that all the people of Tyre and Sidon went to Herod. Alternate translation: "Men representing the people of Tyre and Sidon went with one purpose to talk with Herod"

##### with one purpose

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### after persuading Blastus

"after these men persuaded Blastus"

##### Blastus

a man's name

##### the king's assistant

This phrase refers to a person who assists the king in his personal life, not necessarily his work as ruler.

##### they asked for peace

"these men requested peace"

##### their country received its food from the king's country

They probably purchased this food. Alternate translation: "the people of Tyre and Sidon bought all their food from the people that Herod ruled"

##### received its food

It is implied that Herod restricted this supply of food because he was angry with the people of Tyre and Sidon.

#### Acts 12:21

##### On a set day

This was probably the day on which Herod agreed to meet with the representatives. Alternate translation: "On the day when Herod agreed to meet them"

##### royal clothing

expensive clothing that would demonstrate he was the king

##### sat on a throne

This was where Herod formally addressed people who came to see him.

#### Acts 12:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 12:23

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Herod.

##### Immediately an angel

"Right away an angel" or "While the people were praising Herod, an angel"

##### struck him

"afflicted Herod" or "caused Herod to become very ill"

##### he did not give God the glory

Herod let those people worship him instead of telling them to worship God.

##### he was eaten by worms and died

Here "worms" refers to worms inside the body, probably intestinal worms. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "worms ate Herod's insides and he died"

#### Acts 12:24

##### the word of God increased and multiplied

The word of God is spoken of as if it were a living plant able to grow and reproduce. Alternate translation: "the message of God spread to more places and more people believed in him"

##### the word of God

"the message God sent about Jesus"

#### Acts 12:25

##### Connecting Statement:

This verse continues the history from [11:30]

##### completed their mission

This refers back to when they brought money from the believers at Antioch in [Acts 11:29-30]

##### they returned from Jerusalem

They went back to Antioch from Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Barnabas and Saul returned to Antioch"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 12:2

##### What did Herod the king do to James the brother of John?

Herod the king killed James the brother of John with the sword.

#### Acts 12:3

##### What did Herod the king do to Peter?

Herod arrested and put Peter in prison, intending to bring him to the people after the Passover.

#### Acts 12:4

##### What did Herod the king do to Peter?

Herod arrested and put Peter in prison, intending to bring him to the people after the Passover.

#### Acts 12:5

##### What was the assembly doing for Peter?

The assembly was earnestly praying for Peter.

#### Acts 12:9

##### How did Peter get past the first and second guard and out of the gate of the prison?

Peter followed an angel past the guards, and then the gate opened by itself.

#### Acts 12:10

##### How did Peter get past the first and second guard and out of the gate of the prison?

Peter followed an angel past the guards, and then the gate opened by itself.

#### Acts 12:13

##### When Peter arrived at the house where the believers were praying, who answered the door and what did she do?

A servant girl Rhoda answered the door and reported that Peter was standing at the door, but she did not open the door.

#### Acts 12:14

##### When Peter arrived at the house where the believers were praying, who answered the door and what did she do?

A servant girl Rhoda answered the door and reported that Peter was standing at the door, but she did not open the door.

#### Acts 12:15

##### How did the believers first react to her report?

At first they thought Rhoda was insane.

#### Acts 12:17

##### After telling the believers what had happened to him, what did Peter tell them to do?

Peter told them to report these things to James and the brothers.

#### Acts 12:19

##### What happened to the men that had been guarding Peter?

Herod questioned the guards and then had them put to death.

#### Acts 12:22

##### What did the people shout as Herod gave his speech?

The people shouted, "This is the voice of a god, not of a man"!

#### Acts 12:23

##### What happened to Herod after his speech, and why?

Because Herod did not give glory to God, an angel struck him and he was eaten by worms and died.

#### Acts 12:24

##### What was happening with the word of God during this time?

The word of God grew and multiplied during this time.

#### Acts 12:25

##### Who did Barnabas and Saul take with them?

Barnabas and Saul took John Mark with them.

### Chapter 13

**1** Now in the church in Antioch, there were some prophets and teachers. They were Barnabas, Simeon (who is called Niger), Lucius of Cyrene, Manaen (the foster brother of Herod the tetrarch), and Saul. **2** While they were worshiping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul, to do the work to which I have called them." **3** After they had fasted, prayed, and laid their hands on these men, they sent them off.

**4** So Barnabas and Saul, having been sent out by the Holy Spirit, went down to Seleucia; from there they sailed away to Cyprus. **5** While they were in the city of Salamis, they proclaimed the word of God in the synagogues of the Jews. They also had John for an assistant. **6** When they had gone through the whole island to Paphos, they found a certain magician, a Jewish false prophet, whose name was Bar-Jesus. **7** This magician associated with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, who was an intelligent man. This man summoned Barnabas and Saul, because he sought to hear the word of God. **8** But Elymas "the magician" (that is how his name is translated) opposed them; he tried to turn the proconsul away from the faith. **9** But Saul, who is also called Paul, filled with the Holy Spirit, stared at him intensely **10** and said, "You son of the devil, you are full of all kinds of deceit and wickedness. You are an enemy of every kind of righteousness. You will never stop twisting the straight paths of the Lord, will you? **11** Now look, the hand of the Lord is upon you, and you will become blind. You will not see the sun for a while." Immediately there fell on Elymas a mist and darkness; he started going around seeking people to lead him by the hand. **12** After the proconsul saw what had happened, he believed, because he was astonished at the teaching about the Lord.

**13** Now Paul and his friends set sail from Paphos and came to Perga in Pamphylia. But John left them and returned to Jerusalem. **14** Paul and his friends traveled from Perga and came to Antioch of Pisidia. There they went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day and sat down. **15** After the reading of the law and the prophets, the leaders of the synagogue sent them a message, saying, "Brothers, if you have any message of encouragement for the people here, say it." **16** So Paul stood up and motioned with his hand; he said, "Men of Israel and you who fear God, listen. **17** The God of this people Israel chose our fathers and exalted the people when they stayed in the land of Egypt, and with an uplifted arm he led them out of it. **18** For about forty years he put up with them in the wilderness. *[*[1](#fn-044-013-018-1)*]***19** After he had destroyed seven nations in the land of Canaan, he gave our people their land for an inheritance. **20** All these events took place over 450 years. After all these things, God gave them judges until Samuel the prophet. **21** Then the people asked for a king, and God gave them Saul son of Kish, a man from the tribe of Benjamin, to be king for forty years. **22** After God removed him from the kingship, he raised up David to be their king. It was about David that God testified, saying, 'I have found David son of Jesse to be a man after my heart, who does all I want him to do.' **23** From this man's descendants God has brought to Israel a Savior, Jesus, as he promised to do. **24** Before the arrival of Jesus, John proclaimed a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel. **25** As John was finishing his work, he said, 'Who do you think I am? I am not the one. But listen, one is coming after me, the sandals of whose feet I am not worthy to untie.' **26** Brothers, children of the offspring of Abraham, and those among you who fear God, it is to us that the message about this salvation has been sent. **27** For they who live in Jerusalem and their rulers did not recognize him, and they fulfilled the voices of the prophets that are read every Sabbath by condemning him. **28** Even though they found no reason for the death penalty, they called on Pilate to kill him. **29** When they had completed all the things that were written about him, they took him down from the tree and laid him in a tomb. **30** But God raised him from the dead. **31** He was seen for many days by those who had come up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem. These people are now his witnesses to the people. **32** So we tell you the good news: The promise that came to our fathers **33** God has fulfilled for us, their children, by raising up Jesus. As it is written in the second Psalm:

'You are my Son,

today I have become your Father.'

**34** As to his raising him from the dead, never to return to decay, he has spoken in this way:

'I will give you the holy and sure blessings

promised to David.'

**35** This is why he also says in another Psalm,

'You will not allow your Holy One

to see decay.'

**36** For when David had served the purpose of God in his own generation, he fell asleep; he was laid with his fathers and his body experienced decay. **37** But he whom God raised up experienced no decay. **38** So let it be known to you, brothers, that through this man forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you. The law of Moses could not make you righteous. **39** But by this man God makes righteous everyone who believes. **40** So then be careful that the thing the prophets spoke about does not happen to you:

**41** 'Look, you despisers,

and be astonished and then perish;

For I am doing a work in your days,

a work that you would never believe,

even if someone announces it to you.'"

**42** As Paul and Barnabas left, the people begged them that they might speak these same words again the next Sabbath. **43** When the synagogue meeting ended, many of the Jews and devout proselytes followed Paul and Barnabas, who were speaking to them and persuading them to continue in the grace of God.

**44** On the next Sabbath, almost the whole city was gathered together to hear the word of the Lord. **45** When the Jews saw the crowds, they were filled with envy and spoke against the things that were said by Paul and insulted him. **46** But Paul and Barnabas spoke out boldly and said, "It was necessary that the word of God should first be spoken to you. Seeing you push it away from yourselves and consider yourselves unworthy of eternal life, see, we will turn to the Gentiles. **47** For so has the Lord commanded us, saying,

'I have appointed you as a light for the Gentiles,

that you should bring salvation

to the uttermost parts of the earth.'"

**48** As the Gentiles heard this, they were glad and glorified the word of the Lord. As many as were appointed to eternal life believed. **49** The word of the Lord was spread out through the whole region. **50** But the Jews incited the devout women of high standing and the leading men of the city. They stirred up persecution against Paul and Barnabas and threw them out of their region. **51** But Paul and Barnabas shook off the dust from their feet against them. Then they went to the city of Iconium. **52** And the disciples were filled with joy and with the Holy Spirit.

#### Footnotes

13:18 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-013-018-1)*]*Some ancient copies read,

### Acts 13 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 13:33-35 and 13:41.

This chapter is where the second half of the Book of Acts begins. Luke writes more about Paul than about Peter. Luke also writes about the believers preaching to the Gentiles rather than to the Jews.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### A light for the Gentiles

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. The Jews considered all Gentiles as walking in darkness, but Paul and Barnabas spoke of telling the Gentiles about Jesus as if they were going to bring them physical light. (See: and righteous)

### Acts 13

#### 13:1-12

#### Where was Antioch?

[13:1]

See Map: Antioch

#### What was a prophet?

[13:1]

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md)

#### What was a foster brother?

[13:1]

A foster brother was a boy who was raised with a family that was not his family. This foster brother was a friend or companion to the son of the king. Manaen was a close childhood friend of King Herod the Tetrarch.

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md)

#### Who was Herod the Tetrarch?

[13:1]

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md)

#### Why did Luke write Christians fasted two times?

[13:2, 13:3]

Luke wrote Christians fasted two times because the Christians fasted in two ways.

Christians in Antioch worshiped God by fasting in the same way priests and others who served in the temple in Jerusalem did.

Christians fasted, prayed, and laid on hands when the Holy Spirit chose leaders to serve.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md); [Priest (Priesthood)](../articles/priest.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md)

#### Who worshiped the Lord and fasted?

[13:2, 13:3]

Luke did not write who worshiped the Lord and fasted. Some scholars think the Jews usually used the word “worshiped” when they were talking about the priests and Levites when these people served in the temple. Therefore, Luke was writing about the prophets and teachers. Other scholars think the priests and Levites were no longer the only ones who served and worshiped God. Everyone in the church served and worshiped God (see: Romans 12:1; 1 Peter 2:5). Thus, “they” were everyone in the church.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Priest (Priesthood)](../articles/priest.md); [Tribes of Israel](../articles/tribesisrael.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

#### How did the Christians set apart Barnabas and Saul?

[13:2]

The Christians set apart Barnabas and Saul when they separated or divided Barnabas and Saul from the others for the work of telling people about Jesus. The Christians also fasted, prayed, and laid on hands because the church wanted Barnabas and Saul to do this for God.

See: [Laying on of Hands](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/layinghands.md) ; [Pray (Prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md); [Laying on of Hands](../articles/layinghands.md)

#### What was the work the Holy Spirit called them to do?

[13:2]

Luke wrote about the work the Holy Spirit called them to do. The work was to go out and tell people about Jesus and the gospel.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Call (Calling)](../articles/call.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

See Map: Cyprus, Perga, Asia Minor

#### Why did the leaders lay their hands on Barnabas and Saul?

[13:3]

The leaders put their hands on Barnabas and Saul because they prayed for them to have God’s blessing and power. It was also a sign that they supported these men (see: Acts 6:6; 1 Tim. 4:14; 2 Tim 1:6; Heb. 6:2).

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md); [Pray (Prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md); [Bless (Blessing)](../articles/bless.md); [Sign](../articles/sign.md)

#### How did the Holy Spirit send out Barnabas and Saul?

[13:4]

Luke did not write how the Holy Spirit sent out Barnabas and Saul. There were several ways the Holy Spirit led Christians.

Speech (see: Acts 13:2).

Prophecy (see: Acts 21:10-11).

Vision (See: Acts 16:6-10).

The Holy Spirit sent them out from the church in Antioch.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Vision)](../articles/vision.md); [Church](../articles/church.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

See Map: Antioch

#### Where was Seleucia?

[13:4]

See Map: Seleucia

#### Where was Cyprus?

[13:4]

See Map: Cyprus

#### Why did Barnabas and Saul go to Cyprus?

[13:4]

There were several reasons why Barnabas and Saul went to Cyprus.

Barnabas was from Cyrus

It was easy to travel there.

Barnabas and others already told Jews there about Jesus (see: Acts 11:19-20).

Christians were there (see: Acts 21:16).

The Holy Spirit led them to go there.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md)

See Map: Cyprus

#### Where was Salamis?

[13:5]

See Map: Salamis

#### What is the word of God?

[13:5]

See: [Word of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/wordofgod.md)

#### What was a synagogue?

[13:5]

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

#### Where was Paphos?

[13:6]

See Map: Paphos

#### What was a magician?

[13:6]

A magician did things using sorcery. This was evil. The Law of Moses commanded Jews not to do this (see: Leviticus 19:31). This was why Luke wrote Bar-Joshua was a false prophet (see: Acts 13:6).

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### What was a proconsul?

[13:7]

A proconsul was a Roman leader who was given permission to rule a certain area.

#### How was Paul filled with the Holy Spirit?

[13:9]

Paul was filled with power from the Holy Spirit. Paul needed power from the Holy Spirit to defeat the evil power of the magician.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### Why was the magician a “son of the devil”?

[13:10]

The magician was a “son of the devil” because he did the same things the devil did and he served the devil.

See: [Sorcery](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sorcery.md); [Sorcery](../articles/sorcery.md)

#### Why was the magician full of “deceit and wickedness”?

[13:10]

The magician was full of “deceit” because he said wrong things about God and Jesus. That is, he made people believe wrong things about God and Jesus. He was also full of “wickedness” because he made people do wrong things the devil wanted them to do.

See: [Sorcery](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sorcery.md); [Sorcery](../articles/sorcery.md)

#### How was the magician an “enemy of every kind of righteousness”?

[13:10]

This magician was an “enemy of every kind of righteousness” because he did not love or do the things God wanted him to do. Instead he “made crooked”(διαστρέφω/g1406) the “straight paths of the Lord”. That is, he stopped people from doing the things God wanted people to do.

See: [Righteous (Righteousness)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/righteous.md)

#### What were the “straight paths of the Lord”?

[13:10]

The “straight paths of the Lord” were the right and true ways of God. This is a metaphor. Luke was writing about doing the right thing and obeying God.

See: [Walk](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/walk.md); [Walk](../articles/walk.md)

#### What was the “hand of the Lord”?

[13:11]

“The hand of the Lord” was a metaphor. Luke was writing about God judging the magician. God caused him to be blind for a time. The words, “Now look,” told the magician that God revealed this judgement to Paul.

God also made Paul temporarily blind. The result was he was later able to see the truth about Jesus. God also healed his eyes. God sometimes struck people with blindness to stop them from doing evil or to get their attention (see: Genesis 19:11; 2 Kings 6:18-20, Acts 9:8-9).

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

#### Why did the proconsul believe in Jesus?

[13:12]

The proconsul believed in Jesus because he was amazed at the teaching about Jesus. Luke did not wrote that this man believed because of the power of God working through Paul. However, the teaching about Jesus included stories about Jesus healing people and becoming alive again. Scholars also think Paul talked about his own story about God blinding him on the way to Damascus (see: Acts 9:3-9).

This proconsul was an intelligent man (see: Acts 13:7). That is, he believed because of other things about Jesus and he knew Jesus is Lord and Savior. So the power of God over the magician helped him to believe in Jesus. When someone showed other people that Jesus had power over the devil, this helped people in Jesus (see: Mark 1:22, 27).

See: [Satan (The Devil)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/satan.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md) ; [Lord](../articles/lord.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Satan (The Devil)](../articles/satan.md)

See Map: Damascus

#### 13:13-16

#### Where were Paphos, Perga, and Pamphylia?

[13:13]

See Map: Paphos; Perga; Pamphylia

#### Why did John leave Barnabas and Paul and return to Jerusalem?

[13:13]

Luke did not write why John left Barnabas and Paul and returned to Jerusalem. Paul said John deserted them in Pamphylia (see: Acts 15:38), but years later Paul wrote Mark was useful (see: 2 Timothy 4:11). Some scholars think John Mark was not ready for the persecution that came when they told people about Jesus. Other scholars think John Mark wanted Barnabas to be the leader instead of Paul. Up to this time Luke always listed Barnabas first and then Saul. Now Luke wrote about Paul and “his friends.” All of them continued to serve. Barnabas took John Mark with him and Paul took Silas (see: Acts 15:39).

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md)

#### Where was Antioch of Pisidia?

[13:14]

See Map: Antioch of Pisidia

#### What was a synagogue?

[13:14]

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

#### What was the Sabbath?

[13:14]

See: [Sabbath](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sabbath.md)

#### What were the law and the prophets?

[13:15]

See: [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/oldtestament.md)

#### How did the leaders of the synagogue sent a message to them?

[13:15]

The rulers of the synagogue sent someone to Paul and his friends inside the synagogue. The messenger told them the message during the synagogue meeting. The leaders of the synagogue did not sent a message to them over a longer distance or outside of the synagogue.

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

#### Why did Paul motion with his hand?

[13:16]

Paul motioned with his hand. People often did this to invite other people to listen. Also, Paul wanted people to be silent so they would pay attention to the things he said.

#### Who were those who honored God?

[13:16]

Those who honored God worshiped the God of Israel and obeyed the Law of Moses. However, they were not Jews themselves. People called them “God-fearers.” They were not born Jews and they did not become circumcised.

See: [Circumcise (Circumcision)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/circumcise.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md); [Circumcise (Circumcision)](../articles/circumcise.md)

#### 13:17-22

#### What happened to the Israelites in Egypt?

[13:17]

The Israelites were slaves in Egypt until God used Moses to free them from the Egyptians.

See: [Serve](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/artcles/serve.md)

See Map: Egypt

#### What was God’s “uplifted arm”?

[13:17]

God’s “uplifted arm” was a metaphor to say God has great power. God led the Israelites out of slavery.

See: [Metaphor](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/metaphor.md)

#### What were the seven nations in the land of Canaan?

[13:19]

The seven nations in the land of Canaan were the Hittites, Girgashites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites (see: Deuteronomy 7:1). Each nation was larger and stronger than the Israelites.

See: [Canaan (Promised Land)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/canaan.md)

See Map: Canaan

#### Why did God drive out the seven nations from Canaan?

[13:19]

God drove out the seven nations from Canaan to give the Israelites an inheritance. This land promised to their ancestor Abraham (see: Genesis 15:18). Also, the nations from Canaan were evil so God punished them (see: Leviticus 18:24-25).

See: [Punish (Punishment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/punish.md); [Canaan (Promised Land)](../articles/canaan.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md); [Punish (Punishment)](../articles/punish.md)

See Map: Canaan

#### What events made up the 450 years?

[13:19]

The 450 years included the time Israel spent in Egypt, 400 years, and the time they travelled in the wilderness, 40 years, and about 10 years of time it took to control Canaan. The time to control Canaan was the time they entered into Canaan to when they finished dividing the land among the tribes of Israel.

See: [Tribes of Israel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tribesisrael.md); [Tribes of Israel](../articles/tribesisrael.md)

See Map: Canaan

#### What was a judge?

[13:20]

A judge was someone who helped lead or rule the Israelites in the Promised Land before there were kings in Israel

See: [Canaan (Promised Land)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/canaan.md); [Canaan (Promised Land)](../articles/canaan.md)

#### Why was Samuel at the time when the period of the Judges ended?

[13:20]

God began to do something different with Israel after Samuel. Samuel was a priest, a prophet, and the last judge of Israel. Samuel anointed Saul as the first king of Israel (see: 1 Samuel 2:35; 3:20; 7:15–17).

See: [Appoint](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/appoint.md); [Priest (Priesthood)](../articles/priest.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Appoint](../articles/appoint.md)

#### Why did the people ask for a king to rule over them?

[13:21]

The people asked for a king to rule over them because they rejected the judges. When they asked for a man to be king, they rejected God who was their king (see: 1 Samuel 8:6-7).

#### Why did God remove Saul from being king?

God removed Saul from being king because he did not obey the Lord (See: 1 Samuel 13:13-14; 15:23,26-28).

#### Why did Paul call David a man after God’s heart?

[13:22]

Paul called David a man after God’s heart because David did the things God wanted him to do. God was in the process of replacing King Saul with a new king, David.

See: [Heart (Metaphor)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/heart.md)

13:23-37

#### How did Paul know Jesus was a descendant of King David?

[13:23]

Paul was a Jewish teacher and he knew the promise of God to David that one of David’s descendants rule forever (see: 2 Samuel 7:12-14). Because of this, the Jews kept records of everyone’s ancestors.

See: Luke 3:23-38; Matthew 1:1-17

See: [Son of David](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sonofdavid.md); [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](../articles/ancestor.md); [Son of David](../articles/sonofdavid.md)

#### What was a savior?

[13:23]

See: [Savior](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/savior.md)

#### What John was Luke writing about?

[13:24]

Luke wrote about John the Baptist. The Jews in Palestine knew John the Baptist at that time. John the Baptist was not the messiah, but he came before the messiah to prepare people to receive the messiah. John the Baptist preached repentance from sins and he baptized people for this repentance (See: Mark 1:4-5).

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md); [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md); [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md)

#### Who is the “one”?

[13:25]

John spoke of the “one” to come after him who will be Jesus (see: Isaiah 40:3; Mark 1:3). John said this “one” is far greater than he was. Jesus is so much greater than John and John thought he was not even able to be his servant (see: Mark 1:7). John baptized with water, but this “one” that comes after John will baptize with the Holy Spirit (see: Mark 1:8).

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md)

#### Who were children of the offspring of Abraham?

[13:26]

The children of the offspring of Abraham were the Jews. Paul spoke to both the Jews and Gentiles who were with the Jews in the synagogue and who worshiped God.

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md); [Synagogue](../articles/synagogue.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md)

#### What was the message of salvation?

[13:26]

The message of salvation is the gospel

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

#### How did the people and rulers of Jerusalem fulfill the voices of the prophets?

[13:27]

The people and rulers of Jerusalem fulfilled the voices of the prophets when they did not recognize Jesus. That is, they did not believe Jesus was the messiah, so they rejected Jesus (see: John 12:37-40; Romans 9:33). This was what the prophets prophesied would happen.

See: Isaiah 6:10; 2 Corinthians 4:4

See: [Prophecy (Prophesy)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophecy.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md)

#### Who was Pilate?

[13:28]

Pilate was the Roman leader who ruled Judea when Jesus was alive on the earth.

See Map: Judea

#### What were “all the things that were written about him”?

[13:29]

“All the things that were written about him” were the things that happened to Jesus. These things were written about in the Old Testament, long before Jesus lived on the earth.

See: Isaiah 53:3-5,7; Psalm 22; 69; Zechariah 12:10

#### Why was Jesus on a “tree”?

[13:29]

When Luke wrote about a tree, he was writing about the cross.

See: Galatians 3:13

See: [Cross](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/cross.md)

#### How did Jesus become alive again?

[13:30]

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md)

#### Where was Galilee?

[13:31]

See Map: Galilee

#### What did the people do after they saw Jesus alive again?

[13:31]

The people who saw Jesus alive again told other people about Jesus, his resurrection, and the gospel.

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

#### What was the “promise that came to our fathers”?

[13:32]

The “promise that came to our fathers” were the promises God made to Abraham, Moses, and David.

See: Galatians 3:8-9; Isaiah 55:3

See: [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancestor.md)

#### Where did God say, “I will give you the holy and sure blessings promised to David”?

[13:34]

God said, “I will give you the holy and sure blessings promised to David,” to the prophet Isaiah (see Isaiah 55:3). Paul was thinking about Isaiah 55:3 when he repeated the second Psalm. David wrote about God saying he is the Father of his Son Jesus in the second Psalm (see: Acts 4:25-26).

See: [Son of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sonofgod.md); [Son of God](../articles/sonofgod.md)

#### When did God “become” the Father of the Son?

[13:33]

God has always been the Father of the Son. That is, Jesus was already God’s Son even before God and Jesus made the world (see: John 17:5; 1:1-3). Paul did not say the word “become”(γεννάω/g1080) to say God became the father of Jesus when Jesus came into the world, or when Jesus was baptized, or even when Jesus became alive again. Paul wrote God powerfully “declared” or “said”(ὁρίζω/g3724) Jesus is the Son of God when he made Jesus alive again (see: Romans 1:4).

See: [Son of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sonofgod.md); [Son of God](../articles/sonofgod.md)

See: Matthew 3:17; 17:5

#### Why did Jesus’ body not decay?

[13:35]

Jesus’ body did not decay because it was dead only three days.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md)

#### 13:38-43

#### How did Jesus forgive sins?

[13:38]

See: John 3:16

See: [Atone (Atonement)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/atone.md); [Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon)](../articles/forgive.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md); [Atone (Atonement)](../articles/atone.md)

#### Why were Christians justified?

[13:39]

See: Romans 8:1-4; 10:9-10

See: [Justify (Justification)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/justify.md)

#### Why did Paul say “the prophets”?

[13:40]

See: [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/oldtestament.md)

#### Why did Paul say the same thing Habakkuk wrote?

[13:40]

Paul said the same thing the prophet Habakkuk wrote. He did not want people to reject Jesus in the way the Israelites of Habakkuk’s day rejected God.

#### What were “devout proselytes”?

[13:43]

“Devout proselytes” were Gentiles who became Jews. They worshiped God, obeyed the Law of Moses, and were circumcised.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### How did someone “continue in the grace of God”?

[13:43]

Luke wrote about continuing in the grace of God. Scholars think the people continued to believe in the gospel about Jesus.

See: [Grace](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/grace.md); [Grace](../articles/grace.md)

#### 13:44-52

#### What was the word of the Lord?

[13:44]

See: [Lord](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lord.md); [Lord](../articles/lord.md)

#### Why were the Jews envious?

[13:45]

The Jews were envious because they saw large crowds listening to Paul and Barnabas. They wanted the people to listen to them instead of Paul and Barnabas. Some Jews believed in Jesus but many did not. This is because some people did not want God to be at peace with Gentiles who did not obey the Law of Moses (see: Acts 13:39).

#### Why did Paul speak the word of God to the Jews first and then the Gentiles?

[13:46]

Paul spoke the word of God to the Jews first because God gave them promises, the covenants, the Law of Moses, and the temple (see: Romans 9:4). Also, Jesus was a Jew (see: Romans 9:5). Paul wanted the Jews to know their Messiah, Jesus. Also, God wanted the Jews to help the Gentiles know about God. However, because most of the Jews did not believe in Jesus, they were not able to do this.

See: Isaiah 42:6; 49:6; Galatians 2:7).

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Covenant](../articles/covenant.md);[Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### How did the Gentiles glorify the word of the Lord?

[13:48]

The Gentiles glorified the word of the Lord when they believed in Jesus. They praised God that they were worthy to have God save them.

See: [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/save.md);[Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md); [Word of God](../articles/wordofgod.md); [Praise](../articles/praise.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md)

#### What is “eternal life”?

[13:48]

See: [Eternal Life](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/eternallife.md)

#### How did God appoint people to eternal life?

[13:48]

God appointed people to eternal life. Scholars think God chose who would have eternal life in some way. Scholars disagree about how and when God did this.

See: [Eternal Life](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/eternallife.md)

#### How did the “word of the Lord” spread?

[13:49]

The “word of the Lord” spread. That is, Christians told other people about Jesus and more people knew about Jesus. As Christians began to do this, more and more people learned about Jesus and God.

See: [Faith (Believe in)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/faith.md); [Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md)

#### Why did the Jews incite leading men and women?

[13:50]

The Jews incited leading men and women. That is, they made these people angry. This is because these Jews rejected Jesus and they did not want people to believe in Jesus. These Jews did not want more Jews to become Christians so they tried to get people to force Paul and Barnabas out of the city.

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### Why did Paul and Barnabas shake the dust off of their feet?

[13:51]

Jesus told his followers to shake the dust off their feet or sandals to warn people about rejecting his followers (see: Luke 9:5; 10:11). This was a sign that there will be judgment against their actions. Paul and the others did this against the Jews and the leaders who forced them out of the city.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

#### Where was Iconmium?

[13:51]

See Map: Iconium

#### How were the disciples filled with joy and the Holy Spirit?

[13:52]

The disciples were filled with joy by the power and work of the Holy Spirit inside them. When people persecuted them, the Holy Spirit helped them to have joy.

See: [Rejoice (Joy, Joyful)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/rejoice.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md) ; [Rejoice (Joy, Joyful)](../articles/rejoice.md)

#### Acts 13:1

##### General Information:

Verse 1 gives background information about the people in the church at Antioch.

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke begins to tell about the mission trips on which the church at Antioch send Barnabas and Saul.

##### Now in the church in Antioch

"At that time in the church at Antioch"

##### Simeon ... Niger ... Lucius ... Manaen

These are men's names.

##### foster brother of Herod the tetrarch

Manaen was probably Herod's playmate or close friend while they were growing up.

#### Acts 13:2

##### General Information:

The words "they" refers to the other three leaders ([Acts 13:1](./01.md)), not including Barnabas and Saul, and it could include other believers.

##### Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul

"Appoint Barnabas and Saul to serve me"

##### I have called them

The verb here means that God chose them to do this work.

#### Acts 13:3

##### General Information:

The words "they" and "their" refer to the other three leaders ([Acts 13:1](./01.md)), not including Barnabas and Saul, and they could include other believers.

##### laid their hands on these men

"laid their hands on these men whom God had set apart for his service." This act showed that the leaders agreed that the Holy Spirit had called Barnabas and Saul to do this work.

##### sent them off

"sent those men off" or "sent those men off to do the work the Holy Spirit told them to do"

#### Acts 13:4

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Barnabas and Saul.

##### So

This word marks an event that happened because of a previous event. In this case, the previous event is Barnabas and Saul being set apart by the Holy Spirit.

##### went down

The phrase "went down" is used here because Seleucia is lower in elevation than Antioch.

##### Seleucia

a city by the sea

#### Acts 13:5

##### General Information:

Here the words "They" and "their" refer to Barnabas and Saul.

##### city of Salamis

The city of Salamis was on Cyprus Island.

##### proclaimed the word of God

"Word of God" here is a synecdoche for "message of God." Alternate translation: "proclaimed the message of God"

##### synagogues of the Jews

Possible meanings are that 1) there were multiple Jewish synagogues in the city of Salamis where Barnabas and Saul preached or 2) Barnabas and Saul started at the synagogue at Salamis and continued to preach in all the synagogues they found while they traveled around the Island of Cyprus.

##### They also had John for an assistant

"John went with them and was helping them"

##### John

John Mark

##### assistant

"helper"

#### Acts 13:6

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "they" refers to Paul, Silas, and John Mark.

##### the whole island

They crossed from one side of the island to the other and shared the gospel message in each town they passed through.

##### Paphos

a major city on Cyprus island where the proconsul lived

##### they found

Here "found" means they came upon him without looking for him. Alternate translation: "they met" or "they came upon"

##### a certain magician

"a particular person who practiced witchcraft" or "a person who practiced supernatural magic arts"

##### whose name was Bar-Jesus

"Bar-Jesus" means "Son of Jesus." There is no relation between this man and Jesus Christ. "Jesus" was a common name at that time.

#### Acts 13:7

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Sergius Paulus, the proconsul.

##### associated with

"was often with" or "was often in the company of"

##### proconsul

This was a governor in charge of a Roman province. Alternate translation: "governor"

##### who was an intelligent man

This is background information about Sergius Paulus.

##### This man summoned

The phrase "this man" refers to Sergius Paulus.

##### he sought to hear the word of God

"he wanted to hear the word of God"

#### Acts 13:8

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to Paul, Silas, and John Mark, and "he" refers to Elymas.

##### Elymas "the magician"

This was Bar Jesus, who was also called "the magician"

##### that is how his name is translated

"that was what he was called in Greek"

##### opposed them; he tried to turn

"resisted them by trying to turn" or "attempted to stop them by trying to turn"

##### tried to turn the proconsul away from the faith

Here "to turn ... away from" is a metaphor for convincing someone to not do something. Alternate translation: "attempted to persuade the governor not to believe the gospel message"

#### Acts 13:9

##### General Information:

The word "him" refers to the magician Elymas, who is also called Bar Jesus ([Acts 13:6-8](./06.md)).

##### Connecting Statement:

While on the island of Paphos, Paul begins to talk to Elymas.

##### Saul, who is also called Paul

"Saul" was his Jewish name, and "Paul" was his Roman name. Since he was speaking to a Roman official, he used his Roman name. Alternate translation: "Saul, who now called himself Paul"

##### stared at him intensely

"looked at him intensely"

#### Acts 13:10

##### You son of the devil

Paul is saying the man is acting like the devil. Alternate translation: "You are like the devil" or "You act like the devil"

##### you are full of all kinds of deceit and wickedness

"you are always intent in causing others to believe what is not true using falsehood and are always doing what is wrong"

##### wickedness

The word in this context means laziness and lack of diligence in following God's law.

##### You are an enemy of every kind of righteousness

Paul is grouping Elymas with the devil. Just as the devil is an enemy of God and is against righteousness, so also was Elymas.

##### You will never stop twisting the straight paths of the Lord, will you?

Paul uses this question to rebuke Elymas for opposing God. Alternate translation: "You are always saying that the truth about the Lord God is false!"

##### the straight paths of the Lord

Here "straight paths" refer to the ways that are true. Alternate translation: "the true ways of the Lord"

#### Acts 13:11

##### General Information:

The words "you," "he," and "him" refer to Elymas the magician.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes speaking to Elymas.

##### the hand of the Lord is upon you

Here "hand' represents the power of God and "upon you" implies punishment. Alternate translation: "The Lord will punish you"

##### you will become blind

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will make you blind"

##### You will not see the sun

Elymas will be so completely blind that he not even be able to see the sun. Alternate translation: "You will not even see the sun"

##### for a while

"for a period of time" or "until the time appointed by God"

##### there fell on Elymas a mist and darkness

"the eyes of Elymas became blurry and then dark" or "Elymas started seeing unclearly and then he could not see anything"

##### he started going around

"Elymas wandered around" or "Elymas started feeling around and"

#### Acts 13:12

##### General Information:

Both instances of "he" refer to the proconsul.

##### the proconsul

A proconsul was a governor in charge of a Roman province. Alternate translation: "the governor"

##### he believed

"he believed in Jesus"

##### he was astonished at the teaching about the Lord

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the teaching about the Lord amazed him"

#### Acts 13:13

##### General Information:

Verse 13 gives background information about this part of the story. "Paul and his friends" were Barnabas and John Mark

##### Connecting Statement:

This is a new part of the story about Paul in Antioch in Pisidia.

##### Now

This marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### set sail from Paphos

"traveled by sailboat from Paphos"

##### came to Perga in Pamphylia

"arrived in Perga, which is in Pamphylia"

##### But John left them

"But John Mark left Paul and Barnabas"

#### Acts 13:14

##### General Information:

Verse 14 continues to give background information about this part of the story. The word "they" refers to Paul and his friends Barnabas and John Mark

##### Antioch of Pisidia

"the city of Antioch in the district of Pisidia." This is different from the city of Antioch that Paul and Barnabas left at the beginning of the chapter.

#### Acts 13:15

##### General Information:

The word "them" refers to Paul and his friends Barnabas and John Mark.

##### After the reading of the law and the prophets

The "law and the prophets" refer to parts of the Jewish scriptures which were read. Alternate translation: "After someone read from the books of the law and the writings of the prophets"

##### sent them a message, saying

"told someone to say to them" or "asked someone to say to them"

##### Brothers

The term "brothers" is here used by the people in the synagogue to refer to Paul and Barnabas as fellow Jews.

##### if you have any message of encouragement

"if you want to say anything to encourage us"

##### encouragement

or "exhortation"

##### say it

"please speak it" or "please tell it to us"

#### Acts 13:16

##### General Information:

The words "he" and "his" refer to Paul. The word "you" is plural.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins his speech to those in the synagogue in Pisidian Antioch. He begins by talking about things that happened in Israel's history.

##### motioned with his hand

This could refer to moving his hands as a signal that he was ready to speak. Alternate translation: "moved his hands to show that he was about to speak"

##### you who fear God

This refers to Gentiles who had converted to Judaism. "you who are not Israelites but who worship God"

##### God, listen

"God, listen to me" or "God, listen to what I am about to say"

#### Acts 13:17

##### General Information:

The word "our" includes the speaker and the hears and so is plural. The words "they" and "them" refer to "the people." The word "he" refers to God.

##### The God of this people Israel

"The God the people of Israel worship"

##### our fathers

"our ancestors"

##### exalted the people

"caused the people to become very numerous"

##### with an uplifted arm

This refers to God's mighty power. Alternate translation: "with great power"

##### out of it

"out from the land of Egypt"

#### Acts 13:18

##### he put up with them

"God tolerated the people of Israel." This means "he tolerated them." Some versions have have a different word that means "he took care of them." Alternate translation: "God endured their disobedience" or "God took care of them"

#### Acts 13:19

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "he" refer to God. The word "our" refers to Paul and his audience.

##### nations

Here the word "nations" refers to different people groups and not to lands with geographical boundaries.

#### Acts 13:20

##### General Information:

The word "them" refers to the people of Israel.

##### took place over 450 years

"took more than 450 years to accomplish"

##### until Samuel the prophet

"until the time of the prophet Samuel"

#### Acts 13:21

king for forty years

"their king for forty years" or "king, and he reigned over them for forty years"

#### Acts 13:22

##### General Information:

The quotation here is from Old Testament.

##### removed him from the kingship

This expression means God caused Saul to stop being king. Alternate translation: "rejected Saul from being king"

##### he raised up David to be their king

"God chose David to be their king"

##### their king

"the king of Israel" or "the king over the Israelites"

##### It was about David that God testified, saying,

"God gave this testimony about David:"

##### I have found David ... to be

"I have observed that David ... is"

##### a man after my heart

This expression means "a man who wants what I want."

#### Acts 13:23

##### From this man's descendants

"From David's descendants." This is placed at the beginning of the sentence to emphasize that the savior had to be one of David's descendants (Acts 13:22).

##### has brought to Israel

This refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "gave to the people of Israel"

##### as he promised to do

"just as God promised he would do"

#### Acts 13:24

##### a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel

You can translate the word "repentance" as the verb "repent." Alternate translation: "that all the people of Israel who wanted to repent of their sin needed to have him baptize them"

#### Acts 13:25

##### Who do you think I am?

John asked this question to compel the people to think about who he was. Alternate translation: "Think about who I am."

##### I am not the one

John was referring to the Messiah, whom they were expecting to come. Alternate translation: "I am not the Messiah"

##### But listen

This emphasizes the importance of what he will say next.

##### one is coming after me

This also refers to the Messiah. Alternate translation: "The Messiah will soon come"

##### the sandals of whose feet I am not worthy to untie

"I am not worthy even to untie his sandals." The Messiah is so much greater than John that he did not even feel worthy do the lowest job for him.

#### Acts 13:26

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" includes Paul and his entire audience in the synagogue.

##### Brothers, children of the offspring of Abraham, and those among you who fear God

Possible meanings are 1) this is a list with three items, and Paul is addressing three groups of people together, or 2) the phrases "children of the offspring of Abraham" and "those among you who fear God" refer to the two groups of people whom Paul addresses as "brothers."

##### those among you who fear God

These words refer specifically to Gentiles who worshiped in the synagogue and obeyed much of the law of Moses but had not been circumcised.

##### the message about this salvation has been sent

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has sent the message about this salvation"

##### about this salvation

The word "salvation" can be translated with the verb "save." Alternate translation: "that God will save people"

#### Acts 13:27

##### General Information:

The word "they" and "their" refers to the Jews who lived in Jerusalem.

##### did not recognize him

"did not realize that this man Jesus was the one whom God had sent to save them"

##### the voices of the prophets

Here the word "voices" is a metonym for the message that the voices spoke. Alternate translation: "the writings of the prophets" or "the messages of the prophets"

##### that are read

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which someone reads"

#### Acts 13:28

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the Jewish people and their religious leaders in Jerusalem. The word him" here refers to Jesus.

##### they found no reason for the death penalty

It is implied that they found no legal reason for Jesus to be put to death. Alternate translation: "they found no legal reason for Jesus to be killed" or "they found no legal reason to kill Jesus"

#### Acts 13:29

##### When they had completed all the things that were written about him

"When they did to Jesus all the things that the prophets said would happen to him"

##### they took him down from the tree

It may be helpful to explicitly say Jesus died before this happened. Alternate translation: "they killed Jesus and then took him down from the cross after he died"

##### from the tree

"from the cross." This was another way people at that time referred to the cross.

#### Acts 13:30

##### But God raised him

"But" indicates a strong contrast between what the people did and what God did.

##### raised him from the dead

"raised him from among those who were dead." To be with "the dead" means to be dead. To raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "caused him to live again"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To raise someone from among them speaks of making that person alive again.

#### Acts 13:31

##### He was seen for many days by those who had come up with him ... Jerusalem

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The disciples who traveled with Jesus ... Jeruaslem saw him for many days"

##### many days

We know from other writings that this period was 40 days. Translate "many days" with a term that would be appropriate for that length of time.

##### are now his witnesses to the people

"are now testifying to the people about Jesus" or "are now telling the people about Jesus"

#### Acts 13:32

##### So

This word marks an event that happened because of previous event. In this case, the previous event is God's raising Jesus from the dead.

##### our fathers

"our ancestors." Paul is still speaking to the Jews and Gentile converts in the synagogue at Antioch of Pisidia. These were the physical ancestors of the Jews, and the spiritual ancestors of the converts.

#### Acts 13:33

##### God has fulfilled for us, their children, by raising up Jesus

You may need to rearrange the parts of this sentence, which begins in verse 32. "God has fulfilled for us, their children, the promise that he made to our fathers, by raising up Jesus"

##### for us, their children

"for us, who are the children of our ancestors." Paul is still speaking to the Jews and Gentile converts in the synagogue at Antioch of Pisidia. These ancestors were the physical ancestors of the Jews and the spiritual ancestors of the converts.

##### by raising up Jesus

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "by making Jesus alive again"

##### As it is written in the second Psalm

"This is what was written in the second Psalm"

##### the second Psalm

"Psalm 2"

##### Son ... Father

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God.

#### Acts 13:34

##### General Information:

The quotation is from the prophet Isaiah.

##### As to his raising him from the dead, never to return to decay, he has spoken in this way:

"God has spoken in this way that he raised him up from the dead never to return to decay" "God used these words to say that he raised him up from the dead, and so he would never die again"

##### the dead

All those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### never to return to decay

"and he will never die again"

##### he has spoken in this way

God has said using these words

##### sure blessings

"certain blessings"

#### Acts 13:35

##### This is why he also says in another Psalm

Paul's audience would have understood that this Psalm refers to the Messiah. Alternate translation: "In another Psalm of David, he also says about the Messiah"

##### he also says

"David also says." David is the author of Psalm 16, from which this quotation is taken.

##### You will not allow your Holy One to see decay

The phrase "see decay" is a metonym for "decay." Alternate translation: "You will not allow the body of your Holy One to rot"

##### You will not allow

David is speaking to God here.

#### Acts 13:36

##### in his own generation

"during his lifetime"

##### served the purpose of God

"did what God wanted him to do" or "did what pleased God"

##### he fell asleep

This was a polite way to refer to death. Alternate translation: "he died"

##### was laid with his fathers

"was buried with his ancestors who had died"

##### his body experienced decay

The phrase "his body experienced decay" is a less direct way of saying "his body decayed" or "his body rotted."

#### Acts 13:37

##### he whom God raised up experienced

"Jesus, whom God raised up, experienced"

##### God raised up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "God caused to live again"

##### experienced no decay

The phrase "experienced no decay" is a way to say "his body did not decay." Alternate translation: "did not rot"

#### Acts 13:38

##### let it be known to you

"know this" or "this is important for you to know"

##### brothers

Paul uses this term because they are his fellow Jews and followers of Judaism. They are not Christian believers at this point. Alternate translation: "my fellow Israelites and other friends"

##### that through this man forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that we proclaim to you that your sins can be forgiven through Jesus"

##### forgiveness of sins

The abstract noun "forgiveness" can be translated with the verb "to forgive." Alternate translation: "that God can forgive your sins"

#### Acts 13:39

##### But by this man God makes righteous everyone who believes

"But God makes righteous everyone who believes in this man"

##### by this man

Here "this man" refers to Jesus Christ.

#### Acts 13:40

##### be careful

It is implied that the thing they should be careful about is Paul's message. Alternate translation: "give close attention to the things I have said"

##### that the thing the prophets spoke about

"so that what the prophets spoke about"

#### Acts 13:41

##### General Information:

In his message to the people in the synagogue, Paul quotes the prophet Habakkuk. Here the word "I" refers to God.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes his speech in the synagogue in Pisidian Antioch, which he began in Acts 13:16.

##### you despisers

"you who feel contempt" or "you who ridicule"

##### be astonished

"be amazed" or "be shocked"

##### then perish

"then die"

##### am doing a work

"am doing something" or "am doing a great deed"

##### in your days

"during your lifetime"

##### days, a work that

"days. I am doing something that"

##### even if someone announces it to you

"even if someone tells you about it"

#### Acts 13:42

##### As Paul and Barnabas left

"When Paul and Barnabas were leaving"

##### begged them that they might

"begged them to"

##### these same words

Here "words" refers to the message that Paul had spoken. Alternate translation: "this same message"

#### Acts 13:43

##### When the synagogue meeting ended

Possible meanings are 1) this restates "As Paul and Barnabas left" in verse 42 or 2) Paul and Barnabas left the meeting before it ended and this occurs later.

##### proselytes

These were non-Jewish people who converted to Judaism.

##### who were speaking to them and persuading them

"and Paul and Barnabas were speaking to those people and persuading them"

##### to continue in the grace of God

It is implied that they believed Paul's message that Jesus was the Messiah. Alternate translation: "to continue to trust that God kindly forgives people's sins because of what Jesus did"

#### Acts 13:44

##### almost the whole city was

The "city" represents the people in the city. This phrase is used to show the great response to the Lord's word. Alternate translation: "almost all the people of the city were"

##### to hear the word of the Lord

It is implied that Paul and Barnabas were the ones who spoke the word of the Lord. Alternate translation: "to hear Paul and Barnabas speak about the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 13:45

##### General Information:

Here the word "him" refers to Paul.

##### the Jews

Here "Jews" represents Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

##### were filled with envy

Here envy is spoken of as if it were something that could fill up a person. Alternate translation: "became very envious"

##### spoke against

"contradicted" or "opposed"

##### the things that were said by Paul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Paul said"

#### Acts 13:46

##### General Information:

Both instances of the word "you" and the word "yourselves" refer to the Jews to whom Paul is speaking and so are plural. The word "we" refers to Paul and Barnabas but not the crowd that was present.

##### It was necessary

This implies that God had commanded this be done. Alternate translation: "God commanded"

##### that the word of God should first be spoken to you

This can be stated in active form. "Word of God" here is a synecdoche for "message from God." Alternate translation: "that we speak the message from God to you first" or "that we speak the word of God to you first"

##### Seeing you push it away from yourselves

Their rejection of the word of God is spoken of as if it were something they pushed away. Alternate translation: "Since you reject the word of God"

##### consider yourselves unworthy of eternal life

"have shown that you are not worthy of eternal life" or "act as though you are not worthy of eternal life"

##### we will turn to the Gentiles

"we will go to the Gentiles." Paul and Barnabas were implying that they would preach to the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "we will leave you and start preaching to the Gentiles"

#### Acts 13:47

##### General Information:

The word "us" refers to Paul and Barnabas but not the crowd that was present, so it is exclusive.

##### commanded us ... 'I have appointed you as a light ... you should bring salvation to the uttermost parts of the earth.'

Both instances of "you" here are singular, but when Paul said, "... the Lord commanded us," Paul was applying those singular words to both himself and Barnabas. The words in the quotation were originally spoken by God through Isaiah the prophet to God's servant. By quoting Isaiah's prophecy, Paul was saying that he and Barnabas were doing what God commanded his servant to do. Paul was not saying that God had spoken directly to him.

##### as a light

Here the truth about Jesus that Paul was preaching is spoken of as if it were a light that allowed people to see.

##### bring salvation to the uttermost parts of the earth

The abstract word "salvation" can be translated with the verb "to save." The phrase "uttermost parts" refers to everywhere. Alternate translation: "tell people everywhere in the world that I want to save them"

#### Acts 13:48

##### glorified the word of the Lord

Here "word" refers to the message about Jesus that they had believed. Alternate translation: "glorified God for the message about the Lord Jesus" or "glorified the Lord for his word"

##### As many as were appointed to eternal life

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As many as God appointed to eternal life" or "All the people whom God had chosen to receive eternal life"

#### Acts 13:49

##### The word of the Lord was spread out through the whole region

Here "word" refers to the message about Jesus. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Those who believed spread the word of the Lord through the whole region" or "Those who believed went everywhere in the region and told others about the message of Jesus"

#### Acts 13:50

##### the Jews

This probably refers to the leaders of the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

##### incited ... women ... and ... men

This means that they spoke to the women and men and caused them to be angry and act violently. Alternate translation: "stirred up ... women ... and ... men"

##### the devout women of high standing

The word "devout" means that these women feared God. The phrase "of high standing" means that people respected these women.

##### the leading men

"the most important men"

##### They stirred up persecution against Paul and Barnabas

The word "they" here probably refers to the devout women and the leading men. They listened to the Jews and then convinced the rest of the people in the city to persecute the apostles and throw them out.

##### threw them out of their region

"made Paul and Barnabas leave their land"

##### region

Here this word refers to the area that the people of the city considered their own, not to land within an official government border.

#### Acts 13:51

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas end their time in Antioch of Pisidia and go to Iconium.

##### shook off the dust from their feet against them

This was a symbolic act to indicate to the unbelieving people that God had rejected them and would punish them.

#### Acts 13:52

##### the disciples

This probably refers to the new believers in the Antioch of Pisidia that Paul and Silas just left.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 13:2

##### What was the assembly in Antioch doing when the Holy Spirit spoke to them?

The assembly in Antioch was worshiping the Lord and fasting when the Holy Spirit spoke to them.

##### What did the Holy Spirit tell them to do?

The Holy Spirit told them to set apart Barnabas and Saul to do the work to which the Spirit was calling them.

#### Acts 13:3

##### What did the assembly do after hearing from the Holy Spirit?

The assembly fasted, prayed, laid hands on Barnabas and Saul, and sent them off.

#### Acts 13:5

##### When Barnabas and Saul went to Cyprus, who also was with them?

In Cyprus, John Mark was with them as their assistant.

#### Acts 13:6

##### Who was Bar-Jesus?

Bar-Jesus was a Jewish false prophet who associated with the proconsul.

#### Acts 13:7

##### Who was Bar-Jesus?

Bar-Jesus was a Jewish false prophet who associated with the proconsul.

##### Why did the proconsul summon Barnabas and Saul?

The proconsul summoned Barnabas and Saul because he wanted to hear the word of God.

#### Acts 13:9

##### What was another name by which Saul was known?

Saul was also known as Paul.

#### Acts 13:11

##### What did Paul say would happen to Bar-Jesus because he tried to turn the proconsul against the faith?

Paul told Bar-Jesus that he would be blind for a time.

#### Acts 13:12

##### How did the proconsul react when he saw what happened to Bar-Jesus?

The proconsul believed.

#### Acts 13:13

##### What did John Mark do when Paul and his friends set sail to Perga?

John Mark left Paul and his friends and returned to Jerusalem.

#### Acts 13:15

##### Where in Antioch of Pisidia was Paul asked to speak?

In Antioch of Pisidia, Paul was asked to speak in the Jewish synagogue.

#### Acts 13:17

##### In Paul's speech, who does Paul say God chose in the past?

In Paul's speech, Paul said that God chose Israel.

#### Acts 13:23

##### From whom did God bring Israel a Savior?

From King David God brought Israel a Savior.

#### Acts 13:24

##### Who did Paul say had prepared the way for the coming Savior?

Paul said that John the Baptist had prepared the way for the coming Savior.

#### Acts 13:25

##### Who did Paul say had prepared the way for the coming Savior?

Paul said that John the Baptist had prepared the way for the coming Savior.

#### Acts 13:27

##### How did the people and rulers in Jerusalem fulfill the prophets' messages?

The people and rulers in Jerusalem fulfilled the prophets' messages by condemning Jesus to death.

#### Acts 13:31

##### Who were now Jesus' witnesses to the people?

The people who saw Jesus after he was raised from the dead were now his witnesses.

#### Acts 13:33

##### How had God shown that he had kept his promises made to the Jews?

God showed that he had kept his promises to the Jews by raising up Jesus from the dead.

#### Acts 13:35

##### What did God promise to the Holy One in one of the psalms?

God promised that the Holy One would not see decay.

#### Acts 13:38

##### What did Paul proclaim for every one who believes in Jesus?

Paul proclaimed the forgiveness of sins for every one who believes in Jesus.

#### Acts 13:40

##### What warning did Paul also give his listeners?

Paul warned his listeners not to be like those spoken of in the prophets who hear the announcement of God's work, but do not believe it.

#### Acts 13:41

##### What warning did Paul also give his listeners?

Paul warned his listeners not to be like those spoken of in the prophets who hear the announcement of God's work, but do not believe it.

#### Acts 13:44

##### In Antioch, who came to hear the word of the Lord on the next Sabbath?

Almost the whole city came to hear the word of the Lord on the next Sabbath.

#### Acts 13:45

##### How did the Jews react when they saw the crowds?

The Jews were filled with jealousy and spoke against Paul's message, insulting him.

#### Acts 13:46

##### What did Paul say the Jews were doing with the word of God spoken to them?

Paul said that the Jews were pushing away the word of God spoken to them.

#### Acts 13:48

##### What was the Gentiles' reaction when they heard that Paul was turning to them?

The Gentiles were glad and praised the word of the Lord.

##### How many of the Gentiles believed?

As many as were appointed to eternal life believed.

#### Acts 13:50

##### What did the Jews then do to Paul and Barnabas?

The Jews stirred up a persecution against Paul and Barnabas and threw them out of the city.

#### Acts 13:51

##### What did Paul and Barnabas do before they went on to the city of Iconium?

Paul and Barnabas shook off the dust from their feet against those in the city of Antioch who had thrown them out.

### Chapter 14

**1** It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue of the Jews and spoke in such a way that a great multitude both of Jews and of Greeks believed. **2** But the Jews who were disobedient stirred up the minds of the Gentiles and made them bitter against the brothers. **3** So they stayed there for a long time, speaking boldly with the Lord's power, while he gave evidence about the message of his grace. He did this by granting signs and wonders to be done by the hands of Paul and Barnabas. **4** But the people of the city were divided; some sided with the Jews, others with the apostles. **5** Both Gentiles and Jews (together with their leaders) made an attempt to mistreat them and to stone them, **6** but as soon as they learned about this, they fled to the Lycaonian cities of Lystra and Derbe and the surrounding region, **7** where they continued to proclaim the gospel.

**8** At Lystra a certain man sat, powerless in his feet, a cripple from his mother's womb, who never had walked. **9** This man heard Paul speaking. Paul fixed his eyes on him and saw that he had faith to be made well. **10** So he said to him in a loud voice, "Stand up on your feet." Then the man jumped up and walked around.

**11** When the multitude saw what Paul had done, they raised their voice, saying in the dialect of Lycaonia, "The gods have become like men and come down to us." **12** They called Barnabas "Zeus," and Paul "Hermes," because he was the main speaker. **13** The priest of Zeus, whose temple was just outside the city, brought oxen and wreaths to the gates; he and the multitudes wanted to offer sacrifice. **14** But when the apostles, Barnabas and Paul, heard of it, they tore their clothing and quickly went out into the crowd, crying out, **15** "Men, why are you doing these things? We also are human beings, with the same nature as you. We are telling you good news that you should turn from these useless things to the living God, who made the heavens, the earth, the sea, and everything that is in them. **16** In the past ages, he allowed all the nations to walk in their own ways. **17** But still, he did not leave himself without witness, in that he did good and gave you the rains from heaven and fruitful seasons, filling your hearts with food and gladness." **18** Even with these words, Paul and Barnabas barely kept the multitudes from sacrificing to them.

**19** But some Jews from Antioch and Iconium came and persuaded the crowds. They stoned Paul and dragged him out of the city, thinking that he was dead. **20** Yet as the disciples were standing around him, he got up and entered the city. The next day, he went to Derbe with Barnabas. **21** After they had proclaimed the gospel in that city and made many disciples, they returned to Lystra, to Iconium, and to Antioch. **22** They kept strengthening the souls of the disciples and encouraging them to continue in the faith, saying, "We must enter into the kingdom of God through many tribulations." **23** When they had appointed for them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they entrusted them to the Lord, in whom they had believed. **24** Then they passed through Pisidia and came to Pamphylia. **25** When they had spoken the word in Perga, they went down to Attalia. **26** From there they sailed to Antioch, where they had been committed to the grace of God for the work which they had now completed. **27** When they arrived in Antioch and gathered the church together, they reported all the things that God had done with them, and how he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles. **28** They stayed for a long time with the disciples.

### Acts 14 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "The message of his grace"

The message of Jesus is the message that God will show grace to those who believe in Jesus. (See: grace and believe)

##### Zeus and Hermes

The Gentiles in the Roman Empire worshiped many different false gods who do not really exist. Paul and Barnabas told them to believe in the "living God." (See: falsegod)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### "We must enter into the kingdom of God through many sufferings."

Jesus told his followers before he died that everyone who followed him would suffer persecution. Paul is saying the same thing using different words.

### Acts 14

#### 14:1-7

#### Where was Iconium?

[14:1]

See Map: Iconium

#### What was a synagogue?

[14:1]

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

#### What did the Jews and Greeks believe?

[14:1]

Scholars think that the Jews and Greeks believed the message about Jesus. That is, Jesus was the one God had promised to send to save people from their sins.

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md)

#### What was “a great multitude”?

[14:1]

A great multitude means a very large number. Some scholars think there were several hundreds of people who believed in Jesus.

#### Who were disobedient Jews and what did they do?

[14:2]

When Luke wrote about Jews who were disobedient, he was speaking about Jews who refused to believe the message about Jesus. When Luke wrote that these Jews made the minds of the Gentiles “bitter”(κακόω/g2559) against the brothers, he meant the Jews turned the Gentiles away from believing the truth about Jesus.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md); [Family of God](../articles/familyofgod.md)

#### How did Paul and Barnabas spoke boldly with the Lord’s power?

[14:3]

Paul and Barnabas spoke boldly with the Lord’s power. That is, Paul and Barnabas spoke without being afraid of who might hear them. Scholars think that Jesus gave Paul and Barnabas power to keep on teaching and preaching.

See: [Preach (Preacher)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/preach.md)

#### What was the message of God’s grace?

[14:3]

The message of God’s grace was the gospel.

See: [Grace](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/grace.md); [Grace](../articles/grace.md)

#### What were signs and wonders?

[14:3]

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md)

#### What was an apostle?

[14:4]

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md)

#### Where were Lycaonia, Lystra, and Derbe?

[14:6]

See Map: Lycaonia; Lystra; Derbe

#### What was the gospel?

[14:7]

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md)

#### 14:8-18

#### How did the man have faith to be made well?

[14:9]

The man had faith to be made well. Scholars think that Paul saw something and he knew the man believed in Jesus. They think the Holy Spirit helped Paul to know that the man believed Jesus was going to make him well.

See: Acts 3:1-10

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### Who were Zeus and Hermes?

[14:12]

In ancient times, some people worshipped the Greek gods. The king of the Greek gods was Zeus, and Hermes was the god who delivered messages to the people from Zeus. After the healing miracle, the people began to call Paul “Hermes” because he did most of the speaking. They also called Barnabas “Zeus”.

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md)

#### Why did Paul and Barnabas tear their clothes?

[14:14]

Scholars think Paul and Barnabas tore their clothes as a sign of strong disapproval of what the people wanted to do. Paul and Barnabas wanted the crowds to know that they were just men and that the actions of the crowd were blaspheming God.

See: [Blaspheme (Blasphemy)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/blaspheme.md); [Blaspheme (Blasphemy)](../articles/blaspheme.md)

#### Why did Paul tell the crowd that they should turn from these useless things?

[14:15]

When Paul urged the crowd to “turn from these useless things,” he wanted them to stop worshipping those things. Scholars think Paul was speaking about the idols because they had no power and were not real.

See: [Idolatry (Idol)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/idolatryidol.md); [Idolatry (Idol)](../articles/idolatryidol.md)

#### How did God allow all the nations to walk in their own ways?

[14:16]

God allowed the nations to walk in their own ways. God allowed the Gentile nations to live in the way they wanted to live. That is, he allowed them to live without the Law of Moses. He allowed them to sin because they wanted to sin. The nations worshipped many things, but not the one true God.

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md)

**Advice to translators**: When speaking about the nations here, it means the people who lived in those nations.

#### 14:19-28

#### Where were Antioch and Iconium?

[14:19]

See Map: Antioch; Iconium

#### What was a disciple?

[14:20]

See: [Disciple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/disciple.md)

#### Where was Derbe?

[14:20]

See Map: Derbe

#### How did Paul and Barnabas strengthen “the souls of the disciples”?

[14:22]

Paul and Barnabas strengthened the souls of the disciples. Scholars think that Paul and Barnabas taught people about the Bible to remind the disciples about the truth about God and God’s promises. When they did this, Paul and Barnabas encouraged the disciples to make choices to trust God even when they were persecuted.

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### What was the kingdom of God about which Paul and Barnabas spoke?

[14:22]

See: [Kingdom of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingdomofgod.md)

#### How does someone enter into the Kingdom of God through many sufferings?

[14:22]

Scholars think Paul and Barnabas taught that many Christians will experience suffering and persecution while they are living in this present world. Jesus himself said, “In this world you will have tribulation” (see: John 16:33). They think that Paul and Barnabas meant that when Jesus returns to the earth to rule, Christians will no longer experience the world’s sufferings.

See: [Tribulation](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tribulation.md); [Tribulation](../articles/tribulation.md)

#### What was an elder?

[14:23]

See: [Elder](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/elder.md)

#### What was fasting?

[14:23]

See: [Fasting](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fasting.md)

#### What did it mean that Paul and Barnabas entrusted the elders to the Lord?

[14:23]

When they “entrusted”(παρατίθημι/g3908) the elders to the Lord, Paul and Barnabas committed the care of the elders to Jesus. That is, they asked Jesus to protect the elders as they served the growing number of Christians.

See: [Elder](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/elder.md)

#### Where were Pisidia, Pamphylia, Perga, and Attalia?

[14:24]

See Map: Pisidia; Pamphylia; Perga; Attalia

#### What was meant by the words, “committed to the grace of God”?

[14:26]

Paul and Barnabas were first committed to the grace of God for their work among the Jews and Gentiles beyond Antioch with prayer, fasting and the laying on of hands of the Christians in Antioch (see: Acts 13:2,3). That is, they were set apart to do the work to which God had called them.

See: [Call (Calling)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/call.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Pray (Prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md); [Fasting](../articles/fasting.md); [Laying on of Hands](../articles/layinghands.md) ; [Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)](../articles/holy.md); [Call (Calling)](../articles/call.md)

See Map: Antioch

#### What was a church?

[14:27]

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md)

#### What was a “door of faith for the Gentiles”?

[14:27]

When Luke wrote about a “door of faith for the Gentiles,” this was a metaphor. He was writing that God opened the hearts and minds of the Gentiles to understand the gospel and believe in Jesus.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Mind](../articles/mind.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### Acts 14:1

##### General Information:

The story of Paul and Barnabas in Iconium continues.

##### It came about in Iconium that

Possible meanings here are 1) "It happened in Iconium that" or 2) "In Iconium, as usual,"

##### spoke in such a way

"spoke so powerfully." It may be helpful to state that they spoke the message about Jesus. Alternate translation: "spoke the message about Jesus so powerfully"

#### Acts 14:2

##### the Jews who were disobedient

This refers to the portion of the Jews who did not believe the message about Jesus.

##### stirred up the minds of the Gentiles

Causing the Gentiles to become angry is spoken of as if calm waters were disturbed.

##### the minds of the Gentiles

Here the word "minds" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "the Gentiles"

##### the brothers

Here "brothers" refers to Paul and Barnabas and the new believers.

#### Acts 14:3

##### General Information:

Here the words "he," "his," and "He" refer to the Lord.

##### So they stayed there

"Nevertheless they stayed there." Paul and Barnabas stayed in Iconium to help the many people who had believed in Acts 14:1. "So" could be omitted if it adds confusion to the text.

##### gave evidence about the message of his grace

"demonstrated that the message about his grace was true"

##### about the message of his grace

"about the message of the Lord's grace"

##### by granting signs and wonders to be done by the hands of Paul and Barnabas

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by enabling Paul and Barnabas to perform signs and wonders"

##### by the hands of Paul and Barnabas

Here "hands" refers to the will and effort of these two men as guided by the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "by the ministry of Paul and Barnabas"

#### Acts 14:4

##### the people of the city were divided

"the people of the city disagreed with each other"

##### sided with the Jews

"supported the Jews" or "agreed with the Jews." The first group mentioned did not agree with the message about grace.

##### with the apostles

The second group mentioned agreed with the message about grace. It may be helpful to restate the verb. Alternate translation: "sided with the apostles"

##### the apostles

Luke refers to Paul and Barnabas. Here "apostle" might be used in the general sense of "ones sent out."

#### Acts 14:5

##### made an attempt to mistreat them

Here the words "made an attempt" implies that they were not able to mistreat Paul and Barnabas before Paul and Barnabas left the city.

##### to mistreat them and to stone

"to beat Paul and Barnabas and to kill them by throwing stones at them"

#### Acts 14:6

##### Lycaonia

A district in Asia Minor

##### Lystra

A city in Asia Minor south of Iconium and north of Derbe

##### Derbe

A city in Asia Minor south of Iconium and Lystra

#### Acts 14:7

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

##### where they continued to proclaim the gospel

"where Paul and Barnabas continued to proclaim the good news"

#### Acts 14:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas are now in Lystra.

##### a certain man sat

This introduces a new person in the story.

##### powerless in his feet

"unable to move his legs" or "unable to walk on his feet"

##### a cripple from his mother's womb

"having been born as a cripple"

##### cripple

person who cannot walk

#### Acts 14:9

##### General Information:

The words "him" and "he" refer to the crippled man.

##### Paul fixed his eyes on him

"Paul looked straight at him"

##### had faith to be made well

The abstract noun "faith" can be translated with the verb "believe." Alternate translation: "believed that Jesus could heal him" or "believed that Jesus could make him well"

#### Acts 14:10

##### he said to him

"Paul said to the crippled man"

##### jumped up

"leaped in the air." This implies that his legs were completely healed.

#### Acts 14:11

##### what Paul had done

This refers to Paul's healing the crippled man.

##### they raised their voice

To raise the voice is to speak loudly. Alternate translation: "they spoke loudly"

##### in the dialect of Lycaonia

"in their own Lycaonian language." The people of Lystra spoke Lycaonian and also Greek.

##### The gods have become like men and come down to us

These people believed that the gods needed to change their appearance in order to look like men. A large number of people believed Paul and Barnabas were their pagan gods who had come down from heaven. Alternate translation: "The gods have come down from heaven to us in the form of men"

#### Acts 14:12

##### Zeus

The people of Iconium probably considered Zeus to be the king over all the other pagan gods.

##### Hermes

The people of Iconium probably considered Hermes to be the pagan god who brought messages to people from Zeus and the other gods.

#### Acts 14:13

##### The priest of Zeus, whose temple was just outside the city, brought

It may be helpful to include additional information about the priest. Alternate translation: "There was a temple just outside the city where the people worshiped Zeus. When the priest who served in the temple heard what Paul and Barnabas had done, he brought"

##### oxen and wreaths

The oxen were to be sacrificed. The wreaths were either to crown Paul and Barnabas, or put on the oxen for sacrifice.

##### to the gates

The gates of the cities were often used as a meeting place for the people of the city.

##### wanted to offer sacrifice

"wanted to offer sacrifice to Paul and Barnabas as the gods Zeus and Hermes"

#### Acts 14:14

##### the apostles, Barnabas and Paul

Luke is here probably using "apostle" in the general sense of "one sent out."

##### they tore their clothing

This was a symbolic action to show that they were deeply distressed and upset that the crowd wanted to sacrifice to them.

#### Acts 14:15

##### Men, why are you doing these things?

Barnabas and Paul are rebuking the people for trying to sacrifice to them. Alternate translation: "Men, you must not do these things!"

##### doing these things

"worshiping us"

##### We also are human beings, with the same nature as you

By this statement, Barnabas and Paul are saying that they are not gods. Alternate translation: "We are just human beings like you. We are not gods"

##### with the same nature as you

"like you in every way"

##### telling you good news that you should turn

"telling you good news: you can turn" or "giving you good advice to turn." That is, the good news is that they can and should turn.

##### turn from these useless things to the living God

Here "turn from ... to" is a metaphor meaning to stop doing one thing and start doing something else. Alternate translation: "stop worshiping these false gods that cannot help you, and instead begin to worship the living God"

##### the living God

"the God who truly exists" or "the God who lives"

#### Acts 14:16

##### In the past ages

"In previous times" or "Until now"

##### to walk in their own ways

Walking in a way, or walking on a path, is a metaphor for living one's life. Alternate translation: "to live their lives the way they wanted to" or "to do whatever they wanted to do"

#### Acts 14:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas continue speaking to the crowd outside the city of Lystra (Acts 14:8).

##### he did not leave himself without witness

This could also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "God has certainly left a witness" or "God has indeed testified"

##### in that

"as shown by the fact that"

##### filling your hearts with food and gladness

Here "your hearts" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "giving you enough to eat and things about which to be happy"

#### Acts 14:18

##### Paul and Barnabas barely kept the multitudes from sacrificing to them

Paul and Barnabas stopped the multitude from sacrificing to them, but it was difficult to do so.

##### barely kept

"had difficulty preventing"

#### Acts 14:19

##### General Information:

Here the words "he" and "him" refer to Paul.

##### persuaded the crowds

It my be helpful to explicitly state what they persuaded the crowd to do. Alternate translation: "persuaded the people not to believe Paul and Barnabas, and to turn against them"

##### the crowds

This may not be the same group as the "multitude" in the previous verse. Some time had passed, and this might be a different group that gathered together.

##### thinking that he was dead

"because they thought that he was already dead"

#### Acts 14:20

##### the disciples

These were new believers in the city of Lystra.

##### entered the city

"Paul re-entered Lystra with the believers"

##### he went to Derbe with Barnabas

"Paul and Barnabas went to the city of Derbe"

#### Acts 14:21

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "they" refer to Paul and Barnabas.

##### that city

"Derbe" (Acts 14:20)

#### Acts 14:22

##### General Information:

Here the words "they" refer to Paul and Barnabas, and the word "We" includes Paul, Barnabas, and the disciples. The word "them" refers to the disciples.

##### They kept strengthening the souls of the disciples

Here "souls" refers to the disciples. This emphasizes their inner thoughts and beliefs. Alternate translation: "Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to believe the message about Jesus" or "Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to grow strong in their relationship with Jesus

##### encouraging them to continue in the faith

"encouraging the believers to keep trusting in Jesus"

##### saying, "We must enter into the kingdom of God through many tribulations."

Some version translate this as an indirect quote, "saying that we must enter into the kingdom of God through many tribulations." The word "we" here includes Luke and the readers.

##### We must enter

Paul includes his hearers, so the word "we" is inclusive.

#### Acts 14:23

##### they had appointed for them

"Paul and Barnabas had appointed for the believers"

##### they entrusted them ... they had believed

Possible meanings are 1) "Paul and Barnabas entrusted the elders they had appointed ... the elders had believed" or 2) "Paul and Barnabas entrusted the elders they had appointed and the other disciples ... the elders and other disciples had believed"

#### Acts 14:24

##### General Information:

The word "they" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:25

##### General Information:

Both instances of "they" refer to Paul and Barnabas.

##### had spoken the word

"Word" here is a metonym for "message of God." Alternate translation: "had spoken the message of God"

##### went down to Attalia

The phrase "went down" is used here because Attalia is lower in elevation than Perga.

#### Acts 14:26

##### where they had been committed to the grace of God

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "where believers and leaders in Antioch had committed Paul and Barnabas to the grace of God" or "where the people of Antioch prayed that God would care for and protect Paul and Barnabas"

#### Acts 14:27

##### General Information:

Here the words "they," "them," and "They" refer to Paul and Barnabas. The word "he" refers to God.

##### gathered the church together

"called the local believers to meet together"

##### he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles

God's enabling the Gentiles to believe is spoken of as if he had opened a door that had prevented them from entering into faith. Alternate translation: "God had made it possible for the Gentiles to believe"

#### Acts 14:28

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 14:1

##### What did the disbelieving Jews in Iconium do after a multitude believed Paul and Barnabas' preaching?

The disbelieving Jews stirred up the minds of the Gentiles and made them bitter against the brothers.

#### Acts 14:2

##### What did the disbelieving Jews in Iconium do after a multitude believed Paul and Barnabas' preaching?

The disbelieving Jews stirred up the minds of the Gentiles and made them bitter against the brothers.

#### Acts 14:3

##### How did God give evidence about the message of his grace?

God gave evidence about the message of his grace by granting signs and wonders to be done by the hands of Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:5

##### Why did Paul and Barnabas leave Iconium?

Some Gentiles and Jews attempted to persuade their leaders to mistreat and stone Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:6

##### Why did Paul and Barnabas leave Iconium?

Some Gentiles and Jews attempted to persuade their leaders to mistreat and stone Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:7

##### Why did Paul and Barnabas leave Iconium?

Some Gentiles and Jews attempted to persuade their leaders to mistreat and stone Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:8

##### What did Paul do that caused an uproar in Lystra?

Paul healed a man who was a cripple from birth.

#### Acts 14:9

##### What did Paul do that caused an uproar in Lystra?

Paul healed a man who was a cripple from birth.

#### Acts 14:10

##### What did Paul do that caused an uproar in Lystra?

Paul healed a man who was a cripple from birth.

#### Acts 14:11

##### What did the people of Lystra want to do for Paul and Barnabas?

The people wanted to offer sacrifices through the priest of Zeus to Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:12

##### What did the people of Lystra want to do for Paul and Barnabas?

The people wanted to offer sacrifices through the priest of Zeus to Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:13

##### What did the people of Lystra want to do for Paul and Barnabas?

The people wanted to offer sacrifices through the priest of Zeus to Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:14

##### How did Barnabas and Paul respond to what the people wanted to do for them?

Barnabas and Paul tore their clothing, went into the crowd, and cried out saying that the people should turn from these useless things to a living God.

#### Acts 14:15

##### How did Barnabas and Paul respond to what the people wanted to do for them?

Barnabas and Paul tore their clothing, went into the crowd, and cried out saying that the people should turn from these useless things to a living God.

#### Acts 14:17

##### How had God not left himself without witness in the past?

God had given the nations rain and fruitful seasons, filling their hearts with food and gladness.

#### Acts 14:18

##### What did the people of Lystra want to do for Paul and Barnabas?

The people wanted to offer sacrifices through the priest of Zeus to Paul and Barnabas.

#### Acts 14:19

##### What did the crowds at Lystra later do to Paul?

The crowds at Lystra later stoned Paul and dragged him out of the city.

#### Acts 14:20

##### What did Paul do as the disciples were standing around him?

Paul got up and entered the city.

#### Acts 14:22

##### Through what did Paul say the disciples must enter into the kingdom of God?

Through many sufferings Paul said the disciples must enter into the kingdom of God.

#### Acts 14:23

##### What did Paul and Barnabas do in every assembly of believers before they departed?

In every assembly, Paul and Barnabas appointed elders, prayed with fasting, and entrusted the believers to the Lord.

#### Acts 14:27

##### What did Paul and Barnabas do when they returned to Antioch?

When they returned to Antioch, they reported all the things that God had done with them, and how he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles.

### Chapter 15

**1** Some men came down from Judea to Antioch and taught the brothers, saying, "Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved." **2** This brought Paul and Barnabas into a sharp dispute and debate with them. So Paul and Barnabas, along with some others from among them, were appointed to go up to Jerusalem to meet with the apostles and elders about this question. **3** They therefore, being sent by the church, passed through both Phoenicia and Samaria and announced the conversion of the Gentiles. They brought great joy to all the brothers. **4** When they came to Jerusalem, they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and the elders, and they reported all the things that God had done with them. **5** But certain men who believed, who belonged to the group of Pharisees, stood up and said, "It is necessary to circumcise them and to command them to keep the law of Moses." **6** So the apostles and the elders gathered together to consider this matter.

**7** After much debate, Peter stood up and said to them, "Brothers, you know that a good while ago God made a choice among you, that by my mouth the Gentiles should hear the word of the gospel, and believe. **8** God, who knows the heart, has testified to them by giving them the Holy Spirit, just as he did to us. **9** He made no distinction between us and them, having cleansed their hearts by faith. **10** Now therefore why do you test God, that you should put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear? **11** But we believe that we will be saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they were."

**12** All the multitude kept silent while they listened to Barnabas and Paul report the signs and wonders God had worked among the Gentiles through them. **13** After they stopped speaking, James answered, saying,

"Brothers, listen to me. **14** Simon has told how God first graciously helped the Gentiles in order to take from them a people for his name. **15** The words of the prophets agree with this, as it is written,

**16** 'After these things I will return,

and I will build again the tabernacle of David,

which has fallen down;

I will set up and restore its ruins again,

**17** so that the remnant of men may seek the Lord,

including all the Gentiles called by my name.'

**18** This is what the Lord says,

who has done these things

that have been known from ancient times. *[*[1](#fn-044-015-018-1)*]*

**19** Therefore, I have decided that we should not trouble those of the Gentiles who turn to God. **20** But we will write to them that they must keep away from the pollution of idols, from sexual immorality, and from the meat of strangled animals, and from blood. **21** For Moses has been proclaimed in every city from ancient generations and he is preached in the synagogues every Sabbath."

**22** Then it seemed good to the apostles and the elders, with the whole church, to choose Judas called Barsabbas, and Silas, who were leaders of the brothers, and send them to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas.

**23** They wrote this with their hands,

"From the apostles and elders, your brothers,

to the Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia:

Greetings!

**24** Because we have heard that certain men have gone out from us, with no orders from us, and have disturbed you with words that upset your souls, **25** it seemed good to us, who have come to one mind, to choose men and to send them to you with our beloved Barnabas and Paul, **26** men who have risked their lives for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ. **27** Therefore we have sent Judas and Silas, who will report to you the same things in their own words. **28** For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things: **29** that you abstain from things sacrificed to idols, blood, things strangled, and from sexual immorality. If you avoid these things, you will do well.

Farewell."

**30** So they, when they were dismissed, came down to Antioch; after they gathered the multitude together, they delivered the letter. **31** When they had read it, they rejoiced because of the encouragement. **32** Judas and Silas, also prophets, encouraged the brothers with many words and strengthened them. **33** After they had spent some time there, they were sent away in peace from the brothers to those who had sent them. **34***[*[2](#fn-044-015-034-2)*]***35** But Paul and Barnabas stayed in Antioch, teaching and preaching (along with many others) the word of the Lord.

**36** After some days Paul said to Barnabas, "Let us return now and visit the brothers in every city where we proclaimed the word of the Lord, and see how they are." **37** Barnabas wanted to also take with them John, who was called Mark. **38** But Paul thought it was not good to take Mark, who had left them in Pamphylia and did not go further with them in the work. **39** Then there arose a sharp disagreement, so that they separated from each other, and Barnabas took Mark with him and sailed away to Cyprus. **40** But Paul chose Silas and left, after he was entrusted by the brothers to the grace of the Lord. **41** Then he went through Syria and Cilicia, strengthening the churches.

#### Footnotes

15:18 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-015-018-1)*]*There are some copies of the ancient Greek text that have a slightly different meaning, 15:34 *[*[2](#ref-fn-044-015-034-2)*]*The best ancient copies do not have verse 34 (See: Acts 15:40),

### Acts 15 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 15:16-17.

The meeting that Luke describes in this chapter is commonly called the "Jerusalem Council." This was a time when many church leaders got together to decide if believers needed to obey the whole law of Moses.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Brothers

In this chapter Luke begins to use the word "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians instead of fellow Jews.

##### Obeying the law of Moses

Some believers wanted the Gentiles to be circumcised because God had told Abraham and Moses that everyone who wanted to belong to him had to be circumcised and that this was "an everlasting covenant." But Paul and Barnabas had seen God give uncircumcised Gentiles the gift of the Holy Spirit, so they did not want the Gentiles to be circumcised. Both groups went to Jerusalem to have the church leaders decide what they should do.

##### "Abstain from things sacrificed to idols, blood, things strangled, and from sexual immorality"

It is possible that the church leaders decided on these laws so that Jews and Gentiles could not only live together but eat the same foods together.

### Acts 15

#### 15:1-5

#### Who were the brothers?

[15:1]

The brothers were Gentile Christians.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### What did it mean to be “circumcised according to the custom of Moses”?

[15:1]

The “custom of Moses” referred to the Law of Moses. Some of the Jewish leaders were teaching that Gentiles could not be saved unless they, too, were circumcised according to the law of Moses.

See: [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/save.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md)

#### Why did Luke write that people went up to Jerusalem?

[15:2]

Luke wrote people went up to Jerusalem because Jerusalem was on a mountain. Therefore, people said they went up to Jerusalem.

See Map: Antioch; Jerusalem

#### Where were Phoenicia and Samaria?

[15:3]

See Map: Phoenicia; Samaria

#### What were “all the things God had done” that Paul and Barnabas reported?

[15:4]

Some scholars think Luke was writing about the following events:

God filled the disciples with the Holy Spirit and with joy (see: Acts 13:52).

God did miracles (see: Acts 14:3).

Chrisitans were persecuted (see: Acts 1014:19; 15:26).

Christians became leaders in churches (see: Acts 14:23).

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Rejoice (Joy, Joyful)](../articles/rejoice.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### Why did some Jews want to circumcise Gentile Christians?

[15:5]

Some scholars think that some Jews wanted to circumcise Gentile Christians men because they believed that Gentiles had to be circumcised to be at peace with God. They thought Christians needed to follow the Law of Moses. Other scholars think some of the Jews wanted to circumcise the Gentile chrsitian men to show that they were joined together with Jewish Christians.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### 15:6-12

#### Why did Peter say, “making their hearts clean by faith”?

[15:9]

Peter said, “making their hearts clean by faith.” Scholars think Peter wanted people to know that God cleansed the Gentile Christians because they believed in Jesus and not because they followed the Law of Moses and were circumcision. They did not need to do these things to be at peace with God.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Clean and Unclean](../articles/cleanunclean.md); [Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### Why did Peter ask the Jewish Christians, “why do you test God”?

[15:10]

Peter asked the Jewish Christians why they tested God. Some scholars think Peter to people that all Christians are at peace with God because they believe in Jesus. Here, Peter asked the Jewish Christians if they were putting God to the test to see if God really saved Gentiles simply by faith. Other scholars think Peter was asking the Jewish Chrisitans if they were trying to make God angry by suggesting the Gentiles had to follow the Law of Moses to become Christians.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### What was a yoke?

[15:10]

When Peter spoke about a “yoke,” this was a metaphor. A “yoke” was a thick wooden beam that was set across the neck and shoulders of animals. This allowed the animals to pull heavy loads in a cart, or to pull a plow. Peter spoke about the Law of Moses as a yoke. He wanted to say that it was very hard to try to obey the Law of Moses.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### What did it mean to be “saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus”?

[15:11]

Peter wanted people to know that someone has peace with God because they believe in Jesus. They did not need to do certain things to be at peace with God. They do not need to follow the Law of Moses. When God does this, he is gracious.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Faith (Believe in)](../articles/faith.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### What were signs and wonders?

[15:12]

See: [Sign](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sign.md)

#### 15:13-21

#### Why did James speak about Peter using the name Simon?

[15:14]

James spoke about Peter using the name Simon because Simon was Peter’s name in Hebrew.

#### Why did James say, “take from them a people for his name”?

[15:14]

James said, “take them a people for his name.” Some scholars think James was speaking about the Gentiles becoming God’s people. Other scholars think James wanted to say that both Jews and Gentiles could be Christians. This honored God.

See: [People of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/peopleofgod.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [People of God](../articles/peopleofgod.md)

#### Why did James say the same thing Amos wrote?

[15:15]

James said the same thing Amos wrote (see: Amos 9:11-12). He wanted people to know that even the prophets of the Old Testament spoke about Gentiles being called by God’s name. That is, Amos prophesied that the Gentiles would one day worship God and be at peace with God.

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md); [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](../articles/oldtestament.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Worship](../articles/worship.md)

#### What are the things that have been known from ancient times?

[15:18]

Luke wrote about things that have been known from ancient times. Scholars think Luke wanted people to know that God knew everything that would happen before he even made of the world. This included knowing that both Jews and Gentiles would worship God (see: Ephesians 1:4-5).

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md)

#### What was the “pollution of idols”?

[15:20]

Luke wrote about the “pollution of idols.” Scholars think Luke was writing about the animals used for sacrifices when people worshipped idols. James’ did not want the Gentile Christians to eat these foods. This was not because it was wrong to eat these foods because they were unclean. However, it was wrong to eat these foods if it offended the Jewish Christians (see: 1 Corinthians 10:27-29).

See: [Clean and Unclean](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/cleanunclean.md); [Sacrifice](../articles/sacrifice.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Clean and Unclean](../articles/cleanunclean.md)

#### What was “sexual immorality”?

[15:20]

See: [Sexual Immorality](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sexualimmorality.md)

#### What was “meat of strangled animals”?

[15:20]

“Meat of strangled animals” was meat from animals people killed but they did not drain the animal’s blood. The Jews drained blood. This is the Law of Moses commanded people to eat blood (see: Genesis 9:4; Leviticus 17:10-14).

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### Why did James want the Gentiles Chrisitians to keep away “from blood”?

[15;20]

Some scholars think James did not want the Gentile Christians to eat blood. Other scholars think James wanted the Gentile Christians to hurt or kill other people.

#### Why did James say Moses was proclaimed from ancient times and in the synagogues every Sabbath?

[15:21]

James said that Moses was proclaimed from ancient times and in the synagogue every Sabbath. Scholars think that even though the Jewish Christians knew they did not need to follow the Law of Moses, they still felt they should do some of the things in the Law of Moses. They thought they should eat in the way taught in the Law of Moses. They think James wanted the Gentile Christians to respect the Jewish Christians and not offend the Jewish Christians.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Sabbath](../articles/sabbath.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### 15:22-29

#### Who was Judas?

[15:22]

Judas Barsabbas known as a Christian prophet who was a leader in the Jerusalem church.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

#### Who were the Gentile brothers?

[15:22]

The Gentile “brothers”(ἀδελφός/g0080) included both Christian men and women.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md)

#### Why did James say, “all of us have agreed”?

[15:25]

James said, “all of us have agreed.” Scholars think that after hearing what everyone said, the leaders all agreed with Paul and Barnabas. Because of this, the leaders send other people to help Paul and Barnabas.

#### Why did Luke write it “seemed good to the Holy Spirit and to us”?

[15:28]

Some scholars think the words, “seemed good to the Holy Spirit and to us” meant that because the leaders agreed about the Gentile Christians. They believed the Holy Spirit was helping them when they gathered together. That is, the Holy Spirit helped them to agree with one another.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md)

#### Why did they write for Gentile Christians not to do four things?

[15:29]

See: Acts 15:13-21.

#### 15:30-35

#### How was it that Judas and Silas “encouraged the brothers with many words”?

[15:32]

Scholars think Judas and Silas stayed in Antioch for a short time to instruct the Christians there from the scriptures and urge them to follow the teachings of Jesus. These scholars think Judas and Silas wanted to strengthen the faith of the Christians in Antioch.

See Map: Antioch

#### How were Paul and Silas “sent away in peace”?

[15:33]

In ancient times, it was common for people to welcome a visitor in peace and to also send them on a journey in peace. The Christians in Antioch were sending greetings with Paul and Silas back to the Christians in Jerusalem. They sent them on their way in peace.

See Map: Jerusalem; Antioch

#### Did Luke write the words in verse 34?

[15:34]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have the words in verse 34. Fewer ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in verse 34. Scholars think Luke did not write these words. They think someone added these words to help people understand how Silas remained at Antioch.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/differencesbible.md)

#### How does someone “proclaim the word of the Lord”?

[15:35]

Scholars think that to “proclaim the word of the Lord” meant that Paul and Barnabas taught people about the gospel and the messiah (see: Romans 3:28; Galatians 2:16; Ephesians 2:8-9).

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Word of God](../articles/wordofgod.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### 15:36-41

#### Where were Pamphylia, Cyprus, Syria, and Cilicia

[15:38, 15:39, 15:41]

See Map: Pamphylia; Cyprus; Syria; Cilicia

#### How did the church at Antioch entrust Paul to the grace of the Lord?

[15:40]

Some scholars say the church at Antioch entrusted Paul to the grace of the Lord by trusting that God would lead and protect Paul. This is because they knew God is kind and powerful. Other scholars think the church also entrusted Silas to the grace of the Lord.

See: [Lord](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lord.md); [Grace](../articles/grace.md); [Lord](../articles/lord.md)

See Map: Antioch

#### Acts 15:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas are still in Antioch when there is a dispute about the Gentiles and circumcision.

##### Some men

"Some men." You can make explicit that these men were Jews who believed in Christ.

##### came down from Judea

The phrase "came down" is used here because Judea is higher in elevation than Antioch.

##### taught the brothers

Here "brothers" stands for believers in Christ. It is implied that they were in Antioch. Alternate translation: "taught the believers at Antioch" or "were teaching the believers at Antioch"

##### Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Unless someone circumcises you according to the custom of Moses, God cannot save you" or "God will not save you from your sins unless you receive circumcision according to the law of Moses"

#### Acts 15:2

##### This brought ... into a sharp dispute and debate with them

The abstract nouns "sharp dispute" and "debate" can be stated as verbs and where the men came from can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "... had confronted and debated with the men from Judea"

##### go up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

##### this question

"this issue"

#### Acts 15:3

##### General Information:

Both instances of "They" here refer to Paul, Barnabas, and certain others (Acts 15:2).

##### They therefore, being sent by the church

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Therefore the community of believers sent them from Antioch to Jerusalem"

##### passed through ... announced

The words "passed through" and "announced" indicate they spent some time in different places sharing in detail what God was doing.

##### announced the conversion of the Gentiles

The abstract noun "conversion" means the Gentiles were rejecting their false gods and believing in God. Alternate translation: "announced to the community of believers in those places that Gentiles were believing in God"

##### They brought great joy to all the brothers

Their message causing the brothers to be joyful is spoken of as if "joy" were an object that they brought to the brothers. Alternate translation: "What they said caused their fellow believers to rejoice"

##### the brothers

Here "brothers" refers to fellow believers.

#### Acts 15:4

##### General Information:

All instances of "they" and "them" here refer to Paul, Barnabas, and certain others (Acts 15:2).

##### they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and the elders

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the apostles, the elders, and the rest of the community of believers welcomed them"

##### with them

"through them"

#### Acts 15:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to non-Jewish believers who were not circumcised and did not keep the Old Testament laws of God.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas are now in Jerusalem to meet with the apostles and elders there.

##### But certain men

Here Luke contrasts those who believe that salvation is only in Jesus to others who believe salvation is by Jesus but also believe that circumcision is required for salvation.

##### to keep the law of Moses

"to obey the law of Moses"

#### Acts 15:6

##### to consider this matter

The church leaders decided to discuss whether or not Gentiles needed to be circumcised and obey the law of Moses in order for God to save them from their sins.

#### Acts 15:7

##### General Information:

The word "them" refers to apostles and elders

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins to speak to the apostles and elders who met to discuss whether Gentiles had to receive circumcision and keep the law ([Acts 15:5-6](./05.md)).

##### Brothers

Peter is addressing all of the believers who are present.

##### by my mouth

Here "mouth" refers to Peter. Alternate translation: "from me" or "by me"

##### the Gentiles should hear

"the Gentiles would hear"

##### the word of the gospel

Here "word" stands for a message. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus"

#### Acts 15:8

##### General Information:

The word "them" refers to the Gentiles, and both instances of "you" are plural.

##### who knows the heart

Here "heart" refers to the "minds" or "inner beings." Alternate translation: "who knows the people's minds" or "who knows what people think"

##### has testified to them

"has testified to the Gentiles"

##### giving them the Holy Spirit

"causing the Holy Spirit to come upon them"

#### Acts 15:9

##### General Information:

The word "he" refers to God, the word "us" refers to the speaker and the hearers, and the word "them" refers to the Gentiles.

##### made no distinction

God did not treat Jewish believers differently from Gentile believers.

##### having cleansed their hearts by faith

God's forgiving the Gentile believers' sins is spoken of as though he cleaned their hearts. Here "heart" stands for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "forgiving their sins because they believe in Jesus"

#### Acts 15:10

##### General Information:

Peter includes his audience by his use of "our" and "we."

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### why do you test God, that you should put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?

Peter uses a question with a word picture to tell the Jewish believers they should not require the non-Jewish believers to perform circumcision to be saved. Alternate translation: "Do not test God by putting a burden on the non-Jewish believers which we Jews were not able to bear!"

##### our fathers

This refers to their Jewish ancestors.

#### Acts 15:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes speaking to the apostles and elders.

##### But we believe that we will be saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they were

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But we believe the Lord Jesus will save us by his grace, just as he saved the non-Jewish believers"

#### Acts 15:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

##### All the multitude

"Everyone" or "The whole group" (Acts 15:6)

##### God had worked

"God had done" or "God had caused"

#### Acts 15:13

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Paul and Barnabas (Acts 15:12).

##### Connecting Statement:

James begins to speak to the apostles and elders (Acts 15:6).

##### Brothers, listen

"Fellow believers, listen." James was probably speaking only to men.

#### Acts 15:14

##### in order to take from them a people

"so that he might choose from among them a people"

##### for his name

"for God's name." Here "name" refers to God. Alternate translation: "for himself"

#### Acts 15:15

##### Connecting Statement:

James quotes the prophet Amos from the Old Testament.

##### The words of the prophets agree

Here "words" stands for a message. Alternate translation: "What the prophets said agrees" or "The prophets agree"

##### agree with this

"confirm this truth"

##### as it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as they wrote" or "as the prophet Amos wrote long ago"

#### Acts 15:16

##### General Information:

Here "I" refers to God, who spoke through the words of his prophet.

##### I will build again the tabernacle of David, which has fallen down ... its ruins again

This speaks of God's again choosing one of David's descendants to rule over his people as though he were setting up a tent again after it fell down.

##### tabernacle

Here the word "tabernacle," a dwelling place, stands for David's family. The same word is used for the tent that Yahweh told Moses to construct.

#### Acts 15:17

##### the remnant of men may seek the Lord

This speaks about people wanting to obey God and learn more about him as if they were literally looking for him.

##### remnant of men

Here "men" includes males and females. Alternate translation: "remnant of people"

##### may seek the Lord

God is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "may seek me, the Lord"

##### including all the Gentiles called by my name

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "including all the Gentiles who belong to me"

##### my name

Here "my name" stands for God.

#### Acts 15:18

##### that have been known

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that people have known"

#### Acts 15:19

##### General Information:

Here "we" includes James, the apostles, and the elders.

##### we should not trouble those of the Gentiles

You can make explicit in what way James does not want to trouble the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "we should not require the Gentiles to become circumcised and obey the laws of Moses"

##### who turn to God

A person who starts obeying God is spoken of as if the person is physically turning towards God.

#### Acts 15:20

##### they must keep away from the pollution of idols ... sexual immorality ... strangled ... blood

Sexual immorality, strangling animals, and consuming blood were often part of ceremonies to worship idols and false gods.

##### pollution of idols

This possibly refers to eating the meat of an animal that someone has sacrificed to an idol or to anything to do with idol worship.

##### from the meat of strangled animals, and from blood

God did not allow Jews to eat meat that still had the blood in it. Also, even earlier in Moses's writings in Genesis, God had forbidden the drinking of blood. Therefore, they could not eat an animal that someone strangled because the blood was not properly drained from the body of the animal.

#### Acts 15:21

##### Connecting Statement:

James finishes speaking to the apostles and elders. (See: Acts 15:2 and [Acts 15:13](./13.md))

##### Moses has been proclaimed in every city ... and he is preached in the synagogues every Sabbath

James is implying that Gentiles know how important these rules are because Jews preach them in every city where there is a synagogue. It also implies the Gentiles can go to the teachers from the synagogues to learn more about these rules.

##### Moses has been proclaimed ... he is preached

Here "Moses" represents the law of Moses, and so does "he." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The law of Moses has been proclaimed ... the law is read" or "Jews have taught the law of Moses ... they read the law"

##### in every city

The word "every" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "in many cities"

#### Acts 15:22

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to Judas and Silas.

##### Judas called Barsabbas

This is the name of a man. "Barsabbas" is a second name that people called him.

##### leaders of the brothers

The word "brothers" here refers to the people there who believed in Jesus. Alternate translation: "leaders of the believers" or "leaders of the church"

#### Acts 15:23

##### They wrote this with their hands

One or more of the apostles and elders wrote the letter and gave it to Judas and Silas so Judas and Silas could give it to the Gentile brothers.

##### From the apostles and elders, your brothers, to the Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia: Greetings!

This is the introduction of the letter. Your language may have a way of introducing the author of the letter and to whom it is written. Alternate translation: "This letter is from your brothers, the apostles and elders. We are writing to you Gentile believers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings to you" or "To our Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings from the apostles and elders, your brothers"

##### your brothers ... the Gentile brothers

Here the word "brothers" refers to fellow believers. By using these words, the apostles and elders assure the Gentile believers that they accept them as fellow believers.

##### Cilicia

This is the name of a province on the coast in Asia Minor north of the Island of Cyprus.

#### Acts 15:24

##### General Information:

Here all instances of "we" and "us" refer to the writers but not the readers

##### that certain men

"that some men"

##### with no orders from us

"even though we gave no orders for them to go"

##### disturbed you with words that upset your souls

Here "souls" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "taught things that have troubled you"

#### Acts 15:25

##### General Information:

Here the words "us" and "our" refer to the writers but not the readers

##### who have come to one mind

"who are now agree completely"

##### one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### to choose men

The men they sent were Judas, who was called Barsabbas, and Silas (Acts 15:22).

#### Acts 15:26

##### men who have risked their lives

These words refer to Barnabas and Paul, not to Judas and Silas.

##### for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ

Here "name" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "because they believe in our Lord Jesus Christ" or "because they serve our Lord Jesus Christ"

#### Acts 15:27

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writers of the letter [Acts 15:22]

##### who will report to you the same things in their own words

This phrase emphasizes that Judas and Silas will say the same things that the apostles and elders had written. Alternate translation: "who themselves will tell you the same things about which we have written"

#### Acts 15:28

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the writers of the letter [Acts 15:22]

##### to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things

This speaks about laws that people need to obey as if they were objects that people carry on their shoulders.

#### Acts 15:29

##### Connecting Statement:

This concludes the letter from the Jerusalem church to the Gentile believers in Antioch.

##### from things sacrificed to idols

This means they are not allowed to eat the meat of an animal that someone sacrifices to an idol.

##### blood

This refers to drinking blood or eating meat from which the blood has not been drained.

##### things strangled

A strangled animal was killed but its blood was not drained.

##### Farewell

This announces the end of the letter. Alternate translation: "Goodbye"

#### Acts 15:30

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul, Barnabas, Judas, and Silas leave for Antioch.

##### So they, when they were dismissed, came down to Antioch

The word "they" refers to Paul, Barnabas, Judas, and Silas. Alternate translation: "So when the four men were dismissed, they came down to Antioch"

##### when they were dismissed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the apostles and elders dismissed the four men" or "when the believers in Jerusalem sent them"

##### came down to Antioch

The phrase "came down" is used here because Antioch is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

#### Acts 15:31

##### they rejoiced

"the believers in Antioch rejoiced"

##### because of the encouragement

The abstract noun "encouragement" can be expressed with the verb "encourage." Alternate translation: "because what the apostles and elders wrote encouraged them"

#### Acts 15:32

##### also prophets

Prophets were teachers authorized by God to speak for him. Alternate translation: "because they were prophets" or "who were also prophets"

##### the brothers

"the fellow believers"

##### strengthened them

Judas and Silas' helping them to depend even more on Jesus is spoken of as if they were making them physically stronger.

#### Acts 15:33

##### Connecting Statement:

Judas and Silas return to Jerusalem while Paul and Barnabas remain in Antioch.

##### After they had spent some time there

This speaks about time as if it were a commodity that a person could spend. The word "they" refers to Judas and Silas. Alternate translation: "After they stayed there for a while"

##### they were sent away in peace from the brothers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the brothers sent Judas and Silas back in peace"

##### the brothers

This refers to the believers in Antioch.

##### to those who had sent them

"to the believers in Jerusalem who sent Judas and Silas" (Acts 15:22)

#### Acts 15:34

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 15:35

##### the word of the Lord

Here "word" stands for a message. Alternate translation: "the message about the Lord"

#### Acts 15:36

##### Let us return now

"I suggest we now return"

##### visit the brothers

"care for the brothers" or "offer to help the believers"

##### the word of the Lord

Here "word" stands for the message. Alternate translation: "the message about the Lord"

##### see how they are

"learn how they are doing." They want to learn about the current condition of the brothers and how they are holding on to God's truth.

#### Acts 15:37

##### to also take with them John, who was called Mark

"to take John, who was also called Mark"

#### Acts 15:38

##### Paul thought it was not good to take Mark

The words "not good" are used to say the opposite of good. Alternate translation: "Paul thought that taking Mark would be bad"

##### Pamphylia

This was a province in Asia Minor. See how you translated this in Acts 2:10.

##### did not go further with them in the work

"did not continue to work with them then" or "did not continue to serve with them"

#### Acts 15:39

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Barnabas and Paul.

##### Then there arose a sharp disagreement

The abstract noun "disagreement" can be stated as the verb "disagree." Alternate translation: "They strongly disagreed with each other"

#### Acts 15:40

##### after he was entrusted by the brothers to the grace of the Lord

To entrust to someone means to place the care and responsibility for someone or something to another person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after the believers in Antioch entrusted Paul to the grace of the Lord" or "after the believers in Antioch prayed for the Lord to take care of Paul and show kindness to him"

#### Acts 15:41

##### he went

The previous sentence implies that Silas was with Paul. Alternate translation: "they went" or "Paul and Silas went" or "Paul took Silas and went"

##### went through Syria and Cilicia

These are provinces or areas in Asia Minor, near the island of Cyprus.

##### strengthening the churches

Encouraging the believers in the churches is spoken of as though Paul and Silas were making the believers physically stronger. The word "churches" refers to the groups of believers in Syria and Cilicia. Alternate translation: "encouraging the believers in the churches" or "helping the community of believers to depend even more in Jesus"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 15:1

##### What did certain men from Judea come and teach the brothers?

Certain men from Judea taught that unless the brothers were circumcised, they could not be saved.

#### Acts 15:2

##### How did the brothers decide this question should be resolved?

The brothers decided that Paul, Barnabas, and certain others should go to Jerusalem to the apostles and elders.

#### Acts 15:3

##### Passing through Phoenicia and Samaria, what news did Paul and his companions announce?

Paul and his companions announced the conversion of the Gentiles.

#### Acts 15:5

##### Which group among the believers thought that the Gentiles must be circumcised and must keep the law of Moses?

The group of Pharisees believed that the Gentiles must be circumcised and must keep the law of Moses.

#### Acts 15:8

##### What did Peter say that God had given to and done for the Gentiles?

Peter said that God had given the Gentiles the Holy Spirit and had made their hearts clean by faith.

#### Acts 15:9

##### What did Peter say that God had given to and done for the Gentiles?

Peter said that God had given the Gentiles the Holy Spirit and had made their hearts clean by faith.

#### Acts 15:11

##### How did Peter say that both Jews and Gentiles are saved?

Peter said that both Jews and Gentiles are saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus.

#### Acts 15:12

##### What did Paul and Barnabas report to the assembly?

Paul and Barnabas reported the signs and wonders God had worked among the Gentiles.

#### Acts 15:16

##### What did the prophecy which James quoted say that God would rebuild, and who would it include?

The prophecy said that God would rebuild the fallen tent of David, and that it would include the Gentiles.

#### Acts 15:17

##### What did the prophecy which James quoted say that God would rebuild, and who would it include?

The prophecy said that God would rebuild the fallen tent of David, and that it would include the Gentiles.

#### Acts 15:20

##### What commands did James suggest be given to the Gentile converts?

James suggested that the Gentile converts be commanded to keep from idols, from fornication, from what is strangled, and from blood.

#### Acts 15:28

##### In the letter written to the Gentiles, who is said to be in agreement with the conclusion of giving the Gentiles only a few necessary commands?

The writers of the letter and the Holy Spirit are said to be in agreement with the conclusions.

#### Acts 15:31

##### What was the response of the Gentiles when they heard the letter from Jerusalem?

The Gentiles rejoiced because of the encouragement in the letter.

#### Acts 15:35

##### What did Paul and Barnabas do as they stayed in Antioch?

Paul and Barnabas taught and preached the word of the Lord.

#### Acts 15:36

##### What did Paul tell Barnabas he wanted to do?

Paul told Barnabas that he wanted to return and visit the brothers in every city they had proclaimed the word of the Lord.

#### Acts 15:39

##### Why did Paul and Barnabas separate and travel in different directions?

There was a sharp disagreement between them, so that they separated from each other.

### Chapter 16

**1** Paul also came to Derbe and to Lystra, and behold, a certain disciple named Timothy was there, the son of a Jewish woman who was a believer, but his father was a Greek. **2** He was well spoken of by the brothers who were at Lystra and Iconium. **3** Paul wanted him to travel with him, so he took him and circumcised him because of the Jews that were in those places, for they all knew that his father was a Greek. **4** As they were going along through the cities, they were passing along the decrees to obey that were decided on by the apostles and elders who were in Jerusalem. **5** So the churches were strengthened in the faith and increased in number daily.

**6** Paul and his companions went through the regions of Phrygia and Galatia, since they had been forbidden by the Holy Spirit to proclaim the word in the province of Asia. **7** When they came near Mysia, they attempted to go into Bithynia, but the Spirit of Jesus prevented them. **8** So passing by Mysia, they came down to the city of Troas. **9** A vision appeared to Paul in the night: A man of Macedonia was standing there, begging him and saying, "Come over into Macedonia and help us." **10** When Paul had seen the vision, immediately we sought to go to Macedonia, concluding that God had called us to preach the gospel to them.

**11** Setting sail therefore from Troas, we made a straight course to Samothrace, and the next day we came to Neapolis. **12** From there we went to Philippi, which is a city of Macedonia, the most important city in the district and a Roman colony, and we stayed in this city for several days.

**13** On the Sabbath day we went outside the gate by the river, where we thought there would be a place of prayer. We sat down and spoke to the women who had come together. **14** A certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple from the city of Thyatira, who worshiped God, listened to us. The Lord opened her heart to pay attention to what was said by Paul. **15** When she and her house were baptized, she pleaded with us, saying, "If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come and stay in my house." And she persuaded us.

**16** It came about that, as we were going to the place of prayer, a certain slave girl who had a spirit of divination encountered us. She brought her masters much gain by fortunetelling. **17** This woman followed after Paul and us and shouted, saying, "These men are servants of the Most High God. They proclaim to you the way of salvation." **18** She did this for many days. But Paul, being greatly annoyed by her, turned and said to the spirit, "I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her." And it came out at that same hour.

**19** When her masters saw that their hope of profit was now gone, they seized Paul and Silas and dragged them into the marketplace before the authorities. **20** When they had brought them to the magistrates, they said, "These men are causing trouble in our city. They are Jews. **21** They proclaim customs that are not lawful for Romans to accept or practice."

**22** Then the crowd rose up together against Paul and Silas; the magistrates tore their garments off them and commanded them to be beaten with rods. **23** When they had laid many blows upon them, they threw them into prison and commanded the jailer to guard them securely. **24** After he got this command, the jailer threw them into the inner prison and fastened their feet in the stocks.

**25** Around midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns to God, and the other prisoners were listening to them. **26** Suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken; and immediately all the doors were opened, and everyone's chains were unfastened. **27** The jailer was awakened from sleep and saw the open prison doors; he drew his sword and was about to kill himself, because he thought that the prisoners had escaped.

**28** But Paul shouted with a loud voice, saying, "Do not harm yourself, because we are all here."

**29** The jailer called for lights and rushed in and, trembling for fear, fell down before Paul and Silas, **30** and brought them out and said, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?"

**31** They said, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household." **32** They spoke the word of the Lord to him, together with everyone in his house. **33** Then the jailer took them at the same hour of the night, and washed their wounds, and he and those in his entire house were baptized immediately. **34** Then as he brought Paul and Silas up into his house and he set food before them, he rejoiced greatly with those of his house, that he had believed in God.

**35** Now when it was day, the magistrates sent word to the guards, saying, "Let those men go."

**36** The jailer reported the words to Paul, saying, "The magistrates have sent word to me to let you go. Now therefore come out, and go in peace."

**37** But Paul said to them, "They have publicly beaten us without a trial, even though we are Roman citizens—and they threw us into prison. Do they now want to send us away secretly? No! Let them come themselves and lead us out."

**38** The guards reported these words to the magistrates, and when they heard that Paul and Silas were Romans, they were afraid. **39** The magistrates came and apologized to them and brought them out, asking them to go away from the city. **40** So Paul and Silas went out of the prison and came to the house of Lydia. When Paul and Silas saw the brothers, they encouraged them and then departed from the city.

### Acts 16 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Timothy's circumcision

Paul circumcised Timothy because they were telling the message of Jesus to Jews and Gentiles. Paul wanted the Jews to know that he respected the law of Moses even though the church leaders in Jerusalem had decided that Christians did not need to be circumcised.

##### The woman who had a spirit of divination

Most people want very much to know the future, but the law of Moses said that speaking with the spirits of dead people to learn about the future is a sin. This woman seems to have been able to tell the future very well. She was a slave, and her masters made much money from her work. Paul wanted her to stop sinning, so he told the spirit to leave her. Luke does not say that she began to follow Jesus or tell us anything more about her.

### Acts 16

#### 16:1-5

#### Where were Derbe and Lystra?

[16:1]

See Map: Derbe; Lystra

#### Why did Paul circumcise Timothy?

[16:3]

Paul wanted Timothy to be circumcised. Scholars think this is because Timothy’s mother was Jewish, Timothy was also a Jew even though his father was a Greek. Because he was not circumcised, the Jews rejected Timothy.Paul wanted Timothy to be circumcised so that the Jews would allow him to teach into the synagogues.

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md); [Synagogue](../articles/synagogue.md)

#### What “instructions” did Paul deliver to the churches that they should obey them?

[16:4]

Paul delivered the “decisions”(δόγμα/g1378) about how to live as Christians from the things the Christian leaders taught in Jerusalem.

#### 16:6-10

#### Where were Phrygia and Galatia?

[16:6]

See Map: Phrygia; Galatia

#### How was Paul forbidden by the Holy Spirit to proclaim the word in Asia?

[16:6]

Scholars think there may have been various ways in which Paul and Barnabas were forbidden the Holy Spirit to proclaim the word of God in Asia. They think the Holy Spirit helped Paul to know this in some way.

See: [Word of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/wordofgod.md); [Word of God](../articles/wordofgod.md)

See Map: Asia; Mysia; Bithynia; Troas

#### What did Luke mean by writing “Spirit of Jesus”?

[16:7]

Most scholars think that when Luke wrote about the “Spirit of Jesus” he was referring to the Holy Spirit. These scholars think Luke was writing about one Spirit when he wrote about either the “Spirit of Jesus”, the Holy Spirit, or the Spirit of God.

See: [Trinity](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/trinity.md); [Trinity](../articles/trinity.md)

#### What was a “vision”?

[16:9]

See: [Vision)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### Why did Luke write “immediately”?

[16:10]

Luke wrote “immediately”(εὐθέως/g2112) because Paul and his friends immediately obeyed God and went to Macedonia.

#### Why did Luke start writing “we” instead of “they”?

[16:10]

Luke started writing “we” instead of “they” because Luke joined Paul and his friends at that time. Luke then saw the things about which he wrote.

#### 16:11-15

#### What was a “place of prayer”?

[16:13]

In ancient Israel, places of prayer were often rock enclosures with trees surrounding them. Some scholars think Paul and his companions may have noticed a place to sit near the water that they thought could be used for prayer.

See Map: Troas; Samothrace; Neapolis; Philippi

#### Who was Lydia?

[16:14]

Lydia was a Gentile woman who wanted to worship God in the way Jews worshiped God. She was from Thyatira, a place famous for making purple dyes.

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md)

See Map: Thyatira; Asia

#### What was meant by the words, “The Lord opened her heart”?

[16:14]

When Luke wrote that God opened Lydia’s heart, he used a metaphor. It meant that God helped Lydia to understand all that Paul taught and that God greatly encouraged her through Paul’s words.

See: [Metaphor](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/metaphor.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md)

#### What did it mean that “she and her house were baptized”?

[16:15]

The words, “she and her house were baptized” meant that Lydia and all who lived in her house were baptized. This would have included any servants, children and relatives.

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md)

#### What was meant by the words, “if you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord”?

[16:15]

Scholars think Lydia was saying, “if you have judge me to be a woman believer in Jesus.” That is, she told Paul that she believed in Jesus and was a Christian.

#### 16:16-24

#### What was a “spirit of divination”?

[16:16]

Some scholars think the girl that “spirit of divination” was a demon who told the future. Scholars think the girl had no control over how the demon spoke through her, and that the demon used many kinds of voices to speak through her.

See: [Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/demonpossession.md); [Sorcery](../articles/sorcery.md); [Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)](../articles/demonpossession.md)

#### Why did the demon possessed woman shout out that Paul and his friends proclaimed the way of salvation?

[16:17]

Scholars think the demon possessed woman shouted that Paul and his friends proclaimed the way of salvation for several reasons:

Some scholars think she did not glorify or respect God. When she said Paul and his friends were servants of the Most High God she was not thinking about the one God of the Bible. She was thinking about many false gods where one god was greater than the other gods.

Some scholars think the girl shouted out that Paul spoke about “a way of salvation”, and not “the way of salvation.” They think she spoke the truth but only some things she said were true.

Some scholars think she was trying to get people not to serve Paul and his friends. That is, she wanted people to watch her and not to listen to what Paul said about Jesus.

Some scholars think the demons said similar things to Jesus (see: Luke 4:41). Perhaps they did this to confuse people.

See: [False gods](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/falsegods.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)](../articles/demonpossession.md); [Glory (Glorify)](../articles/glory.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md)

#### Why did Paul command the spirit “in the name of Jesus Christ”?

[16:18]

Scholars think that when Paul commanded the spirit “in the name of Jesus Christ” to come out, he wanted people to know that Jesus gave him permission and power to do these things. This honored Jesus.

See: [Name](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/name.md)

#### What was the marketplace?

[16:19

Most ancient cities had a city square in the center of town called a marketplace. The marketplace was where people gathered to buy things, to talk, and to plan things. Sometimes leaders resolved arguments between people in the marketplace.

#### Who were the magistrates?

[16:20]

Magistrates were leaders of a city. They could decide what to do if there was a problem or trouble in the city. They could also decide how a person should be punished if the person did something wrong.

#### Why did the magistrates tear the garments off of Paul and Silas?

[16:22]

The magistrates tore the garments off of Paul and Silas because they planned to beat Paul and Silas. People who were beaten were struck with whips or rods on their bare backs.

#### What were the “stocks” fastened to Paul and Silas’ feet when they were put in prison?

[16:24]

The “stocks”(ξύλον/g3586) fastened to Paul and Silas’ feet were wooden blocks that locked their feet into one position. This made it very difficult for them to walk.

#### 16:25-34

#### Why was the jailer about to kill himself?

[16:27]

The jailer was about to kill himself because he knew the penalty for allowing prisoners to escape was death (see: Acts 16:12). Scholars think he did not want to be dishonored.

#### Why did the other prisoners not escape?

[16:28]

Scholars give several reasons why the other prisoners did not escape.

They were afraid of the prison guards.

They wanted to hear Paul and Silas talk about salvation from Jesus because they heard Paul and Silas pray and sing to God.

Perhaps the jailer secured the other prisoners before he fell down and talked to Paul and Silas.

See: [Pray (Prayer)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md); [Pray (Prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Why did the jailer ask how to be saved?

[16:30]

Some scholars say the jailer might have heard the girl’s announcement that Paul and Silas knew the way of salvation. Also, he just experienced an earthquake that opened all the prison doors, yet no one escaped. Scholars think the jailer was full of fear. He wanted to know how to be at peace with God.

See: [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/save.md)

#### What did Paul tell the jailer in order for him to be saved?

[16:31]

Paul told the jailer how to be at peace with God. All he needed to do was to believe in Jesus. Paul told the jailer about the forgiveness of sins found in Jesus.

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md)

#### What did it mean that the jailer and his household were baptized immediately?

[16:33]

Scholars think that when the jailer took Paul and Silas to cleanse their wounds, he likely took them to a well in the prison courtyard. While there, Paul and Silas baptized the jailer and his family in the water of the same well.

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md)

#### How did the jailer and his household rejoice greatly?

[16:34]

The jailer and his household rejoiced greatly with a meal at his house for Paul and Silas. They rejoiced because they had believed in God and they now had peace with God.

#### 16:35-40

#### Why did the magistrates command the jailer to release Paul and Silas the next day?

[16:35]

Scholars give several reasons why the magistrates commanded the jailer to release Paul and Silas the next day.

They thought the earthquake was a sign from their false gods.

Lydia persuaded the magistrates to release Paul and Silas.

They thought the shame from beating Paul and Silas and putting them in prison would make Paul and Silas stop talking and causing trouble in Philippi.

See: [False gods](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/falsegods.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md)

See Map: Philippi

#### Why did Paul want the magistrates to lead them out of prison?

[16:37]

During that time, when the magistrates led a person out from the prison, it showed that the person had been treated unjustly. That is, they were accused falsely. Paul knew if the magistrates led them out from the prison, they would still have a good reputation with the people of Philippi.

#### Why did the magistrates ask Paul and Silas to leave Philippi?

[16:39]

Scholars think the magistrates asked Paul and Silas to leave Philippi because they did not want the crowds to cause another riot. Other scholars think the magistrates did not want the crowd to favor Paul and Silas and turn against the magistrates. Also, they did not want Paul and Silas to report that the magistrates beat Roman citizens and put them in prison without a trial.

See: [Citizen](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/citizen.md)

#### How did Paul and Silas encourage the Christians at Lydia’s house?

[16:40]

Scholars think the Christians at Lydia’s house were encouraged because they saw that God answered their prayers for the release of Paul and Silas.

#### Acts 16:1

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the missionary journeys of Paul with Silas. Timothy is introduced into the story and joins Paul and Silas. Verses 1 and 2 give background information about Timothy.

##### Paul also came

Here "came" can be translated as "went."

##### Derbe

This is the name of a city in Asia Minor. See how you translated it in Acts 14:6.

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the narrative. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### who was a believer

The words "in Christ" are understood. Alternate translation: "who was a believer in Christ" or "who believed in Christ"

#### Acts 16:2

##### He was well spoken of by the brothers

This can be stated in active from. Alternate translation: "The brothers spoke well of him" or "Timothy had a good reputation among the brothers" or "The brothers said good things about him"

##### by the brothers

Here "brothers" refers to believers. Alternate translation: "by the believers"

#### Acts 16:3

##### wanted him ... took him ... circumcised him ... his father

"wanted Timothy ... took Timothy ... circumcised Timothy ... Timothy's father"

##### with him ... he took

"with Paul ... Paul took"

##### circumcised him

It is possible that Paul himself circumcised Timothy, but it is more likely that he had someone else circumcise Timothy.

##### because of the Jews that were in those places

"because of the Jews living in the areas where Paul and Timothy would be traveling"

##### for they all knew that his father was a Greek

Since Greek men did not have their sons circumcised, the Jews would have known Timothy was not circumcised, and they would have rejected Paul and Timothy before hearing their message about Christ.

#### Acts 16:4

##### General Information:

The word "they" here refers to Paul, Silas (Acts 15:40), and Timothy ([Acts 16:3](./03.md)).

##### the decrees to obey

"the decrees for the church members to obey" or "teh decrees for the believers to obey"

##### that were decided on by the apostles and elders who were in Jerusalem

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the apostles and elders in Jerusalem had decided on"

#### Acts 16:5

##### the churches were strengthened in the faith and increased in number daily

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the believers became stronger in their faith, and there were more and more people becoming believers every day"

##### the churches were strengthened in the faith

This speaks of helping someone to believe more confidently as if it were making them physically stronger.

#### Acts 16:6

##### Phrygia

This is a region in Asia. See how you translated this name in Acts 2:10.

##### they had been forbidden by the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit had forbidden them" or "the Holy Spirit did not permit them"

##### the word

Here "word" stands for "message." Alternate translation: "the message about Christ"

#### Acts 16:7

##### When they came

Here "came" can be translated as "went" or "arrived."

##### Mysia ... Bithynia

These are two more regions in Asia.

##### the Spirit of Jesus

"the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 16:8

##### they came down to the city of Troas

The phrase "came down" is used here because Troas is lower in elevation than Mysia.

##### they came down

Here "came" can be translated as "went."

#### Acts 16:9

##### A vision appeared to Paul

"Paul saw a vision from God" or "Paul had a vision from God"

##### begging him

Or "inviting him."

##### Come over into Macedonia

The phrase "Come over" is used because Macedonia is across the sea from Troas.

#### Acts 16:10

##### we sought to go to Macedonia ... God had called us

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to Paul and his companions, including Luke, the author of Acts.

##### we sought to go to Macedonia

"we looked for a way to go to Macedonia" or "we prepared to go to Macedonia"

#### Acts 16:11

##### Samothrace ... Neapolis

These are coastal cities near Phillipi in Macedonia.

##### we came to Neapolis

Here "came to" can be translated as "went to" or "arrived at."

#### Acts 16:12

##### a Roman colony

This is a city outside of Italy where many people who came from Rome lived. The people there had the same rights and freedoms as people who lived in cities in Italy. They could govern themselves and they did not have to pay taxes.

#### Acts 16:13

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and his companions are now in Philippi on their missionary trip. The story of Lydia begins here. This short story happens during Paul's travels.

#### Acts 16:14

##### A certain woman named Lydia

Here "A certain woman" introduces a new person in the story. Alternate translation: "There was a woman named Lydia"

##### a seller of purple

Here "cloth" is understood. Alternate translation: "a merchant who sold purple cloth"

##### Thyatira

This is the name of a city.

##### worshiped God

A worshiper of God is a Gentile who gives praise to God and follows him, but does not obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### The Lord opened her heart to pay attention

For the Lord to cause someone to pay attention and believe a message is spoken of as if he were opening a person's heart. Alternate translation: "The Lord caused her to listen well and to believe"

##### opened her heart

Here "heart" stands for a person's mind. Also, the author speaks about the "heart" or "mind" as if it were a box that a person could open so it is ready for someone to fill it.

##### what was said by Paul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Paul said"

#### Acts 16:15

##### Connecting Statement:

The story of Lydia ends here.

##### When she and her house were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When they baptized Lydia and members of her household"

##### her house

Here "house" represents the people who live in her house. Alternate translation: "the members of her household" or "her family and household servants"

#### Acts 16:16

##### General Information:

Background information is given here to explain that this young fortune teller brought much financial gain to her masters by guessing people's futures.

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the first event in another short story during Paul's travels; it is about a young fortune teller.

##### It came about that

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### a certain slave girl ... encountered

The phrase "a certain" introduces a new person to the story. Alternate translation: "there was a slave girl ... who encountered"

##### a spirit of divination

An evil spirit spoke to her often about the immediate future of people.

#### Acts 16:17

##### the way of salvation

How a person can be saved is spoken of here as if it were a way or path that a person walks on. Alternate translation: "how God can save you"

#### Acts 16:18

##### But Paul, being greatly annoyed by her, turned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But she greatly annoyed Paul, so he turned around"

##### in the name of Jesus Christ

Here "name" stands for speaking with the authority or as the representative of Jesus Christ.

##### it came out at that same hour

"the spirit came out immediately"

#### Acts 16:19

##### her masters

"the owners of the slave girl"

##### their hope of profit was now gone

Here the word "hope" is the reason for which a person can expect that what he desires will happen. Now that the spirit was gone, the girl's masters could not expect to earn money from the spirit's telling people things. Alternate translation: "their opportunity to make money was now gone" or "they could no longer expect to make money"

##### their hope of profit was now gone

It can be stated clearly why they no longer expected to make money. Alternate translation: "she could no longer earn money for them by telling fortunes"

##### into the marketplace

"into the public square." This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services takes place.

##### before the authorities

"into the presence of the authorities" or "so that the authorities could judge them"

#### Acts 16:20

##### When they had brought them to the magistrates

"When they had brought them to the judges"

##### magistrates

rulers, judges

##### These men are causing trouble in our city

Here the word "our" refers to the people of the city and includes the magistrates who ruled it.

#### Acts 16:21

##### to accept or practice

"to believe or to obey" or "to accept or to do"

#### Acts 16:22

##### General Information:

Here the words "their" and "them" refer to Paul and Silas.

##### commanded them to be beaten with rods

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "commanded the soldiers to beat them with rods"

#### Acts 16:23

##### they had ... upon them, they threw them ... guard them

"the magistrates had ... upon Paul and Silas, the magistrates threw Paul and Silas ... keep Paul and Silas"

##### had laid many blows upon them

"had hit them many times with rods"

##### commanded the jailer to guard them securely

"told the jailer to make sure they did not get out"

##### jailer

a person responsible for all the people held in the jail or prison

#### Acts 16:24

##### he got this command

"he heard this command"

##### fastened their feet in the stocks

"securely locked their feet in the stocks"

##### stocks

a piece of wood with holes for preventing a person's feet from moving

#### Acts 16:25

##### General Information:

The word "them" refers to Paul and Silas.

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues Paul and Silas' time in Philippi in prison and tells what happens to their jailer.

#### Acts 16:26

##### earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "earthquake which shook the foundations of the prison"

##### the foundations of the prison

When the foundations shook, this caused the entire prison to shake.

##### all the doors were opened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the doors opened"

##### everyone's chains were unfastened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone's chains came loose"

#### Acts 16:27

##### The jailer was awakened from sleep

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The jailer woke up"

##### was about to kill himself

"was ready to kill himself." The jailer preferred to commit suicide rather than suffer the consequences of letting the prisoners escape.

#### Acts 16:28

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Paul, Silas, and all of the other prisoners but excludes the jailer.

#### Acts 16:29

##### called for lights

The reason why the jailer needed light can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "called for someone to bring light so he could see who was still in the prison"

##### for lights

The word "lights" stands for something that makes light. Alternate translation: "for torches" or "for lamps"

##### rushed in

"quickly entered the jail"

##### fell down before Paul and Silas

The jailer humbled himself by bowing down at the feet of Paul and Silas.

#### Acts 16:30

##### brought them out

"led them outside the jail"

##### what must I do to be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what must I do for God to save me from my sins"

#### Acts 16:31

##### you will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will save you" or "God will save you from your sins"

##### your house

Here "house" stands for the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "all the members of your household" or "your family"

#### Acts 16:32

##### General Information:

The word "They" refers to Paul and Silas (Acts 16:25), and the word "him" refers to the jailer.

##### They spoke the word of the Lord to him

Here "word" stands for a message. Alternate translation: "They told him the message about the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 16:33

##### General Information:

The words "them" and "their" refer to Paul and Silas (Acts 16:25), and the words "he" and "his" refer to the jailer.

##### he and those in his entire house were baptized immediately

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Paul and Silas immediately baptized the jailer and all the members of his household"

#### Acts 16:34

##### General Information:

All instances of "he" and "his" refer to the jailer.

#### Acts 16:35

##### General Information:

This is the last event in the story of Paul and Silas in Philippi (Acts 16:12).

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke tells the last event in the story that started in Acts 16:16.

##### sent word to the guards

Here "word" stands for "message" or "command." Alternate translation: "sent a message to the guards" or "sent a command to the guards"

##### sent word

Here "sent" means the magistrates told someone to go tell the guards their message.

##### Let those men go

"Release those men" or "Allow those men to leave"

#### Acts 16:36

##### come out

"come outside of the jail"

#### Acts 16:37

##### General Information:

The word "they" refers to the magistrates. All instances of "we" and "us" refer only to Paul and Silas and so are exclusive.

##### said to them

Probably Paul is speaking to the jailer, but he intends for the jailer to tell the magistrates what he says. Alternate translation: "said to the jailer"

##### They have publicly beaten us

Here "They" refers to the magistrates who commanded their soldiers to beat them. Alternate translation: "The magistrates ordered their soldiers to beat us in public"

##### without a trial, even though we are Roman citizens—and they threw us into prison

"men who are Roman citizens, and they had their soldiers put us in jail though they had not proven in court that we were guilty"

##### Do they now want to send us away secretly? No!

Paul uses a question to emphasize that he will not allow the magistrates to send them out the city in secret after they had mistreated Paul and Silas. Alternate translation: "I will certainly not let them send us out of the city in secret!"

##### Let them come themselves

Here "themselves" is used for emphasis.

#### Acts 16:38

##### when they heard that Paul and Silas were Romans, they were afraid

To be a Roman meant to be a legal citizen of the Empire. Citizenship provided freedom from torture and the right to a fair trial. The city leaders were afraid that more important Roman authorities might learn how the city leaders had mistreated Paul and Silas.

##### they heard ... they were afraid

"the magistrates heard ... the magistrates were afraid"

#### Acts 16:39

##### General Information:

All instances of "them" refer to Paul and Silas.

#### Acts 16:40

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Paul and Silas. The word "them" refers to the believers in Philippi.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of Paul and Silas' time in Philippi.

##### came to the house

Here "came" can be translated as "went."

##### the house of Lydia

"the home of Lydia"

##### saw the brothers

Here "brothers" refers to believers, whether male or female. Alternate translation: "saw the believers"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 16:3

##### What did Paul do with Timothy before they traveled together, and why?

Paul circumcised Timothy because the Jews in those parts knew Timothy's father was a Greek.

#### Acts 16:4

##### What instructions did Paul deliver to the churches on their way?

Paul delivered the instructions that had been written by the apostles and elders in Jerusalem.

#### Acts 16:9

##### How did Paul know God was calling him to preach the gospel in Macedonia?

Paul had a vision of a man of Macedonia calling him to come over and help them.

#### Acts 16:13

##### On the Sabbath, why did Paul go to the river outside the gate of Philippi?

Paul thought there would be a place of prayer there.

#### Acts 16:14

##### What did the Lord do for Lydia as Paul spoke?

The Lord opened Lydia's heart to pay attention to the things which were spoken by Paul.

#### Acts 16:15

##### Who was baptized after Paul spoke by the river?

Lydia and her household were baptized after Paul spoke.

#### Acts 16:16

##### How did the young woman with a spirit make money for her masters?

She made money for her masters by fortunetelling.

#### Acts 16:17

##### What did Paul do after the young woman had followed him for many days?

Paul turned and commanded the spirit, in the name of Jesus Christ, to come out of her.

#### Acts 16:18

##### What did Paul do after the young woman had followed him for many days?

Paul turned and commanded the spirit, in the name of Jesus Christ, to come out of her.

#### Acts 16:21

##### What accusation did the young woman's masters bring against Paul and Silas?

They accused Paul and Silas of teaching things that are not lawful for Romans to receive or observe.

#### Acts 16:22

##### What punishment did Paul and Silas receive from the magistrates?

They were beaten with rods, thrown into prison, and put in the stocks.

#### Acts 16:23

##### What punishment did Paul and Silas receive from the magistrates?

They were beaten with rods, thrown into prison, and put in the stocks.

#### Acts 16:24

##### What punishment did Paul and Silas receive from the magistrates?

They were beaten with rods, thrown into prison, and put in the stocks.

#### Acts 16:25

##### What were Paul and Silas doing around midnight in the prison?

They were praying and singing hymns to God.

#### Acts 16:26

##### What happened that caused the jailer to prepare to kill himself?

There was an earthquake, all the prison doors were opened, and everyone's chains were unfastened.

#### Acts 16:30

##### What question did the jailer ask Paul and Silas?

The jailer asked Paul and Silas, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved"?

#### Acts 16:31

##### What answer did Paul and Silas give the jailer?

Paul and Silas answered, "Believe on the Lord Jesus, and you shall be saved, you and your house".

#### Acts 16:33

##### Who was baptized that night?

The jailer and all his household were baptized that night.

#### Acts 16:37

##### What caused the magistrates to be afraid after they sent word to let Paul and Silas go?

The magistrates were afraid because they realized that they had publicly beaten two uncondemned Roman citizens.

#### Acts 16:38

##### What caused the magistrates to be afraid after they sent word to let Paul and Silas go?

The magistrates were afraid because they realized that they had publicly beaten two uncondemned Roman citizens.

#### Acts 16:40

##### After the magistrates asked them to leave the city, what did Paul and Silas do?

Paul and Silas went to the house of Lydia, encouraged the brothers, and then departed from Philippi.

### Chapter 17

**1** Now when they had passed through the cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to the city of Thessalonica, where there was a synagogue of the Jews. **2** Paul, as his custom was, went to them, and for three Sabbath days reasoned with them from the scriptures. **3** He was opening the scriptures and explaining that it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise again from the dead. He said, "This Jesus whom I proclaim to you is the Christ." **4** Some of the Jews were persuaded and joined Paul and Silas, including a large number of devout Greeks, and not a few of the leading women. **5** But the unbelieving Jews, being moved with jealousy, took certain wicked men from the marketplace, gathered a crowd together, and set the city in an uproar. Assaulting the house of Jason, they were seeking to bring Paul and Silas out to the people. **6** But when they did not find them, they dragged Jason and certain other brothers before the officials of the city, crying, "These men who have turned the world upside down have come here also. **7** These men whom Jason has welcomed act against the decrees of Caesar; they say that there is another king—Jesus." **8** They troubled the crowd and the officials of the city who heard these things. **9** But after they took security from Jason and the rest, they let them go.

**10** That night the brothers sent Paul and Silas to Berea. When they arrived there, they went into the synagogue of the Jews. **11** Now these people were more noble than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with all readiness of mind, examining the scriptures daily to see whether these things were so. **12** Therefore many of them believed, including some influential Greek women and many men. **13** But when the Jews of Thessalonica learned that Paul was also proclaiming the word of God at Berea, they went there and stirred up and troubled the crowds. **14** Then immediately, the brothers sent Paul to go to the sea, but Silas and Timothy stayed there. **15** Those who were leading Paul took him as far as the city of Athens. As they left Paul there, they received from him instructions for Silas and Timothy to come to him as quickly as possible.

**16** Now while Paul was waiting for them in Athens, his spirit was provoked within him as he saw the city full of idols. **17** So he reasoned every day in the synagogue with the Jews and others who worshiped God, as well as in the marketplace with those who happened to be there. **18** But also some of the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers encountered him. Some said, "What is this babbler trying to say?" Others said, "He seems to be one who calls people to follow strange gods," because he was proclaiming the gospel about Jesus and the resurrection. **19** They took Paul and brought him to the Areopagus, saying, "May we know this new teaching which you were speaking? **20** For you bring some strange things to our ears. Therefore, we want to know what these things mean." **21** (Now all the Athenians and the strangers living there spent their time in nothing but either telling or listening about something new.)

**22** So Paul stood in the middle of the Areopagus and said,

"You men of Athens, I see that you are very religious in every way. **23** For as I passed along and observed the objects of your worship, I found an altar with this inscription, "TO AN UNKNOWN GOD." What therefore you worship in ignorance, this I announce to you.

**24** The God who made the world and everything in it, since he is Lord of heaven and earth, does not live in temples built with hands. **25** Neither is he served by men's hands, as though he needed anything, since he himself gives people life and breath and everything else. **26** From one man he made every nation of people to live on the surface of the earth, having determined their appointed seasons and the boundaries of their living areas, **27** so that they should search for God and perhaps they may feel their way toward him and find him. Yet he is not far from each one of us. **28** For in him we live and move and have our being, just as one of your own poets has said, 'For we also are his offspring.'

**29** "Therefore, since we are God's offspring, we ought not to think that the qualities of deity are like gold, or silver, or stone—images created by the art and imagination of man. **30** Therefore God overlooked the times of ignorance, but now he commands all men everywhere to repent. **31** This is because he has set a day when he will judge the world in righteousness by the man he has appointed. God has given proof of this man to everyone by raising him from the dead."

**32** Now when the men of Athens heard of the resurrection of the dead, some mocked Paul; but others said, "We will listen to you again about this matter." **33** After that, Paul left them. **34** But certain men joined him and believed, including Dionysius the Areopagite, a woman named Damaris, and others with them.

### Acts 17 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Misunderstandings about the Messiah

The Jews expected the Christ or Messiah to be a powerful king because the Old Testament says so many times. But it also says many times that the Messiah would suffer, and that was what Paul was telling the Jews. (See: christ)

##### The religion of Athens

Paul said that the Athenians were "religious," but they did not worship the true God. They worshiped many different false gods. In the past they had conquered other peoples and begun to worship the gods of the people they had conquered. (See: falsegod)

In this chapter Luke describes for the first time how Paul told the message of Christ to people who knew nothing of the Old Testament.

### Acts 17

#### 17:1-9

#### Where were Amphipolis, Apollonia, and Thessalonica?

[17:1]

See Map: Amphipolis; Apollonia; Thessalonica

#### Why did Luke write that Paul reasoned from the scriptures for three Sabbath days?

[17:2]

Luke wrote that Paul reasoned from Scripture for three Sabbath days. Scholars think that the regular meaning of “three Sabbath days” during Paul’s time meant three weeks of time. Paul taught people about Jesus from the Old Testament for three weeks.

See: [Sabbath](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sabbath.md); [Sabbath](../articles/sabbath.md)

#### Why did Paul say “it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise again”?

[17:3]

Paul said “it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise again” because the Old Testament prophets spoke of these events, and Jesus himself also spoke of these events.

See: Psalm 22; Isaiah 53; Luke 18:31-33; 24:25-26

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md)

#### What was meant by the words, “not a few of the leading women”?

[17:4]

The words “not a few of the leading women” meant a large number of women. These women were likely wives of the city’s leaders.

#### Why were the unbelieving Jews jealous of Paul and Silas?

[17:5]

Scholars think the unbelieving Jews were jealous of Paul and Silas because many more Gentiles than Jews believed in Jesus. More people became Christians. Perhaps the unbelieving Jews were also afraid they will lose control of their synagogue.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

**Advice to translators**: The unbelieving Jews were Jews who rejected Jesus. They were not Christians.

#### How did the unbelieving Jews create an uproar?

[17:5]

There were several things the unbelieving Jews did to create an uproar.

They went to the marketplace and gathered wicked men to cause trouble. These wicked men did not work in the marketplace. They were always there wanting to do wrong things.

The wicked men helped them start a riot in the city.

They went to the house of Jason and broke down the door of his house. They then dragged him and other Christians in front of the city leaders. Paul and Silas were in another part of the city.

They made the crowd and the city leaders angry by shouting lies against Paul and the Christians.

#### Who was Jason?

[17:6]

Jason was a relative of Paul and scholars think Paul and Silas stayed with him while they were in Thessalonica.

See Map: Thessalonica

#### What did it mean to “act against the decrees of Caesar”?

[17:7]

When Paul and Silas were accused of acting “against the decrees of Caesar” it meant they were accused of rebelling against all the Roman laws. This is because Jesus is a king. However, Jesus is not a king in the same way that the Roman Caesar was a king. People said that Paul and Silas were trying to get people to serve a different king other than Caesar. They wanted Paul and Silas to be arrested.

#### Why did the city leaders make Jason pay money as a security?

[17:9]

The leaders of the city made Jason pay a security. That is, Jason assured the city leaders that Paul and Silas would leave the city and not to return.

#### 17:10-15

#### How were the people in Berea more noble than the people in Thessalonica?

[17:11]

When Luke said that the people in Berea were more noble than the people in Thessalonica, he meant they wanted to learn about Jesus from Paul and Silas. That is, they wanted Paul and Silas to teach them about the Bible.

See Map: Berea; Thessalonica

#### What was meant by the words, “examining the scriptures daily”?

[17:11]

When Luke said that the Bereans “examined”(ἀνακρίνω/g0350) the scriptures daily, he meant they examined the Bible and compared the Bible to the things Paul and Silas taught. They wanted to prove that Paul and Silas taught the same thing the Bible taught. They wanted to know if Paul said correct things about Jesus.

#### How was it that the Jews from Thessalonica “stirred up and troubled the crowds”?

[17:13]

When Luke wrote that the Jews from Thessalonica “stirred up and troubled the crowds” he meant they caused confusion among the people. That is, they kept insisting that people follow the Law of Moses instead of what Paul and Silas taught.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md)

See Map: Thessalonica

#### Where was Athens?

[17:15]

See Map: Athens

#### 17:16-21

#### Why did idols “provoke” Paul’s spirit?

[17:16]

Idols “angered”(παροξύνω/g3947) Paul because idols made Israel sin against God (see: 2 Kings 17:12). Also, the Christian leaders in Jerusalem did not want Christians to worship idols (see: 15:29).

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md)

#### What was the marketplace?

[17:17]

See: Acts 16:19

#### What were philosophers?

[17:18]

Philosophers were people who loved wisdom. Philosophers taught different things about the world. In ancient Israel, many philosophers went to Athens. Paul warned that things they taught Christians were the wrong things and stopped Christians from believing the right things (see: Colossians 2:8).

See Map: Athens

#### What did Epicureans believe?

[17:18]

Epicureans followed a man named Epicurus who lived about 300 years before Paul. They taught certain things. They believed several things differently from Jews and Christians.

They taught that people should avoid pain .

They taught that God or other gods did not do anything with people. There were no miracles or prophecy. They did not think God or other gods controlled anything.

When a person died, nothing happened.

See: [Prophecy (Prophesy)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophecy.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md)

#### What did Stoics believe?

[17:18]

Stoics followed a man named Zeno who lived about 300 years before Paul. They believed several things differently from Jews and Christians.

They believed that some power created things and people.

They wanted people to think the same way gods thought.

They followed their conscience.

They did not want to feel pleasure, pain, joy, and sadness.

See: [Conscience](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/conscience.md)

#### What was a babbler?

[17:18]

A babbler was a bird pecking grain. It was a metaphor to say Paul was not a real teacher and a worthless person.

See: [Metaphor](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/metaphor.md)

#### What was meant by the words “follow strange gods”?

[17:18]

People said that Paul followed strange gods. They said that Paul was teaching about foreign gods. In the ancient world, people did not worship foreign gods. When someone did this, people thought they rejected the nation where they lived.

See: [False gods](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/falsegods.md)

#### What was the Areopagus?

[17:19]

The Areopagus was the highest court in Athens. It was on the hill of Ares or Mars Hill.

See Map: Athens; Ares; Mars Hill

#### Why did they take Paul to the Areopagus?

[17:19]

They took Paul to the Areopagus because of the things he said about Jesus and becoming alive again. They wanted to know about the things Paul taught. They were polite to Paul. They always wanted to hear new things.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md)

#### 17:22-31

#### Why did Paul say they were “religious”?

[17:22]

Paul said these people were “religious”(δεισιδαίμων/g1174). That is, they worshipped and obey their false gods. Some scholars think Paul said something good about them. That is, they honored their gods and built altars for their gods. Other scholars think Paul said this so they will listen to him. He did not say that because he thought they were right.

See: [Altar](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/altar.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md); [Altar](../articles/altar.md)

#### Why did they build an altar to an unknown god?

[17:23]

They built an altar to an unknown god because they believed some god controlled the world. Because of this, they knew there may be a god who made all things. However, they did not understand anything else about this god.

See: [False gods](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/falsegods.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md)

#### What did Paul have to say about the altar that said, “To an Unknown God”?

[17:24, 17:25, 17:26, 17:27]

Paul saw the altar with the words “To an Unknown God” written on it. After he saw this, he wanted to teach them about God. People can know about God. However, God is not one god of many God. There is only one God.

#### How did Paul try to correct the wrong thinking with regard to the various altars?

[17:24, 17:25, 17:26, 17:27]

Paul told them it was wrong to worship idols. This was taught in the Old Testament.

God created everything (see: Genesis 1:1).

God is ruler over everything (see: Isaiah 45:23; Daniel 5:23).

God is too great to live in a temple (see: 1 Kings 8:27; Isaiah 57:15; 66:1-2).

People do not need to serve God in the way pagans served gods with sacrifices. God does not need anything. God gives everything people need (see: Psalm 50:8-13; Genesis 2:7; James 1:17).

See: [Sacrifice](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sacrifice.md); [Old Testament (Law and Prophets)](../articles/oldtestament.md); [Altar](../articles/altar.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md); [Pagan](../articles/pagan.md); [Offer (Offering)](../articles/offer.md); [Sacrifice](../articles/sacrifice.md)

#### Did Luke write the word blood in verse 26?

[17:26]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the word blood in verse 26. Older ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. Scholars do not think Luke wrote this word. Paul was thinking about Adam when he said God made every nation of people (see: Luke 3:38; Genesis 3:20). Everyone is a descendant of Adam (see: Genesis 3:20).

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/differencesbible.md)

#### Why did Paul say the same thing a pagan poet said?

[17:28]

Paul said the same thing a pagan poet said because that pagan poet was right when he wrote God gave life to people. God makes everyone alive (see: Job 12:10). However, the pagan poet was wrong about many other things. Paul only repeated the part where the pagan was right.

See: [Pagan](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/pagan.md)

#### What was a deity?

[17:29]

Deity was a word for a divine being. It can be used to talk about the one true God or false gods.

See: [False gods](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/falsegods.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md)

#### Why did God overlook times of ignorance?

[17:30]

God overlooked times of ignorance. That is, God does not judge people when they know they are doing something wrong. This is because he loves people in the world and he did not judge them yet. People were said to be ignorant because they did not know God created them and that he rules everything. They did not know it was wrong to worship idols. However, Jesus came and God wanted everyone to repent. That is, God wanted people to stop worshipping idols and worship God.

See: [Idolatry (Idol)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/idolatryidol.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md); [Idolatry (Idol)](../articles/idolatryidol.md)

#### How will God judge all the people in the world in righteousness?

[17:31]

God will judge all the people in the world according to his righteousness when he judges everyone through Jesus. That is, the same righteous standard will be used by God to judge all peoples of the world.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

#### Who is the man God “has chosen”?

[17:31]

Paul spoke about the man God has chosen. Paul was speaking about Jesus. God has “chosen”(ὥρισεν/g3724) to judge the world through Jesus. Paul taught that God chose Jesus to be the judge by raising him from the dead.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

#### 17:32-34

#### Why did some of the men of Athens mock Paul when he said God made Jesus alive again?

[17:32]

Some of the men of Athens mocked Paul when he said God made Jesus alive again because they believed that God will not judge and God did not do miracles. They also thought the world will never end.

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md) ; [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md); [Miracle](../articles/miracle.md)

See Map: Athens

#### What was an Areopagite?

[17:34]

An Areopagite was a member of the Areopagus court. Some scholars think Dionysius was one of the twelve judges of the Athenian court.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md)

See Map: Athens

#### Acts 17:1

##### General Information:

Both instances of "they" refers to Paul and Silas (Acts 16:40).

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues the story of Paul, Silas, and Timothy's missionary trip. They arrive in Thessalonica, apparently without Luke, since he says "they" and not "we."

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke, the author, starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### passed through

"traveled through"

##### cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia

These are coastal cities in Macedonia.

##### they came to the city

Here "came to" can be translated as "went to" or "arrived at." Alternate translation: "they went to the city" or "they arrived at the city"

#### Acts 17:2

##### went to them ... reasoned with them

"went to the Jews ... reasoned with the Jews"

##### as his custom was

"as his habit was" or "as his common practice was." Paul usually went to the synagogue on the Sabbath when Jews would be present.

##### for three Sabbath days

"on each Sabbath day for three weeks"

##### reasoned with them from the scriptures

"gave them reasons to believe from the scriptures" or "debated with them about the scriptures" or "discussed the scriptures with them." Paul explained what the scriptures mean in order to prove to the Jews that Jesus is the Messiah.

#### Acts 17:3

##### General Information:

Here the word "He" refers to Paul (Acts 17:2).

##### He was opening the scriptures

Possible meanings are 1) to explain the scriptures in a way that people can understand is spoken of as if Paul were opening something so people can see what is inside of it) or 2) Paul was literally opening a book or scroll and reading from it.

##### it was necessary

"it was part of God's plan"

##### to rise again

"to come back to life"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 17:4

##### the Jews were persuaded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Jews believed" or "the Jews understood"

##### joined Paul

"became associated with Paul"

##### devout Greeks

This refers to Greeks who worshiped God but had not converted to Judaism through circumcision.

##### not a few of the leading women

This is an understatement to emphasize that many leading women joined them. Alternate translation: "many leading women"

#### Acts 17:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the unbelieving Jews and wicked men from the marketplace.

##### being moved with jealousy

The feeling of jealousy is spoken of as if jealousy were actually moving the person. Alternate translation: "feeling very jealous" or "feeling very angry"

##### with jealousy

It can be stated explicitly that these Jews were jealous because some of the Jews and Greeks believed Paul's message.

##### took certain wicked men

Here "took" does not mean the Jews took these people by force. It means the Jews persuaded these wicked men to help them.

##### certain wicked men

"some evil men." The word "men" here refers specifically to males.

##### from the marketplace

"from the public square." This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place.

##### set the city in an uproar

Here "the city" stands for the people in the city. Alternate translation: "caused the people of the city to be in an uproar" or "caused the people of the city to riot"

##### Assaulting the house

"Violently attacking the house." This probably means the people were throwing rocks at the house and trying to break down the door of the house.

##### Jason

This is the name of a man.

##### they were seeking to bring Paul ... out

The word "seeking" here means that the people wanted to bring Paul out and were trying to bring him out.

##### out to the people

Possible meanings or "people" are 1) a governmental or legal group of citizens gathered to make a decision or 2) a mob.

#### Acts 17:6

##### certain other brothers

Here "brothers" refers to believers. Alternate translation: "some other believers"

##### before the officials

"into the presence of the officials"

##### These men who have

The Jewish leaders were speaking, and the phrase "These men" refers to Paul and Silas.

##### turned the world upside down

This phrase is another way of saying Paul and Silas were causing trouble everywhere they went. The Jewish leaders were exaggerating the influence Paul and Silas were having with their teaching. Alternate translation: "caused trouble everywhere in the world" or "caused trouble everywhere they have gone"

#### Acts 17:7

##### Jason has welcomed

This phrase signals that Jason was in agreement with the apostles' troubling message.

#### Acts 17:8

##### They troubled the crowd

"They caused the people in the city to be afraid"

#### Acts 17:9

##### the rest

The words "the rest" refers to other believers that the Jews brought before the officials.

##### they took security ... they let them go

"the officials took security ... they let Jason and the other believers go"

##### took security

Jason and the others gave the money to the officials to show that they would not cause any more trouble. This was not a fine or a punishment, so they might have expected the officials to give the money back later.

#### Acts 17:10

##### General Information:

Paul and Silas travel on to the town of Berea.

##### the brothers

The word "brothers" here refers to men and women believers. Alternate translation: "the believers"

#### Acts 17:11

##### Now

The word "now" is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about the people in Berea and how they were willing to listen to Paul and examine what he said.

##### more noble

These "well-born" people were willing to think more objectively about new ideas than other people. Alternate translation: "more open minded" or "more willing to listen"

##### received the word

Here "word" refers to a teaching. Alternate translation: "listened to the teaching"

##### with all readiness of mind

These Bereans were prepared to examine earnestly Paul's teachings about the scripture.

##### examining the scriptures daily

"carefully reading and evaluating the scriptures every day"

##### these things were so

"the things Paul said were true"

#### Acts 17:12

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 17:13

##### General Information:

Athens was south of Berea. Both were on the coast of Macedonia. Athens was one of the most important cities in Greece.

##### went there and stirred up

This speaks about their agitating people as though it were a person stirring a liquid and causing the things at the bottom of the liquid to rise to the surface. Alternate translation: "went there and agitated" or "went there and disturbed"

##### troubled the crowds

"worried the crowds" or "caused dread and fear among the people"

#### Acts 17:14

##### brothers

The word "brothers" here refers to men and women believers. Alternate translation: "believers"

##### to go to the sea

"to go to the coast." From here Paul would probably sail to another city.

#### Acts 17:15

##### who were leading Paul

"who were accompanying Paul" or "who were going along with Paul"

##### they received from him instructions for Silas and Timothy

"he told them to instruct Silas and Timothy." This can also be stated as a direct quotation as in the UDB.

#### Acts 17:16

##### General Information:

This is another part of the story of Paul and Silas' travels. Paul is now in Athens where he is waiting for Silas and Timothy to join him.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### his spirit was provoked within him as he saw the city full of idols

Here "spirit" stands for Paul himself. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he became upset because he saw that there were idols everywhere in the city" or "seeing the idols everywhere in the city upset him"

#### Acts 17:17

##### he reasoned

"he debated" or "he discussed." This means that his listeners also spoke and asked him questions. He was not the only speaker.

##### others who worshiped God

This refers to Gentiles who gave praise to God and followed him but did not obey all of the Jewish laws.

##### in the marketplace

"in the public square." This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place.

#### Acts 17:18

##### General Information:

Here the words "him," "He, "and "he" refer to Paul.

##### Epicurean and Stoic philosophers

Philosophers are people who think about the world and try to understand how people should live. The Epicureans and the Stoics were two groups of philosophers. They believed that a god or gods existed, but they did not trust in or obey any god. Alternate translation: "thinkers called Epicureans and Stoics"

##### encountered him

"happened upon him"

##### Some said

"Some of the philosophers said"

##### What is this babbler

The word "babbler" was used to refer to birds picking up seeds as food. It refers negatively to a person who only knows a little bit of information. The philosophers said Paul had bits of information which were not worth listening to. Alternate translation: "What is this uneducated person"

##### Others said

"Other philosophers said"

##### He seems to be one who calls people to follow

"He seems to be a proclaimer" or "He seems to be on a mission to add people to his philosophy"

##### strange gods

This is not in the sense of "odd," but in the sense of "foreign," that is, gods that Greeks and Romans do not worship or know about.

#### Acts 17:19

##### They took ... brought him

This does not mean they arrested Paul. The philosophers invited Paul to speak formally to their leaders.

##### to the Areopagus

The "Areopagus" was the place where the leaders met. Alternate translation: "to the leaders that met on the Areopagus"

##### the Areopagus, saying

Here the leaders on the Areopagus are speaking. This can stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "the Areopagus. The leaders said to Paul"

##### Areopagus

This is a prominent rock outcropping or hill in Athens upon which the supreme court of Athens may have met.

#### Acts 17:20

##### For you bring some strange things to our ears

Paul's teachings about Jesus and the resurrection are spoken of as an object that a person can bring to another person. Here "ears" refers to what they hear. Alternate translation: "For you are teaching some things that we have never heard before"

#### Acts 17:21

##### Now all the Athenians and the strangers living there

The word "all" is a generalization referring to many. Alternate translation: "Now many of the Athenians and the strangers living there"

##### all the Athenians

"Athenians" are people from Athens, a city near the coast below Macedonia

##### the strangers

"the foreigners"

##### spent their time in nothing but either telling or listening

Here "time" is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could spend. Alternate translation: "used their time doing nothing but either telling or listening" or "were always doing nothing but telling or listening"

##### spent their time in nothing but either telling or listening

The phrase "spent their time in nothing" is an exaggeration. Alternate translation: "did not do much but tell or listen" or "spent much of their time telling or listening"

##### telling or listening about something new

"discussing new philosophical ideas" or "talking about what was new to them"

#### Acts 17:22

##### General Information:

Paul begins his speech to the philosophers on the Areopagus.

##### very religious in every way

Paul is referring to the Athenians' public display of honoring the gods through prayers, building altars, and offering sacrifices.

#### Acts 17:23

##### as I passed along and observed the objects of your worship

"as I walked among the objects of your worship and observed them" or "as I walked around in the city, I observed the objects of your worship"

##### To an Unknown God

Possible meanings are 1) "to a certain unknown god" or 2) "to a god not known." This was a specific writing or inscription on that altar.

#### Acts 17:24

##### the world

In the most general sense, the "world" refers to the heavens and the earth and everything in them.

##### since he is Lord

"because he is the Lord." Here "he" is referring to the unknown god mentioned in Acts 17:23 that Paul is explaining is the Lord God.

##### of heaven and earth

The words "heaven" and "earth" are used together to mean all beings and things in heaven and earth.

##### built with hands

Here "hands" stands for people. Alternate translation: "built by the hands of people" or "that people built"

#### Acts 17:25

##### Neither is he served by men's hands

Here "served" has the sense of a doctor treating a patient to make the patient well again. Alternate translation: "Neither do men's hands take care of him"

##### by men's hands

Here "hands" stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: "by humans"

##### since he himself

"because he himself." The word "himself" is added for emphasis.

#### Acts 17:26

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refer to God, the creator, and both instances of "their" refer to every nation of people living on the surface of the earth.

##### one man

This means Adam, the first person God created. This can be stated to include Eve. It was through Adam and Eve that God made all other people. Alternate translation: "one couple"

##### having determined their appointed seasons and the boundaries of their living areas

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "and he determined when and where they would live"

#### Acts 17:27

##### General Information:

All instances of "they" and "their" refer to the people who live on earth, all instances of "him" and "he" refer to God, and the word "us" includes the speaker, the hearers, and the people who live on earth.

##### so that they should search for God and perhaps they may feel their way toward him and find him

Here "search for God" represents desiring to know him, and "feel their way toward him and find him" represents praying and having a relationship with him. Alternate translation: "so that they should want to know God and perhaps pray to him and become one of his people"

##### Yet he is not far from each one of us

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Yet he is very near to every one of us"

#### Acts 17:28

##### General Information:

Here the words "him" and "his" refer to God

##### For in him

"Because of him"

#### Acts 17:29

##### General Information:

Both instances of "we" include the speaker, the hearers, and other people.

##### are God's offspring

Because God created everyone, all people are spoken of as if they were God's literal children.

##### the qualities of deity are like

Here "deity" refers to God's nature or attributes. Alternate translation: "God is like"

##### images created by the art and imagination of man

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which a man then uses his skill to make it into something that he has designed" or "images that people make by using their art and imagination"

#### Acts 17:30

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to God.

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

##### God overlooked the times of ignorance

"God decided not to punish people during the time of ignorance"

##### times of ignorance

This refers to the time before God fully revealed himself through Jesus Christ and before people truly knew how to obey God.

##### all men

This means all people, whether male or female. Alternate translation: "all people"

#### Acts 17:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes his speech to the philosophers in the Areopagus, which he began in Acts 17:22.

##### when he will judge the world in righteousness by the man he has appointed

"when the man he has chosen will judge the world in righteousness"

##### he will judge the world

Here "world" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "he will judge all people"

##### in righteousness

"justly" or "fairly"

##### God has given proof of this man

"God has demonstrated his choice of this man"

##### from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

#### Acts 17:32

##### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers to the men of Athens but not to Paul, so this is exclusive. Though some of them probably did want to hear Paul again, they may only have been being polite.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Paul in Athens.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke changes from Paul's teachings to the reaction of the people of Athens.

##### the men of Athens

These are the people who were present at the Areopagus and were listening to Paul.

##### some mocked Paul

"some ridiculed Paul" or "some laughed at Paul." These did not believe it was possible for someone to die and then return to life.

#### Acts 17:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 17:34

##### Dionysius the Areopagite

Dionysius is a man's name. Areopagite implies that Dionysius was one of the judges at the council of Areopagus.

##### Damaris

This is the name of a woman.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 17:1

##### Arriving in Thessalonica, where did Paul go first to speak from the Scriptures about Jesus?

Paul went to the synagogue of the Jews first to speak from the Scriptures about Jesus.

#### Acts 17:2

##### Arriving in Thessalonica, where did Paul go first to speak from the Scriptures about Jesus?

Paul went to the synagogue of the Jews first to speak from the Scriptures about Jesus.

#### Acts 17:3

##### What did Paul show was necessary from the Scriptures?

Paul showed it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise again from the dead.

#### Acts 17:7

##### What accusation was made against Paul and Silas to the city officials?

Paul and Silas were accused of acting against the decrees of Caesar, saying that there was another king—Jesus.

#### Acts 17:10

##### Where did Paul and Silas go when they arrived in Berea?

Paul and Silas went into the synagogue of the Jews.

#### Acts 17:11

##### What did the Bereans do when they heard Paul's message?

The Bereans received the word and examined the Scriptures to see if what Paul said was so.

#### Acts 17:13

##### Why did Paul have to leave Berea, and where did he go?

Paul had to leave Berea because the Jews of Thessalonica stirred up the crowds in Berea, so Paul went to Athens.

#### Acts 17:14

##### Why did Paul have to leave Berea, and where did he go?

Paul had to leave Berea because the Jews of Thessalonica stirred up the crowds in Berea, so Paul went to Athens.

#### Acts 17:15

##### Why did Paul have to leave Berea, and where did he go?

Paul had to leave Berea because the Jews of Thessalonica stirred up the crowds in Berea, so Paul went to Athens.

#### Acts 17:17

##### Where did Paul go when he arrived in Athens?

Paul went to the Jewish synagogue and the marketplace to reason from the Scriptures.

#### Acts 17:19

##### Where was Paul brought to explain his teaching further?

Paul was brought to the Areopagus to explain his teaching further.

#### Acts 17:20

##### Where was Paul brought to explain his teaching further?

Paul was brought to the Areopagus to explain his teaching further.

#### Acts 17:23

##### Which altar in Athens did Paul find, which he wanted to explain to the people?

Paul found an altar with the inscription, TO AN UNKNOWN GOD, which he wanted to explain to the people.

#### Acts 17:25

##### What did Paul say the God who made everything gives to people?

Paul said the God who made everything gives people life and breath and everything else.

#### Acts 17:26

##### From what did God make every nation of people?

From one man God made every nation of people.

#### Acts 17:27

##### How far did Paul say God was from anyone?

Paul said that God was not far from anyone.

#### Acts 17:29

##### How did Paul say we should not think of God?

Paul said that we should not think of God like gold, silver, or stones, sculptured by man.

#### Acts 17:30

##### What does God now call all men everywhere to do?

God now calls all men everywhere to repent.

#### Acts 17:31

##### For what has God set a certain day?

God has set a certain day when Jesus will judge the world in righteousness.

##### What proof has God given that Jesus has been chosen as the judge of the world?

God has proven that Jesus has been chosen as the judge of the world by raising him from the dead.

#### Acts 17:32

##### What did some do when they heard Paul speak about the resurrection of the dead?

Some mocked Paul when they heard him speak about the resurrection of the dead.

#### Acts 17:34

##### Did any believe what Paul had said?

Yes, certain men believed Paul, and others with them.

### Chapter 18

**1** After these things Paul left Athens and went to Corinth. **2** There he met a Jew named Aquila, a native of Pontus, who had recently come from Italy with his wife Priscilla, because Claudius had commanded all the Jews to leave Rome. Paul went to them, **3** and because he worked at the same trade, he stayed with them and labored, for they were tentmakers by trade. **4** So Paul reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath, trying to persuade both Jews and Greeks. **5** Now when Silas and Timothy came down from Macedonia, Paul devoted himself to the word, testifying to the Jews that Jesus was the Christ. **6** But when the Jews opposed and insulted him, Paul shook out his garment at them and said to them, "May your blood be upon your own heads; I am clean. From now on I will go to the Gentiles." **7** Then he left from there and went to the house of a man named Titius Justus, a man who worshiped God. His house was next to the synagogue. **8** Crispus, the leader of the synagogue, believed in the Lord, together with all his household; and many of the Corinthians who heard about it believed and were baptized. **9** The Lord said to Paul in the night in a vision, "Do not be afraid, but speak and do not be silent. **10** For I am with you, and no one will try to harm you, for I have many people in this city." **11** Paul lived there for a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them.

**12** But when Gallio became governor of Achaia, the Jews rose up with one mind against Paul and brought him before the judgment seat; **13** they said, "This man persuades people to worship God contrary to the law." **14** Yet when Paul was about to speak, Gallio said to the Jews, "You Jews, if indeed it were a matter of wrong or a wicked crime, it would be reasonable to put up with you. **15** But since these are questions about words and names and your own law, settle it yourselves. I do not wish to be a judge of these matters." **16** Gallio made them leave the judgment seat. **17** So they all seized Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, and beat him in front of the judgment seat. But Gallio did not care what they did.

**18** Paul, after staying there for many more days, left the brothers and sailed for Syria with Priscilla and Aquila. Before he left the seaport, Cenchreae, he had his hair cut off because of a vow he had taken. **19** When they came to Ephesus, Paul left Priscilla and Aquila there, but he himself went into the synagogue and reasoned with the Jews. **20** When they asked Paul to stay a longer time, he declined. **21** But taking his leave of them, he said, "I will return again to you if it is God's will." He then set sail from Ephesus.

**22** When Paul had landed at Caesarea, he went up and greeted the Jerusalem church and then went down to Antioch. **23** After having spent some time there, Paul departed and went through the regions of Galatia and Phrygia, strengthening all the disciples.

**24** Now a certain Jew named Apollos, an Alexandrian by birth, came to Ephesus. He was eloquent in speech and mighty in the scriptures. **25** Apollos had been instructed in the teachings of the Lord. Being fervent in spirit, he spoke and taught accurately the things concerning Jesus, but he knew only the baptism of John. **26** Apollos began to speak boldly in the synagogue. But when Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way of God more accurately. **27** When he desired to pass over into Achaia, the brothers encouraged him and wrote to the disciples in Achaia to welcome him. When he arrived, he greatly helped those who believed by grace. **28** Apollos powerfully refuted the Jews in public debate, showing by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ.

### Acts 18 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### The baptism of John

Some Jews who lived far away from Jerusalem and Judea had heard of John the Baptist and followed his teachings. They had not yet heard about Jesus. One of these Jews was Apollos. He followed John the Baptist, but he did not know that the Messiah had come. John had baptized people to show that they were sorry for their sins, but this baptism was different from Christian baptism. (See: faithful and christ and repent)

### Acts 18

#### 18:1-11

#### Why did Paul leave Athens?

[18:1]

Luke did not write why Paul left Athens. Some scholars think Paul was not able to make tents there because Athens was not a city where people made tents. Other scholars think Corinth needed someone to preach the gospel. Also, Corinth was a city where people made tents.

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md)

See Map: Athens

#### Where was Corinth?

[18:1]

See Map: Corinth

#### Where were Pontus, Italy, and Rome?

[18:2]

See Map: Pontus; Italy; Rome

#### Who was Claudius?

[18:2]

Claudius was the fourth Roman Emperor. He ruled the Roman Empire about 10 years after Jesus died. He allowed the Jews to obey the Law of Moses and to do things the religious things the Jews did.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### Why did Claudius make all the Jews leave Rome?

[18:2]

The Roman Emperor Claudius made all the Jews leave Rome because the Jews caused many riots in Rome. Scholars do not know if Aquila and Priscilla participated in those riots at Rome or if they did not.

See: [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/rome.md)

#### Why did Paul go to Aquila and Priscilla?

[18:2, 18:3]

Some scholars think Paul went to Aquila and Priscilla because they were Christians. Perhaps they helped start the church in Rome. Other scholars think they were not Christians and Paul went to them because they also made tents. Then Paul taught them and they became Christians. Aquila and Priscilla helped Paul many times.

See: Acts 18:18, 26; Romans 16:3; 1 Corinthians 16:19; 2 Timothy 4:19).

See Map: Rome

#### How did the church in Corinth begin?

[18:4] The church in Corinth began when Paul persuaded Jews and Greeks to believe that Jesus is the messiah. Paul talked to these Jews and Greeks at the synagogue in Corinth. At first, the synagogue allowed Paul to tell people about Jesus. Later, they did not want Paul to talk about Jesus.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Synagogue](../articles/synagogue.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### Did Luke write that the Holy Spirit led Paul?

[18:5] Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words, the Holy Spirit led Paul in verse. However, more and older copies of the Greek News Testament have the words, Paul was devoted to the word. Scholars think Luke wrote that Paul was devoted to the word.

See: [Word of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/wordofgod.md)

#### Where was Macedonia?

[18:5]

See Map: Macedonia

#### Why did Paul shake out his garment at the Jews who opposed and insulted him?

[18:6] Paul shook out his garment at the Jews who opposed and insulted him. This was a sign that he stop talking to them about Jesus. Paul also warned them God will judge them. However, God will not judge Paul because Paul warned them. This was similar to what God told Ezekiel to do (see: Ezekiel 3:16-21).

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

**Advice to translators**: A garment was a piece of clothing.

#### What did Paul do when Silas and Timothy went to Corinth?

[18:7, 18:8]

Paul stopped making tents and give all of time to telling people about Jesus when Silas and Timothy went to Corinth. They were in Corinth with Paul. Some scholars think Silas and Timothy brought money so that Paul did not need to make tents. Other scholars think Silas and Timothy worked and made enough money so that Paul did not need to make tents.

See Map: Corinth

#### What was a vision?

[18:9]

See: [Vision](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### Why did the Lord speak to Paul in a vision at night?

[18:9]

The Lord spoke to Paul in a vision at night because Paul was afraid he would have to leave Corinth. Persecution in other cities forced Paul to leave when he wanted to continue serving God. However, Paul was not afraid to suffer (see: 21:10-14). Also, the vision helped Paul know he pleased God by the way he served God in Corinth.

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md)

#### 18:12-17

#### Who was Gallio?

[18:12]

Gallio was the leader of Achaia in Greece for two years. He began ruling about 20 years after Jesus died. He was killed by a Roman emperor.

See Map: Achaia; Greece

#### What was the judgement seat?

[18:12]

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md)

#### Why did the Jews bring Paul before Gallio?

[18:12]

The Jews brought Paul before Gallio because they wanted to persuade him to judge against Paul. However, their plan failed. The Lord’s promise in the vision to protect Paul at Corinth came true.

See: [Vision)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md); [Vision)](../articles/vision.md)

See Map: Corinth

#### Which law did the Jews talk about?

[18:13]

Some scholars think the law the Jews talked about was the Law of Moses. They wanted the governor to allow them to follow the Law of Moses. Other scholars think the Jews talked about Roman laws. Roman laws allowed the Jews to worship God and follow the Law of Moses. If these Jews were able to convince Gallio the Christians were different from the Jews, then Roman law would not allow Christians to worship God. Other scholars think the Jews talked about both the law of Moses and Roman laws.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### Who was Sosthenes?

[18:17]

Sosthenes was the ruler of the synagogue in Corinth. If he was the same person in 1 Corinthians 1:1, then he became a Christian at sometime and later he helped Paul write the first letter to the Corinthian church.

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

#### Why did people beat Sosthenes?

[18:17]

Scholars give several reasons why people beat Sosthenes.

Some scholars think the Jews beat Sosthenes because he was not able to persuade Gallio to judge Paul.

Some scholars think the Jews beat Sosthenes because he became a Christian.

Some scholars think the Gentiles beat Sosthenes because they did not like Jews.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md)

#### 18:18-23

#### Why did Paul do a third missionary journey?

[18:8]

This was the beginning of Paul’s third missionary journey. He wanted to visit and help the churches he established in his first and second missionary journeys. He wanted them to know he did not forget about them.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

See Map: Syria; Cenchrea; Ephesus; Caesarea; Antioch; Galatia; Phrygia

#### What vow did Paul take?

[18:8]

Scholars have several ideas of what vow Paul took.

Some scholars think Paul made a Nazarite vow (see: Numbers 6)

Some scholars think Paul made a vow of thanksgiving because God protected him in Corinth.

Sometimes ancient sailors shaved their heads after living through a difficult journey. This was a type of vow.

Some scholars think Paul made a private vow.

See: [Vow](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vow.md)

#### Why did Paul say “if it is God’s will”?

[18:21]

Paul said “if it is God’s will” because he always depended on God leading him by the Holy Spirit. Sometimes the Holy Spirit sent Paul to a certain place (see: Acts 13:2). Other times God allowed Paul to visit churches he wanted to visit (see: Acts 15:36). Paul wanted to do God’s will.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### 18:24-28

#### Where was Alexandria?

[18:24]

See Map: Alexandria

#### What spirit was Apollos fervent in?

[18:24]

Scholars think Apollos was fervent in his own spirit. This was a metaphor. He loved to speak about Jesus and was excited to speak about Jesus (see: Romans 12:11). Fewer scholars think Luke was writing about the Holy Spirit. Fewer scholars think Luke was writing about both Apollos’ spirit and the Holy Spirit.

See: [Metaphor](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/metaphor.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md)

#### How did Priscilla and Aquila tell Apollos the way of God more accurately?

[18:26]

Some scholars think Priscilla and Aquila told Apollos the way of God more accurately by telling him about Christian baptism in water. The Holy Spirit already live him. Other scholars think the Holy Spirit did not yet live in Apollos but Priscilla and Aquila explained that to him (see: 2:1-4). In the same way, many of the five-hundred who saw Jesus alive again did not go to Jerusalem on the Day of Pentecost when the Holy Spirit began to live in the apostles and other Christians (1 Corinthians 15:6).

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md): [Pentecost](../articles/pentecost.md); [Apostle](../articles/apostle.md)

See Map: Jerusalem

#### Acts 18:1

##### Connecting Statement:

This is another part of the story of Paul's travels as he goes to Corinth.

##### After these things

"After these events took place in Athens"

##### Athens

Athens was one of the most important cities in Greece. See how you translated this in Acts 17:15.

#### Acts 18:2

##### General Information:

The writer begins to give background information about Aquila and Priscilla.

##### There he met

Possible meanings are that 1) Paul happened to find by chance or 2) Paul intentionally found.

##### a Jew named Aquila

Here the phrase "a certain" indicates this is introducing new person in the story.

##### a native of Pontus

Pontus was a province on the southern coast of the Black Sea.

##### had recently come

This is probably sometime in the past year.

##### Italy

This is the name of land. Rome is the capital city of Italy.

##### Claudius had commanded

Claudius was the current Roman emperor. See how you translated this in Acts 11:28.

#### Acts 18:3

##### General Information:

The writer finishes giving background information about Aquila and Priscilla.

##### he worked at the same trade

"he did the same kind of work that they did"

#### Acts 18:4

##### So Paul reasoned

"So Paul debated" or "So Paul discussed." He gave reasons. This means that rather than just preaching, Paul talked and interacted with the people.

##### trying to persuade both Jews and Greeks

Possible meanings are 1) "and he caused both Jews and Greeks to believe" or 2) "and he kept trying to persuade the Jews and the Greeks."

#### Acts 18:5

##### General Information:

Silas and Timothy rejoin Paul.

#### Acts 18:6

##### shook out his garment

This is a symbolic action to indicate that Paul will no longer try to teach the Jews there about Jesus. He is leaving them to God's judgment.

##### May your blood be upon your own heads

Here "blood" stands for the guilt of their actions. Here "heads" refers to the whole person. Paul tells the Jews they are solely responsible for the judgment they will face for their stubbornness if they refuse to repent. Alternate translation: "You alone bear the responsibility for your punishment for sin"

##### I am clean

The word "clean" here is a metaphor for Paul being innocent of wrong against either the people or God. Alternate translation: "I am innocent" or "God will not punish me when he punishes you"

#### Acts 18:7

##### he left ... His house

"Paul left ... Titius' Justus's house"

##### Titius Justus

This is the name of a man.

##### worshiped God

A worshiper of God is a Gentile who gives praise to God and follows him but does not necessarily obey all of the Jewish laws.

#### Acts 18:8

##### Crispus

This is the name of a man.

##### leader of the synagogue

a layperson who sponsored and administered the synagogue, not necessarily the teacher

##### all his household

Here "his household" refers to the people who lived together in his house. Alternate translation: "the people who lived with him in his house"

##### his household

Crispus's household

##### were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "received baptism"

#### Acts 18:9

##### Do not be afraid, but speak and do not be silent

The Lord is giving one command in two different ways to emphasize that Paul should certainly continue preaching. Alternate translation: "You must not be afraid; instead, you should continue to speak and not become silent"

##### speak and do not be silent

The Lord gives the same command in two different ways to strongly command Paul to speak. Alternate translation: "you must certainly continue to speak"

##### do not be silent

It can be stated explicitly what the Lord wants Paul to speak. Alternate translation: "do not stop speaking about the gospel"

#### Acts 18:10

##### I have many people in this city

"there are many people in this city who have put their faith in me" or "many people in this city will put their faith in me"

#### Acts 18:11

##### Paul lived there ... teaching the word of God among them

This is a concluding statement for this part of the story. "Word of God" here is a synecdoche for the entire scriptures. Alternate translation: "Paul lived there ... teaching the scriptures among them"

#### Acts 18:12

##### General Information:

Achaia was the Roman province in which Corinth was located. Corinth was the largest city in southern Greece and the capital of the province.

##### Connecting Statement:

The unbelieving Jews bring Paul to the judgment seat before Gallio.

##### Gallio

This is the name of a man.

##### the Jews

This stands for the Jewish leaders that did not believe in Jesus.

##### rose up

This phrase means that the Jews began to act, not that they rose into the air or rose to stand from a sitting position. If your language has a different idiom for beginning to act, you may use it here.

##### with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### brought him before the judgment seat

The Jews took Paul by force to bring Paul before the court. Here "judgment seat" refers to the place where Gallio sat when he made legal decisions in court. Alternate translation: "took him so that the governor could judge him at the judgment seat"

#### Acts 18:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 18:14

##### Gallio said

Gallio was the Roman governor of the Province.

#### Acts 18:15

##### your own law

Here "law" can refer to either the law of Moses or the Jewish customs of Paul's time. Gallio is simply telling the Jews that they are to do what they think right and that he is not interested in being the judge.

##### I do not wish to be a judge of these matters

"I refuse to make a judgment about these matters"

#### Acts 18:16

##### Gallio made them leave the judgment seat

"Gallio dismissed the Jews from the judgment seat." Here "judgment seat" refers to the place where Gallio sits to make legal decisions in court. Alternate translation: "Gallio made them leave his presence in the court" or "Gallio made them leave the court"

#### Acts 18:17

##### General Information:

It is not clear what events this verse describes. The Jews had been accusing Paul, but it appears that they ended up beating Sosthenes and not Paul.

##### So they all seized Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, and beat him in front of the judgment seat

Possible meanings are 1) the Gentiles beat Sosthenes in the court in front of the judgment seat because he was the Jewish leader or 2) Sosthenes was a believer in Christ, so even though he was "the ruler of the synagogue," the Jews beat him in front of the court.

##### they all seized

This may be an exaggeration to emphasize the strong feelings the people had. Alternate translation: "many people seized" or "many of them grabbed"

##### Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue

Sosthenes was "the ruler of the synagogue" at Corinth.

##### beat him

"repeatedly hit him" or "repeatedly punched him."

#### Acts 18:18

##### General Information:

Here both instances of "he" refer to Paul.

##### left the brothers

The word "brothers" refers to men and women believers. Alternate translation: "left the fellow believers"

##### sailed for Syria with Priscilla and Aquila

Paul got on a ship that sailed for Syria. Priscilla and Aquila went with him.

##### Cenchreae

This was a town near Corinth in Greece. It was on the coast, and Paul probably got on the ship there.

##### he had his hair cut off

This is a symbolic action that indicates that he had done something he had vowed to do. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he had someone cut off the hair on his head"

#### Acts 18:19

##### Connecting Statement:

This continues Paul's missionary journey as Paul, Priscilla, and Aquila leave Corinth. This seems to indicate that Silas and Timothy remain, since it says "he" here and not "they." The word "they" refers to Paul, Priscilla, and Aquila.

##### reasoned with the Jews

"gave the Jews reasons to believe" or "debated with the Jews about the scriptures" or "discussed the scriptures with the Jews." Paul explained what the scriptures mean in order to prove to the Jews that Jesus is the Messiah. See how you translated "reasoned with" in [Acts 17:2]

#### Acts 18:20

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the Jews in Ephesus.

#### Acts 18:21

##### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to the Jews in Ephesus. The word "you" is plural.

##### taking his leave of them

"saying good-bye to them"

#### Acts 18:22

##### General Information:

Phrygia is a province in Asia which is now modern day Turkey. See how you translated this in Acts 2:10.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues his missionary journey.

##### landed at Caesarea

"arrived at Caesarea." The word "landed" is used to show that he arrived by ship.

##### he went up

He traveled to the city of Jerusalem. The phrase "went up" is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Caesarea.

##### greeted the Jerusalem church

Here "church" refers to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "greeted the members of the church of Jerusalem"

##### then went down

The phrase "went down" is used here because Antioch is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

#### Acts 18:23

##### Paul departed

"Paul went away" or "Paul left"

##### After having spent some time there

This speaks about "time" as if it were a commodity that a person could spend. Alternate translation: After staying there for a while"

#### Acts 18:24

##### General Information:

Apollos is introduced to the story. Verses 24 and 25 give background information about him.

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells what happens in Ephesus with Priscilla and Aquila.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story.

##### a certain Jew named Apollos

The phrase "a certain" indicates that Luke is introducing a new person in the story.

##### an Alexandrian by birth

"a man who was born in the city of Alexandria." This was a city in Egypt on the north coast of Africa.

##### eloquent in speech

"a good speaker"

##### mighty in the scriptures

"he knew the scriptures thoroughly." He understood the Old Testament writings well.

#### Acts 18:25

##### Apollos had been instructed in the teachings of the Lord

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people to live"

##### Being fervent in spirit

Here "spirit" refers to the entire person of Apollos. Alternate translation: "Being very enthusiastic"

##### the baptism of John

"the baptism that John performed." John's baptism was with water, but Jesus's baptism is with the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 18:26

##### the way of God

How God wants people to live is spoken of as if it were a road that a person travels.

##### more accurately

"correctly" or "more fully"

#### Acts 18:27

##### General Information:

Here the he words "he" and "him" refer to Apollos ([Acts 18:24](./24.md)).

##### to pass over into Achaia

"to go to the region of Achaia." The phrase "pass over" is used here because Apollos had to cross the Aegean Sea to get to Achaia from Ephesus.

##### Achaia

Achaia was a Roman Province in the southern section of Greece. See how you translated this in Acts 18:12.

##### brothers

The word "brothers" here refers to men and women believers. You can make explicit that these are believers in Ephesus. Alternate translation: "fellow believers in Ephesus"

##### wrote to the disciples

"wrote a letter to the Christians in Achaia"

##### those who believed by grace

"those who had believed in salvation by grace" or "those who by God's grace believed in Jesus"

#### Acts 18:28

##### Apollos powerfully refuted the Jews in public debate

"In public debate Apollos powerfully showed that the Jews were wrong"

##### showing by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ

"as he showed them by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 18:3

##### What work did Paul do to support himself?

Paul worked as a tentmaker to support himself.

#### Acts 18:5

##### What did Paul testify to the Jews in Corinth?

Paul testified to the Jews that Jesus was the Christ.

#### Acts 18:6

##### When the Jews rejected Paul, what did he do?

Paul told the Jews their blood was on their own head, and then he went to the Gentiles.

#### Acts 18:9

##### What encouragement did Paul receive from the Lord in Corinth?

The Lord told Paul to continue speaking, for no one would harm him there.

#### Acts 18:10

##### What encouragement did Paul receive from the Lord in Corinth?

The Lord told Paul to continue speaking, for no one would harm him there.

#### Acts 18:12

##### What accusation did the Jews bring to the governor against Paul?

The Jews accused Paul of teaching people to worship contrary to the law.

#### Acts 18:13

##### What accusation did the Jews bring to the governor against Paul?

The Jews accused Paul of teaching people to worship contrary to the law.

#### Acts 18:15

##### How did the governor respond to the accusations of the Jews against Paul?

The governor said that he did not wish to be a judge of matters involving the Jewish law.

#### Acts 18:18

##### Which husband and wife traveled with Paul to Ephesus?

Aquila and Priscilla traveled with Paul to Ephesus.

#### Acts 18:19

##### Which husband and wife traveled with Paul to Ephesus?

Aquila and Priscilla traveled with Paul to Ephesus.

#### Acts 18:22

##### What were the first two places Paul went after he left Ephesus?

After he left Ephesus, Paul traveled to Jerusalem and then to Antioch.

#### Acts 18:25

##### What teaching did Apollos understand accurately, and in what teaching did he need more instruction?

Apollos understood the things concerning Jesus accurately, but he knew only the baptism of John.

#### Acts 18:26

##### What did Priscilla and Aquila do for Apollos?

Priscilla and Aquila became friends with Apollos and explained to him the way of God more accurately.

#### Acts 18:28

##### What was Apollos able to do with his eloquent speech and knowledge of the Scriptures?

Apollos was able to publicly overwhelm the Jews, showing that Jesus was the Christ.

### Chapter 19

**1** It came about that while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul passed through the upper country and came to the city of Ephesus, and found certain disciples there. **2** Paul said to them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?"

They said to him, "No, we did not even hear about the Holy Spirit."

**3** Paul said, "Into what then were you baptized?"

They said, "Into John's baptism."

**4** So Paul replied, "John baptized with the baptism of repentance. He told the people that they should believe in the one who would come after him, that is, in Jesus." **5** When the people heard this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. **6** Then when Paul had laid his hands on them, the Holy Spirit came on them and they spoke in tongues and prophesied. **7** In all they were about twelve men.

**8** Paul went into the synagogue and spoke boldly for three months, reasoning and persuading them about the kingdom of God. **9** But when some Jews were hardened and disobedient, they began to speak evil of the Way before the crowd. So Paul left them and took the disciples with him, reasoning with them every day in the lecture hall of Tyrannus. **10** This continued for two years, so that all who lived in Asia heard the word of the Lord, both Jews and Greeks. **11** God was doing extraordinary miracles by the hands of Paul, **12** so that even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him were taken to the sick and their illnesses left them and the evil spirits came out of them.

**13** But there were Jewish exorcists traveling through the area. They called on the name of the Lord Jesus so they could have power over evil spirits when they said, "By the Jesus whom Paul proclaims, I command you to come out." **14** The Jewish high priest, whose name was Sceva, had seven sons who were doing this.

**15** An evil spirit answered them, "Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are you?" **16** The evil spirit in the man leaped on the exorcists and subdued them and beat them up. Then they fled out of that house naked and wounded. **17** This became known to all, both Jews and Greeks, who lived at Ephesus. They became very afraid, and the name of the Lord Jesus was honored. **18** Also, many of the believers came and confessed and gave a full account of the evil things they had done. **19** Many who practiced magic brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. **20** So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.

**21** Now after these things were completed, Paul decided in the Spirit to pass through Macedonia and Achaia on his way to Jerusalem; he said, "After I have been there, I must also see Rome." **22** Paul sent to Macedonia two of those who served him, Timothy and Erastus. But he himself stayed in Asia for a while.

**23** At about that time there was no small disturbance in Ephesus concerning the Way. **24** A certain silversmith named Demetrius, who made silver shrines of Artemis, brought in much business for the craftsmen. **25** So he gathered together the workmen of that occupation and said, "Men, you know that in this business we make much money. **26** You see and hear that, not only at Ephesus, but almost throughout all Asia, this Paul has persuaded and turned away many people. He is saying that gods made by hands are not gods. **27** Not only is there danger that our trade will be discredited, but also that the temple of the great goddess Artemis might be regarded as worthless, and her greatness would be brought to nothing, she whom all Asia and the world worship."

**28** When they heard this, they were filled with anger and cried out, saying, "Great is Artemis of the Ephesians." **29** The whole city was filled with confusion, and the people rushed with one mind into the theater. They had seized Paul's travel companions, Gaius and Aristarchus, who came from Macedonia. **30** Paul wanted to enter in among the crowd of people, but the disciples prevented him. **31** Also, some of the officials of the province of Asia who were his friends sent him a message pleading with him not to enter the theater. **32** Some people were shouting one thing, and some another, for the crowd was in confusion. Most of them did not even know why they had come together. **33** Some of the crowd advised Alexander, whom the Jews were pushing forward. So Alexander motioned with his hand, wanting to give a defense to the assembly. **34** But when they recognized that he was a Jew, they all cried out for about two hours with one voice, saying, "Great is Artemis of the Ephesians." **35** When the town clerk had quieted the crowd, he said, "You men of Ephesus, what man is there who does not know that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper of the great Artemis and of the image which fell down from heaven? **36** Seeing then that these things are undeniable, you ought to be quiet and do nothing rash. **37** For you have brought these men to this court who are neither robbers of temples nor blasphemers of our goddess. **38** Therefore, if Demetrius and the craftsmen who are with him have an accusation against anyone, the courts are open and there are proconsuls. Let them accuse one another. **39** But if you are seeking anything more, it should be resolved in the regular assembly. **40** For we are in danger of being accused of rioting today, and there is no cause we can give to justify this uproar." When he had said this, he dismissed the assembly. *[*[1](#fn-044-019-040-1)*]*

#### Footnotes

19:40 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-019-040-1)*]*Some Greek copies number this last sentence as verse 41.

### Acts 19 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Baptism

John baptized people to show that they were sorry for their sins. Jesus's followers baptized people who wanted to follow Jesus.

##### Temple of Diana

The temple of Diana was an important place in the city of Ephesus. Many people came to Ephesus to see this temple, and they bought statues of the goddess Diana while they were there. The people who sold statues of Diana were afraid that if people did not believe Diana was a real goddess, they would stop giving the sellers money for statues.

### Acts 19

#### 19:1-7

#### Who were these disciples?

[19:1]

Some scholars think these disciples were Christians. They were not only disciples of John the Baptist but they were also disciples of Jesus. They think that only people who followed and believed in Jesus were disciples in the book of Acts.

Some scholars think these disciples were not Christians. They did not have the Holy Spirit in them. Only people who had the Holy Spirit were Christians (see: John 3:5; Romans 8:9). They did not know about baptism in the name of Jesus.

Some scholars think people believed these people were disciples. However, Paul did think they really were disciples.

Some scholars think Apollos persuaded people to believe in Jesus before Priscilla and Aquila taught Apollos.

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Indwelling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/indwelling.md); [Baptize (Baptism)](../articles/baptize.md)

#### How did Paul ask these disciples when they believed?

[19:2]

Scholars have two ideas of how Paul asked these disciples when they believed.

Paul asked them if God gave them the Holy Spirit when they believed in Jesus. That is, God filled Christians with the Holy Spirit when they believed in Jesus. Christians knew they already had the Holy Spirit. However, these disciples did not know God gave the Holy Spirit (see: John 7:39).

Paul asked them if God gave them the Holy Spirit after they believed in Jesus. That is, Christians had the Holy Spirit when they believed in Jesus. However, God filled Christians with the Holy Spirit at a later time so that they could better serve God. The Jews and the people John the Baptist baptized knew about the Holy Spirit. Therefore, when they said they did not hear about the Holy Spirit they were thinking about God filling people with the Holy Spirit.

See: [Filling of the Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fillingholyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/fillingholyspirit.md)

#### Why did these disciples say they were baptized with John’s baptism?

[19:3]

These disciples said they were baptized by John the Baptist. However, they were not baptized as Chrsitians. This was a different baptism.

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md)

#### Why did Paul lay his hands on these disciples?

[19:6]

See: [Disciple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/disciple.md); [Disciple](../articles/disciple.md)

#### How did the Holy Spirit come on these disciples?

[19:6]

The Holy Spirit came on these disciples in the same way God filled disciples with the Holy Spirit on the Day of Pentecost and they spoke in “tongues”(γλῶσσα/g1100) (see: Acts 2:4) and prophesied.

See: [Speaking in Tongues](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/tongues.md); [Filling of the Holy Spirit](../articles/fillingholyspirit.md); [Pentecost](../articles/pentecost.md); [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md); [Speaking in Tongues](../articles/tongues.md)

#### 19:8-20

#### What was the “Way”?

[19:9]

In ancient Israel, people called Christians the “Way”(ὁδός/g3598). A “way” was a road or path from one place to another. It a metaphor of how a person lived their life. That is, when a person lived in a way that honored God, they were following the right way. Christians did more than believe the right things about God and Jesus. Christians also honored God in the way they lived (see: Acts 15:11; 18:25-26; John 14:6).

See: Acts 9:2; 22:4; 24:14,22

#### What was the “lecture hall of Tyrannus”?

[19:9]

The “lecture hall of Tyrannus” was a place where people taught others.Here, Paul was able to speak every day rather than just one day a week at the synagogue. Paul made tents in Ephesus (see: Acts 20:34) in the mornings and taught people at the hall of Tyrannus in the afternoons. Then in the evenings he served at houses (see: Acts 20:20).

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

See Map: Ephesus

#### How did all the Jews and Greeks in Asia hear the word of the Lord?

[19:10]

All the Jews and Greeks in Asia heard the word of the Lord when Christians went to cities in Asia and told people about Jesus. Many of these people went to Ephesus to do trade with others.

See: [Word of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/wordofgod.md)

See Map: Asia; Ephesus

#### What were “extraordinary miracles”?

[19:11]

See: [Miracle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/miracle.md)

#### Who was Sceva?

[19:14]

Some scholars think Sceva was a “chief” priest rather than the “high” priest. That is, he was not the high priest who stayed in Jerusalem but he was a priest who serve the high priests Annas and Caiphas. Other scholars think Sceva gave himself this title and Luke wrote what Sceva called himself this. He was not truly a priest in Israel. In ancient Israel, some people said they were priests when they were not priests.

See: [Priest (Priesthood)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/priest.md); [Priest (Priesthood)](../articles/priest.md)

#### Why did the evil spirit take control over the sons of Sceva?

[19:14]

The evil spirit took control over the sons of Sceva because they tried to do it themselves, rather than trusting in Jesus. They tried to force the evil spirit out the same way other Jewish leaders did except they also said the name of Jesus. This did not help them because they did not believe in Jesus.

See: [Demon](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/demon.md)

#### Why did many believers have magic books?

[19:19]

Many believers had magic books because they were recently became Christians. The ancient city of Ephesus had many magicians with books of formulas for casting spells. Many people did magic all their lives before they began to believe in Jesus. However, the failure of the sons of Sceva to force out an evil spirit made Christians know their magic formulas did not have the same power as Jesus. Therefore, they burned their magic books and honored the Lord Jesus.

See Map: Ephesus

#### How much was fifty-thousand pieces of silver?

[19:19]

Fifty-thousand pieces of silver was the same amount two-hundred workers or soldiers earned in a year.

#### 19:21-22

#### What were “these things”?

[19:21]

Some scholars “these things” were the two years Paul served the Christians in Ephesus. Other scholars think he was writing about the things in 19:13-19. Paul believed he finished serving the Christians in Ephesus. The church grew and became strong. It was time for Paul to serve in other places.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md)

#### How did Paul decide in the Spirit?

[19:21]

Some scholars think Paul decided in his own spirit to go through Macedonia and Achaia on his way to Jerusalem. More scholars think the Holy Spirit led Paul to travel. This was how the Holy Spirit led Paul.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

See Map: Macedonia; Achaia; Jerusalem

#### Why did Paul say he must see Rome?

[19:21]

Paul said he must see Rome because he knew God wanted him to go there. Later, God told this to Paul (see: Acts 23:11) and also an angel told this to Paul (see: Acts 27:23-24).

See: [Angel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/angel.md)

See Map: Rome

#### How did Paul go to Rome?

[19:21]

Paul did not go to Rome right away. He needed to visit other churches first. However, from here to the end of the book of Acts Paul’s purpose was to go to Rome.

See: [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/rome.md); [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](../articles/rome.md)

See Map: Rome

#### Why did Paul send Timothy and Erastus ahead to the churches in Macedonia and Achaia?

[19:22]

Paul sent Timothy and Erastus ahead to the churches in Macedonia and Achaia because he wanted them to prepare those churches for his visit.

#### 19:23-41

#### What was Artemis?

[19:24]

Artemis was a pagan fertility goddess with many breasts, or planets, or fruits, or bee or ostrich eggs, or castrated organs. The ancient Ephesians built a temple to Artemis. The temple was a bank and people put money there. The temple was destroyed and rebuilt many times. During the time of Paul, people made many small silver shrines of the temple. That is, they made little copies or models of the temple. Many people went to Ephesus and bought the silver shrines and used them to worship false gods in their houses. However, when many people no longer believed in idols because they believed in Jesus, then the people who made these idols did not make as much money.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md)

#### Why did Demetrius say Paul persuaded many people in Ephesus and most of Asia?

[19:24]

Demetrius said Paul persuaded many people in Ephesus and most of Asia because he wanted to gather people against Paul. However, Demetrius did not know he said Paul was very successful in persuading people to believe in Jesus.

See: Luke 13:18-20

#### Why did Luke write about Gaius and Aristarchus?

[19:29]

Luke wrote about Gaius and Aristarchus because he wanted people to know Paul persuaded many people to believe in Jesus when he served in Macedonia, especially in Thessalonica (see: Acts 20:4).

See Map: Macedonia; Thessalonica

#### Why did Luke write most of the people did not know why they gathered?

[19:32]

Luke wrote most of the people did not know why they gathered because he wanted people to laugh at the crowd. In ancient Greece, writers often wanted the people to laugh when people did stupid things.

#### Why did the Jews push forward Alexander to make a defense?

[19:33]

The Jews wanted Alexander to make a defense because they wanted the crowd not to think they were Christians. The people knew the Jews also did not believe in idols. The Jews wanted the people to know they had nothing to do with Paul or the Christians.

See: [Idolatry (Idol)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/idolatryidol.md)

#### What was the town clerk?

[19:35]

The town clerk was the highest official in the city. He kept the city and temple records. He reigned over city meetings. He also talked to Rome about the city.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md)

#### How did the town clerk know the Christians did not rob the temples or blaspheme the goddess?

[19:37]

The town clerk knew the Christians did not rob temples or blaspheme the goddess because Christians were in Ephesus for at least three years and the Christians did not do these things. The Christians preached about Jesus and fewer people bought silver shrines of the goddess.

See: [Preach (Preacher)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/preach.md); [Blaspheme (Blasphemy)](../articles/blaspheme.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md); [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md)

See Map: Ephesus

#### Acts 19:1

##### General Information:

The "upper country" was an area of Asia which today is part of modern-day Turkey to the north of Ephesus. Paul must have traveled by land around the top of the Aegean Sea in order to come to Ephesus (also in Turkey today), which is directly east of Corinth by sea.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul travels to Ephesus.

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### passed through

"traveled through"

#### Acts 19:2

##### receive the Holy Spirit

This means to have the Holy Spirit come upon them.

##### we did not even hear about the Holy Spirit

"we have not even heard about the Holy Spirit"

#### Acts 19:3

##### General Information:

The word "They" refers to the disciples ([Acts 19:1](./01.md)). The word "you" is plural.

##### Into what then were you baptized?

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "What kind of baptism did you receive?"

##### Into John's baptism

You can translate this as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "We were baptized into John's baptism" or "We received the kind of baptism about which John taught"

#### Acts 19:4

##### the baptism of repentance

You can translate the abstract noun "repentance" as the verb "repent." Alternate translation: "the baptism that people requested when they wanted to repent"

##### the one who would come

Here "the one" refers to Jesus.

##### come after him

This means to come after John the Baptist in time and not following after him physically.

#### Acts 19:5

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues staying in Ephesus.

##### When the people

Here "people" refers to the disciples in Ephesus who were talking with Paul (Acts 19:1),

##### they were baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they received baptism"

##### in the name of the Lord Jesus

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority. Alternate translation: "as believers in the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 19:6

##### General Information:

All instances of "them" and "they" refer to "the people" ([Acts 19:5](./05.md))

##### laid his hands on them

"placed his hands on them." He probably placed his hands on their shoulders or heads. Alternate translation: "placed his hands on their heads as he prayed"

##### they spoke in tongues and prophesied

Unlike in Acts 2:3-4, there are no details of who understood their messages.

#### Acts 19:7

##### General Information:

All instances of "them" and "they" refer to "the people" ([Acts 19:5](./05.md))

##### In all they were about twelve men

This tells how many men were baptized.

##### twelve men

"12 men"

#### Acts 19:8

##### Paul went into the synagogue and spoke boldly for three months

"Paul regularly attended the synagogue meetings for three months and spoke there boldly"

##### reasoning and persuading them

Probable meanings are 1) the words "reasoning" and "persuading" are a hendiadys that means "arguing persuasively" or 2) the words describe two separate activities, "giving them reasons to believe" and "convincing them"

##### about the kingdom of God

Here "kingdom" stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "about God's rule as king" or "about how God would show himself as king"

#### Acts 19:9

##### some Jews were hardened and disobedient

People who were stubbornly refusing to believe are spoken of as though they were becoming hard and unable to move. Alternate translation: "some Jews were stubborn and did not believe" or "some Jews stubbornly refused to accept and obey the message"

##### to speak evil of the Way before the crowd

What Christ wants people to believe is spoken of as though it were a road that a person travels. The phrase, "the Way," seems to have been a title for Christianity at the time. Alternate translation: "to speak evil about Christianity to the crowd" or "to speak to the crowd evil things about those who follow Christ and who obey his teaching about God" (See: and Acts 9:2)

##### to speak evil of

"to speak bad things about"

##### in the lecture hall of Tyrannus

"in the large room where Tyrannus had taught people"

##### Tyrannus

This is the name of a man.

#### Acts 19:10

##### all who lived in Asia heard the word of the Lord

Here "all" is a generalization that means very many people throughout Asia heard the gospel.

##### the word of the Lord

Here "word" stands for a message. Alternate translation: "the message about the Lord"

#### Acts 19:11

##### God was doing extraordinary miracles by the hands of Paul

Here "hands" stands for Paul's whole person. Alternate translation: "God was causing Paul to do extraordinary miracles" or "God was doing extraordinary miracles through Paul"

#### Acts 19:12

##### General Information:

Here the words "them" and "their" refer to those who were sick.

##### even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him were taken to the sick and

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when they took to sick people even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched Paul"

##### even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him

Possible meanings are 1) these were cloth items that Paul had touched or 2) these were cloth items that Paul had worn or used.

##### handkerchiefs

cloths worn around the head

##### aprons

clothing worn on the front of the body to protect the clothes of people

##### the sick

This refers to sick people. Alternate translation: "sick people" or "those who were sick"

##### their illnesses left them

"those who were sick became healthy"

#### Acts 19:13

##### General Information:

This is the beginning of another event that happened while Paul was in Ephesus. It is about Jewish exorcists.

##### exorcists

people who send evil spirits away from people or places

##### the name of the Lord Jesus

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority.

##### By the Jesus whom Paul proclaims

"Jesus" was a common name at the time, so these exorcists wanted people to know of whom they spoke.

##### By the Jesus

This stands for the power and authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "by the authority of Jesus" or "by the power of Jesus"

#### Acts 19:14

##### Sceva

This is the name of a man.

#### Acts 19:15

##### Jesus I know, and Paul I know

"I know Jesus and Paul" or "I know Jesus, and I know Paul"

##### but who are you?

The spirit asked this question to emphasize that the exorcists had no authority over evil spirits. Alternate translation: "but I do not know you!" or "but you have no authority over me!"

#### Acts 19:16

##### The evil spirit in the man leaped

This means that the evil spirit caused the man whom it was controlling to leap on the exorcists.

##### exorcists

This refers to people who send evil spirits from people or places. See how you translated this in Acts 19:13.

##### they fled ... naked

The exorcists fled with their clothes ripped off them.

#### Acts 19:17

##### the name of the Lord Jesus was honored

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they honored the name of the Lord Jesus" or "they considered the name of the Lord Jesus to be great"

##### the name

This stands for the power and authority of Jesus.

#### Acts 19:18

##### Connecting Statement:

This ends the story about the Jewish exorcists.

#### Acts 19:19

##### brought their books

"collected their books." The word "books" refers to scrolls on which magical incantations and formulas were written.

##### in the sight of everyone

"in front of everyone"

##### the value of them

"the value of the books" or "the value of the scrolls"

##### fifty thousand

"50,000"

##### pieces of silver

A "piece of silver" was the approximate daily wage for a common laborer.

#### Acts 19:20

##### So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways

"So because of these powerful deeds, more and more people heard the message about the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 19:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about going Jerusalem but does not leave Ephesus yet.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### these things were completed

"Paul completed the work that God had for him to do in Ephesus"

##### Paul decided in the Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) Paul decided with the help of the Holy Spirit or 2) Paul decided within his own spirit, which means he made up his mind.

##### Achaia

Achaia was the Roman province in which Corinth was located. It was the largest city in southern Greece and the capital of the province. See how you translated this in Acts 18:12.

##### I must also see Rome

"I must also travel to Rome"

#### Acts 19:22

##### Erastus

This is the name of a man.

##### But he himself stayed in Asia for a while

It is made explicit in the next few verses that Paul remains in Ephesus.

##### he himself

This is repeated for emphasis.

#### Acts 19:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about a riot that broke out while Paul was in Ephesus.

##### there was no small disturbance in Ephesus concerning the Way

This is a summary opening statement.

##### there was no small disturbance

"the people became very upset" See how you translated this in Acts 12:18

##### the Way

This was a term used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated this title in Acts 9:1.

#### Acts 19:24

##### General Information:

The writer introduces Demetrius to the story and gives background information about him. Ephesus had a large temple dedicated to the goddess Artemis, sometimes translated as "Diana." She was a false goddess of fertility.

##### A certain silversmith named Demetrius

The use of the words "a certain" introduces a new person in the story.

##### silversmith

a craftsman who works with silver metal to make statues and jewelry

##### named Demetrius

This is the name of a man. Demetrius was a silversmith in Ephesus who was against Paul and the local church.

##### brought in much business for the craftsmen

"enabled those who made the idols to make much money"

##### shrines of Artemis

These were probably carved or molten images of the temple of Artemis or of the part of the temple in which the statue of Artemis stood.

#### Acts 19:25

##### the workmen of that occupation

An occupation is a profession or job. Alternate translation: "others who did that kind of work"

#### Acts 19:26

##### Connecting Statement:

Demetrius continues to speak to the craftsmen.

##### You see and hear that

"You have come to know and understand that"

##### persuaded and turned away many people

Paul's stopping people from worshiping idols is spoken of as though Paul were turning the people in a different direction. Alternate translation: "persuaded many people and caused them to stop worshiping the local gods"

##### He is saying that gods made by hands are not gods

Here the word "hands" can refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: "He is saying that the idols that people make are not real gods"

#### Acts 19:27

##### that our trade will be discredited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that what Paul is saying will discredit our trade" or "that people will think that our trade is false"

##### our trade

This refers to their business of making and selling idols.

##### the temple of the great goddess Artemis might be regarded as worthless

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will think that the temple of the great goddess Artemis is worthless" or "people will think there is no benefit in going to the temple to worship the great goddess Artemis"

##### her greatness would be brought to nothing

"Her greatness" is a metonym for her reputation of being great. Being "brought to nothing" is a metaphor for becoming nothing or no longer existing. Alternate translation: "People would no longer recognize how great she is" or "She will lose her reputation of being great"

##### whom all Asia and the world worship

This was an exaggeration to show how popular the goddess Artemis was. Here the words "Asia" and "the world" refer to the people in the province of Asia and the known world. Alternate translation: "whom many people in Asia and in other parts of the world worship"

#### Acts 19:28

##### General Information:

Here "they" refers to the craftsmen who made the idols ([Acts 19:24-25](./24.md)).

##### they were filled with anger

This speaks of the craftsmen as though they were containers. Here "anger" is spoken of as if it were the contents that fill a container. Alternate translation: "they became very angry"

##### cried out

"shouted aloud" or "shouted loudly"

#### Acts 19:29

##### The whole city was filled with confusion

Here "city" refers to the people. The city is spoken of as if it were a container. And, "confusion" is spoken of as if it were the contents that filled the container. Alternate translation: "Then people all over the city became upset and started shouting"

##### the people rushed with one mind

This phrase translates a word that speaks of people who agree with each other and who work together to accomplish a common purpose.

##### into the theater

The Ephesus theater was used for public meetings and for entertainment such as plays and music. It was an outdoor semi-circular area with bench seats that could hold thousands of people.

##### Paul's travel companions

The men who had been with Paul.

##### Gaius and Aristarchus

These are names of men. Gaius and Aristarchus came from Macedonia but were working with Paul in Ephesus at this time.

#### Acts 19:30

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 19:31

##### officials of the province of Asia

Ephesus was in the Roman Empire's province of Asia.

##### enter the theater

The Ephesus theater was used for public meetings and for entertainment such as plays and music. It was an outdoor semi-circular area with bench seats that could hold thousands of people. See how you translated "theater" in Acts 19:29.

#### Acts 19:32

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 19:33

##### Alexander

This is the name of a man.

##### motioned with his hand

You can make explicit that Alexander was showing the crowd that he wanted them to be quiet. Alternate translation: "gestured to the crowd to be quiet"

##### to give a defense

It is not clear whom or what Alexander wanted to defend. If your language requires this information, it might be best to use a general phrase like "to explain what was going on."

#### Acts 19:34

##### with one voice

The shouting together of the people at the same time is spoken of as though they were speaking with one voice. Alternate translation: "in unison" or "together"

#### Acts 19:35

##### Connecting Statement:

The clerk of Ephesus speaks to quiet the crowd.

##### the town clerk

This refers to the town "writer" or "secretary."

##### what man is there who does not know that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper ... heaven?

The clerk asked this question to assure the crowd they were right and to comfort them. Alternate translation: "every man knows that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper ... heaven."

##### who does not know

The town clerk uses "not" to emphasize that all of the people knew this.

##### temple keeper

The Ephesian people maintained and guarded the temple of Artemis.

##### the image which fell down from heaven

Within the temple of Artemis was an image of the goddess. It had been fashioned from a meteorite which fell from the sky. People thought that this rock had come directly from Zeus, the ruler of the Greek gods (idols).

#### Acts 19:36

##### General Information:

The word "you" is plural.

##### Seeing then that these things are undeniable

"Since you know these things"

##### do nothing rash

"do not do anything before you have had time to think about it"

##### rash

without careful thought

#### Acts 19:37

##### General Information:

The word "you" is plural.

##### these men

The words "these men" refer to Gaius and Aristarchus, Paul's traveling companions (Acts 19:29).

#### Acts 19:38

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true." The town clerk had said in Acts 19:37 that Gaius and Aristarchus were not robbers or blasphemers.

##### have an accusation against anyone

The word "accusation" can be stated as the verb "accuse." Alternate translation: "want to accuse someone"

##### proconsuls

the Roman governor's representatives who made legal decisions in court

##### Let them accuse one another

This does not mean Demetrius and those with him will accuse each other. It means this is a place where people in general can speak their accusation. Alternate translation: "There people can accuse one another"

#### Acts 19:39

##### Connecting Statement:

The town clerk finishes speaking to the crowd.

##### But if you are seeking anything more

"But if you want to ask about anything more" or "But if you have something to discuss about other matters"

##### it should be resolved in the regular assembly

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "let us settle it in the regular assembly"

##### the regular assembly

This refers to a regular public gathering of citizens over which the county clerk presided.

#### Acts 19:40

##### For we are in danger of being accused of rioting today

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in danger of the Roman authorities accusing us of starting this riot today"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 19:2

##### What had the disciples that Paul met in Ephesus not heard about when they believed?

The disciples had not heard about the Holy Spirit.

#### Acts 19:4

##### John's baptism was a baptism of what?

John's baptism was a baptism of repentance.

##### On whom had John told the people to believe?

John had told the people to believe on the one who would come after him.

#### Acts 19:5

##### In what name did Paul then baptize the disciples from Ephesus?

Paul baptized them in the name of the Lord Jesus.

#### Acts 19:6

##### What happened to the men after they were baptized and Paul laid hands on them?

The Holy Spirit came on them and they spoke in other languages and prophesied.

#### Acts 19:9

##### What did Paul do when some of the Jews in Ephesus began to speak evil of the way of Christ?

Paul withdrew with the believers and began to speak in the lecture hall of Tyrannus.

#### Acts 19:12

##### What special miracles did God do by the hands of Paul?

When handkerchiefs and aprons were taken from Paul, they healed the sick and drove out evil spirits.

#### Acts 19:16

##### What happened when seven Jewish exorcists tried to cast out an evil spirit in the name of Jesus?

The evil spirit beat up the exorcists and they fled naked and wounded.

#### Acts 19:19

##### In Ephesus, what did many who practiced magical arts do?

Many who practiced magical arts in Ephesus burned their books in the sight of everyone.

#### Acts 19:21

##### Where did Paul say he would go after he went to Jerusalem?

Paul said he would go to Rome after he went to Jerusalem.

#### Acts 19:26

##### What concerns did the silversmith Demetrius express to the other workmen?

Demetrius was concerned that Paul was teaching people that there are no gods that are made with hands, and that the goddess Diana might be considered worthless.

#### Acts 19:28

##### How did the people react to Demetrius' concerns?

The people became angry and cried out saying that Diana was great, filling the whole city with confusion.

#### Acts 19:29

##### How did the people react to Demetrius' concerns?

The people became angry and cried out saying that Diana was great, filling the whole city with confusion.

#### Acts 19:30

##### Why did Paul not address the crowd, even though he wanted to?

The disciples and some local officials did not allow Paul to speak to the crowd.

#### Acts 19:31

##### Why did Paul not address the crowd, even though he wanted to?

The disciples and some local officials did not allow Paul to speak to the crowd.

#### Acts 19:38

##### What did the town clerk tell the people to do instead of rioting?

The town clerk told the people to bring their accusations to the courts.

#### Acts 19:40

##### In what danger did the town clerk say the people were?

The town clerk said that the people were in danger of being accused for being disorderly, and that there was no cause for an explanation.

### Chapter 20

**1** After the uproar was over, Paul sent for the disciples and after he encouraged them, he said farewell and left to go into Macedonia. **2** When he had gone through those regions and had spoken many words of encouragement to them, he came to Greece. **3** After he had spent three months there, a plot was formed against him by the Jews as he was about to sail for Syria, so he decided to return through Macedonia. **4** Accompanying him as far as Asia were Sopater son of Pyrrhus from Berea; Aristarchus and Secundus, both from the Thessalonian believers; Gaius of Derbe; Timothy; and Tychicus and Trophimus from Asia. **5** But these men had gone before us and were waiting for us at Troas. **6** We sailed away from Philippi after the days of unleavened bread, and in five days we came to them in Troas. There we stayed for seven days.

**7** On the first day of the week, when we were gathered together to break bread, Paul spoke to the believers. He was planning to leave the next day, so he prolonged his message until midnight. **8** There were many lamps in the upper room where we had come together. **9** In the window was sitting a young man named Eutychus, who fell into a deep sleep. As Paul spoke even longer, this young man, still sleeping, fell down from the third story and was picked up dead. **10** But Paul went down, stretched himself out on him, and embraced him. Then he said, "Do not be upset any more, for he is alive." **11** Then he went upstairs again and broke bread and ate. After talking with them much longer until dawn, he left. **12** They brought back the boy alive and were greatly comforted.

**13** We ourselves went ahead of Paul by ship and sailed away to Assos, where we planned to take Paul on board. This is what he himself desired to do, because he planned to go by land. **14** When he met us at Assos, we took him onto the ship and went to Mitylene. **15** Then we sailed from there and arrived the next day opposite the island of Chios. The following day we touched at the island of Samos, and the day after we came to the city of Miletus. **16** For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus, so that he would not spend any time in Asia; for he was hurrying to be in Jerusalem for the day of Pentecost, if it were at all possible for him to do so.

**17** From Miletus he sent men to Ephesus and called to himself the elders of the church. **18** When they had come to him, he said to them, "You yourselves know, from the first day that I set foot in Asia, how I always spent my time with you. **19** I kept serving the Lord with all lowliness of mind and with tears, and in trials that happened to me because of the plots of the Jews. **20** You know how I did not keep back from declaring to you anything that was useful, and how I taught you in public and from house to house, **21** testifying to both Jews and Greeks about repentance toward God and of faith in our Lord Jesus. **22** Now look, I am going to Jerusalem, compelled by the Spirit, not knowing what will happen to me there, **23** except that the Holy Spirit testifies to me in every city that chains and afflictions await me. **24** But I do not consider my life valuable to myself, if only I may finish the race and complete the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus, to testify to the gospel of the grace of God. **25** Now look, I know that you all, among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom, will see my face no more. **26** Therefore I testify to you this day, that I am innocent of the blood of any man. **27** For I did not hold back from declaring to you the whole will of God. **28** Therefore be careful about yourselves, and about all the flock of which the Holy Spirit has appointed you overseers. Be careful to shepherd the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood. *[*[1](#fn-044-020-028-1)*]***29** I know that after my departure, vicious wolves will come in among you and will not spare the flock. **30** Even from your own number men will arise and distort the truth to draw away the disciples after them. **31** So be on guard. Remember that for three years I never stopped warning each one of you night and day with tears. **32** Now I commit you to God and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up and to give you the inheritance among all those who are being sanctified. **33** I coveted no man's silver, gold, or clothing. **34** You yourselves know that these hands served my own needs and the needs of those who were with me. **35** In all things I gave you an example of how you should help the weak by laboring, and of how you should remember the words of the Lord Jesus, words that he himself said: 'It is more blessed to give than to receive.'"

**36** After he had spoken in this way, he knelt down and prayed with them all. **37** There was a lot of crying and they embraced Paul and kissed him. **38** They were in anguish most of all because of what he had said, that they would never see his face again. Then they escorted him to the ship.

#### Footnotes

20:28 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-020-028-1)*]*Instead of

### Acts 20 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

In this chapter Luke describes Paul's last visits to believers in the provinces of Macedonia and Asia before he went to Jerusalem.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Race

Paul spoke of living for Jesus as if he were running in a race. By this he meant that he needed to keep working hard even when things were difficult and he wanted to quit. (See: and discipline)

##### "Compelled by the Spirit"

Paul thought that the Holy Spirit wanted him to go to Jerusalem even if Paul did not want to go there. The same Holy Spirit told other people that when Paul arrived in Jerusalem, people would try to harm him.

### Acts 20

#### 20:1-6

#### How did Paul encourage the disciples?

[20:1]

Paul encouraged the disciples by telling them to continue trusting in God and to live in a way that honors God. Paul wrote these things in his letters when he encouraged Christians.

See: [Disciple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/disciple.md)

#### What was the plot the Jews formed against Paul?

[20:3]

The plot the Jews formed against Paul was a plan to do something evil to Paul or even kill him. Because of this, Paul changed his plans and went by land back to Macedonia rather than sail on a ship toward Syria.

See Map: Macedonia; Greece; Syria

#### Why did Luke write “us” in verse five?

[20:5]

Some scholars think Luke wrote “us” in verse five because Luke began to travel with Paul. Fewer scholars think “us” also included other Christians who traveled with Paul and Luke.

#### Why did the Christian men meet Paul and Luke at Troas?

[20:5]

Christian men met Paul and Luke at Troas because they sailed on a ship and arrived there before Paul did because he traveled on land. Scholars think these men had money to give to the poor Christians in Jerusalem (see: 1 Corinthians 16:1-4).

See Map: Berea; Thessalonia; Derbe; Asia; Troas

#### What were the days of unleavened bread?

[20:6]

The days of unleavened bread was the festival of Passover.

See: [Festival of Unleavened Bread](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/festivalbread.md); [Festival of Unleavened Bread](../articles/festivalbread.md)

#### 20:7-12

#### How did they break bread?

[20:7]

Some scholars think they broke bread by eating a meal (see: 2:46). Other scholars think they ate a meal and had the Lord’s supper (see: 1 Corinthians 11:23-26).

See: [Lord's Supper](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lordssupper.md)

#### Why did Luke write there were many lamps?

[20:8]

Some scholars think Luke wrote there were many lamps because the odor, heat, or smoke of the lamps took away the air to breath in the upper room. This made Eutychus sleep even though he sat near a window. Other scholars think the lamps gave much light so that Paul was able to continue speaking to the Christians all night.

#### How did Eutychus die?

[20:9]

Some scholars think Eutychus died from the fall. They say Paul prayed when he stretched himself and embraced Eutychus. Eutychus then became alive again. Luke was a doctor so he knew Eutychus was dead. Fewer scholars think they do not know if Eutychus really died. They say Eutychus did not wake up until later.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md)

#### 20:13-16

#### Why did Paul travel by land from Troas to Assos?

[20:13]

Luke did not write why Paul traveled by land from Troas to Assos. Scholars think Paul wanted time alone to talk to God. The Holy Spirit told Paul many times he will go to prison (see: 20:22-23). Paul was alone and God strengthened Paul to accept God’s will and serve Jesus until Paul died (see: 20:24).

See: Acts 9:15-16

See: [Will of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/willofgod.md); [Will of God](../articles/willofgod.md)

See Map: Troas; Assos

#### Why did Paul hurry to go to Jerusalem?

[20:16]

Paul hurried to go to Jerusalem to be there for the Day of Pentecost. Many Jewish Christians were in Jerusalem for Pentecost. Paul wanted the Gentile Christians from Macedonia and Greece to give the money to the poor Jewish Christians. He knew this would help join the Gentile and Jewish Christians together.

See: [Pentecost](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/pentecost.md)

See Map: Mitylene; Chios; Samos; Miletus; Ephesus; Asia; Jerusalem; Macedonia; Greece

#### 20:17-35

#### What were the “elders” in the church?

[20:17]

The “elders”(πρεσβύτερος/g4245) were the leaders in the church. They were also called “overseers”(ἐπίσκοπος/g1985) or “shepherds”(ποιμαίνω/g4165) (see: Acts 20:28).

See: [Shepherd](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/shepherd.md); [Overseer](../articles/overseer.md); [Shepherd](../articles/shepherd.md)

#### How did Paul do the things he wanted the church leaders to do?

[20:18, 20:19, 20:24]

There were many ways Paul did the things he wanted the church leaders to do (see: 1 Corinthians 4:6; 11:1; 1 Thessalonians 1:6).

He was with them all the time.

He served Jesus even when he was persecuted.

He did not think he was greater than other people (see: 2 Corinthians 12:7).

He was innocent of all blood. That is, Paul preached the gospel to all people and warned them to repent and believe in Jesus (see: Ezekiel 3:18,20; 33:6,8).

He warned them about people who did not teach the truth.

He did not want people to give him things.

He worked and did not rely on people to give him money.

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md) ; [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md)

#### How did the Holy Spirit testify to Paul?

[20:23]

The Holy Spirit testified to Paul through prophecy. That is Paul knew what the Holy Spirit wanted him to know through prophecies. Luke wrote about the prophecy in Caesarea because it was an example of prophecies in other cities (see: 21:10-11). The Holy Spirit was able to testify to Paul through visions (see: 16:9-10) or talking to Paul when he worshipped God or fasted (see: 13:2). Paul knew the Holy Spirit did not want to stop Paul from going to Jerusalem. The Holy Spirit told Paul about God’s plan for Paul to tell people about the gospel and God’s grace (see: 20:24).

See: [Grace](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/grace.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md); [Vision)](../articles/vision.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md); [Fasting](../articles/fasting.md); [Grace](../articles/grace.md)

See Map: Caearea ; Jerusalem

#### What was “the grace of God”?

[20:24]

See: [Grace](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/grace.md)

#### What was “the whole will of God”?

[20:27]

The “whole will of God” was the whole plan of God to save people. That is, it was God’s plan in the whole Bible. Jesus fulfilled all of God’s plan.

See: [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fulfill.md); [Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)](../articles/save.md); [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](../articles/fulfill.md)

#### What were “vicious wolves”?

[20:29]

When Paul spoke about “vicious wolves,” this was a metaphor. He was speaking about people from outside the church who came into the church and taught wrong things about God and Jesus. Paul called them “vicious” because they were wild and cruel. Jesus called them false prophets (see: Matthew 7:15).

See: [False Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/falseprophet.md); [False Prophet](../articles/falseprophet.md)

#### What was the “flock”?

[20:29]

The “flock” was a metaphor for the church. Wolves attacked the “flock” and killed sheep. False teachers will teach wrong things about God and Jesus until Jesus returns.

See: [Jesus' Return to Earth](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/jesusreturn.md); [Metaphor](../articles/metaphor.md); [Church](../articles/church.md); [False Teacher](../articles/falseteacher.md); [Jesus' Return to Earth](../articles/jesusreturn.md)

#### What was the inheritance?

[20:32]

See: [Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/inherit.md)

#### What was sanctification?

[20:32]

See: [Sanctify (Sanctification)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanctify.md)

#### Who were the “weak”?

[20:35]

The “weak”(ἀσθενέω/g0770) were people who were poor people or people who were sick or suffering.

#### Why did Paul repeat what Jesus said, “It is more blessed to give than receive”?

[20:35]

Paul repeated what Jesus said, “It is more blessed to give than to receive,” because Paul did not want anyone to think he preached to make money. Therefore, he worked to meet his own needs. Paul was talking about how he helped a new church. That is, Paul was at the church in Ephesus when it just started. However, after a church grew Paul wanted them to support the leaders in this church (see: Galatians 6:6; 1 Timothy 5:17-18). Also, Paul was an example to them of how to help the weak.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

See Map: Ephesus

#### 20:36-38

#### Why did Paul kneel down to pray?

[20:36]

Paul knelt down to pray because this was a time of strong feelings for Paul (see: 21:5; 9:40). Christians prayed standing or sitting.

See: [Pray (Prayer)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md)

#### Acts 20:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul leaves Ephesus and continues his travels.

##### After the uproar

"After the riot" or "Following the riot"

##### he said farewell

"he said goodbye"

#### Acts 20:2

##### had spoken many words of encouragement to them

"had greatly encouraged the believers" or "had said many things to encourage the believers"

#### Acts 20:3

##### After he had spent three months there

"After he had stayed there three months." This speaks about time as if it were something a person could spend.

##### a plot was formed against him by the Jews

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Jews formed a plot against him" or "the Jews formed a secret plan to harm him"

##### by the Jews

This means only some of the Jews. Alternate translation: "by some of the Jews"

##### as he was about to sail for Syria

"as he was ready to sail for Syria"

#### Acts 20:4

##### Accompanying him

"Traveling with him." Here the word "him" refers to Paul (Acts 20:1).

##### Sopater ... Pyrrhus ... Secundus ... Tychicus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Berea ... Derbe

These are names of places.

##### Aristarchus ... Gaius

These are names of men. See how you translated these names in Acts 19:29.

#### Acts 20:5

##### these men had gone before us

"these men had traveled ahead of us"

##### before us ... for us

Here "us" refers to the writer and Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### Troas

This is the name of a place.

#### Acts 20:6

##### General Information:

All instances of "we" refer to the writer and Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### the days of unleavened bread

This refers to the Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season. See how you translated this in Acts 12:3.

#### Acts 20:7

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: and [Acts 20:4-6](./04.md))

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about Paul's preaching in Troas and about what happened to Eutychus.

##### the next day

"when the sun came up again." If the writer was using the Jewish system of determining days, Paul was planning to travel after sunrise on "the first day of the week." If the writer was using the Greek system, Paul was planning to travel on the second day of the week.

##### to break bread

Bread was part of their meals. Possible meanings are 1) this refers simply to eating a meal together. Alternate translation: "to eat a meal" or 2) this refers to the meal they would eat together in order to remember Christ's death and resurrection. Alternate translation: "to eat the Lord's Supper"

##### he prolonged his message

"he continued to speak"

#### Acts 20:8

##### upper room

This may have been on the third floor of the house.

#### Acts 20:9

##### In the window

This was an opening in the wall with a ledge that was wide enough on which a person could sit.

##### Eutychus

This is the name of a man.

##### who fell into a deep sleep

This speaks about sleep as if it were a deep hole into which a person could fall. Alternate translation: "who slept soundly" or "who became more and more tired until finally he was sleeping soundly"

##### third story and was picked up dead

When they went down to check his condition, they saw he was dead. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "third story; and when they went to pick him up, they found that he was dead"

##### third story

This means two floors above the ground floor. If your culture does not count the ground floor, you may state this as the "second story."

#### Acts 20:10

##### on him ... embraced him ... he is alive

Here "him" and "he" refers to the young man, Eutychus.

##### he said

Here "he" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 20:11

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Paul.

##### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Paul's preaching at Troas and about Eutychus.

##### broke bread

Bread was a common food during meals. Here "broke bread" probably means that they shared a meal with more kinds of food than just bread.

##### he left

"he went away"

#### Acts 20:12

##### the boy

This refers to Eutychus (Acts 20:9). Possible meanings are 1) he was a young man over 14 years old or 2) he was a boy between 9 and 14 years old or 3) the word "boy" implies that he was a servant or a slave.

#### Acts 20:13

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer Luke, Paul, and his other companions continue their travels; however, Paul goes separately for part of the trip.

##### We ourselves went

The word "ourselves" adds emphasis and separates Luke and his traveling companions from Paul, who did not travel by boat.

##### sailed away to Assos

Assos is a town located directly below present day Behram in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

##### he himself desired

Here "he himself" refers to Paul. "Himself" is used to emphasize that this is what Paul wanted.

##### to go by land

"to travel on land"

#### Acts 20:14

##### he met ... took him

Here "he" and "him" refer to Paul.

##### met us ... we took

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader.

##### went to Mitylene

Mitylene is a town located in present day Mitilini in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea.

#### Acts 20:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Paul, the writer, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### opposite the island

"near the island" or "across from the island"

##### the island of Chios

Chios is an island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the Aegean Sea.

##### we touched at the island of Samos

"we arrived at the island of Samos"

##### island of Samos

Samos is an island south of Chios in the Aegean Sea off the coast of modern day Turkey.

##### the city of Miletus

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River.

#### Acts 20:16

##### For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus

Paul sailed south past the port city of Ephesus, further south in order to land at Miletus.

##### so that he would not spend any time

This speaks about "time" as if it were a commodity that a person could spend or use up. Alternate translation: "so that he would not have to remain for a time" or "so that he would not have a delay"

#### Acts 20:17

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Paul.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul calls the elders of the church of Ephesus and begins to speak to them.

##### Miletus

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River. See how you translated this in [Acts 20:15]

#### Acts 20:18

##### You yourselves

Here "yourselves" is used for emphasis.

##### I set foot in Asia

Here "foot" stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: "I entered Asia"

##### how I always spent my time with you

This speaks about time as if it were something that a person could spend. Alternate translation: "how I always conducted myself when I was with you"

#### Acts 20:19

##### lowliness of mind

This speaks about something humble as if it were low to the ground. The word "mind" stands for a person's inner attitude. Alternate translation: "humility" or "humbleness"

##### with tears

Here "tears" stands for feeling sad and crying. Alternate translation: "with crying as I served the Lord"

##### in trials that happened to me

"Trials" is an abstract noun. The meaning can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "while God was testing me"

##### of the Jews

This does not mean every Jew. This lets us know who plotted. Alternate translation: "of some of the Jews"

#### Acts 20:20

##### You know how I did not keep back from declaring to you

"You know how I was never silent, but I always declared to you"

##### from house to house

"I also taught when I was in your homes"

#### Acts 20:21

##### about repentance toward God and of faith in our Lord Jesus

The abstract nouns "repentance" and "faith" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "that they need to repent before God and believe in our Lord Jesus Christ"

##### our Lord Jesus

The word "our" refers to Paul and the elders to whom he is speaking.

#### Acts 20:22

##### General Information:

Here the word "I" refers to Paul.

##### compelled by the Spirit

They can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the Spirit compels me to go there"

##### not knowing what will happen to me there

"and I do not know what will happen to me there"

#### Acts 20:23

##### chains and afflictions await me

Here "chains" refers to Paul's being arrested and put in prison. Alternate translation: "people will put me in prison and cause me to suffer"

#### Acts 20:24

##### if only I may finish the race and complete the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus

This speaks about Paul's "race" and "ministry" as if they are objects that Jesus gives and Paul receives. Here "race" and "ministry" mean basically the same thing. Paul repeats this for emphasis. Alternate translation: "so that I may complete the work that the Lord Jesus has commanded me to do"

##### finish the race

Paul speaks about completing the work that Jesus has commanded him to do as if he were running a race.

##### to testify to the gospel of the grace of God

"to tell people the good news about God's grace." This is the ministry that Paul received from Jesus.

#### Acts 20:25

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to talk to the Ephesian elders (Acts 20:17).

##### Now look, I know

"Now, pay careful attention, because I know"

##### I know that you all

"I know that all of you"

##### among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom

Here "kingdom" stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "to whom I preached the message about God's reign as king" or "to whom I preached about how God will show himself as king"

##### will see my face no more

The word "face" here represents Paul's physical body. Alternate translation: "will not see me anymore on this earth"

#### Acts 20:26

##### I am innocent of the blood of any man

Here "blood" stands for a person's death, which, in this case, is not physical death but spiritual death when God declares a person guilty of sin. Paul had told them God's truth. Alternate translation: "I am not responsible for anyone whom God judges guilty of sin because they did not trust in Jesus"

##### any man

Here this means any person whether male or female. Alternate translation: "any person"

#### Acts 20:27

##### For I did not hold back from declaring to you

"For I did not keep silent and not tell you." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "For I certainly declared to you"

#### Acts 20:28

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true," referring to all that Paul has said so far in his speech about his leaving them.

##### the flock of which the Holy Spirit has appointed you overseers. Be careful to shepherd the church of God

Believers are likened to a "flock" of sheep here. Church leaders are entrusted by God with the care of the community of believers just as a shepherd would care for his flock of sheep and protect them from wolves. Alternate translation: "the group of believers the Holy spirit has entrusted to you. Be sure to take care of the church of God"

##### the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood

The shedding of the blood of Christ here is likened to a payment to God for our sins. Alternate translation: "the people Christ saved from their sins by shedding his blood on the cross"

##### his own blood

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death.

#### Acts 20:29

##### vicious wolves will come in among you and will not spare the flock

This is a picture of people who teach false doctrine and who harm the community of believers as though they were wolves that eat the sheep of the flock. Alternate translation: "many enemies will come among you and try to harm the community of believers"

#### Acts 20:30

##### to draw away the disciples after them

A false teacher convincing believers to start believing his false teaching is spoken of as if he were leading sheep away from the flock to follow him. Alternate translation: "in order to convince people who are disciples of Christ to become his disciples instead"

#### Acts 20:31

##### be on guard. Remember

"be on guard and remember" or "be on guard as you remember"

##### be on guard

"be awake and alert" or "watch out." Christian leaders being alert about anyone that may harm the community of believers is spoken of as if they were guards in an army watching out for the enemy army.

##### Remember that

"Continue to remember that" or "Do not forget that"

##### for three years I never stopped warning ... night and day

Paul taught them over the space of three years, but not necessarily every day for three years.

##### I never stopped warning ... you

This does not mean that the only words he spoke were words of warning. Rather, Paul is using hyperbole to remind them that he had told them often that evil men would try to deceive them. Alternate translation: "I warned ... you as often as I could"

##### with tears

Here "tears" refers to Paul's crying because of the strong emotion of concern he felt while he was warning the people.

#### Acts 20:32

##### I commit you to God and to the word of his grace

Here "word" stands for a message. Alternate translation: "I ask God to take care of you and to help you to keep believing the message I spoke to you about his grace"

##### which is able to build you up

A person's faith becoming stronger is spoken of as if the person were a wall and someone were building him higher and stronger. Alternate translation: "which is able to make become stronger and stronger in your faith"

##### to give you the inheritance

This speaks about the "word of his grace" as if the word itself would give the inheritance to believers. Alternate translation: "God will give you the inheritance"

##### the inheritance

The blessings that God gives believers are spoken of as if they were money or property that a child inherits from his father.

#### Acts 20:33

##### I coveted no man's silver

"I did not desire someone's silver" or "I did not want for myself anyone's silver"

##### man's silver, gold, or clothing

Clothing was considered a treasure; the more you had, the richer you were.

#### Acts 20:34

##### You yourselves

The word "yourselves" is used here to add emphasis.

##### these hands served my own needs

The word "hands" here represents the entire person. Alternate translation: "I worked to earn money and pay for my own expenses"

#### Acts 20:35

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes speaking to the elders of the church of Ephesus; he began to speak them in Acts 20:18.

##### you should help the weak by laboring

"you should work so as to have money to help people who cannot earn it for themselves"

##### the weak

You can state this nominal adjective as an adjective. Alternate translation: "weak persons" or "those who are weak"

##### weak

"sick"

##### the words of the Lord Jesus

Here "words" refers to what Jesus has said.

##### It is more blessed to give than to receive

This means a person receives the favor of God and experiences more joy when he gives to other people rather than always receiving from other people.

#### Acts 20:36

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul ends his time with the elders of the church of Ephesus by praying with them.

##### he knelt down and prayed

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. It was a sign of humility before God.

#### Acts 20:37

##### embraced Paul

"hugged him closely" or "put their arms around him"

##### kissed him

Kissing someone on the cheek is an expression of brotherly or friendly love in the Middle East.

#### Acts 20:38

##### they would never see his face again

The word "face" here represents Paul's physical body. Alternate translation: "they would not see him anymore on this earth"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 20:3

##### What caused Paul to change his plans and return through Macedonia instead of sailing for Syria?

Paul changed his plans because the Jews had formed a plot against him as he was about to sail for Syria.

#### Acts 20:7

##### On what day of the week did Paul and the believers gather to break bread?

On the first day of the week Paul and the believers gathered to break bread.

#### Acts 20:9

##### What happened to the young man who fell out of the window while Paul was speaking?

The young man fell from the third story and was picked up dead, but Paul stretched himself out on him and he came back to life.

#### Acts 20:10

##### What happened to the young man who fell out of the window while Paul was speaking?

The young man fell from the third story and was picked up dead, but Paul stretched himself out on him and he came back to life.

#### Acts 20:16

##### Why was Paul hurrying toward Jerusalem?

Paul was hurrying toward Jerusalem to be there for the day of Pentecost.

#### Acts 20:18

##### About what did Paul say he warned both Jews and Greeks since he set foot in Asia?

Paul said he warned both Jews and Greeks about repentance toward God and faith in the Lord Jesus.

#### Acts 20:20

##### About what did Paul say he warned both Jews and Greeks since he set foot in Asia?

Paul said he warned both Jews and Greeks about repentance toward God and faith in the Lord Jesus.

#### Acts 20:23

##### About what was the Holy Spirit witnessing to Paul in every city as he traveled toward Jerusalem?

The Holy Spirit was witnessing to Paul that chains and sufferings awaited him.

#### Acts 20:24

##### What ministry had Paul received from the Lord Jesus?

Paul's ministry was to bear witness to the gospel of the grace of God.

#### Acts 20:27

##### Why did Paul say he was innocent of the blood of any man?

Paul said he was innocent of their blood because he had declared to them the whole will of God.

#### Acts 20:28

##### What did Paul command the Ephesian elders to do carefully after his departure?

Paul commanded the elders to shepherd the flock carefully.

#### Acts 20:30

##### What did Paul say would happen among the Ephesian elders after his departure?

Paul said that some of the elders would say corrupt things in order to draw away disciples after themselves.

#### Acts 20:32

##### To whom did Paul entrust the Ephesian elders?

Paul entrusted the Ephesian elders to God.

#### Acts 20:34

##### What example did Paul set for the Ephesians regarding work?

Paul worked for his own needs and the needs of those with him, and helped the weak.

#### Acts 20:35

##### What example did Paul set for the Ephesians regarding work?

Paul worked for his own needs and the needs of those with him, and helped the weak.

#### Acts 20:38

##### What made the Ephesian elders sad most of all?

The Ephesian elders were sad most of all because Paul had said they would never see his face again.

### Chapter 21

**1** When we had gone away from them and set sail, we took a straight course to the city of Cos, and the next day to the city of Rhodes, and from there to the city of Patara. **2** When we found a ship crossing over to Phoenicia, we went aboard and set sail. **3** After sighting Cyprus, leaving it on the left side of the boat, we sailed on to Syria and landed at Tyre, where the ship was to unload its cargo. **4** After we found the disciples, we stayed there seven days. Through the Spirit they kept urging Paul not to go to Jerusalem. **5** When our days there were over, we left and went on our way, and they all, with their wives and children, accompanied us out of the city. Then we knelt down on the beach, prayed, **6** and said farewell to each other. Then we went on board the ship, and they returned home.

**7** When we had finished the voyage from Tyre, we arrived at Ptolemais. There we greeted the brothers and stayed with them for one day. **8** On the next day we left and went to Caesarea. We entered the house of Philip, the evangelist, who was one of the seven, and we stayed with him. **9** Now this man had four virgin daughters who prophesied.

**10** As we stayed there for some days, a certain prophet named Agabus came down from Judea. **11** He came to us and took Paul's belt. With it he tied his own feet and hands and said, "Thus says the Holy Spirit, 'This is how the Jews in Jerusalem will tie up the man who owns this belt, and they will hand him over into the hands of the Gentiles.'" **12** When we heard these things, both we and the people who lived in that place pleaded with Paul not to go up to Jerusalem.

**13** Then Paul answered, "What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart? For I am ready, not only to be tied up, but also to die in Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus."

**14** Since Paul would not be persuaded, we remained silent and then we said, "May the will of the Lord be done."

**15** After these days, we picked up our bags and went up to Jerusalem. **16** There also went with us some of the disciples from Caesarea. They brought with them a man named Mnason, a man from Cyprus, an early disciple, with whom we would stay.

**17** When we had arrived in Jerusalem, the brothers welcomed us gladly. **18** The next day Paul went with us to James, and all the elders were present. **19** When he had greeted them, he reported one by one the things that God had done among the Gentiles through his ministry. **20** When they heard it, they glorified God, and they said to him, "You see, brother, how many thousands have believed among the Jews. They are all zealous to keep the law. **21** They have been told about you, that you teach all the Jews who live among the Gentiles to abandon Moses, and that you tell them not to circumcise their children, and not to walk according the traditional ways. **22** What should we do? They will certainly hear that you have come. **23** So do what we say to you. We have four men who made a vow. **24** Take these men and purify yourself with them, and pay their expenses for them, so that they may shave their heads. So everyone will know that the things they have been told about you are false. They will learn that you also live correctly, obeying the law. **25** But concerning the Gentiles who have believed, we wrote about our decision that they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, from blood, from what is strangled, and from sexual immorality." **26** Then Paul took the men, and the next day he purified himself along with them. Then they went into the temple, giving notice when the days of purification would be fulfilled and the offering would be presented for each of them.

**27** When the seven days were almost finished, some Jews from Asia, seeing Paul in the temple, stirred up the whole crowd and laid hands on him. **28** They were shouting, "Men of Israel, help us. This is the man who teaches all men everywhere things that are against the people, the law, and this place. Besides, he has also brought Greeks into the temple and has defiled this holy place." **29** For they had previously seen Trophimus the Ephesian with him in the city, and they thought that Paul had brought him into the temple. **30** All the city was excited, and the people ran together and laid hold of Paul. They dragged him out of the temple, and the doors were immediately shut. **31** As they were trying to kill him, news came up to the chief captain of the company of soldiers, that all Jerusalem was in an uproar. **32** Right away he took soldiers and centurions and ran down to the crowd. When the people saw the chief captain and the soldiers, they stopped beating Paul. **33** Then the chief captain approached and laid hold of Paul, and commanded him to be bound with two chains. Then he asked who he was and what he had done. **34** Some in the crowd were shouting one thing and others another. Since the captain could not learn the truth because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress. **35** When he came to the steps, he was carried by the soldiers because of the crowd's violence. **36** For the crowd of people followed after and kept shouting out, "Away with him!"

**37** As Paul was about to be brought into the fortress, he said to the chief captain, "Is it permitted for me to say something to you?"

The captain said, "Do you know Greek? **38** Are you not then the Egyptian who some time ago started a rebellion and led the four thousand men of the 'Assassins' out into the wilderness?"

**39** Paul said, "I am a Jew, from the city of Tarsus in Cilicia. I am a citizen of no unimportant city. I beg you, allow me to speak to the people."

**40** When the captain had given him permission, Paul stood on the steps and motioned with the hand to the people. When there was a deep silence, he spoke to them in the Hebrew language. He said,

### Acts 21 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Acts 21:1-19 describes Paul's journey to Jerusalem. After he arrived in Jerusalem, the believers there told him that the Jews wanted to harm him and what he should do so they would not harm him (verses 20-26). Even though Paul did what the believers told him to do, the Jews tried to kill him. The Romans rescued him and gave him a chance to speak to the Jews.

The last verse of the chapter ends with an incomplete sentence. Most translations leave the sentence incomplete, as the ULB does.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "They are all determined to keep the law"

The Jews in Jerusalem were following the law of Moses. Even those who were following Jesus still kept the law. Both groups thought that Paul had been telling Jews in Greece not to keep the law. But it was only the Gentiles to whom Paul was saying that.

##### Nazarite vow

The vow that Paul and his three friends made was probably a Nazarite vow, because they shaved their heads ([Acts 21:23](../../act/21/23.md)).

##### Gentiles in the temple

The Jews accused Paul of bringing a Gentile man into a part of the temple into which God only allowed Jews to go. They thought that God wanted them to punish Paul by killing him. (See: holy)

##### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens.

### Acts 21

#### 21:1-6

#### Why did Paul and his friends find the disciples at Tyre?

[21:3]

Paul and his friends found the disciples at Tyre because they did not know where the disciples were in Tyre. When Paul and his friends found the disciples they were in Tyre for seven days while merchants unloaded cargo from the ship.

See: [Disciple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/disciple.md)

See Map: Cos; Rhodes; Patara; Phoenicia; Cyprus; Syria; Tyre

#### Why did the disciples at Tyre urge Paul not to go to Jerusalem?

[21:4]

The disciples at Tyre did not want Paul not to go to Jerusalem because they did not want Paul to suffer and go to prison in Jerusalem. However, the Holy Spirit was sending Paul to Jerusalem to suffer (see: Acts 19:21; 20:22-23). The disciples at Tyre did not tell Paul what the Holy Spirit told them to say when they told Paul not to go. Instead, they told Paul to not go because the Holy Spirit said Paul will suffer in Jerusalem. Luke wrote more about this when the same thing happened in Caesarea (see: Acts 21:12).

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

See Map: Tyre; Jerusalem; Caesarea

#### 21:7-14

#### How was Philip an “evangelist”?

[21:8]

Scholars have several ideas of how Philip was an “evangelist”(εὐαγγελιστής/2099). He was not the same Philip who was an apostle (see: Luke 6:13-14).

He helped people to believe in Jesus in Samaria and Judea.

God gave him the gift of “evangelist.”

He started the church at Caesarea.

See: [Gospel](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gospel.md); [Gifts of the Holy Spirit](../articles/giftsholyspirit.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md)

See Map: Samaria; Judea; Ptolemais; Caesarea

#### Why did Paul and his friends stay for several days in Philip’s house?

[21:8]

Scholars say there were two reasons why Paul and his friends stayed in Philip’s house for several days.

Philip’s daughters prophesied to Paul and encouraged him.

Philip told Luke about the Christians in Jerusalem (see: 6:5).

See: [Prophecy (Prophesy)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophecy.md)

#### Why did Luke write Philip’s daughters were virgins?

[21:9] Luke wrote Philip’s daughters were virgins because they were under sixteen years of age and not married. Some ancient pagan leaders wanted people who served in their temples to be virgins. However, Christians did not have to be virgins to prophesy or serve (see: 1 Corinthians 9:5).

See: [Serve](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/artcles/serve.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Serve](../artcles/serve.md)

#### How did God did fulfill Agabus’ prophecy?

[21:10, 21:11]

Some scholars think God did not fulfill all of Agabus’ prophecy because the Romans in Jerusalem tied Paul’s feet and hands. Other scholars think God fulfilled all of Agabus’ prophecy because the Jews in Jerusalem accused Paul of doing evil things and made the Romans tie his feet and hands.

See: Acts 23:27

See: [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fulfill.md) ; [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](../articles/fulfill.md)

#### Why did the Holy Spirit give prophecies to say Paul will suffer in Jerusalem?

[21:11]

The Holy Spirit gave prophecies to say Paul will suffer in Jerusalem. The Jewish enemies of Paul will not be able to say God judged Paul because he preached a wrong gospel. These Jews were wrong to think that Gentiles need to become Jews before they became Christians (see: Acts 15:1-29). The prophecies stopped people from thinking wrong things about how Paul served God. The church continued to grow after Paul went to Jerusalem.

See: [Church](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/church.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Preach (Preacher)](../articles/preach.md); [Gospel](../articles/gospel.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Church](../articles/church.md)

See Map: Jerusalem

#### Why did the Christians say, “May the will of the Lord be done”?

[21:14]

The Christian said, “May the will of the Lord be done,” because they finally accepted God’s plan for Paul to suffer in Jerusalem. They agreed with Paul and prayed for the things to happen as God said (see: Luke 2:42).

See: [Pray (Prayer)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md); [Will of God](../articles/willofgod.md); [Pray (Prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md)

#### 21:15-26

#### Why did Luke write they went up to Jerusalem?

[21:15]

Luke wrote they went up to Jerusalem because Jerusalem was on a mountain. Even when people traveled from the north to Jerusalem the Bible wrote they went up to Jerusalem.

See Map: Jerusalem; Caesarea; Cyprus

#### Who was this James?

[21:18]

This James was the brother of Jesus. He was the leader of the church in Jerusalem.

See: [Family of Jesus](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyjesus.md); [Family of Jesus](../articles/familyjesus.md)

#### Why did not any of the other apostles meet Paul?

[21:18]

None of the other apostles met Paul because none of them were in Jerusalem. All of the other apostles left Jerusalem to go and tell people about Jesus.

See: [Apostle](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/apostle.md)

#### When did the things God did for the Gentiles happen?

[21:19]

The things God did for the Gentiles happened after Paul visited Jerusalem (see: Acts 15).This was during Paul’s second and third missionary journeys.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md)

#### What vow did the four men make?

[21:23]

The four men vowed a Nazirite Vow (see: Numbers 6:14-20). At the end of the time of the vow, the person who made the vow shaved their heads and offered sacrifices. James and the leaders did not ask Paul to take the Nazirite Vow himself. However, they thought if Paul paid for the sacrifices of the four men, then the Jews will know it was wrong to say Paul did not keep the law of Moses.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Offer (Offering)](../articles/offer.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### What did Luke write in verse 25?

[21:25]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that the Gentiles do not do these things Older and more copies of the Greek New Testament do not say this. Scholars do not think Luke wrote these words.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/differencesbible.md)

#### Why did James repeat the letter from Acts 15?

[21:25]

James repeated the letter from Acts 15 because he wanted everyone to know the church in Jerusalem did not change what they thought about Gentiles Christians. That is, even though the Jerusalem church asked Paul to pay for sacrifices in the Law of Moses, they still did not ask Gentile Christians to become Jews.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Offer (Offering)](../articles/offer.md); [Sacrifice](../articles/sacrifice.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

See Map: Jerusalem

#### 21:27-36

#### How did the Jews from Asia lay hands on Paul?

[21:27]

The Jews from Asia laid hands on Paul. That is, they tried to hurt or kill Paul.

See Map: Asia

#### How did the Jews from Asia say wrong things about Paul?

[21:28]

The Jews from Asia lied about Paul by saying Paul spoke against the Jews, the Law of Moses, and the temple. They also lied and said that Paul brought a Gentile into a part of the temple where Gentiles were not supposed to go.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md); [Temple](../articles/temple.md)

See Map: Asia

#### Why did they close the doors of the temple?

[21:30]

They closed the doors of the temple so the crowd in an uproar will not defile the temple. If the crowd killed Paul in the temple it will defile the temple.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md)

#### Who was “the chief captain of the cohort”?

[21:31]

“The chief captain of the cohort” was a Roman officer. He commanded between six hundred and one thousand Roman soldiers.

#### Where was the fortress?

[21:34]

The fortress was a tower northwest of the temple. It was called the Antonia tower. A person was able to see the temple from the tower. It was used to protect the temple.

See: [Temple](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/temple.md)

#### Why did the crowd shout, “Away with him!”?

[21:36]

Some scholars think the crowd shouted, “Away with him!” because they wanted to kill Paul. Fewer scholars think they wanted to take Paul away and judge him.

See: 22:22; Luke 23:18

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md)

#### 21:37-40

#### Why did the captain ask Paul if he was the Egyptian who started a rebellion?

[21:38]

The captain asked Paul if he was the Egyptian who started a rebellion because Paul spoke Greek. Many people in Egypt spoke Greek. Paul defended himself by saying he was a Jew from the city of Tarsus. That gave him Roman citizenship.

See: [Citizen](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/citizen.md)

See Map: Egypt; Tarsus

#### Who were the “Assassins”?

[21:38]

The “Assassins” were a group of certain people who fought against the Romans. They carried small knives and they killed people in crowds at festivals.

#### Why was Tarsus an important city?

[21:39]

Tarsus was an important city because many people lived there and they ruled themselves. Many people in Tarsus were rich.

#### How did Paul speak in the Hebrew language?

[21:40]

Some scholars think Paul spoke Aramaic. Aramaic was the language the Jews spoke when they lived in Babylon. At this time, the people in Israel spoke Aramiac. Only certain Jewish teachers read or spoke Hebrew. Fewer scholars think the Jews in Jerusalem read the Hebrew Old Testament.

See: [Babylon](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/babylon.md); [Babylon](../articles/babylon.md)

See Map: Babylon

#### Acts 21:1

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

The writer Luke, Paul, and his companions continue their travels.

##### we took a straight course to the city of Cos

"we went straight to the city of Cos" or "we went directly to the city of Cos"

##### city of Cos

Cos is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region.

##### city of Rhodes

Rhodes is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region south of Cos and northeast of Crete.

##### city of Patara

Patara is a city on the southwest coast of modern day Turkey south of the Aegean Sea in the Mediterranean Sea.

#### Acts 21:2

##### When we found a ship crossing over to Phoenicia

Here "a ship crossing over" stands for the crew that would sail the ship. Alternate translation: "When we found a ship with a crew sailing over to Phoenicia"

##### a ship crossing over

Here "crossing" does not mean it was presently crossing but that it would be crossing to Phoenicia soon. Alternate translation: "a ship that would be going across the water" or "a ship that would be going"

#### Acts 21:3

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### Cyprus, leaving it on the left side of the boat

The left is the "port" side of a boat. Here this means they sailed south of Cyprus. Alternate translation: "Cyprus, sailing south of it"

##### where the ship was to unload its cargo

Here "ship" stands for the crew that was sailing the ship. Alternate translation: "the crew would unload the cargo from the ship"

#### Acts 21:4

##### Through the Spirit they kept urging Paul not to go to Jerusalem

"The Spirit caused them to urge Paul again and again not to go to Jerusalem." The Spirit may have revealed to them that Paul would suffer in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Because the Spirit had told them that Paul would suffer in Jerusalem, they urged him again and again not to go there"

#### Acts 21:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "They" refers to the believers from Tyre.

##### When our days there were over

"When the seven days were over" or "When it was time to leave"

##### knelt down on the beach, prayed

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. This was a sign of humility before God.

#### Acts 21:6

##### said farewell to each other

"said goodbye to one another"

#### Acts 21:7

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Luke, Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### we arrived at Ptolemais

Ptolemais was a city south of Tyre, Lebanon. Ptolemais is modern day Acre, Israel.

##### the brothers

"fellow believers"

#### Acts 21:8

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins Paul's time in Caesarea.

##### one of the seven

The "seven" refers to the men chosen to distribute food and aid to the widows in Acts 6:5.

##### evangelist

a person who tells people good news

#### Acts 21:9

##### this man

"Philip" from verse 8.

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about Philip and his daughters.

##### four virgin daughters who prophesied

"four virgin daughters who regularly received and passed along messages from God"

#### Acts 21:10

##### General Information:

Here the words "we" and "us" refers to Luke, Paul, and those with them, but not to the reader.

##### a certain prophet named Agabus

This introduces a new person in the story.

##### named Agabus

Agabus was a man from Judea.

#### Acts 21:11

##### Connecting Statement:

This tells about a prophecy made about Paul in Caesarea by the prophet Agabus.

##### took Paul's belt

"removed Paul's belt from Paul's waist"

##### Thus says the Holy Spirit, 'This is how the Jews in Jerusalem will tie up ... of the Gentiles.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. The inner quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit says that this will be how the Jews in Jerusalem will tie up ... of the Gentiles."

##### the Jews

This does not mean all the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" or "some of the Jews"

##### hand him over

"deliver him"

##### into the hands of the Gentiles

The word "hands" here represents control. Alternate translation: "into the legal custody of the Gentiles" or "to the Gentiles"

##### the Gentiles

This stands for the authorities among the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "the Gentile authorities"

#### Acts 21:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Luke and the other believers but does not include the reader.

#### Acts 21:13

##### What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart?

Paul asks this question to show the believers they should stop trying to persuade him. Alternate translation: "Stop what you are doing. Your weeping is breaking my heart."

##### breaking my heart

This is a metaphor for making someone sad or discouraging them. Here "heart" stands for a person's emotions. Alternate translation: "discouraging me" or "making me very sad"

##### not only to be tied up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "not only for them to tie me up"

##### for the name of the Lord Jesus

Here "name" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "for the sake of the Lord Jesus" or "because I believe in the Lord Jesus"

#### Acts 21:14

##### Paul would not be persuaded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Paul would not allow us to to persuade him" or "we were unable to persuade Paul"

##### persuaded

You may need to make explicit what they could not persuade Paul not to do. Alternate translation: "persuaded not to go up to Jerusalem"

##### May the will of the Lord be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everything happen as the Lord has planned it"

#### Acts 21:15

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, and not to the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul's time in Caesarea.

#### Acts 21:16

##### They brought with them a man

"Among them was a man"

##### Mnason, a man from Cyprus

Mnason was a man from the island of Cyprus.

##### an early disciple

This means Mnason was one of the first to believe in Jesus.

#### Acts 21:17

##### General Information:

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, and not to the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and his companions arrive in Jerusalem.

##### the brothers welcomed us

Here "brothers" refers to the believers in Jerusalem, whether male or female. Alternate translation: "the fellow believers welcomed us"

#### Acts 21:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 21:19

##### General Information:

Here the words "he" and "his" refer to Paul. The word "them" refers to the elders.

##### he reported one by one

"he gave a detailed account of all"

#### Acts 21:20

##### Connecting Statement:

The elders in Jerusalem begin their response to Paul.

##### they heard ... they glorified ... they said to him

Here the word "they" refers to James and the elders. The word "him" refers to Paul.

##### brother

Here "brother" means "fellow believer."

##### They are

The word "they" refers to Jewish believers who wanted all believing Jews to keep the Jewish laws and customs.

##### the law

this phrase here refers to the law of Moses

#### Acts 21:21

##### They have been told about you ... not to walk according the traditional ways

Apparently here there are some Jews that are distorting what Paul is teaching. He does not discourage the Jews from obeying the law of Moses. His message is that circumcision and the other customs are not necessary for Jesus to save them. You can make explicit that the leaders of the Jewish believers in Jerusalem knew that Paul was teaching God's true message.

##### They have been told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People have told the Jewish believers"

##### to abandon Moses

Here "Moses" stands for the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "to stop obeying the laws that Moses gave us"

##### not to walk according the traditional ways

A person who obeys the traditions and customs is spoken of as if he were walking on a path. Alternate translation: "not to obey the old customs" or "not to practice the old customs"

##### the traditional ways

"the usual Jewish customs"

#### Acts 21:22

##### we do

Here the word "we" refers to James and the elders

##### They will

The word "They" refers to the Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted to teach Jewish believers that they could still follow the laws of Moses ([Acts 21:20-21](./20.md)).

##### you have come

The word "you" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 21:23

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to James and the elders

##### four men who made a vow

"four men who made a promise to God." This was the kind of vow where a person would not drink alcohol or cut his hair until the end of a set period of time.

#### Acts 21:24

##### Connecting Statement:

James and the elders continue speaking to Paul.

##### Take these men and purify yourself with them

They had to make themselves ritually pure so they could worship in the temple.

##### pay their expenses for them

"pay for what they will need." The expenses would go toward buying a male and female lamb, a ram, and grain and drink offerings.

##### they may shave their heads

This was a sign that the person had completed what they promised God they would do.

##### the things they have been told about you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that people are saying about you"

#### Acts 21:25

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to James and the elders.

##### Connecting Statement:

James and the elders in Jerusalem finish their request to Paul (Acts 21:18).

##### they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, from blood, from what is strangled

All of these are rules about what they can eat. They are forbidden to eat meat of animals sacrificed to an idol, meat with blood still in it, and meat from a strangled animal because it would still have blood in the meat. See how you translated similar phrases in [Acts 15:20]

##### they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they stay away from the meat of an animal that someone sacrificed to an idol"

##### from what is strangled

This can be stated in active form. You can also state explicitly the assumed information about strangled animals. Alternate translation: "from animals that a person has strangled" or "from animals that a person killed for food but did not drain its blood"

#### Acts 21:26

##### took the men

These are the 4 men who made a vow.

##### he purified himself along with them

Before entering the temple area the Jews were required to be ceremonially or ritually clean. This cleansing had to do with Jews having contact with Gentiles.

##### went into the temple

They did not go into the temple itself where only the high priest was allowed to enter. They entered the temple courtyard. Alternate translation: "went into the temple courtyard"

##### the days of purification

This is a separate purification process from the purification process which they were required to fulfill in order to enter the temple area.

##### the offering would be presented

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they presented the animals for an offering"

#### Acts 21:27

##### Connecting Statement:

This begins the story of Paul's arrest.

##### the seven days

These are the seven days for purification.

##### in the temple

Paul was not in the temple itself. He was in the temple courtyard. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard"

##### stirred up the whole crowd

People who incited a crowd to become very angry at Paul are spoken of as if they stirred up the crowd's emotions. Alternate translation: "caused a large number of people to be very angry at Paul"

##### laid hands on him

Here "laid hands on" means to "seized" or to "grabbed." See how you translated "laid hands on" in [Acts 5:18]

#### Acts 21:28

##### the people, the law, and this place

"the people of Israel, the law of Moses, and the temple"

##### Besides, he has also brought Greeks into the temple

Only Jewish males were allowed in certain areas of the courtyard of the Jerusalem temple.

#### Acts 21:29

##### General Information:

Verse 29 gives background information about the Jews from Asia.

##### For they had previously ... into the temple

This is background information. Luke is explaining why the Jews from Asia thought Paul brought a Greek into the temple.

##### Trophimus

This was a Greek man that they accused Paul of having brought into the inner temple area that was only for Jews. See how you translated his name in Acts 20:4.

#### Acts 21:30

##### All the city was excited

The word "All" here is an exaggeration for emphasis. The word "city" represents the people in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Many people in the city became angry at Paul"

##### laid hold of Paul

"seized Paul" or "grabbed Paul"

##### the doors were immediately shut

They shut the doors so that there would not be rioting in the temple area. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some of the Jews immediately shut the temple doors" or "the temple guards immediately shut the doors"

#### Acts 21:31

##### news came up to the chief captain of the company of soldiers

Here "news" refers to the messenger who went to speak the news. Alternate translation: "someone gave news to the chief captain of the cohort"

##### news came up to the chief captain

The phrase "came up to" is used because the chief captain was in a fortress connected to the temple that was higher in elevation than the temple courtyard.

##### the chief captain

This is a Roman military leader of about 1,000 soldiers.

##### the company of soldiers

A company is a group of about 1,000 soldiers.

##### all Jerusalem was in an uproar

The word "Jerusalem" here represents the people of Jerusalem. The word "all" is an exaggeration to show a large crowd was upset. Alternate translation: "all the people in Jerusalem were in an uproar" or "the large crowd in Jerusalem was in an uproar" (See: and )

#### Acts 21:32

##### General Information:

The first word "he" refers to the chief captain of the guard mentioned in Acts 21:31.

##### ran down

From the fortress, there are stairs going down into the court.

#### Acts 21:33

##### laid hold of Paul

"took hold of Paul" or "arrested Paul"

##### commanded him to be bound

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "commanded his soldiers to bind him"

##### with two chains

This means they bound Paul to two Roman soldiers, one on each side of him.

##### he asked who he was and what he had done.

This can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "he asked, 'Who is this man? What has he done?'"

##### he asked who he was

The chief captain is speaking to the crowd, not to Paul.

#### Acts 21:34

##### and others another

The words "were shouting" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "and others were shouting another" or "and others in the crowd were shouting something else"

##### he ordered that Paul be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he ordered his soldiers to bring Paul"

##### into the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court.

#### Acts 21:35

##### When he came to the steps, he was carried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When Paul came to the steps of the fortress, the soldiers carried him"

#### Acts 21:36

##### Away with him

The crowd is using somewhat milder and less exact language to ask for Paul's death. Alternate translation: "Put him to death" or "Kill him"

#### Acts 21:37

##### As Paul was about to be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As the soldiers were ready to bring Paul"

##### the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in Acts 21:34.

##### The captain said, "Do you know Greek?

The chief captain uses this questions to express surprise that Paul is not who he thought he was. Alternate translation: "So you know Greek." or "I didn't know you knew Greek."

##### know Greek

know how to speak and understand the Greek language

#### Acts 21:38

##### Are you not then the Egyptian ... wilderness?

The chief captain uses this question and the question "Do you speak Greek?"

##### Are you not then the Egyptian

Shortly before Paul's visit, an unnamed man from Egypt had launched a revolt against Rome in Jerusalem. Later he escaped into the wilderness and the commander wonders if Paul might be the same man.

##### started a rebellion

This word "rebellion" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "caused people to rebel against the Roman government"

##### the four thousand men

"the 4,000 terrorists"

##### Assassins

This refers to a group of Jewish rebels who killed Romans and anyone who supported the Roman government.

#### Acts 21:39

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul is correcting the chief captain's wrong idea about who Paul is.

##### Tarsus in Cilicia

Cilicia was a Roman province across the Mediterranean Sea from Egypt, and Tarsus was a large, well-known city.

##### I am a citizen of no unimportant city

Paul uses the double negative in the phrase "no unimportant city" to emphasize that the chief captain should have known that Tarsus was an important city. Alternate translation: "I am a citizen of an important city"

##### I beg you

Or "I plead with you."

##### allow me

"please allow me" or please permit me"

#### Acts 21:40

##### the captain had given him permission

The word "permission" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "the captain permitted Paul to speak" or "the captain allowed Paul to speak"

##### Paul stood on the steps

The word "steps" here refers to the steps on the stairway to the fortress.

##### motioned with the hand to the people

It can be stated explicitly why Paul motioned with the hand. Alternate translation: "motioned with his hand for the people to be quiet"

##### When there was a deep silence

"When the people were completely silent"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 21:4

##### What did the disciples in Tyre say to Paul through the Spirit?

The disciples said to Paul through the Spirit that he should not set foot in Jerusalem.

#### Acts 21:9

##### What do we know about Philip the preacher's children?

Philip had four virgin daughters that prophesied.

#### Acts 21:11

##### What did Agabus the prophet say to Paul?

Agabus told Paul that the Jews in Jerusalem would tie up Paul and hand him over to the Gentiles.

#### Acts 21:13

##### What did Paul say when everyone begged him not to go up to Jerusalem?

Paul said that he was ready to be tied up and to die in Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus.

#### Acts 21:18

##### With whom did Paul meet when he arrived in Jerusalem?

Paul met with James and all the elders.

#### Acts 21:21

##### What accusation was being made by the Jews against Paul?

The Jews were accusing Paul of teaching the Jews who lived among the Gentiles to abandon Moses.

#### Acts 21:24

##### Why did James and the elders want Paul to purify himself with the four men who had made a vow?

They wanted everyone to know that Paul as a Jew also lived so as to keep the law.

#### Acts 21:25

##### What did James say the Gentiles who believed should do?

James said the Gentiles should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, from blood, from what is strangled, and from fornication.

#### Acts 21:28

##### What accusations did some Jews from Asia make against Paul in the temple?

The Jews accused Paul of teaching against the law and defiling the temple by bringing Greeks into it.

#### Acts 21:31

##### After making these accusations, what did the Jews do to Paul?

The Jews dragged Paul out of the temple and tried to kill him.

#### Acts 21:33

##### What did the chief captain of the guard do when he heard that Jerusalem was in an uproar?

The chief captain laid hold on Paul and had him bound with two chains, asking who he was and what he had done.

#### Acts 21:36

##### What was the crowd shouting as the soldiers carried Paul into the fortress?

The crowd was shouting, "Away with him!"

#### Acts 21:39

##### What request did Paul make to the chief captain?

Paul requested that he be allowed to speak to the people.

#### Acts 21:40

##### In what language did Paul speak to the people of Jerusalem?

Paul spoke in Hebrew to the people of Jerusalem.

### Chapter 22

**1** "Brothers and fathers, listen to my defense which I will now make to you."

**2** When the crowd heard Paul speak to them in the Hebrew language, they became quiet. He said,

**3** "I am a Jew, born in Tarsus of Cilicia, but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel. I was instructed according to the strict ways of the law of our fathers. I am zealous for God, just as all of you are today. **4** I persecuted this Way to the death, binding up and delivering to prison both men and women, **5** as the high priest and all the elders can testify. I received letters from them for the brothers in Damascus, and I went there to bring them back in bonds to Jerusalem to be punished. **6** It happened that when I was traveling and nearing Damascus, about noon suddenly a great light from heaven began to shine around me. **7** I fell to the ground and heard a voice say to me, 'Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?'

**8** I answered, 'Who are you, Lord?'

He said to me, 'I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom you are persecuting.'

**9** Those who were with me saw the light, but they did not understand the voice of him who spoke to me. **10** I said, 'What should I do, Lord?'

The Lord said to me, 'Arise and go into Damascus. There you will be told everything that has been appointed for you to do.' **11** I could not see because of that light's brightness, and being led by the hands of those who were with me, I came into Damascus. **12** There I met a man named Ananias, a devout man according to the law and well spoken of by all the Jews who lived there. **13** He came to me, stood by me, and said, 'Brother Saul, receive your sight.' In that very hour I saw him. **14** Then he said, 'The God of our fathers has appointed you to know his will, to see the Righteous One, and to hear the voice coming from his own mouth. **15** For you will be a witness for him to all men about what you have seen and heard. **16** Now why are you waiting? Arise, be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on his name.' **17** After I had returned to Jerusalem, and while I was praying in the temple, a trance came on me. **18** I saw him say to me, 'Hurry and leave Jerusalem quickly, because they will not accept your testimony about me.' **19** I said, 'Lord, they themselves know that I imprisoned and beat those who believed in you in every synagogue. **20** When the blood of Stephen your witness was spilled, I also was standing by and agreeing, and I was guarding the cloaks of those who killed him.' **21** But he said to me, 'Go, because I will send you far away to the Gentiles.'"

**22** They listened to him until that statement. Then they raised their voices and said, "Away with such a fellow from the earth, for it is not right that he should live." **23** As they were shouting, throwing off their cloaks, and throwing dust into the air, **24** the chief captain commanded Paul to be brought into the fortress. He ordered that he should be questioned with scourging, so that he himself might know why they were shouting against him like that. **25** When they had tied him up with the thongs, Paul said to the centurion who was standing by, "Is it lawful for you to scourge a man who is a Roman and who has not been put on trial?"

**26** When the centurion heard this, he went to the chief captain and told him, saying, "What are you about to do? For this man is a Roman citizen." **27** The chief captain came and said to him, "Tell me, are you a Roman citizen?"

Paul said, "Yes."

**28** The chief captain answered, "It was only with a large amount of money that I acquired citizenship."

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." **29** Then the men who were going to question him left him immediately. The chief captain also was afraid, when he learned that Paul was a Roman citizen, because he had tied him up.

**30** On the next day, the chief captain wanted to know for certain about the Jews' accusations against Paul. So he untied his bonds and ordered the chief priests and all the council to meet. Then he brought Paul down and placed him in their midst.

### Acts 22 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the second account of Paul's conversion in the book of Acts. Because this is such an important event in the early church, there are three accounts of Paul's conversion. (See: Acts 9 and Acts 26)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "In the Hebrew language"

Most Jews at this time spoke Aramaic and Greek. Most of the people who spoke Hebrew were educated Jewish scholars. This is why the people paid attention when Paul started speaking in Hebrew.

##### "The Way"

No one knows for sure who first started calling believers "followers of the Way." This is probably what the believers called themselves, because the Bible often speaks of a person living his life as if that person were walking on a path or "way." If this is true, the believers were "following the way of the Lord" by living in a way that pleased God.

##### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. The "chief captain" could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way he would treat a non-citizen.

### Acts 22

#### 22:1-21

#### Why did speaking in Hebrew make the crowd quiet?

[22:2]

Speaking in Hebrew made the crowd quiet. When they heard Paul speaking Hebrew, they knew Paul was a Jew.

#### Who was Gamaliel?

[22:3]

Gamaliel was a Pharisee and teacher in Jerusalem. People respected this man. He taught many other Jewish teachers.

See: Acts 5:34

#### How did Paul study at the feet of Gamaliel?

[22:3]

When Paul he studied at the feet of Gamaliel, he used a metaphor. Gamaliel taught Paul. Some scholars think Gamaliel taught and raised Paul. Other scholars think Gamalier taught Paul but he did not raise him. Because Gamaliel taught Paul, Paul had the best education in the Law of Moses and the things the Jews taught.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### Why did Paul say he was zealous for God?

[22:3]

Paul said he was ‘zealous’(ζηλωτής/g2207) for God because he wanted the Jewish crowd to know he was not angry at them for beating him and wanting to kill him. He did the same things to Christians before he believed in Jesus. What was the Way? “The way” was a name for Chrisitans (see: Acts 19:9, 23; 22:4; 24:14, 22).

See: John 14:6

#### Why was the high priest able to bring Christians from another country to Jerusalem in bonds?

[22:4]

At that time the high priest in Jerusalem had permission to bring back a prisoner to Jerusalem from other areas under Roman control. Saul looked for Christians who left Jerusalem when the people persecuted Christians (see: Acts 8:1).

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

See Map: Jerusalem

#### How did Paul persecute Jesus?

[22:7]

Paul persecuted Jesus when he persecuted the followers of Jesus. That is, Christians represented Jesus (see: Luke 10:16).

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md)

#### Why did Paul say those with him did not understand the voice of Jesus?

[22:9]

Paul said those with him did not understand the voice of Jesus, because Jesus spoke only to Paul. Why did Paul say his old name “Saul” when he talked about when Jesus appeared to him?

Paul said his name “Saul” when he talked about when Jesus appeared to him. Perhaps he did this because Paul wanted to say exactly what Jesus said to him.

See: Acts 9:4

#### How did Paul call Jesus “Lord”?

[22:10]

Paul called Jesus “Lord” two times. The first time Paul gave respect in the same way people gave respect to any leader. Paul did not know it was Jesus (see: Acts 22:8). The second time Paul knew Jesus reigned over everything and everyone. Paul was ready to obey Jesus (see: Acts 22:10).

See: [Lord](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lord.md)

#### Why did Jesus say things were appointed for Paul to do?

[22:10]

Jesus said things were appointed for Paul to do and God wanted Paul to be a part of his plan. Because Jesus said these things to Paul, Paul waited to hear what God had appointed for him to do.

#### What did it mean that Ananias was devout according to the Law of Moses?

[22:12]

When Paul said Ananias was devout according to the Law of Moses, he meant that Ananias obeyed the Lord of Moses. Ananias was also a Christian.

See: [Law of Moses](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lawofmoses.md)

#### Why did Ananias call Paul “brother”?

[22:13]

Ananias called Paul “brother”(αδελφος/g0080) because Ananias knew Paul was a Christian.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md)

#### Why did Ananias tell Paul to be baptized in water?

[22:16]

Ananias told Paul to be baptized in water because Paul needed to make others aware he believed in Jesus.

See: [Baptize (Baptism)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/baptize.md)

#### When did Paul return to Jerusalem?

[22:17]

Some scholars think Paul returned to Jerusalem for a brief visit after becoming a Christian. Other scholars think Paul did not return to Jerusalem until three years after he became a Christian.

See: Acts 9:26-30

#### What was a “vision”?

[22:17]

See: [Vision)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### What was meant by the words, “they will not accept your testimony about me”?

[22:18]

Jesus told Paul that people would not accept the testimony about Jesus. That is, people would not believe in Jesus when Paul told them about Jesus. Scholars think this was because they would not be able to believe Paul since had persecuted people for believing in Jesus.

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### Why did Paul talk about Gentiles?

[22:21]

Paul talked about Gentiles because God wanted everyone to hear about Jesus. Paul did that even though he knew the Jews would become angry.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md)

#### 22:22-29

#### Why did the Jewish crowd want to kill Paul when he talked about Gentiles?

[22:22]

The Jewish crowd did not think God wanted to do anything good for the Gentiles. They forgot God cared about Gentiles (see: Genesis 12:3). Jews hated the Gentiles because they thought they were evil. Because they hated the Gentiles, this made them want to kill Paul.

See: [Gentile](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/gentile.md)

#### Why did the Jewish crowd shout, take off their cloaks, and throw dust?

[22:23]

Some scholars think the crowds were taking off their cloaks because they were preparing to fight Paul. Other scholars think that taking off cloaks and making dust was a way of rejecting the person speaking. Other scholars think this was a sign that they believed Paul was blaspheming God.

See: [Blaspheme (Blasphemy)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/blaspheme.md)

#### What was scourging?

[22:24]

Scourging was a type of whipping. People were whipped with pieces of bone and metal sown into the leather whip. It caused permanent physical damage and sometimes people died.

#### Why did Paul’s Roman citizenship stop the soldiers from scourging him?

[22:25, 22:26]

According to Roman law, it was not permitted to scourge a person who was a Roman citizen. It was also not permitted to punish a Roman citizen without first having a trial to determine guilt.

See: [Punish (Punishment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/punish.md); [Punish (Punishment)](../articles/punish.md)

#### How did the chief captain pay a large amount of money for his citizenship?

[22:28]

Roman Citizenship was often sold for money. Often it was a bribe. Certain Roman leaders became wealthy from selling citizenships. The chief captain used this to become an officer in the Roman army.

See: [Citizen](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/citizen.md)

#### 22:30

#### What was the council?

[22:30]

See: Jewish Council-Sanhedrin

#### Acts 22:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul speaks to the Jewish crowd in Jerusalem.

##### Brothers and fathers

This is a polite way of addressing men who are Paul's age as well as the older men in the audience.

##### I will now make to you

"I will now explain to you" or "I will now present to you"

#### Acts 22:2

##### the Hebrew language

The Hebrew language was the language of the Jews.

#### Acts 22:3

##### but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but I was a student of Gamaliel here in Jerusalem"

##### at the feet of Gamaliel

Here "feet" stands for the place where a student would sit while learning from a teacher. Alternate translation: "by Gamaliel"

##### Gamaliel

Gamaliel was one of the most prominent teachers of the Jewish law. See how you translated this name in Acts 5:34.

##### I was instructed according to the strict ways of the law of our fathers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He instructed me how to carefully obey every law of our forefathers" or "The instruction I received followed the exact details of the law of our forefathers"

##### law of our fathers

"law of our ancestors." This refers to the law that God gave to the people of Israel through Moses.

##### I am zealous for God

"I am completely dedicated to obeying God" or "I am passionate about my service to God"

##### just as all of you are today

"in the same way all of you are today." Paul compares himself with the crowd.

#### Acts 22:4

##### I persecuted this Way to the death

Here "this Way" represents the people who belonged to the group called "the Way." The word "death" can be translated with the verb "kill." Alternate translation: "I persecuted the people who belonged to this Way and I looked for ways to kill them"

##### this Way

This was a term used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated "the Way" in Acts 9:2.

##### binding up and delivering to prison both men and women

"tying up both men and women and taking them to prison"

#### Acts 22:5

##### I received letters from them

"The high priests and elders gave me letters"

##### for the brothers in Damascus

Here "brothers" refers to "fellow Jews."

##### to bring them back in bonds to Jerusalem

"to bind those of the Way with chains and bring them back to Jerusalem"

##### to be punished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that they would receive punishment" or "so that the Jewish authorities could punish them"

#### Acts 22:6

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul describes his encounter with Jesus.

##### It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

#### Acts 22:7

##### heard a voice say to me

Here "voice" stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: "I heard someone say to me"

#### Acts 22:8

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 22:9

##### they did not understand the voice of him who spoke to me

Here "voice" stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: "they did not understand what the one who spoke to me was saying"

#### Acts 22:10

##### There you will be told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "There someone will tell you" or "There you will learn"

#### Acts 22:11

##### I could not see because of that light's brightness

"I was left blind because of that light's brightness"

##### being led by the hands of those who were with me, I came into Damascus

Here "hands" stands for those leading Paul. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those with me guided me into Damascus"

#### Acts 22:12

##### Ananias

Though this is not the same Ananias who died earlier in [Acts 5:3]

##### devout man according to the law

Ananias was very serious about following God's law.

##### law and well spoken of by all the Jews who lived there

This can be stated in active form in a new sentence. Alternate translation: "law. All the Jews who lived there spoke well of him"

#### Acts 22:13

##### General Information:

The words "He" and "him" refer to Ananias.

##### Brother Saul

Here "Brother" is a polite way to address someone. Alternate translation: "My friend Saul"

##### receive your sight

The word "sight" can be translated with the verb "see." Alternate translation: "see again"

##### In that very hour

This was a customary way of saying something happened immediately. Alternate translation: "At that instant" or "Instantly" or "Immediately"

#### Acts 22:14

##### General Information:

The word "he" refers to Ananias (Acts 22:12).

##### his will

"what God is planning and will cause to happen"

##### to hear the voice coming from his own mouth

Both "voice" and "mouth" refer to the one speaking. Alternate translation: "to hear him speak directly to you"

#### Acts 22:15

##### to all men

Here "men" means all people whether male or female. Alternate translation: "to all people"

#### Acts 22:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes telling what had happened to him in Damascus. He quotes what Ananias said to him. This is still part of his speech to the crowd in Jerusalem.

##### Now

Here "now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### why are you waiting?

This question was asked to exhort Paul to be baptized. Alternate translation: "do not wait!" or "do not delay!"

##### be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "let me baptize you" or "receive baptism"

##### wash away your sins

As washing one's body removes dirt, calling on the name of Jesus for forgiveness cleanses one's inner being from sin. Alternate translation: "ask forgiveness for your sins"

##### calling on his name

Here "name" refers to the Lord. Alternate translation: "calling on the Lord" or "trusting in the Lord"

#### Acts 22:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to tell the crowd about his vision of Jesus.

##### a trance came on me

This metaphor means that Paul went into the trance without expecting it or desiring it. See how you translated similar words in [Acts 10:10]

#### Acts 22:18

##### I saw him say to me

"I saw Jesus as he said to me"

##### they will not accept your testimony about me

"those who live in Jerusalem will not believe what you tell them about me"

#### Acts 22:19

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the non-believing Jews in Jerusalem.

##### they themselves know

The word "themselves" is used for emphasis.

##### in every synagogue

Paul went to synagogues to find Jews who believed in Jesus.

#### Acts 22:20

##### the blood of Stephen your witness was spilled

Here "blood" stands for Stephen's life. To spill blood means to kill. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they killed Stephen, who testified about you"

#### Acts 22:21

##### Connecting Statement:

This ends what Paul was able to say to the crowd of Jewish people by the fortress.

#### Acts 22:22

##### General Information:

Here the words "him" and "he" refer to Paul.

##### until that statement

"until Paul said that"

##### Away with such a fellow from the earth

The phrase "from the earth" adds emphasis to "Away with such a fellow." Alternate translation: "Kill him"

#### Acts 22:23

##### As they were

"While they were." The phrase "As they were" is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time.

##### throwing off their cloaks, and throwing dust into the air

These actions show that the Jews there are outraged because they feel Paul has spoken against God.

#### Acts 22:24

##### chief captain

This is a Roman military leader of about 1,000 soldiers. See how you translated this in Acts 21:31.

##### commanded Paul to be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "ordered his soldiers to bring Paul"

##### the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in Acts 21:34.

##### He ordered that he should be questioned with scourging

The commander wants soldiers to torture Paul by whipping him to ensure he tells the truth. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He ordered his soldiers to whip Paul to force him to tell the truth"

##### He ordered that he

The first "he" refers to chief captain. The second "he" refers to Paul.

##### that he himself

The word "himself" is used for emphasis.

#### Acts 22:25

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the soldiers.

##### the thongs

These were strips of leather or animal hide.

##### Is it lawful for you to scourge a man who is a Roman and who has not been put on trial?

Paul uses this question to make the centurion check the validity of having his soldiers whip Paul. Alternate translation: "It is not lawful for you to whip a man who is a Roman and who was not given his legal right to a trial!"

#### Acts 22:26

##### What are you about to do?

This question is used to urge the commander to reconsider his plan to whip Paul. Alternate translation: "You should not do this!"

#### Acts 22:27

##### General Information:

Here the word "him" refers to Paul.

##### The chief captain came

Here "came" can be translated as "went."

#### Acts 22:28

##### It was only with a large amount of money

"It was only after I paid a lot of money to the Roman authorities." The captain makes this statement because he knows how hard it is to become a Roman citizen, and he suspects Paul is not telling truth.

##### I acquired citizenship

"I got citizenship." The word "citizenship" is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "I became a citizen"

##### I was born a Roman citizen

If a man was a Roman citizen, then his children become Roman citizens automatically when they were born.

#### Acts 22:29

##### the men who were going to question

"the men who planned to question" or "the men who were preparing to question"

#### Acts 22:30

##### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to the chief captain.

##### So he untied his bonds

Possibly the "chief captain" stands for the chief captain's soldiers. Alternate translation: "So the chief captain ordered his soldiers to untie Paul's bonds"

##### he brought Paul down

There was a stairway going down from the fortress to the temple courts.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 22:2

##### When the crowd heard Paul speaking in Hebrew, what did they do?

When the crowd heard Paul speaking in Hebrew, they became quiet.

#### Acts 22:3

##### Where was Paul educated, and who was his teacher?

Paul was educated in Jerusalem, and Gamaliel was his teacher.

#### Acts 22:4

##### How had Paul treated those who were following the Way?

Paul had persecuted to death those who were following the Way, and had delivered them into prison.

#### Acts 22:7

##### What did the voice from heaven say to Paul as he neared Damascus?

The voice from heaven said, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?"

#### Acts 22:8

##### Who was Paul persecuting?

Paul was persecuting Jesus of Nazareth.

#### Acts 22:11

##### Why could Paul no longer see?

Paul could no longer see because of the brightness of the light that he saw as he neared Damascus.

#### Acts 22:12

##### How was Paul's sight restored?

A devout man named Ananias came and stood by Paul and said, "Brother Saul, receive your sight".

#### Acts 22:13

##### How was Paul's sight restored?

A devout man named Ananias came and stood by Paul and said, "Brother Saul, receive your sight".

#### Acts 22:16

##### What did Ananias tell Paul to arise and do, and why?

Ananias told Paul to arise and be baptized to wash away his sins.

#### Acts 22:18

##### When Jesus spoke to Paul in the temple, how did he say the Jews would react to Paul's testimony about him?

Jesus said that the Jews would not accept Paul's testimony about him.

#### Acts 22:21

##### To whom did Jesus then send Paul?

Jesus sent Paul to the Gentiles.

#### Acts 22:23

##### How did the people react when they heard Paul speaking about the Gentiles?

The people shouted and threw off their garments, throwing dust in the air.

#### Acts 22:25

##### What question did Paul ask the centurion just before Paul was to be scourged?

Paul asked if it was lawful for him to be scourged as an uncondemned Roman citizen.

#### Acts 22:28

##### How had Paul become a Roman citizen?

Paul had been born a Roman citizen.

#### Acts 22:30

##### What did the chief captain do when he learned that Paul was a Roman citizen?

The chief captain untied Paul's bonds, and ordered the chief priests and all the council to meet, placing Paul in their midst.

### Chapter 23

**1** Paul looked directly at the council members and said, "Brothers, I have lived before God in all good conscience until this day." **2** The high priest Ananias commanded those who stood by him to strike him on the mouth.

**3** Then Paul said to him, "God will strike you, you whitewashed wall. Are you sitting to judge me by the law, yet order me to be struck, against the law?"

**4** Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?"

**5** Paul said, "I did not know, brothers, that he was high priest. For it is written, 'You must not speak evil of a ruler of your people.'"

**6** When Paul saw that the one part of the council were Sadducees and the other Pharisees, he spoke loudly in the council, "Brothers, I am a Pharisee, a son of Pharisees. It is because I have the hope of the resurrection of the dead that I am being judged." **7** When he said this, an argument began between the Pharisees and Sadducees, and the crowd was divided. **8** For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection, no angels, and no spirits, but the Pharisees acknowledge all of them.

**9** So a large uproar occurred, and some of the scribes belonging to the Pharisees stood up and argued, saying, "We find nothing wrong with this man. What if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him?" **10** When there arose a great argument, the chief captain feared that Paul would be torn to pieces by them, so he commanded the soldiers to go down and take him by force from among the council members, and bring him into the fortress.

**11** The following night the Lord stood beside him and said, "Have courage, for as you have testified about me in Jerusalem, so you must also testify in Rome."

**12** When it became day, some Jews formed a conspiracy and put themselves under an oath, saying that they would not eat or drink anything until they had killed Paul. **13** There were more than forty men who formed this conspiracy. **14** They went to the chief priests and the elders and said, "We have sworn a great oath to eat nothing until we have killed Paul. **15** Now, therefore, let the council formally request the chief captain to bring him down to you, as if you would decide his case more precisely. As for us, we are ready to kill him before he comes here."

**16** But Paul's sister's son heard that they were lying in wait, so he went and entered the fortress and told Paul.

**17** Paul called one of the centurions and said, "Take this young man to the chief captain, for he has something to report to him."

**18** So the centurion took the young man and brought him to the chief captain and said, "Paul the prisoner called me to him, and asked me to bring this young man to you. He has something to say to you."

**19** The chief captain took him by the hand to a private place and asked him, "What is it that you have to report to me?"

**20** The young man said, "The Jews have agreed to ask you to bring down Paul tomorrow to the council, as if they were going to ask more precisely about his case. **21** But do not be persuaded by them, because there are more than forty men who are lying in wait for him. They have put themselves under oath neither to eat nor to drink until they have killed him. Even now they are ready, waiting for your approval."

**22** So the chief captain let the young man go, after instructing him, "Tell no one that you have reported these things to me."

**23** Then he called to him two of the centurions and said, "Get two hundred soldiers ready to go as far as Caesarea, and seventy horsemen also, and two hundred spearmen. You will leave at the third hour of the night." **24** He also ordered them to provide animals which Paul could ride and to take him safely to Felix the governor.

**25** Then he wrote a letter like this:

**26** "Claudius Lysias,

To the most excellent Governor Felix,

Greetings.

**27** This man was arrested by the Jews and was about to be killed by them when I came upon them with soldiers and rescued him, since I learned that he was a Roman citizen. **28** I wanted to know why they accused him, so I took him down to their council. **29** I learned that he was being accused about questions concerning their own law, but that there was no accusation against him that deserved death or imprisonment. **30** Then it was reported to me that there was a plot against the man, so I immediately sent him to you and instructed his accusers also to bring their charges against him in your presence.

Farewell."

**31** So the soldiers obeyed their orders. They took Paul and brought him by night to Antipatris. **32** On the next day, most of the soldiers left the horsemen to go with him and they themselves returned to the fortress. **33** When the horsemen reached Caesarea and delivered the letter to the governor, they also presented Paul to him. **34** When the governor read the letter, he asked what province Paul was from. When he learned that he was from Cilicia, **35** he said, "I will hear you fully when your accusers come here." Then he commanded him to be kept in Herod's government headquarters.

### Acts 23 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 23:5.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Resurrection of the dead

The Pharisees believed that after people died, they would become alive again and God would either reward them or punish them. The Sadducees believed that once people died, they stayed dead and would never become alive again. (See: raise and reward)

##### "Called a curse"

Some Jews promised God that they would not eat or drink until they killed Paul, and they asked God to punish them if they did not do what they had promised to do.

##### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. The "chief captain" could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way he would treat a non-citizen.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Whitewashed

This is a metaphor in scripture describing someone who appears to be good or clean or righteous when that person is evil or unclean or unrighteous.

### Acts 23

#### 23:1-11

#### Why did Paul look directly at the council?

[23:1]

Paul looked directly at the council because he did not fear them. Some scholars think Paul was confident because he was also confident of the message he was about to give to them. He knew he was in God’s will. He also knew the Holy Spirit led him.

See: [Holy Spirit](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/holyspirit.md); [Will of God](../articles/willofgod.md); [Holy Spirit](../articles/holyspirit.md)

#### When did Paul have a good “conscience”?

[23:1]

Some scholars think Paul always had a good “conscience”(συνείδησις/g4893). That is, he always thought he did the right things. He even thought this when he persecuted Christians. Other scholars think Paul had a good “conscience” only after he became a Christian.

Paul wanted the Jewish council to know that he believed he did nothing wrong.

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### Why did the high priest command someone to strike Paul on the mouth?

[23:2]

Some scholars think Ananias had someone strike Paul on the mouth because they did not like something Paul said. Other scholars think Ananias was a man with a quick temper to become very angry.

See: [High Priest](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/highpriest.md)

#### What was a whitewashed wall?

[23:3]

A whitewashed wall was a crumbling or decaying wall painted to make it look better. Whitewashed walls were usually walls facing streets. This was a metaphor. Scholars think Paul was saying that they wanted other people to think they did things that honor God. However, they did not want to do things that honor God. They wanted to do evil things. Paul thought that Ananias was being a hypocrite.

See: [Hypocrisy (Hypocirte)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/hypocrisy.md); [Hypocrisy (Hypocirte)](../articles/hypocrisy.md)

#### Why did Paul call the high priest a whitewashed wall?

[23:3]

Paul called the high priest a whitewashed wall to say the high priest did not obey the Law of Moses himself even when he judged Paul for not obeying the law of Moses (see: Leviticus 19:15).

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Law of Moses](../articles/lawofmoses.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

#### Why did Paul not know the high priest?

[23:5]

Scholars think Paul did not know the high priest because Paul had been away from Jerusalem. Also, the high priest did not sit in his usual seat because the Roman leader wanted the Jewish council to meet.

See: Exodus 22:28

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md); [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](../articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### Why did Paul say he was a Pharisee?

[23:6]

Scholars think Paul knew he would not receive justice from the council. Paul had been a Pharisee. He knew the Pharisees believed in the resurrection. Therefore, Paul spoke about the resurrection. This caused people in the Jewish council to fight with one another.

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md) ; [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](../articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### How did Jesus stand beside Paul and speak to Paul?

[23:11]

Some scholars think Jesus stood beside Paul and helped him. Other scholars think Paul had a vision of Jesus standing with him. Other scholars think Paul must have dreamed that the Lord encouraged him.

See: [Vision](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md)

#### 23:12-22

#### What was meant by the words, “called a curse down upon themselves with an oath”?

[23:14]

See: [Swear (Oath)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/swearoath.md); [Swear (Oath)](../articles/swearoath.md)

#### Why did the Jews want to kill Paul on the way to the council?

[23:15]

Some scholars think a group of Jews were very disappointed that the Jewish council did not kill Paul. They made a plan to have the council bring Paul back to answer more questions. They wanted to kill Paul while he was on his way to speak to the council once again.

See: [Jewish Council (Sanhedrin)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sanhedrin.md)

#### 23:23-35

#### Why did the chief captain send Paul to Caesarea?

[23:23]

The Roman soldier sent Paul to Caesarea because Paul was a Roman citizen. Roman law required the chief captain to keep Roman citizens safe. The chief captain sent Paul to Caesarea because he thought Paul would be safer there.

See: [Citizen](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/citizen.md)

See Map: Caesarea

#### Who was Claudius Lysias?

[23:26]

Claudius Lysias was the chief captain, a Roman soldier and leader. He was born a Greek because Lysias was a Greek name. Claudius was the name of a Roman Emperor. The chief captain took the name of the Roman Emperor who reigned when he became a Roman citizen.

See: [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/rome.md); [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](../articles/rome.md)

#### Why did the chief captain write that he rescued Paul from the Jews when he knew Paul was a Roman citizen?

[23:27]

The Roman soldier wrote that he rescued Paul from the Jews when he knew Paul was a Roman citizen because he wanted the governor to think he protected Paul. He wanted the governor to know that he wanted to know for himself if Paul was guilty of the things people said he did.

See: [Citizen](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/citizen.md)

#### Where was Antipatris?

[23:31]

See Map: Antipatris

#### Why did the governor ask Paul what province he was from?

[23:34]

The governor asked Paul what area he was from because Roman leaders usually heard trials for people from the places over which they reigned. Some scholars think the province of Cilicia was a large territory and the Roman leader over it did not want to hear a small court case. Therefore, Felix decided to hear Paul’s case. Other scholars think the governor wanted an easy way to give Paul’s case to another Roman ruler.

See Map: Cilicia

#### What was Herod’s government headquarters?

[23:35]

Herod’s government headquarters was a palace Herod the Great built. It was in Caesarea.

See: [King Herod](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/kingherod.md)

See Map: Caesarea

#### Acts 23:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul stands before the chief priests and the council members (Acts 22:30).

##### Brothers

Here this means "Fellow Jews."

##### I have lived before God in all good conscience until this day

"I know that even to this day I have done what God has wanted me to do"

#### Acts 23:2

##### Ananias

This is the name of a man. Although he has the same name, the Ananias here is neither the Ananias mentioned in [Acts 5:1]

#### Acts 23:3

##### whitewashed wall

This refers to a wall that was painted white to make it look clean. Paul told Ananias that just as a wall can be painted to look clean so Ananias appeared to look morally clean, but he was really full of evil intent. Alternate translation: "white-painted wall" or "wall painted white"

##### Are you sitting to judge ... against the law?

Paul uses a question to point out Ananias' hypocrisy. Some modern translations read this as a statement, "You are sitting to judge ... against the law." Alternate translation: "You are wrong to sit there to judge ... against the law."

##### order me to be struck

This can be stated in active form. You can use the same word for "strike" as you did in the phrase "God will strike you." Alternate translation: "command people to strike me"

#### Acts 23:4

##### Is this how you insult God's high priest?

The men use this question to scold Paul for what he has said in [Acts 23:3]

#### Acts 23:5

##### For it is written

Paul is about to quote what Moses wrote in the law. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Moses wrote in the law"

#### Acts 23:6

##### Brothers

Here "Brothers" means "Fellow Jews"

##### a son of Pharisees

Here "son" means he is the literal son of a Pharisee and also the descendant of Pharisees. Alternate translation: "and my father and forefathers were Pharisees"

##### I have the hope of the resurrection of the dead

Here the word "hope" is a person's confident expectation that what he desires really will happen. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "confidently expect" or "confidently wait" or "trust." The abstract noun "resurrection" can be expressed with the verb phrase "become alive again." Alternate translation: "I confidently expect the resurrection of the dead" or "I trust that the dead will become alive again"

##### the dead

The phrase "the dead" can be expressed as "those who have died."

##### I am being judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are judging me"

#### Acts 23:7

##### the crowd was divided

"the people in the crowd strongly disagreed with one another"

#### Acts 23:8

##### For the Sadducees ... but the Pharisees

This is background information about the Sadducees and Pharisees.

#### Acts 23:9

##### So a large uproar occurred

"So they began shouting loudly at one another." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is Paul's stating his belief in the resurrection.

##### What if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him?

The Pharisees use this question to suggest that Paul may have gotten his teaching from an angel or a spirit. They may be rebuking the Sadducees for not believing that spirits and angels exist and can speak to people. Alternate translation: "Maybe a spirit or an angel has spoken with him!"

#### Acts 23:10

##### When there arose a great argument

The words "a great argument" can be re-stated as "argue violently." Alternate translation: "When they began to argue violently"

##### chief captain

This is a Roman military leader of about 1,000 soldiers. See how you translated this in Acts 21:31.

##### Paul would be torn to pieces by them

This can be stated in active form. The phrase "be torn to pieces" might be an exaggeration of how the people might harm Paul. Alternate translation: "they might tear Paul to pieces" or "they would cause Paul great physical harm"

##### take him by force

"use physical force to take him away"

##### into the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in Acts 21:34.

#### Acts 23:11

##### The following night

This means the night after the day Paul went before the council. Alternate translation: "That night"

##### testify in Rome

The words "about me" are understood. Alternate translation: "testify about me in Rome"

#### Acts 23:12

##### Connecting Statement:

While Paul is in the prison at the fortress, the disbelieving religious Jews vow to kill him.

##### formed a conspiracy

"organized a group with a shared purpose." The purpose for organizing this group was to kill Paul.

##### put themselves under an oath

The noun "oath" is an abstract noun that refers to a promise that the men made to God to kill Paul. It can also be made explicit what would happen to the men if they did not do what they had promised to do. Alternate translation: "asked God to curse them if they did not do what they promised"

#### Acts 23:13

##### forty men

"40 men"

##### who formed this conspiracy

"who made this plan" or "who planned to kill Paul"

#### Acts 23:14

##### General Information:

Here the word "They" refers to the forty Jews in Acts 23:13.

##### We have sworn a great oath to eat nothing until we have killed Paul

"We have sworn to eat nothing until we have killed Paul. We asked God to curse us if we do not do what we promised to do"

#### Acts 23:15

##### General Information:

Here "you" is plural and refers to the chief priests and elders. Both "us" and "we" refer to the forty Jews who planned to kill Paul.

##### Now, therefore

"Because what we have just said is true" or "Because we have put ourselves under this curse"

##### Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### bring him down to you

"bring Paul from the fortress to meet with you"

##### as if you would decide his case more precisely

"as though you want to learn more about what Paul has done"

#### Acts 23:16

##### Paul's sister's son

"the son of Paul's sister" or "Paul's nephew"

##### they were lying in wait

"they were ready to ambush Paul" or "they were waiting to kill Paul"

##### the fortress

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in Acts 21:34.

#### Acts 23:17

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 23:18

##### Paul the prisoner called me to him

"Paul the prisoner asked me to come talk with him"

##### this young man

Since the chief captain calls him a young man, this suggests Paul's nephew may have been 12 to 15 years old.

#### Acts 23:19

##### chief captain took him by the hand

Since the chief captain took the young man by the hand and calls him a young man (verse 18), this suggests Paul's nephew may have been 12 to 15 years old.

#### Acts 23:20

##### The Jews have agreed

This does not mean all Jews, but all of the group that was there. Alternate translation: "Some of the Jews have agreed"

##### to bring down Paul

"to bring Paul down from the fortress"

##### they were going to ask more precisely about his case

"they wanted to learn more about what Paul has done"

#### Acts 23:21

##### forty men

"40 men"

##### lying in wait for him

"ready to ambush Paul" or "ready to kill Paul"

##### They have put themselves under oath neither to eat nor to drink until they have killed him

"They have sworn to eat and drink nothing until they have killed Paul. And they asked God to curse them if they do not do what they promised to do"

##### for your approval

"for you to agree to do what they have asked you to do"

#### Acts 23:22

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 23:23

##### he called to him

"he called to himself." Both "he" and "him" refer to the chief captain.

##### two of the centurions

"2 of the centurions"

##### seventy horsemen

"70 horsemen"

##### two hundred spearmen

"200 soldiers that are armed with spears"

##### third hour of the night

This was about 9:00 p.m. at night.

#### Acts 23:24

##### Felix the governor

Felix, who resided at Caesarea, was the roman governor of the area.

#### Acts 23:25

##### General Information:

Here "he" refers to the chief captain.

#### Acts 23:26

##### General Information:

Claudius Lysias was the name of the chief captain. Governor Felix was the Roman governor over the whole region.

##### Claudius Lysias to the most excellent Governor Felix, greetings

This is a formal introduction to the letter. The chief captain begins by referring to himself. You can translate it in the first person. The words "am writing" are understood. Alternate translation: "I, Claudius Lysias, am writing to you, the most excellent Governor Felix, and I greet you"

##### to the most excellent Governor Felix

"to Governor Felix, you who deserve the greatest honors"

#### Acts 23:27

##### This man was arrested by the Jews

Here "Jews" means "some of the Jews." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Some of the Jews arrested this man"

##### was about to be killed by them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they were ready to kill him"

##### I came upon them with soldiers

"I with my soldiers arrived at the place where Paul and these Jews were"

#### Acts 23:28

##### General Information:

Here the word "I" refers to Claudius Lysias, the chief captain. The word "they" refers to the Jews who accused Paul. The word "him" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 23:29

##### that he was being accused about questions concerning

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they were accusing him of questions about"

##### but that there was no accusation against him that deserved death or imprisonment

The abstract nouns "accusation," "death," and "imprisonment" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "but nobody accused him of anything that should cause Roman authorities to kill him or to send him to prison"

#### Acts 23:30

##### Connecting Statement:

The chief captain ends his letter to Governor Felix.

##### Then it was reported to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then someone told me" or "Then I learned"

##### sent him to you

Here "you" refers to Governor Felix.

#### Acts 23:31

##### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul's time under arrest in Jerusalem and begins his time of arrest in Caesarea with Governor Felix.

##### So the soldiers obeyed their orders

The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is the chief captain's commanding the soldiers to escort Paul.

##### They took Paul and brought him by night

Here "brought" can be translated as "took." Alternate translation: "They got Paul and took him at night"

##### Antipatris

Antipatris was a city built by Herod in honor of his father, Antipater. It stood at a site located today in central Israel.

#### Acts 23:32

##### to go with him

Here "him" refers to Paul.

#### Acts 23:33

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 23:34

##### he asked what province Paul was from. When he learned that he was from Cilicia

This can be stated with direct quotations. Alternate translation: "he asked Paul, 'What province are you from?' Paul said, 'I am from Cilicia.' When the governor learned this"

##### When he learned that he

"When the governor learned that Paul"

#### Acts 23:35

##### he said

"the governor said"

##### I will hear you fully

"I will listen to all you have to say"

##### he commanded him to be kept

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he commanded soldiers to keep him" or "commanded soldiers to restrain him"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 23:1

##### Why did the high priest command those who stood by Paul to strike him on the mouth?

The high priest was angry because Paul said he had lived before God in all good conscience.

#### Acts 23:2

##### Why did the high priest command those who stood by Paul to strike him on the mouth?

The high priest was angry because Paul said he had lived before God in all good conscience.

#### Acts 23:6

##### For what reason did Paul say he was being judged before the council?

Paul said he was being judged because of his confidence in the resurrection.

#### Acts 23:7

##### Why did an argument begin in the council when Paul gave his reason for being judged?

An argument began because the Pharisees say there is a resurrection, but the Sadducees say there is no resurrection.

#### Acts 23:8

##### Why did an argument begin in the council when Paul gave his reason for being judged?

An argument began because the Pharisees say there is a resurrection, but the Sadducees say there is no resurrection.

#### Acts 23:10

##### Why did the chief captain take Paul from the council to the fortress?

The chief captain feared that Paul would be torn to pieces by the council members.

#### Acts 23:11

##### What promise did the Lord give Paul the following night?

The Lord told Paul to not fear because he would bear witness in Jerusalem and in Rome.

#### Acts 23:12

##### What pact concerning Paul did some Jewish men make?

About forty Jewish men made a pact that they would not eat or drink until they had killed Paul.

#### Acts 23:13

##### What pact concerning Paul did some Jewish men make?

About forty Jewish men made a pact that they would not eat or drink until they had killed Paul.

#### Acts 23:14

##### What was the plan the forty Jewish men presented to the chief priests and elders?

They asked the chief priests and elders to have Paul brought to the council so they could kill Paul before he arrived.

#### Acts 23:15

##### What was the plan the forty Jewish men presented to the chief priests and elders?

They asked the chief priests and elders to have Paul brought to the council so they could kill Paul before he arrived.

#### Acts 23:16

##### How did Paul learn about the plan of the forty Jewish men?

Paul's sister's son heard of the plan and told Paul.

#### Acts 23:23

##### How did the chief captain respond when he learned the plan of the forty Jewish men?

The chief captain ordered a large guard to take Paul safely to Felix the governor at the third hour of the night.

#### Acts 23:24

##### How did the chief captain respond when he learned the plan of the forty Jewish men?

The chief captain ordered a large guard to take Paul safely to Felix the governor at the third hour of the night.

#### Acts 23:29

##### In his letter to Felix the governor, what did the chief captain say about the accusations against Paul?

The chief captain said Paul did not deserve death or imprisonment, but that the accusations were about questions concerning Jewish law.

#### Acts 23:35

##### When did Felix the governor say he would hear Paul's case?

Felix said he would hear Paul's case when Paul's accusers arrived.

##### Where was Paul kept until his trial?

Paul was kept in Herod's palace until his trial.

### Chapter 24

**1** After five days, Ananias the high priest, certain elders, and an orator named Tertullus went there. These men brought charges against Paul before the governor. **2** When Paul stood before the governor, Tertullus began to accuse him and said to the governor, "Because of you we have great peace, and your foresight brings good reform to our nation;

**3** so with all thankfulness we welcome everything that you do, most excellent Felix. **4** So that I detain you no more, I beg you in your kindness to hear us briefly. **5** For we have found this man to be a pest and one who causes all the Jews throughout the world to rebel. He is a leader of the Nazarene sect. **6** He even tried to desecrate the temple, so we arrested him. *[*[1](#fn-044-024-006-1)*]***7***[*[2](#fn-044-024-007-2)*]***8** When you examine Paul about all these matters, you will be able to learn about all the things of which we are accusing him." **9** The Jews also joined in the accusation, affirming that these charges were true.

**10** But when the governor motioned for Paul to speak, Paul answered, "I understand that for many years you have been a judge to this nation, and so I gladly explain myself to you.

**11** You can learn for yourself that it has not been more than twelve days since I went up to worship in Jerusalem. **12** When they found me in the temple, I did not argue with anyone, and I did not stir up a crowd, either in the synagogues, or in the city. **13** They cannot prove to you the accusations they are now making against me. **14** But I confess this to you, that according to the Way, which they call a sect, I serve the God of our fathers, believing all things that are according to the law and that has been written in the prophets. **15** I have a hope in God, which these men also have, that there will be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked. **16** So I always strive to have a blameless conscience before God and human beings. **17** Now after many years I came to give alms to my nation and present sacrifices. **18** When I did this, certain Jews from Asia found me in a purification ceremony in the temple, not with a crowd or an uproar. **19** These men ought to be before you now and accuse me, if they have anything. **20** Or else, these same men should say what wrong they found in me when I stood before the Jewish council, **21** unless it is about this one thing that I shouted out when I stood among them, 'It is concerning the resurrection of the dead that I am on trial before you today.'"

**22** Then Felix, who was well informed about the Way, postponed the hearing. He said, "When Lysias the commander comes down from Jerusalem, I will decide your case." **23** Then he commanded the centurion that Paul should be kept in custody, but to have some freedom so that none of his friends would be prevented from attending to his needs.

**24** After some days, Felix returned with Drusilla his wife, who was Jewish, and he sent for Paul and he heard from him about faith in Christ Jesus. **25** But when Paul reasoned with him about righteousness, self-control, and the coming judgment, Felix became frightened and said, "Go away for now. But when I have time later on, I will send for you." **26** At the same time he hoped that Paul would give money to him, so he often sent for him and spoke with him. **27** But when two years passed, Porcius Festus became the governor after Felix, but Felix wanted to gain favor with the Jews, so he left Paul bound.

#### Footnotes

24:6 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-024-006-1)*]*Some ancient copies add, 24:7 *[*[2](#ref-fn-044-024-007-2)*]*Some ancient copies have for verse 7 and the beginning of verse 8,

### Acts 24 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Paul told the governor that he had not done what the Jews were accusing him of doing and that the governor should not punish him for what he did do.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Respect

Both the Jewish leaders ([Acts 24:2-4](./02.md)) and Paul ([Acts 24:10](../../act/24/10.md)) began their speeches with words that show respect to the governor.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Governmental leaders

The words "governor," "commander," and "centurion" may be difficult to translate into some languages.

### Acts 24

#### 24:1-9

#### What was an orator?

[24:1]

An orator was a person who made money speaking in front of many other people. The Jews hired Tertullus to speak against Paul in the Roman court. Scholars do not know if Tertullus was Jewish or not.

See: [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancienttrials.md); [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](../articles/ancienttrials.md)

#### What was the Nazarene sect?

[24:5]

The Nazarene sect was a group of followers of the Man of Nazareth. The Man of Nazareth is Jesus. However, the orator wanted to make Felix think these people will cause fighting. The orator wanted Felix to judge Paul.

See: J[Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md)

#### What did Luke write in verse 6-7?

[24:6, 24:7]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament say that the Jews wanted to judge Paul by their law but Lysias took Paul away from them. Other ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. Scholars do not know whether Luke wrote these words.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/differencesbible.md)

#### How did the Jews join the accusation against Paul?

[24:9]

The Jews joined the accusation against Paul by saying again and again these lies were really true.

See: [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancienttrials.md)

#### 24:10-21

#### How did Paul talk to the governor?

[24:10, 24:11]

Paul talked to the governor with confidence because the governor had judged the Jews for years. Paul was glad because Paul did not act against Jewish laws. Paul believed the governor would make the right judgment.

#### Why did Paul say it was not more than twelve days since he went to Jerusalem to worship?

[24:11]

Scholars think it would have been very easy for the governor to find out whether Paul was guilty of doing evil things. This is because it had only been a period of twelve days.

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md)

#### Why was Christianity called the Way?

[24:14]

“The way” was a name for Chrisitans (see: Acts 19:9, 23; 22:4; 24:14, 22).

See: John 14:6

#### 24:22-27

#### Why did Felix say he will decide Paul’s case when Lysias came?

[24:22]

Felix said he will decide Paul’s case when Lysias came because Felix did not want to make a decision. Some scholars think Felix knew about the Christians and did not want to make things difficult for Christians.

See: [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancienttrials.md)

#### Why did Felix give Paul some freedom?

[24:23]

Felix gave Paul some freedom because he knew Paul did not do the crimes of which he was accused. Also, Paul was a Roman citizen.

See: [Citizen](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/citizen.md)

#### Why did Luke write Drusilla was Jewish?

[24:24]

Luke wrote Drusilla was Jewish because the wife of the governor influenced the governor's thinking. Some scholars think her faith made Felix listen to Paul. Other scholars think Felix wanted Paul to give him personal advice in the same way some other Roman leaders paid people to give them personal advice.

See: [Faith (Believe in)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/faith.md)

#### Why did Felix become frightened?

[24:25]

Felix became frightened because he and his wife, Drusilla, did many evil things. Paul’s speech about righteousness, self-control, and the coming judgment reminded Felix of the evil things he did. However, Felix did not repent.

See: [Repent (Repentance)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/repent.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md); [Day of Judgment](../articles/dayofjudgment.md); [Repent (Repentance)](../articles/repent.md)

#### Why did Felix want Paul to give him money?

[24:26]

Felix wanted Paul to give him money because Felix wanted to be rich from bribes. Some scholars think Paul received an inheritance. Other scholars think Felix wanted Paul’s friends to give Felix money.

See: [Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/inherit.md)

#### Acts 24:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul is on trial in Caesarea. Tertullus presents Governor Felix with the charges against Paul.

##### After five days

"Five days after the Roman soldiers took Paul to Caesarea"

##### Ananias

This is the name of a man. He is not the same Ananias as in [Acts 5:1]

##### an orator

"a lawyer." Tertullus was an expert in Roman law who was there to accuse Paul in court.

##### Tertullus

This is the name of a man.

##### went there

"went to Caesarea where Paul was"

##### before the governor

"in the presence of the governor, who was judge in the court"

##### brought charges against Paul

"began to argue the case before the governor that Paul had broken the law."

#### Acts 24:2

##### Because of you

Here the word "you" refers to Felix, the governor.

##### we have great peace

Here "we" refers to the citizens under Felix. Alternate translation: "we, the people that you govern, have great peace"

##### and your foresight brings good reform to our nation

"and your planning has greatly improved our nation"

#### Acts 24:3

##### so with all thankfulness we welcome everything that you do

The word "thankfulness" is an abstract noun. It can be stated as an adjective or verb. Alternate translation: "so we are very thankful and we welcome everything that you do" or "so we thank you very much and welcome everything that you do"

##### most excellent Felix

"Governor Felix, who deserves greatest honor." Felix was the roman governor over the whole region. See how you translated a similar phrase in Acts 23:25.

#### Acts 24:4

##### So that I detain you no more

Possible meanings are 1) "so that I will not take up too much of your time" or 2) "so that I will not tire you"

##### in your kindness to hear us briefly

"to be kind and listen to the short speech I am giving to state these men's case"

#### Acts 24:5

##### General Information:

The word "we" refers to Ananias, certain elders, and Tertullus.

##### this man to be a pest

Here "pest" is a metaphor for a person who causes trouble. Alternate translation: "this man to be a trouble maker"

##### all the Jews throughout the world

The word "all" here is probably an exaggeration used to strengthen their accusation against Paul.

##### He is a leader of the Nazarene sect

The phrase "Nazarene sect" is another name for the Christians. Alternate translation: "He also leads the entire group whom people call the followers of the Nazarene"

##### sect

This is a smaller group of people within a larger group group. Tertullus considers the Christians to be a small group within Judaism.

#### Acts 24:6

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 24:7

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is singular and refers to Governor Felix.

#### Acts 24:8

##### Connecting Statement:

Tertullus finishes presenting the charges against Paul before Governor Felix.

##### to learn about all the things of which we are accusing him

"to learn whether or not these charges that we bring against him are true" or "to learn whether or not he is guilty of the things we accuse him of"

#### Acts 24:9

##### The Jews

This refers to the Jewish leaders who were there at Paul's trial.

#### Acts 24:10

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul responds to Governor Felix about the charges brought against him.

##### the governor motioned

"the governor gestured"

##### a judge to this nation

Here "nation" refers to the people of the Jewish nation. Alternate translation: "a judge for the people of the Jewish nation"

##### explain myself

"explain my situation"

#### Acts 24:11

##### twelve days since

"12 days since"

#### Acts 24:12

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the Jews who were accusing Paul.

##### I did not stir up a crowd

"Stir up" here is a metaphor for agitating people into unrest, just as stirring a liquid agitates it. Alternate translation: "I did not cause a crowd to riot"

#### Acts 24:13

##### the accusations

"the blames for wrongdoings" or "the charges for crimes"

#### Acts 24:14

##### I confess this to you

"I acknowledge this to you"

##### that according to the Way

The phrase "the Way" was a title used for Christianity during Paul's time.

##### a sect

This is a smaller group of people within a larger group. Christianity was originally considered to be a small group within Judaism. See how you translated "sect" in Acts 24:5.

##### the law

Paul is referring to the law of Moses.

#### Acts 24:15

##### I have a hope in God, which these men also have, that there will be a resurrection

Here the word "hope" is a person's confident expectation that what he desires really will happen. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "confidently expect" or "confidently wait" or "trust." Alternate translation: "Just as these men, I trust in God that there will be a resurrection"

##### these men

the Jews who are accusing Paul in court

##### that there will be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked

The abstract noun "resurrection" can be stated with the verb "resurrect." Alternate translation: "that God will resurrect all who have died, both the righteous and the unrighteous"

##### the righteous and the wicked

These nominal adjectives refer to righteous people and wicked people. Alternate translation: "righteous people and wicked people" or "those who have done what is right and those who have done what is evil"

#### Acts 24:16

##### I always strive

"I always work hard" or "I do my best"

##### to have a blameless conscience

Here "conscience" refers to a person's inner morality that chooses between right and wrong. Alternate translation: "to be blameless" or "to always do what is right"

##### before God

"in the presence of God"

#### Acts 24:17

##### Now

This word marks a shift in Paul's argument. Here he explains the situation in Jerusalem when some of the Jews arrested him.

##### after many years

"after many years away from Jerusalem"

##### I came to give alms to my nation and present sacrifices

Here "I came" can be translated as "I went." Alternate translation: "I went to help my people by bringing them money as a gift; I also went to present sacrifices"

#### Acts 24:18

##### in a purification ceremony in the temple

"in the temple after I had finished a ceremony to purify myself"

##### in the temple, not with a crowd or an uproar

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "in the temple. I had not gathered a crowd nor was I trying to start a riot"

#### Acts 24:19

##### These men

"The Jews from Asia"

##### if they have anything

"if they have anything to say"

#### Acts 24:20

##### these same men

This refers to the members of the council who were present in Jerusalem at Paul's trial.

##### should say what wrong they found in me

"should say the wrong thing I did that they were able to prove"

#### Acts 24:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes responding to Governor Felix about the charges brought against him.

##### It is concerning the resurrection of the dead

The abstract noun "resurrection" can be stated as "God brings back to life." Alternate translation: "It is because I believe that God will bring back to life those who have died"

##### I am on trial before you today

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are judging me today"

#### Acts 24:22

##### General Information:

Felix is the Roman governor of the area who resides at Caesarea. See how you translated this name in [Acts 23:24]

##### the Way

This is a title for Christianity. See how you translated this in Acts 9:2.

##### When Lysias the commander comes down

"when Lysias the commander comes down" or "at the time Lysias the commander comes down"

##### Lysias

This is the name of the chief captain. See how you translated this name in Acts 23:26.

##### comes down from Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher than Caesarea so it was normal to speak of coming down from Jerusalem.

##### I will decide your case

"I will make a decision concerning these accusations against you" or "I will judge whether you are guilty"

#### Acts 24:23

##### to have some freedom

"to have some freedom not otherwise granted to prisoners"

#### Acts 24:24

##### After some days

"After several days"

##### Drusilla his wife

Drusilla is a woman's name.

#### Acts 24:25

##### Felix became frightened

Felix may have felt conviction of his sins.

##### for now

"for the present time"

#### Acts 24:26

##### he hoped that Paul would give money to him

Here the word "hope" means think that what one desires might happen. Sometimes prisoners gave money to government officials so that the officials would free them from prison early, and Felix hoped that Paul would do that. Alternate translation: "he thought that Paul might give money to him"

##### so he often sent for him and spoke with him

"so Felix often sent for Paul and spoke with Paul"

#### Acts 24:27

##### Porcius Festus

This was the Roman Governor who replaced Felix.

##### wanted to gain favor with the Jews

Here "the Jews" refers to the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "wanted the Jewish leaders to like him"

##### he left Paul bound

"he left Paul in prison"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 24:5

##### What accusations did the orator Tertullus bring against Paul?

Tertullus accused Paul of causing the Jews to rebel and desecrating the temple.

##### Of what sect did Tertullus say Paul was a leader?

Tertullus said Paul was a leader of the Nazarene sect.

#### Acts 24:6

##### What accusations did the orator Tertullus bring against Paul?

Tertullus accused Paul of causing the Jews to rebel and desecrating the temple.

#### Acts 24:12

##### What did Paul say he had done in the temple, synagogues, and city?

Paul said he had not argued with anyone and had not stirred up a crowd.

#### Acts 24:14

##### To what did Paul say he was faithful?

Paul said he was faithful to all that is in the law and the writings of the prophets.

#### Acts 24:15

##### What hope did Paul share with the Jews accusing him?

They shared the same confidence in God about the coming resurrection of the righteous and unrighteous dead.

#### Acts 24:17

##### Why did Paul say he had come to Jerusalem?

Paul said he had come to bring help to his nation and gifts of money.

#### Acts 24:18

##### What did Paul say he was doing in the temple when he was found by certain Jews from Asia?

Paul said he was in a purification ceremony when he was found.

#### Acts 24:22

##### About what was the governor Felix well informed?

The governnor Felix was well informed about the Way.

##### When did Felix say he would decide Paul's case?

Felix said he would decide Paul's case when Lusias the commander came from Jerusalem.

#### Acts 24:24

##### After some days, about what did Paul tell Felix?

Paul told Felix about faith in Christ Jesus, rigtheousness, self-control, and the coming judgment.

#### Acts 24:25

##### After some days, about what did Paul tell Felix?

Paul told Felix about faith in Christ Jesus, rigtheousness, self-control, and the coming judgment.

##### How did Felix react after he heard Paul?

Felix became fearful and asked Paul to go away for the present.

#### Acts 24:27

##### After two years, why did Felix leave Paul under guard when the new governor came?

Felix left Paul under guard because he wanted to gain favor with the Jews.

### Chapter 25

**1** Now, Festus entered the province, and after three days, he went from Caesarea up to Jerusalem. **2** The chief priests and the prominent Jews brought their charges against Paul, and they asked Festus earnestly— **3** asking him to do them a favor against Paul—to summon him to Jerusalem, for they were preparing an ambush to kill him along the way. **4** Festus answered that Paul was being held in custody at Caesarea, and that he himself was going there soon. **5** "Therefore, those who can," he said, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him."

**6** Festus stayed not more than eight or ten days and then he went down to Caesarea, and on the next day he sat on the judgment seat and commanded Paul to be brought to him. **7** When he arrived, the Jews from Jerusalem stood nearby, and they brought many serious charges which they could not prove.

**8** Paul defended himself and said, "I have committed no sin against the law of the Jews or against the temple or against Caesar."

**9** But Festus wanted to gain the favor of the Jews, and so he answered Paul and said, "Do you want to go up to Jerusalem and to be judged by me about these things there?" **10** Paul said, "I stand before the judgment seat of Caesar where I must be judged. I have wronged no Jews, just as you also very well know. **11** Though if I have done wrong and if I have done what is worthy of death, I do not refuse to die. But if their accusations are nothing, no one can hand me over to them. I appeal to Caesar." **12** After Festus talked with the council, he answered, "You have appealed to Caesar. To Caesar you will go!"

**13** Now after some days, King Agrippa and Bernice arrived at Caesarea to pay an official visit to Festus. **14** After they had been there for many days, Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. **15** When I was in Jerusalem, the chief priests and the elders of the Jews brought charges against this man to me, and they asked for a sentence of condemnation against him. **16** I answered them that it was not the custom of the Romans to hand over anyone before the accused had faced his accusers and received an opportunity to defend himself against the charges. **17** Therefore, when they came together here, I did not wait, but the next day I sat in the judgment seat and I ordered the man to be brought in. **18** When the accusers stood up, they charged him with nothing that I considered wickedness. **19** Instead, they had certain disputes with him about their own religion and about a certain Jesus who was dead, whom Paul claims to be alive. **20** I was perplexed about how to investigate this matter, and so I asked him if he would be willing to go to Jerusalem to stand trial there about these charges. **21** But when Paul appealed to be kept in custody while awaiting the decision of the emperor, I ordered him to be held in custody until I could send him to Caesar." **22** Agrippa spoke to Festus, "I would also like to listen to this man." "Tomorrow," Festus said, "you will hear him."

**23** So on the next day, Agrippa and Bernice came with much ceremony; they came into the hall with the military officers and with the prominent men of the city. When Festus spoke the command, Paul was brought to them. **24** Festus said, "King Agrippa, and all you men who are here with us, you see this man; all the multitude of Jews appealed to me in Jerusalem and here also, and they shouted to me that he should no longer live. **25** I found he had done nothing worthy of death; but because he appealed to the emperor, I decided to send him to Rome. **26** But I do not have anything certain to write to my lord. For this reason, I have brought him to you, especially to you, King Agrippa, so that I might have something more to write about the case. **27** For it seems unreasonable for me to send a prisoner and to not also state the charges against him."

### Acts 25 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Favor

This word is used in two different ways in this chapter. When the Jewish leaders asked Festus for a favor, they were asking him to do something special for them on that day. They wanted him to do for them something that he would not usually do. When Festus "wanted to gain the favor of the Jews," he wanted them to like him and be willing to obey him in the months and years to come. (See: favor)

##### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. Roman officials could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way they would treat a non-citizen.

### Acts 25

#### 25:1-12

#### Where was Caesarea and Jerusalem?

[25:1]

See Map: Caesarea; Jerusalem

#### Why did Festus refuse to bring Paul to Jerusalem?

[25:3]

Festus refused to bring Paul to Jerusalem. Some scholars think that because Paul was a Roman citizen, Festus could not transfer Paul to the court in Jerusalem. Other scholars think Festus did not want to stay in Jerusalem long enough for there to be a trial.

See: [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancienttrials.md); [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](../articles/ancienttrials.md)

#### What was a “judgment seat”?

[25:6]

A “judgment seat” was an actual chair in a court upon which the governing ruler sat to make legal decisions for the court.

See: [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancienttrials.md); [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](../articles/ancienttrials.md)

#### Why did Paul appeal to Caesar?

[25:10]

Any Roman citizen accused of crimes for which they could be killed, had the right to appeal to Caesar. The Jewish leaders wanted Paul to be killed. People accused Paul of doing wrong things, but no one tried to find out if he did these things. Felix had the opportunity and the right to release Paul earlier. Because Felix did not release Paul, Paul wanted the Roman emperor to judge him and release him.

See: [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/rome.md); [Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)](../articles/rome.md)

#### 25:13-22

#### Who were the chief priests and elders of the Jews?

[25:15]

See: [Elder](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/elder.md); [Elder](../articles/elder.md)

#### What was a sentence of condemnation?

[25:15]

A “sentence of condemnation” was a decision made by the courts to convict a person of a crime. In this case, the Jews were hoping for Paul to be judged and killed.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Condemn (Condemnation)](../articles/condemn.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

### What was the “religion” about which Festus spoke?\

[25:19]

Some scholars think when Festus spoke about a “religion”(δεισιδαιμονία/g1175), he was speaking about the Jewish religion. That is, it was how the Jews followed the Law of Moses and did certain things to worship God. Fewer scholars think when Festus spoke about a religion, he was speaking about Christians.

See: [Worship](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/worship.md); [Worship](../articles/worship.md)

#### Why did Agrippa say he wanted to hear Paul?

[25:22]

Agrippa said he wanted to hear Paul. Agrippa wanted to be able to give advice to Festus about Paul (see: 25:26). Also, sometimes Roman leaders wanted to hear people teach about God (see: Luke 23:8).

See: [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancienttrials.md)

#### 25:23-27

#### Why did Festus not have something more to write about Paul’s case?

[25:26]

Festus did not have anything more to write about Paul’s case because there was no evidence that Paul did something wrong. Therefore, Festus did not think Paul was guilty of the things people said he did.

See: [Ancient Trials (Lawsuit)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancienttrials.md)

#### Acts 25:1

##### General Information:

Festus becomes the governor of Caesarea. See how you translated this name in Acts 24:27.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to be a prisoner in Caesarea.

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### Festus entered the province

Possible meanings are 1) Festus arrived in the area to begin his rule or 2) Festus simply arrived in the area.

##### he went from Caesarea up to Jerusalem

The phrase "went up" is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Caesarea.

#### Acts 25:2

##### The chief priests and the prominent Jews brought their charges against Paul

This speaks about accusations as if they were an object that a person could bring to someone else. Alternate translation: "The chief priests and the important Jews accused Paul to Festus"

#### Acts 25:3

##### to summon him to Jerusalem

Some versions translate this as "to have him summoned to Jerusalem." The word "him" refers to Paul. The Jews wanted Festus to have his soldiers take Paul to Jerusalem.

##### for they were preparing an ambush to kill him along the way

They were going to hide along the road and kill Paul as he was passing by, but Festus was not aware of this part of their plan.

#### Acts 25:4

##### Festus answered that Paul was being held in custody at Caesarea, and that he himself was going there soon.

This can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "But Festus said, 'Paul is being held in custody in Caesarea, and I myself will soon return there.'"

#### Acts 25:5

##### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to Festus and the Romans traveling with him, but not to his audience.

##### "Therefore, those who can," he said, "should go there with us

The phrase "he said" can be moved to the beginning of the sentence. Alternate translation: "Then he said, 'Therefore, those who are able to go to Caesarea should go there with us"

##### If there is something wrong with the man

"If Paul has done something wrong"

##### you should accuse him

"you should accuse him of violating laws" or "you should bring charges against him"

#### Acts 25:6

##### down to Caesarea

Jerusalem is higher geographically than Caesarea. It was common to speak of coming down from Jerusalem.

##### sat on the judgment seat

Here "judgment seat" refers to Festus' ruling as judge over Paul's trial. Alternate translation: "sat upon the seat where he acted as judge" or "sat down as judge"

##### Paul to be brought to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his soldiers bring Paul to him"

#### Acts 25:7

##### When he arrived

"When Paul came and stood before Festus"

##### they brought many serious charges

Charging a person with a crime is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could bring to court. Alternate translation: "they spoke against Paul many serious things"

#### Acts 25:8

##### against the temple

Paul says he did not break any rules about who could enter the Jerusalem temple. Alternate translation: "against the entry rules of the temple"

#### Acts 25:9

##### wanted to gain the favor of the Jews

Here "the Jews" means the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "wanted to please the Jewish leaders"

##### to go up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher geographically than Caesarea. It was common to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

##### and to be judged by me about these things there

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "where I will judge you with regard to these charges"

#### Acts 25:10

##### I stand before the judgment seat of Caesar where I must be judged

The "judgment seat" refers to Caesar's authority to judge Paul. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I ask to go before Caesar, so he can judge me"

#### Acts 25:11

##### Though if I have done wrong ... I do not refuse to die

Paul does not believe that he has done wrong, but he shows that he will submit to the law and will not refuse to be punished if he really has done wrong.

##### if I have done what is worthy of death

"if I have done some wrong that deserves the death penalty"

##### if their accusations are nothing

"if the charges against me are not true"

##### no one can hand me over to them

Possible meanings are 1) Festus does not have the legal authority to hand Paul over to these false accusers or 2) the governor should not give in to the request of the Jews.

##### I appeal to Caesar

"I ask to go before Caesar so he can judge me"

#### Acts 25:12

##### with the council

This is not the Sanhedrin that is referred to as "council" throughout Acts. This is a political council in the Roman government. Alternate translation: "with his own government advisors"

#### Acts 25:13

##### General Information:

King Agrippa and Bernice are new people in the story. Though he ruled over only a few territories, King Agrippa was the current reigning king in Palestine. Bernice was Agrippa's sister.

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### to pay an official visit to Festus

"to visit Festus concerning official matters"

#### Acts 25:14

##### After they

"After King Agrippa and Bernice"

##### A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When Felix left office, he left a man in prison here"

##### Felix

Felix was the Roman governor of the area and resided in Caesarea. See how you translated this name in Acts 23:24.

#### Acts 25:15

##### brought charges against this man to me

This is a metaphor that means to accuse someone in court. Alternate translation: "spoke to me against this man"

##### they asked for a sentence of condemnation against him

The abstract nouns "sentence" and "condemnation" can be expressed as verbs. The phrase "a sentence of condemnation" implies that they were requesting that Paul be executed. Alternate translation: "they asked me to sentence him to death" or "they asked me to condemn him to death"

#### Acts 25:16

##### to hand over anyone

Here "hand over" represents sending someone to people who will punish or kill him. Alternate translation: "let someone punish anyone" or "to condemn anyone to death"

##### before the accused had faced his accusers

Here "faced his accusers" is an idiom that means to meet with the people who accuse him. Alternate translation: "before the person whom others have accused of a crime had met directly with those who accused him"

#### Acts 25:17

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true." Festus has just said that an accused man should be able to face his accusers and make his defense.

##### when they came together here

"when the Jewish leaders came to meet with me here"

##### I sat in the judgment seat

Here "judgment seat" refers to Festus ruling over Paul's trial as judge. Alternate translation: "I sat upon the seat to act as judge" or "I sat down as judge"

##### I ordered the man to be brought in

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I ordered the soldiers to bring Paul before me"

#### Acts 25:18

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 25:19

##### their own religion

Here "religion" means the belief system people have toward life and the supernatural.

#### Acts 25:20

##### to stand trial there about these charges

To "stand trial" is an idiom meaning to speak to a judge so the judge can decide if a person is right or wrong. Alternate translation: "to go to trial about these charges" or "for a judge to decide if these charges against him are true or not"

#### Acts 25:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Festus finishes explaining Paul's case to King Agrippa.

##### But when Paul appealed to be kept in custody while awaiting the decision of the emperor

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But when Paul insisted that he stay under Roman guard until the time when the emperor could decide his case"

##### I ordered him to be held in custody

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I ordered the soldiers to keep him in custody" or "I told the soldiers to guard him"

#### Acts 25:22

##### "Tomorrow," Festus said, "you will hear him."

The phrase "Festus said" can be moved to the beginning of the sentence. Alternate translation: "Festus said, 'I will arrange for you to listen to Paul tomorrow.'"

#### Acts 25:23

##### General Information:

Though he ruled over only a few territories, Agrippa was the current reigning king in Palestine. Bernice was his sister. See how you translated these names in Acts 25:13.

##### with much ceremony

"with a great ceremony to honor them"

##### the hall

This was a large room where people gathered for ceremonies, trials, and other events.

##### Paul was brought to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the soldiers brought Paul to appear before them"

#### Acts 25:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Festus again gives information about Paul's case to King Agrippa.

##### all the multitude of Jews

The word "all" is an exaggeration used to emphasize that a great number of Jews wanted Paul to die. Alternate translation: "a great number of the Jews" or "many of the Jewish leaders"

##### they shouted to me

"they spoke very strongly to me"

##### he should no longer live

This statement is made in the negative to emphasize the positive equivalent. Alternate translation: "he should die immediately"

#### Acts 25:25

##### because he appealed to the emperor

"because he said that he wanted the emperor to judge him"

##### the emperor

The emperor was the ruler of the Roman empire. He ruled over many countries and provinces.

#### Acts 25:26

##### to write to my lord

Festus used the word "lord" to refer to the emperor. Alternate translation: "to write to the emperor"

##### I have brought him to you, especially to you, King Agrippa

Here the first "you" is plural and refers to all the men to whom Festus is speaking. The second "you" is singular and refers to King Agrippa. Alternate translation: "I have brought Paul to all of you, but especially to you, King Agrippa"

##### so that I might have something more to write

"so that I will have something else to write" or "so that I will know what I should write"

#### Acts 25:27

##### it seems unreasonable for me to send a prisoner and to not also state

The negative words "unreasonable" and "to not ... state" can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "it seems reasonable to me to send a prisoner and to also state"

##### the charges against him

Possible meanings are 1) the accusations that the Jewish leaders have brought against him or 2) the charges under Roman law that apply to Paul's case.

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 25:3

##### What favor did the chief priest and the prominent Jews ask of Festus?

They asked Festus to call Paul to Jerusalem so that they could kill Paul along the way.

#### Acts 25:5

##### What did Festus tell the chief priest and the prominent Jews to do?

Festus told them to go to Caesarea, where Festus was going, and that they could accuse Paul there.

#### Acts 25:9

##### While judging Paul's case in Caesarea, what question did Festus ask Paul?

Festus asked Paul if he wanted to go up to Jerusalem and be judged there.

##### Why did Festus ask Paul this question?

Festus asked Paul this question because he wanted to gain favor with the Jews.

#### Acts 25:10

##### What was Paul's response to Festus' question?

Paul said that he stood before the judgment seat of Caesar where he must be judged.

#### Acts 25:12

##### What did Festus decide to do with Paul's case?

Festus decided that since Paul had called upon Caesar, then he would go to Caesar.

#### Acts 25:16

##### What did Festus say was the legal custom with the Romans regarding people charged with crimes?

Festus said that the Romans gave the accused person an opportunity to face his accusers and to make a defense against the charges.

#### Acts 25:19

##### What charges did Festus say the Jews had brought against Paul?

Festus said that the charges involved certain disputes about their religion and about a certain Jesus who was dead, but Paul claimed to be alive.

#### Acts 25:26

##### Why did Festus bring Paul to speak before King Agrippa?

Festus wanted King Agrippa to help him write something logical about Paul's case to the Emperor.

#### Acts 25:27

##### What did Festus say would be unreasonable for him to do as he sent Paul to the Emperor?

Festus said it would be unreasonable for him to send Paul to the Emperor without stating the charges against him.

### Chapter 26

**1** So Agrippa said to Paul, "You may speak for yourself." Then Paul stretched out his hand and made his defense.

**2** "I consider myself happy, King Agrippa, to make my case before you today against all the accusations of the Jews, **3** especially because you are an expert in all the Jewish customs and questions. So I beg you to hear me patiently. **4** Truly, all the Jews know how I lived from my youth in my own nation and at Jerusalem. **5** They have known about me from the beginning, if they are willing to admit it, that I lived as a Pharisee, the strictest party of our religion. **6** Now I stand here to be judged because of my hope in the promise made by God to our fathers. **7** It is this promise that our twelve tribes hope to receive as they worship God earnestly night and day, and it is for this hope, king, that the Jews are accusing me. **8** Why should any of you judge it to be incredible that God raises the dead? **9** Now indeed, I myself thought that I should do many things against the name of Jesus of Nazareth. **10** I did these in Jerusalem. I locked up in prison many of God's holy people by the authority I received from the chief priests; and when they were killed, I cast my vote against them. **11** I punished them many times in all the synagogues and I tried to force them to blaspheme. I was furiously enraged against them and I persecuted them even to foreign cities. **12** While I was doing this, I went to Damascus with authority and orders from the chief priests; **13** and on the way there, in the middle of the day, king, I saw a light from heaven that was brighter than the sun, and it shone around both me and the men who were traveling with me. **14** When we all fell to the ground, I heard a voice speaking to me that said in the Hebrew language, 'Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.' **15** Then I said, 'Who are you, Lord?' The Lord replied, 'I am Jesus whom you persecute. **16** Now get up and stand on your feet; because for this purpose I appeared to you, to appoint you to be a servant and a witness concerning the things that you know about me now and the things that I will show to you later; **17** and I will rescue you from the people and from the Gentiles to whom I am sending you, **18** to open their eyes and to turn them from darkness to light and from the dominion of Satan to God, so that they may receive from God the forgiveness of sins and the inheritance that I give to them who are sanctified by faith in me.' **19** Therefore, King Agrippa, I did not disobey the heavenly vision; **20** but, to those in Damascus first, and then at Jerusalem, and throughout all the country of Judea, and also to the Gentiles, I gave them the message that that they should repent and turn to God, doing deeds worthy of repentance. **21** For this cause the Jews arrested me in the temple and tried to kill me. **22** Therefore I have received the help that comes from God until this very day, and I stand and testify to both small and great about nothing more than what the prophets and Moses said would happen— **23** that Christ must suffer, and by being the first to rise from the dead he would proclaim light to our own people and to the Gentiles."

**24** As Paul completed his defense, Festus said with a loud voice, "Paul, you are insane; your great learning makes you insane." **25** But Paul said, "I am not insane, most excellent Festus, but I am declaring words of truth and sound judgment. **26** For the king knows about these things; and so I speak boldly to him, for I am persuaded that none of this is hidden from him; for this has not been done in a corner. **27** Do you believe the prophets, King Agrippa? I know that you believe." **28** Agrippa said to Paul, "In a short time would you persuade me and make me a Christian?"

**29** Paul said, "I pray to God, that whether in a short or long time, not you only, but also all that hear me today, would be like me, but without these prison chains."

**30** Then the king stood up, and the governor, and Bernice also, and those who were sitting with them; **31** when they left the hall, they talked to one another and said, "This man does nothing worthy of death or of bonds."

**32** Agrippa said to Festus, "This man could have been freed if he had not appealed to Caesar."

### Acts 26 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the third account of Paul's conversion in the book of Acts. Because this is such an important event in the early church, there are three accounts of Paul's conversion. (See: Acts 9 and Acts 22)

Paul told the King Agrippa why he had done what he had done and that the governor should not punish him for that.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous)

### Acts 26

#### 26:1-11

#### Why did Paul stretch out his hand?

[26:1]

Some scholars think it was common in those days to raise a hand toward the king in order to greet him. Other scholars think Paul stretched out his hand toward the king because it indicated he was about to make a speech.

#### What did Paul mean by saying he was happy?

[26:2]

When Paul said he was happy, he meant he felt fortunate or blessed to make his case before King Agrippa. King Agrippa was also a Roman and he knew Roman laws.

See: [Bless (Blessing)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/bless.md); [Bless (Blessing)](../articles/bless.md)

#### Who were the fathers?

[26:6]

Some scholars think the fathers about which Paul spoke were Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Other scholars think Paul was speaking about other ancestors of Israel.

See: [Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/ancestor.md)

#### What was the promise God made to the fathers?

[26:6]

God promised many things to these fathers. God promised the messiah, resurrection from the dead, the kingdom of God, and eternal life with God the Father.

See: [God the Father](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/godfather.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md) ; [Kingdom of God](../articles/kingdomofgod.md); [Eternal Life](../articles/eternallife.md); [God the Father](../articles/godfather.md)

#### What did Paul mean when he said, “I cast my vote against them”?

[26:10]

Some scholars think Paul meant that he wanted Christians to be punished and killed. More scholars do not think Paul was a ruler on the Jewish council.

See: [Punish (Punishment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/punish.md); [Punish (Punishment)](../articles/punish.md)

#### What did it mean to “blaspheme”?

[26:11]

See: [Blaspheme (Blasphemy)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/blaspheme.md)

#### 26:12-18

#### Why did Jesus say, “It is hard for you to kick a goad”?

[26:14]

Scholars think that when Jesus said, “It is hard for you to kick a goad” he used a metaphor. In ancient times, people used a goad to make an ox move. If an ox kicked against the stick, this caused more discomfort for the ox. Scholars think Jesus said this to Paul in order to tell Paul that he was resisting God. That is, when Paul wanted to persecute Christians, this fought against God. It was not what God wanted Paul to do.

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md); [Persecute (Persecution)](../articles/persecute.md)

#### How did Paul persecute Jesus?

[26:14]

Paul persecuted Jesus when he persecuted Christians. When he did this, he persecuted Jesus (see: Luke 10:16).

See: [Persecute (Persecution)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/persecute.md)

#### Why did Paul use his old name “Saul” when he talked about when Jesus appeared to him?

[26:14]

Paul said his old name “Saul” when he talked about when Jesus appeared to him because Paul wanted to say exactly what Jesus said to Paul.

#### How was Paul able to “open their eyes”?

[26:18]

Paul was able to open people’s eyes. This is a metaphor. God gave Paul the ability to teach the Gentiles about sin. Before Paul taught them, the Gentiles did not know they sinned. They now knew they sinned.

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md); [Gentile](../articles/gentile.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md)

#### What did it mean to turn, “from darkness to light”?

[26:18]

See: [Light and Darkness (Metaphor)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/lightdarkness.md)

#### 26:19-23

#### What was the heavenly vision?

[26:19]

Scholars think the heavenly vision was the revelation Jesus gave Paul on the road to Damascus.

See: [Vision)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/vision.md); [Vision)](../articles/vision.md)

#### Who were the small and the great?

[26:22]

When Paul wrote about the small and the great, he was speaking about all people. The small included poor and servants. The great included rich people and free people, including King Agrippa.

See: Galatians 3:28; Job 3:19

#### 26:24-32

#### What did Festus mean when he said, “your great learning makes you insane”?

[26:24]

Scholars give several reasons why Festus said Paul was insane.

Festus thought it was insane to believe dead people will become alive again.

Festus thought it was insane to believe Jesus became King by suffering and dying.

Festus thought it was insane to write a report to government leaders in Rome about becoming alive again.

Because King Agrippa was a Jew, he understood Paul. However, he did not think Paul was thinking in the right way.

See: [Resurrect (Resurrection)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/resurrect.md)

**Advice to translators**: Someone who is insane is crazy or is ill and cannot think the right way.

#### What was meant by the words, “this has not been done in a corner”?

[26:26]

When Paul said, “this has not been done in a corner” he used a metaphor. He meant that all the events that were fulfilled God’s promises and people could see these promises being fulfilled. People saw Jesus resurrected. Paul also said that all these events were prophesied by Moses and the ancient prophets of Israel.

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](../articles/fulfill.md); [Prophecy (Prophesy)](../articles/prophecy.md) ; [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### Why did Paul want people to be like him but without prison chains?

[26:29]

Paul wanted people to be like him, but without prison chains. Paul prayed that Agrippa would believe Jesus as Paul believed Jesus. However, Paul did not wish Agrippa to be imprisoned. Paul was imprisoned, but he did not do anything wrong.

#### Why did the king stand up?

[26:30]

Scholars think that both Agrippa and Festus had heard everything they wanted to hear from Paul. When they stood up, this meant that their meeting had ended.

#### Acts 26:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Festus has brought Paul before King Agrippa.

##### Agrippa

Agrippa was the current reigning king in Palestine, though he ruled over only a few territories. See how you translated this name in Acts 25:13.

##### stretched out his hand

"held out his hand" or "gestured with his hand"

##### made his defense

The abstract noun "defense" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "began to defend himself against those who were accusing him"

#### Acts 26:2

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul gives his defense to King Agrippa.

##### I consider myself happy

Paul was happy because he considered his appearance before Agrippa to be an opportunity to speak about the gospel.

##### to make my case

This phrase means to describe one's situation, so that those in court can discuss and make a decision about it. Alternate translation: "to defend myself"

##### against all the accusations of the Jews

The abstract noun "accusations" can be stated as the verb "accuse." Alternate translation: "against all the Jews who are accusing me"

##### the Jews

This does not mean all the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

#### Acts 26:3

##### questions

You can make explicit what kinds of questions this means. Alternate translation: "questions about religious matters"

#### Acts 26:4

##### all the Jews

This is a generalization. Possible meanings are 1) Jews in general who knew about Paul. Alternate translation: "the Jews" or 2) Pharisees who knew Paul. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

##### in my own nation

Possible meanings are 1) among his own people, not necessarily in the geographical land of Israel or 2) in the land of Israel.

#### Acts 26:5

##### the strictest party of our religion

"a group within Judaism that lives by very strict rules"

#### Acts 26:6

##### Now

This word marks a shift from Paul discussing his past to talking about himself in the present.

##### I stand here to be judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am here, where they are putting me on trial"

##### because of my hope in the promise made by God to our fathers

Here the word "hope" is a person's confident expectation that what he desires really will happen. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "trust" or "confidently wait." Alternate translation: "because I trust in the promise made by God to our fathers

##### because of my hope in the promise made by God to our fathers

Hope in a promise is the expectation that the promise will be fulfilled. Alternate translation "because of my hope that God will do what he promised our forefathers he would do" or "because I confidently wait for God to do what he promised our forefather he would do"

#### Acts 26:7

##### this promise that our twelve tribes hope to receive

This speaks about a promise being fulfilled as if it were an object that is received. Alternate translation: "the promise that our twelve tribes confidently wait for God to fulfill"

##### our twelve tribes

The phrase "our twelve tribes" stands for the people in those tribes. Alternate translation: "our fellow Jews in the twelve tribes"

##### worship God earnestly night and day

The extremes "night" and "day" are used together to mean consistently mean Alternate translation: "continually worship God earnestly"

##### king

Paul is addressing King Agrippa by his title, not by his name. Your language may require that you add another word or part of a word, as in older English "O King," or that you add the king's name, as in "King Agrippa," or that you use another expression such as "Your Majesty."

##### that the Jews

This does not mean all the Jews. Alternate translation: "that the leaders of the Jews"

#### Acts 26:8

##### General Information:

Here "you" is plural and refers to the people who were listening to Paul.

##### Why should any of you judge it to be incredible that God raises the dead?

Paul uses a question to challenge the Jews there. They believe that God can raise the dead, but they do not believe that God brought Jesus back to life. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not judge it to be unbelievable that God raises the dead" Or "You should not say that it is impossible to believe that God raises the dead."

##### raises the dead

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "makes dead people come alive again"

#### Acts 26:9

##### Now indeed

Paul uses this phrase to mark another shift in his defense. He is now beginning to describe how he formerly persecuted Jesus's people.

##### against the name of Jesus

The word "name" here stands for the teaching about the person. Alternate translation: "to stop people from teaching about Jesus"

#### Acts 26:10

##### when they were killed, I cast my vote against them

The phrase "were killed" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I voted in agreement with the other Jewish leaders to condemn believers to die"

#### Acts 26:11

##### I punished them many times

Possible meanings are 1) Paul punished some believers many times or 2) Paul punished many different believers.

#### Acts 26:12

##### Connecting Statement:

While talking to King Agrippa, Paul tells about when the Lord spoke with him.

##### While I was doing this

Paul uses this phrase to mark another shift in his defense. He is now telling about when he saw Jesus and became his disciple.

##### While

This word is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. In this case, Paul went to Damascus during the time when he persecuted Christians.

##### with authority and orders

Paul had letters from the Jewish leaders granting him authority to persecute the Jewish believers.

#### Acts 26:13

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 26:14

##### I heard a voice speaking to me that said

Here "voice" stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: "I heard someone speaking to me who said"

##### Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me?

This is a rhetorical question. The speaker is alerting Saul to what Saul is doing to him, and implying that Saul should not do that. Alternate translation: "Saul, Saul, you are persecuting me." or "Saul, Saul, stop persecuting me."

##### It is hard for you to kick a goad

For Paul to resist Jesus and to persecute believers is spoken of as if he were an ox kicking at the sharp stick that a person uses to prod

#### Acts 26:15

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues giving his defense to King Agrippa, quoting his conversation with the Lord.

#### Acts 26:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues giving his defense to King Agrippa, quoting his conversation with the Lord.

#### Acts 26:17

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues giving his defense to King Agrippa, quoting his conversation with the Lord.

#### Acts 26:18

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues giving his defense to King Agrippa, quoting his conversation with the Lord.

##### to open their eyes

Paul helping people to understand the truth is spoken of as if he were helping them to open their physical eyes. Alternate translation: "to make them able to understand the truth"

##### to turn them from darkness to light and from the dominion of Satan to God

Paul convincing people to stop obeying Satan and doing evil things and to start obeying God and doing good things is spoken of as if Paul were taking them out of a dark place where Satan controlled them and into a place where there was light and God controlled them. Alternate translation: "to help them stop doing what is evil, stop obeying Satan, and start trusting and obeying God"

##### they may receive from God the forgiveness of sins

The abstract noun "forgiveness" can be stated as the verb "forgive." Alternate translation: "God may forgive their sins and they may receive"

##### the inheritance that I give

The abstract noun "inheritance" may be stated as the verb "inherit." Alternate translation: "they may inherit that which I give"

##### the inheritance

The blessings that Jesus gives to those who believe in him are spoken of as if they were an inheritance that children receive from their father.

##### sanctified by faith in me

Jesus choosing some people to belong to him is spoken of as if he literally set them apart from other people.

##### by faith in me

"because they believe in me." Here Paul finishes quoting the Lord.

#### Acts 26:19

##### Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true." Paul had just explained what the Lord had commanded him in his vision.

##### I did not disobey

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "I obeyed"

##### the heavenly vision

This refers to what the person in the vision told Paul. Alternate translation: "what the person from heaven told me in the vision"

#### Acts 26:20

##### turn to God

To start trusting God is spoken of as if a person turns to start walking toward God. Alternate translation: "trust in God"

##### doing deeds worthy of repentance

The abstract noun "repentance" can be stated as the verb "repented." Alternate translation: "and start doing good deeds to show they truly have repented"

#### Acts 26:21

##### the Jews

This does not mean all of the Jews. Alternate translation: "some Jews"

#### Acts 26:22

##### to both small and great about nothing

Here "small" and "great" refer to people who are unimportant and important, respectively, and are used together to mean "all people." Alternate translation: "to all people, whether unimportant or important, about nothing"

##### about nothing more than what

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "about the exact thing that"

##### what the prophets

Paul is referring to the collective writings of the Old Testament prophets.

#### Acts 26:23

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes giving his defense to King Agrippa.

##### that Christ must suffer

You can make explicit that Christ must also die. Alternate translation: "that Christ must suffer and die"

##### from the dead

The phrase "the dead" refers to the spirits of people who have died. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

##### he would proclaim light

"he would proclaim the message about the light." To tell people about how God saves people is spoken of as if a person were speaking about the light. Alternate translation: "he would proclaim the message about how God saves people"

#### Acts 26:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and King Agrippa continue to talk together.

##### you are insane

"you are speaking nonsense" or "you are crazy"

##### your great learning makes you insane

"you have learned so much that you are now crazy"

#### Acts 26:25

##### I am not insane ... but

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "I am sane ... and" or "I am able to think well ... and"

##### most excellent Festus

"Festus, who deserves highest honors"

#### Acts 26:26

##### For the king ... to him ... from him

Paul is still speaking to King Agrippa, but he is referring to him in the third person. Alternate translation: "For you ... to you ... from you"

##### I am persuaded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am sure"

##### that none of this is hidden from him

This can be stated in active and positive form. Alternate translation: "that he is aware of this" or "that you are aware of this"

##### has not been done in a corner

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has not happened in a corner"

##### in a corner

This means doing something in secret as if a person went and did something in the corner of a room where no one can see him. Alternate translation: "in a dark place" or "in secret"

#### Acts 26:27

##### Do you believe the prophets, King Agrippa?

Paul asks this question to remind Agrippa that Agrippa already believes what the prophets said about Jesus. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You already believe what the Jewish prophets said, King Agrippa."

#### Acts 26:28

##### In a short time would you persuade me and make me a Christian?

Agrippa asks this question to show Paul that he cannot convince Agrippa so easily without more proof. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you do not think you can convince me so easily to believe in Jesus!"

#### Acts 26:29

##### but without these prison chains

Here "prison chains" stands for being a prisoner. Alternate translation: "but, of course, I do not want you to be a prisoner, as I am"

#### Acts 26:30

##### General Information:

Bernice was the sister of King Agrippa (Acts 25:13).

##### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul's time before King Agrippa.

##### Then the king stood up, and the governor

"Then King Agrippa stood up, and Governor Festus"

#### Acts 26:31

##### the hall

This was a large room for ceremonies, trials, and other events.

##### This man does nothing worthy of death or of bonds

The abstract noun "death" can be stated as the verb "die." Here "bonds" stands for being in prison. Alternate translation: "This man does not deserve to die or to be in prison"

#### Acts 26:32

##### This man could have been freed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This man could have gone free" or "I could have freed this man"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 26:3

##### Why was Paul happy to be able to make his defense before King Agrippa?

Paul was happy to be able to make his defense before King Agrippa because Agrippa was an expert in all the Jewish customs and questions.

#### Acts 26:5

##### How did Paul live from his youth in Jerusalem?

Paul lived as a Pharisee, a very strict sect of Judaism.

#### Acts 26:6

##### What promise of God does Paul say both he and the Jews are hoping to reach?

Paul says that he and the Jews are hoping to reach the promise of the resurrection.

#### Acts 26:7

##### What promise of God does Paul say both he and the Jews are hoping to reach?

Paul says that he and the Jews are hoping to reach the promise of the resurrection.

#### Acts 26:8

##### What promise of God does Paul say both he and the Jews are hoping to reach?

Paul says that he and the Jews are hoping to reach the promise of the resurrection.

#### Acts 26:9

##### Before his conversion, what was Paul doing against the name of Jesus of Nazareth?

Paul was locking up many saints in prison, was approving when they were killed, and was chasing them to foreign cities.

#### Acts 26:10

##### Before his conversion, what was Paul doing against the name of Jesus of Nazareth?

Paul was locking up many saints in prison, was approving when they were killed, and was chasing them to foreign cities.

#### Acts 26:11

##### Before his conversion, what was Paul doing against the name of Jesus of Nazareth?

Paul was locking up many saints in prison, was approving when they were killed, and was chasing them to foreign cities.

#### Acts 26:13

##### What did Paul see on his way to Damascus?

Paul saw a light from heaven that was brighter than the sun.

#### Acts 26:14

##### What did Paul hear on his way to Damascus?

Paul heard a voice saying, "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me?"

#### Acts 26:15

##### Who was speaking to Paul on the way to Damascus?

Jesus was speaking to Paul on the way to Damascus.

#### Acts 26:16

##### What did Jesus appoint Paul to be?

Jesus appointed Paul to be a servant and witness to the Gentiles.

#### Acts 26:17

##### What did Jesus appoint Paul to be?

Jesus appointed Paul to be a servant and witness to the Gentiles.

#### Acts 26:18

##### What did Jesus say he wanted the Gentiles to receive?

Jesus said he wanted the Gentiles to receive the forgiveness of sins and the inheritance from God.

#### Acts 26:20

##### What two things does Paul say he preached everywhere he went?

Paul says that he preached that the people should repent and turn to God, doing deeds worthy of repentance.

#### Acts 26:22

##### What did the prophets and Moses say would happen?

The prophets and Moses said that the Christ must suffer, be raised from the dead, and proclaim light to the Jewish people and to the Gentiles.

#### Acts 26:23

##### What did the prophets and Moses say would happen?

The prophets and Moses said that the Christ must suffer, be raised from the dead, and proclaim light to the Jewish people and to the Gentiles.

#### Acts 26:24

##### What did Festus think of Paul after he heard Paul's defense?

Festus thought that Paul was insane.

#### Acts 26:25

##### What did Festus think of Paul after he heard Paul's defense?

Festus thought that Paul was insane.

#### Acts 26:28

##### What was Paul's desire for King Agrippa?

Paul desired that King Agrippa would become a Christian.

#### Acts 26:29

##### What was Paul's desire for King Agrippa?

Paul desired that King Agrippa would become a Christian.

#### Acts 26:31

##### What conclusion did Agrippa, Festus, and Bernice reach regarding the accusations against Paul?

They agreed that Paul had done nothing worthy of death or bonds, and that he could have been freed if he had not appealed to Caesar.

#### Acts 26:32

##### What conclusion did Agrippa, Festus, and Bernice reach regarding the accusations against Paul?

They agreed that Paul had done nothing worthy of death or bonds, and that he could have been freed if he had not appealed to Caesar.

### Chapter 27

**1** When it was decided that we should sail for Italy, they committed Paul and some other prisoners to a centurion named Julius, who belonged to the Augustan company of soldiers. **2** We boarded a ship from Adramyttium which was about to sail along the coast of Asia. So we went to sea. Aristarchus from Thessalonica in Macedonia went with us. **3** The next day we landed at the city of Sidon, where Julius treated Paul kindly and allowed him to go to his friends to receive their care. **4** From there we went to sea and sailed under the lee of Cyprus, close to the island, because the winds were against us. **5** When we had sailed across the sea past Cilicia and Pamphylia, we landed at Myra, a city of Lycia. **6** There, the centurion found a ship from Alexandria that was going to sail to Italy. He put us on it. **7** When we had sailed slowly for many days and had finally arrived with difficulty near Cnidus and the wind no longer allowed us to go that way, we sailed along the sheltered side of Crete, opposite Salmone. **8** We sailed along the coast with difficulty, until we came to a certain place called Fair Havens, which is near the city of Lasea.

**9** We had now taken much time, the time of the Jewish fast also had passed, and it had now become dangerous to sail. So Paul warned them, **10** and said, "Men, I see that the voyage we are about to take will be with injury and much loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our lives." **11** But the centurion was more persuaded by the master and by the owner of the ship than by those things that were spoken by Paul. **12** Because the harbor was not easy to spend the winter in, most of the sailors advised to sail from there, and if by any means we could reach the city of Phoenix, to spend the winter there. Phoenix is a harbor in Crete, facing both southwest and northwest. **13** When a south wind began to blow gently, the sailors thought that they had what they needed. So they weighed anchor and sailed along Crete, close to the shore. **14** But after a short time a wind of hurricane force, called the northeaster, began to beat down from the island. **15** When the ship was caught by the storm and could no longer head into the wind, we had to give way to the storm and were driven along by the wind. **16** We sailed along the lee of a small island called Cauda, and with difficulty we were able to secure the lifeboat. **17** When they had hoisted the lifeboat up, they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship. They were afraid that they should run upon the sandbars of Syrtis, so they lowered the sea anchor and were driven along. **18** We took such a violent battering by the storm that the next day they began throwing the cargo overboard. **19** On the third day the sailors threw overboard the ship's equipment with their own hands. **20** When the sun and stars did not shine on us for many days, and the great storm still beat upon us, any more hope that we should be saved was abandoned. **21** When they had gone long without food, then Paul stood up among the sailors and said, "Men, you should have listened to me, and not have set sail from Crete, so as to get this injury and loss. **22** Now I urge you to take courage, for there will be no loss of life among you, but only the loss of the ship. **23** For last night an angel of the God to whom I belong, whom also I worship—his angel stood beside me **24** and said, 'Do not be afraid, Paul. You must stand before Caesar, and see, God in his kindness has given to you all those who are sailing with you.' **25** Therefore have courage, men! For I trust God that it will happen just as it was told to me. **26** But we must run aground upon some island."

**27** When the fourteenth night had come, as we were driven this way and that in the Adriatic Sea, about midnight the sailors thought that they were approaching some land. **28** They took soundings and found twenty fathoms; after a little while, they took more soundings and found fifteen fathoms. **29** They were afraid that we might crash on the rocks, so they lowered four anchors from the stern and prayed that morning would come soon. **30** The sailors were looking for a way to abandon the ship and had lowered the lifeboat into the sea, and pretended that they would throw down the anchors from the bow. **31** But Paul said to the centurion and to the soldiers, "Unless these men stay in the ship, you cannot be saved." **32** Then the soldiers cut away the ropes of the boat and let it drift away. **33** When daylight was coming on, Paul encouraged them all to take some food. He said, "This day is the fourteenth day that you have been on constant guard and have gone without food—you have not eaten anything. **34** So I urge you to share some food, for this is necessary for you to survive. For not one of you will lose a single hair from his head." **35** When he had said this, he took bread and he thanked God in the sight of everyone. Then he broke the bread and began to eat. **36** Then they were all encouraged and they also took food. **37** We were 276 souls on the ship. **38** When they had eaten enough, they made the ship lighter by throwing out the wheat into the sea. **39** When it was day, they did not recognize the land, but they saw a bay with a beach, and they discussed whether they could drive the ship onto it. **40** So they cut loose the anchors and left them in the sea. At the same time they loosed the ropes of the rudders and raised the foresail to the wind; and so they headed to the beach. **41** But the ship struck a sandbar and ran aground. The bow was stuck there and remained unmovable, and the stern was broken up by the force of the waves. **42** The soldiers' plan was to kill the prisoners so that none of them could swim away and escape. **43** But the centurion wanted to save Paul, so he stopped their plan; and he ordered those who could swim to jump overboard first and get to land. **44** Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to land.

### Acts 27 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Sailing

People who lived near the sea traveled by boat powered by the wind. During some months of the year, the wind would blow in the wrong direction or so hard that sailing was impossible.

##### Trust

Paul trusted God to bring him safely to land. He told the sailers and soldiers to trust that God would also keep them alive. (See: trust)

##### Paul breaks bread

Luke uses almost the same words here to describe Paul taking bread, thanking God, breaking it, and eating it that he used to describe the last supper Jesus ate with his disciples. However, your translation should not make your reader think that Paul was leading a religious celebration here.

### Acts 27

#### 27:1-12

#### Why did Luke write “we”?

[27:1]

Luke wrote “we” because he went with Paul on the ship. Luke was writing about things that he saw. Some scholars think Luke and Aristarchus were Paul’s servants on the ship. Other scholars think “we” included everyone on the ship.

#### What was the Imperial Regiment?

[27:1]

The Imperial Regiment was a group of eighty soldiers. This regiment was under the command of a centurion named Julius.

#### Where was Adramyttium?

[27:2]

See Map: Adramyttium

#### Why did Paul go to his friends “to receive their care”?

[27:3]

When Paul received the care of his friends, it meant they cared for Paul and helped him.

#### Where was Cyprus, Cilicia, Pamphylia, Myra, and Lycia?

[27:4, 27:5]

See Map: Cyprus; Cilicia; Pamphylia; Myra; Lycia

#### What was an Alexandrian ship?

[27:6]

An Alexandrian ship was a ship from Egypt. These ships were very large and carried a lot of grain.

See: [Grain (Grain Offering)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/grain.md)

See Map: Mediterranean Sea; Alexandria; Egypt; Rome; Italy; Cnidus; Salmone; Fair Havens; Lasea

#### When was the Jewish Fast?

[27:9]

The Jewish fast was usually in September or October. It was also called the Day of Atonement.

See: [Fasting](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fasting.md); [Fasting](../articles/fasting.md)

#### How did Paul know the voyage will bring loss?

[27:10]

Paul knew the voyage will bring loss because he was already in three shipwrecks (see: 2 Corinthians 11:25) and he knew winter storms were dangerous.

See Map: Phoenix; Crete

#### 27:13-38

#### Why did Paul remind the sailors they did not listen to him?

[27:21]

Paul reminded the sailors they did not listen to him because he wanted them to know he spoke wisely when he first spoke to them. He was hoping they would listen to the things he said now. That is, he was going to give them wise advice once again.

See Map: Crete; Cauda

#### How did Paul talk about salvation?

[27:22]

Paul talked about salvation from the storm and shipwreck. He was not talking about the forgiveness of sins. Paul wanted them to eat so they will have the strength to survive.

See: [Sin](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/sin.md); [Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon)](../articles/forgive.md); [Sin](../articles/sin.md)

#### What did Paul mean when he said, “not one of you will lose a single hair from his head”?

[27:34]

When Paul said they will not lose a single hair from their head, he used a metaphor. It meant the men would not die in the storm or shipwreck.

#### Why did they want the ship to be lighter in weight?

[27:38]

They wanted the ship to be lighter in weight so that the ship would not sink and they would be able to get closer to land.

#### 27:39-44

#### Why did the soldiers want to kill the prisoners to keep them from escaping?

[27:42]

The soldiers wanted to kill the prisoners to keep them from escaping because Roman leaders killed Roman soldiers when a prisoner escaped (see: Acts 12:18-19; 16:27). However, God wanted to bring Paul to Rome. The Roman soldier did God’s will when he stopped the soldiers from killing the prisoners.

See: [Will of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/willofgod.md)

See Map: Rome

#### Acts 27:1

##### General Information:

Adramyttium was a city possibly located on the west coast of modern-day Turkey. The word "we" includes the author of Acts, Paul, and the others traveling with Paul, but not the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul, as a prisoner, begins his journey to Rome.

##### When it was decided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When the king and the governor decided"

##### sail for Italy

Italy is the name of the province Rome was in. See how you translated "Italy" in Acts 18:2.

##### they committed Paul and some other prisoners to a centurion named Julius, who belonged to the Augustan company of soldiers.

"they put a centurion named Julius, of the Imperial Regiment, in charge of Paul and some other prisoners"

##### they committed

Possible meanings are that 1) "they" refers to the governor and the king or 2) "they" refers to other Roman officials.

##### a centurion named Julius

Julius is a man's name.

##### the Augustan company of soldiers

Some versions translate the word Augustan as "Imperial" or "emperor's."

##### company of soldiers

This was a group of about 1,00 soldiers. See how you translated this in Acts 21:31.

#### Acts 27:2

##### We boarded a ship from Adramyttium which was about to sail along the coast of Asia

If your language requires a person to act here, you can add human actors: "We boarded a ship that people had brought from Adramyttium; they were about to sail it along."

##### a ship from Adramyttium

Possible meanings are 1) a ship that had come from Adramyttium or 2) a ship that was registered or licensed in Adramyttium.

##### about to sail

"soon going to sail" or "would depart soon"

##### went to sea

"began our journey on the sea"

##### Aristarchus

Aristarchus came from Macedonia but had been working with Paul in Ephesus. See how you translated his name in Acts 19:29.

#### Acts 27:3

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### Julius treated Paul kindly

"Julius treated Paul with a friendly concern." See how you translated "Julius" in Acts 27:1.

##### go to his friends to receive their care

The abstract noun "care" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "go to his friends so they could care for him" or "go to his friends so they could help him with whatever he needed"

#### Acts 27:4

##### we went to sea and sailed

"we started sailing and went"

##### sailed under the lee of Cyprus, close to the island

"the lee of Cyprus" is the side of that island that blocks the strong wind, so sailing vessels are not forced off their course.

#### Acts 27:5

##### Pamphylia

This was a province in Asia Minor. See how you translated this in Acts 2:10.

##### we landed at Myra, a city of Lycia

You can make explicit that they got off of the ship in Myra. Alternate translation: "came to Myra, a city of Lycia, where we got off the ship"

##### a city of Lycia

Lycia was a Roman province, located on the southwestern coast of modern-day Turkey.

#### Acts 27:6

##### found a ship from Alexandria that was going to sail to Italy

It is implied that a crew would sail the ship to Italy. Alternate translation: "found a ship that a crew had sailed from Alexandria and was about to sail to Italy"

##### Alexandria

This is the name of a city.

#### Acts 27:7

##### When we had sailed slowly ... finally arrived with difficulty

You can make explicit that the reason they were sailing slowly and with difficulty was because the wind was blowing against them.

##### near Cnidus

This is an ancient settlement located in modern-day Turkey.

##### the wind no longer allowed us to go that way

"we could no longer go that way because of the strong wind"

##### we sailed along the sheltered side of Crete

"we sailed along the side of Crete where there was less wind"

##### opposite Salmone

This is a coastal city in Crete.

#### Acts 27:8

##### We sailed along the coast with difficulty

You can make explicit that even though the winds were not as strong as before, they were still strong enough to make sailing difficult.

##### Fair Havens

This was a port near Lasea, located on the south coast of Crete.

##### near the city of Lasea

This is a coastal city in Crete.

#### Acts 27:9

##### We had now taken much time

Because of the direction the wind was blowing, the journey from Caesarea to Fair Havens had taken more time than planned.

##### We had now taken

The writer includes himself, Paul, and those who were traveling with them, but not the reader.

##### the time of the Jewish fast also had passed, and it had now become dangerous to sail

This fast took place on the Day of Atonement, which was usually either in the last part of September or the first part of October according to Western calendars. After this time, there was a higher risk of seasonal storms.

#### Acts 27:10

##### I see that the voyage we are about to take will be with injury and much loss

"if we travel now, we will suffer much injury and loss"

##### with injury

If your language has a word for "injury" that results from wrongdoing, you may want to use it here.

##### we are about to take ... our lives

Paul includes himself and his hearers, so this is inclusive.

##### loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our lives

Here "loss" means destruction when referring to things and death when referring to people.

##### not only of the cargo and the ship

Cargo is something that a person transports from one place to another by boat. Alternate translation: "not only the ship and the goods on the ship"

#### Acts 27:11

##### that were spoken by Paul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Paul said"

#### Acts 27:12

##### harbor was not easy to spend the winter in

You can make explicit why it was not easy to stay in the harbor. Alternate translation: "harbor did not sufficiently protect docked ships during winter storms"

##### harbor

a place near land that is usually safe for ships

##### city of Phoenix

Phoenix was a port city on the south coast of Crete.

##### to spend the winter there

This speaks about the season of winter as if it were a commodity that someone can spend. Alternate translation: "to stay there for the cold season"

##### facing both southwest and northwest

Here "faces northwest and southwest" means the opening of the harbor was toward those directions. Alternate translation: "it opened to the northwest and southwest"

##### southwest and northwest

These directions are based on what one sees as one faces the setting sun. Northwest is a little to the right of the setting sun, and southwest is a little to the left of the setting sun.

#### Acts 27:13

##### weighed anchor

Here "weighed" means "pulled out of the water." An anchor is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea to keep the ship from drifting about.

#### Acts 27:14

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul and those traveling on the boat encounter a fierce storm.

##### after a short time

"after a little while"

##### a wind of hurricane force

"a very strong, dangerous wind"

##### called the northeaster

"called 'a strong wind from the northeast.'" The word for "the northeaster" in the original language is "Euroclydon." You can transliterate this word for your language.

##### began to beat down from the island

"came in from the island of Crete, and it blew strongly against our ship"

#### Acts 27:15

##### When the ship was caught by the storm and could no longer head into the wind

"When the wind blew so strongly against the front of the ship that we could not sail against it"

##### we had to give way to the storm and were driven along by the wind

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we stopped trying to sail forward, and we let the wind push us whichever way it blew"

#### Acts 27:16

##### We sailed along the lee of a small island

"We sailed on the side of the island where the wind was not so strong"

##### a small island called Cauda

This island was located on the south coast of Crete.

##### lifeboat

This was a smaller boat towed behind or secured onto a ship, used to take people and goods across water too shallow for the ship and also to escape from the ship if it sank. At this point the lifeboat was in the water being towed by the ship.

#### Acts 27:17

##### they had hoisted the lifeboat up

"they had lifted up the lifeboat" or "they had pulled the lifeboat aboard the ship"

##### they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship

The "hull" is the body of the ship. They tied ropes around it so that the ship would not come apart during the storm.

##### sandbars of Syrtis

Sandbars are very shallow areas in the sea where ships can get stuck in the sand. Syrtis is located on the coast of Libya, northern Africa.

##### they lowered the sea anchor

A sea anchor is something that is towed in the water behind a ship to slow the ship down and make it more stable. It may be a large cloth or a stiff board. Alternate translation: "they let the floating anchor down into the water"

##### were driven along

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "had to go in whatever direction the wind blew us"

#### Acts 27:18

##### We took such a violent battering by the storm

"The wind blew us so roughly back and forth that all of us were badly battered and bruised by the storm"

##### they began throwing the cargo overboard

The word "they" refers to the sailors. This is done to lighten the weight of the ship in an effort to prevent the ship from sinking.

##### cargo

Cargo is something that a person transports from one place to another by boat. See how you translated this in Acts 27:10. Alternate translation: "goods on the ship"

#### Acts 27:19

##### the sailors threw overboard the ship's equipment with their own hands

Here "equipment" refers to the sailors' equipment needed to sail the ship: tackle, hoists, beams of wood, block and tackle, ropes, lines, sails, and the like. This indicates how desperate the situation was.

#### Acts 27:20

##### When the sun and stars did not shine on us for many days

They could not see the sun and stars because of the dark storm clouds. Sailors needed to see the sun and stars in order to know where they were and what direction they were headed.

##### the great storm still beat upon us

"the terrible storm still blew us roughly back and forth"

##### any more hope that we should be saved was abandoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone abandoned hope that we would be saved"

##### any more hope that we should be saved was abandoned

Here the word "hope" is a person's thought that what he desires might happen. Here the men on the boat had no reason to believe that they would be rescued, so they quit hoping. Alternate translation: "we quit thinking that we might be saved"

##### be saved

"be rescued." Since there is no mention of the people praying for God to save them, this might simply have the sense of "survive."

#### Acts 27:21

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul speaks to the sailors on the ship.

##### When they had gone long without food

Here "they" refers to the sailors. It is implied that Luke, Paul, and those with them had not eaten either. Alternate translation: "When we had gone a long time without food"

##### among the sailors

"among the men"

##### so as to get this injury and loss

"and as a result suffer this harm and loss"

#### Acts 27:22

##### there will be no loss of life among you, but only the loss of the ship

Paul is speaking to the sailors. It is implied that Paul also means that he and those with him will not die either. Alternate translation: "none of us will die: the storm will destroy only the ship"

#### Acts 27:23

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 27:24

##### You must stand before Caesar

The phrase "stand before Caesar" refers to Paul's going to court and letting Caesar judge him. Alternate translation: "You must stand before Caesar so he can judge you"

##### has given to you all those who are sailing with you

"has decided to allow all those who are sailing with you to live"

#### Acts 27:25

##### just as it was told to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "just as the angel told me"

#### Acts 27:26

##### we must run aground upon some island

"we must steer our boat so that it wrecks on some island"

#### Acts 27:27

##### Connecting Statement:

The fierce storm continues.

##### When the fourteenth night had come

The ordinal number "fourteenth" can be translated as "fourteen" or "14." Alternate translation: "After 14 days since the storm started, that night"

##### as we were driven this way and that

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as the wind blew us back and forth"

##### the Adriatic Sea

This is the sea between Italy and Greece.

#### Acts 27:28

##### They took soundings

"They measured the depth of the sea water." They measured the depth of water by dropping a line with a weight tied to the end of it into the water.

##### found twenty fathoms

"found 20 fathoms." A "fathom" is a unit of measurement for measuring the depth of water. One fathom is about two meters. Alternate translation: "found 40 meters"

##### found fifteen fathoms

"found 15 fathoms." A "fathom" is a unit of measurement for measuring the depth of water. One fathom is about two meters. Alternate translation: "found 30 meters"

#### Acts 27:29

##### anchors

An anchor is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea, keeping the ship from drifting about. See how you translated this in Acts 27:13.

##### from the stern

"from the back of the ship"

#### Acts 27:30

##### the lifeboat

This was a smaller boat towed behind or secured onto a ship, used to take people and goods across water too shallow for the ship and also to escape from the ship if it sank. See how you translated this in Acts 27:16.

##### from the bow

"from the front of the ship"

#### Acts 27:31

##### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the centurion and the Roman soldiers.

##### Unless these men stay in the ship, you cannot be saved

Paul meant that if those men left the ship, then no one on the ship would be saved. This can be stated positively, and the passive phrase "be saved" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You can be saved only if these men stay in the ship" or "Only if these men stay in the ship will you survive"

#### Acts 27:32

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 27:33

##### When daylight was coming on

"When it was almost sunrise"

##### This day is the fourteenth day that

The ordinal number "fourteenth" can be stated as "fourteen." Alternate translation: "For 14 days"

#### Acts 27:34

##### not one of you will lose a single hair from his head

This was a customary way of saying no harm would come upon them. Alternate translation: "every one of you will survive this disaster unharmed"

#### Acts 27:35

##### broke the bread

"tore the bread" or "tore off a piece from the loaf of bread"

#### Acts 27:36

##### Then they were all encouraged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This encouraged all of them"

#### Acts 27:37

##### We were 276 souls on the ship

"There were two hundred and seventy-six of us in the ship." This is background information.

##### souls

This is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: "people"

#### Acts 27:38

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 27:39

##### bay

a large area of water partly surrounded by land

##### did not recognize the land

"saw land but could not recognize it as any place they knew"

#### Acts 27:40

##### cut loose the anchors and left them

"cut the ropes and left the anchors behind"

##### rudders

large oars or pieces of wood at the back of the ship used for steering

##### the foresail

"the sail at the front of the ship." The sail was a large piece of cloth that caught the wind to move the ship.

##### they headed to the beach

"they steered the ship toward the beach"

#### Acts 27:41

##### a sandbar

an underwater pile of sand that made the water suddenly shallow

##### The bow

the front end of the ship

##### the stern

"the back end of the ship"

#### Acts 27:42

##### The soldiers' plan was

"The soldiers were planning"

#### Acts 27:43

##### so he stopped their plan

"so he stopped them from doing what they planned to do"

##### jump overboard

"jump off the ship into the water"

#### Acts 27:44

##### some on planks

"some on wooden boards"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 27:3

##### How did the centurion Julius treat Paul at the beginning of the journey to Rome?

Julius treated Paul kindly and allowed him to go to his friends and receive their care.

#### Acts 27:7

##### Which island did Paul's ship sail around with difficulty?

The ship sailed around the island of Crete with difficulty.

#### Acts 27:8

##### Which island did Paul's ship sail around with difficulty?

The ship sailed around the island of Crete with difficulty.

#### Acts 27:10

##### Why did Julius the centurion not follow Paul's warning about the dangers of continuing to sail?

Julius did not follow Paul's warning because he paid more attention to the owner of the ship.

#### Acts 27:11

##### Why did Julius the centurion not follow Paul's warning about the dangers of continuing to sail?

Julius did not follow Paul's warning because he paid more attention to the owner of the ship.

#### Acts 27:14

##### After a gentle start to the voyage, what wind began to beat down on the ship?

After a gentle start, a wind called The Northeaster began to beat down on the ship.

#### Acts 27:20

##### After many days, what hope was abandoned by the crew of the ship?

After many days, the crew abandoned any hope that they should be saved.

#### Acts 27:23

##### What message did an angel of God give Paul concerning the people on the voyage?

The angel told Paul that he and all the sailors would survive.

#### Acts 27:24

##### What message did an angel of God give Paul concerning the people on the voyage?

The angel told Paul that he and all the sailors would survive.

#### Acts 27:27

##### At midnight on the fourteenth night, what did the sailors think was happening to the ship?

The sailors thought the ship was approaching some land.

#### Acts 27:30

##### What were the sailors looking for a way to do?

The sailors were looking for a way to abandon the ship.

#### Acts 27:31

##### What did Paul tell the centurion and the soldiers about the sailors?

Paul told the centurion and the soldiers that unless the sailors stayed on the ship, the centurion and soldiers could not be saved.

#### Acts 27:33

##### When daylight was coming on, what did Paul urge everyone to do?

Paul urged everyone to take some food.

#### Acts 27:39

##### How did the crew decide to get the ship to the beach, and what happened?

The crew decided to get the ship to the beach by sailing directly toward the beach, but the bow of the ship became stuck on the ground and the stern began to break up.

#### Acts 27:40

##### How did the crew decide to get the ship to the beach, and what happened?

The crew decided to get the ship to the beach by sailing directly toward the beach, but the bow of the ship became stuck on the ground and the stern began to break up.

#### Acts 27:41

##### How did the crew decide to get the ship to the beach, and what happened?

The crew decided to get the ship to the beach by sailing directly toward the beach, but the bow of the ship became stuck on the ground and the stern began to break up.

#### Acts 27:42

##### What were the soldiers going to do with the prisoners at this time?

The soldiers were going to kill the prisoners so none of them could escape.

#### Acts 27:43

##### Why did the centurion stop the plan of the soldiers?

The centurion stopped the plan of the soldiers because he wanted to save Paul.

#### Acts 27:44

##### How did all of the people on the ship come safely to land?

Those who could swim jumped overboard first, and the rest followed on planks or other things from the ship.

### Chapter 28

**1** When we were brought safely through, we learned that the island was called Malta. **2** The native people offered to us not just ordinary kindness, but they lit a fire and welcomed us all because of the constant rain and cold. **3** But when Paul had gathered a bundle of sticks and placed them on the fire, a viper came out because of the heat and fastened onto his hand. **4** When the native people saw the animal hanging from his hand, they said one to another, "This man certainly is a murderer who has been saved from the sea; Justice does not permit him to live." **5** But then he shook the animal into the fire and suffered no harm. **6** They were waiting for him to swell up or suddenly fall down dead. But after they watched him for a long time and saw that nothing was wrong with him, they changed their minds and said that he was a god.

**7** Now in a nearby place there were lands belonging to the chief man of the island, a man named Publius. He welcomed us and kindly provided for us for three days. **8** It happened that the father of Publius was lying afflicted with a fever and dysentery. When Paul went to him, he prayed, placed his hands on him, and healed him. **9** After this happened, the rest of the people on the island who were sick also came and were healed. **10** The people also honored us with many honors. When we were preparing to sail, they gave us what we needed.

**11** After three months we set sail in a ship that had spent the winter at the island, a ship of Alexandria, with "the twin gods" as its figurehead. **12** After we landed at the city of Syracuse, we stayed there three days. **13** From there we sailed and arrived at the city of Rhegium. After one day a south wind sprang up, and in two days we came to the city of Puteoli. **14** There we found some brothers and were invited to stay with them for seven days. In this way we came to Rome. **15** From there the brothers, after they heard about us, came to meet us as far as the Market of Appius and the Three Taverns. When Paul saw the brothers, he thanked God and took courage.

**16** When we entered Rome, Paul was allowed to live by himself with the soldier who was guarding him.

**17** Then it came about that after three days Paul called together those men who were the leaders among the Jews. When they had come together, he said to them, "Brothers, although I have done nothing wrong against the people or the customs of our fathers, I was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans. **18** After they questioned me, they wished to set me free, because there was no reason for the death penalty in my case. **19** But when the Jews spoke against their desire, I was forced to appeal to Caesar, although it is not as if I were bringing any accusation against my nation. **20** For this reason, therefore, I called upon you that I might see you and speak with you, since it is because of the hope of Israel that I am now wearing this chain."

**21** Then they said to him, "We neither received letters from Judea about you, nor did any of the brothers come and report or say anything bad about you. **22** But we want to hear from you what you think about this sect, because it is known by us that it is spoken against everywhere."

**23** When they had appointed a day for him, more people came to him at his dwelling place. He presented the matter to them, and testified about the kingdom of God. He tried to persuade them about Jesus, both from the law of Moses and from the prophets, from morning until evening. **24** Some were convinced about the things which were said, while others did not believe. **25** When they did not agree with one another, they left after Paul had spoken this one word: "The Holy Spirit spoke well through Isaiah the prophet to your fathers.

**26** He said, 'Go to this people and say,

"Hearing you will hear, but you will never understand;

seeing, you will see, but you will never know.

**27** For the heart of this people has become dull,

and with their ears they hardly hear,

and they have shut their eyes.

Otherwise they might see with their eyes,

and hear with their ears,

and understand with their heart and turn again,

and I would heal them."'

**28** Therefore, you should know that this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles, and they will listen." **29***[*[1](#fn-044-028-029-1)*]*

**30** Paul lived for two whole years in his own rented house, and he welcomed all who came to him. **31** He was proclaiming the kingdom of God and was teaching the things about the Lord Jesus Christ with all boldness without being hindered.

#### Footnotes

28:29 *[*[1](#ref-fn-044-028-029-1)*]*Acts 28:29—Some ancient copies have verse 29:

### Acts 28 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

No one knows for sure why Luke ends his history without telling what happened to Paul after he had been in Rome for two years.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### "Letters" and "brothers"

The Jewish leaders were surprised that Paul wanted to speak with them, because they had received no letters from the high priest in Jerusalem telling them that Paul was coming.

When the Jewish leaders spoke of "brothers," they were referring to fellow Jews, not to Christians.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### "He was a god"

The native people believed that Paul was a god, but they did not believe that he was the one true God. We do not know why Paul did not tell the native people that he was not a god.

### Acts 28

#### 28:1-10

#### What did it mean that the natives offered more than “ordinary kindness”?

[28:2]

The people of Malta showed the shipwrecked people more than ordinary “kindness”(φιλανθρωπία/g5363). That is, they were more kind to these people than other would have been.

See Map: Malta; Phoenicia

#### What did it mean that a viper “fastened” onto Paul’s hand”?

[28:3]

Scholars think the viper bit into Paul’s hand and kept hanging on. That is, it attached itself to Paul’s hand.

#### What was meant by the words, “justice does not permit him to live”?

[28:4]

The people of Malta believed in a goddess named “justice.” This false god judged a person who escaped from captivity. Other scholars think the people in Malta believed that the justice of their god would not let Paul live.

See: [Judge (Judgment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/judge.md); [Judge (Judgment)](../articles/judge.md)

See Map: Malta

#### Who was Publius?

[28:7]

Some scholars think Publius was a Roman whom the Roman government appointed Publius to rule the island of Malta. Other scholars think Publius was very rich and many people knew him. He then became the leader of the island.

See Map: Malta

#### What kind of illness did Publius’ father have?

[28:8]

Scholars think Publius’ father often had fever and dysentery. That is, he was often ill.

#### How was Publius’ father, and the rest of the people healed?

[28:9]

Scholars think Publius’ father and the rest of the people were miraculously healed when Paul placed his hands upon them and prayed for them. That is, God healed the people for whom Paul prayed.

See: [Pray (Prayer)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prayprayer.md); [Pray (Prayer)](../articles/prayprayer.md)

#### 28:11-16

#### What were “the twin gods”?

[28:11]

“The twin gods” were Castor and Pollux. The Greeks believed these false gods were the sons of another false god, Zeus. The Greeks thought that these gods protected ships. Pagan sailors prayed to them for protection in storms.

See: [Pagan](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/pagan.md); [False gods](../articles/falsegods.md); [Pagan](../articles/pagan.md)

See Map: Syracuse; Rhegium; Puteoli

#### Where was Puteoli?

[28:13]

See Map: Puteoli

#### Who were the “brothers” about whom Luke wrote?

[28:15]

Luke wrote “brothers”(ἀδελφός/g0080) to let his readers know they were Christians. They also included Christian women.

See: [Family of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/familyofgod.md)

#### What was the market of Appius?

[28:15]

The Market of Appius was a market on a paved road to Rome. The paved road was about 60 kilometers from Rome.

#### What was the Three Taverns?

[28:15]

The Three Taverns was a place on the Appian Way. It was about 50 kilometers from Rome.

#### How did the soldier guard Paul?

[28:16]

The soldier guarded Paul with a small chain on Paul’s wrist (see: Acts 28:20).

#### 28:17-29

#### What did Paul mean by the word, “brothers” in this context?

[28:17]

When Paul spoke to the “brothers”(ἀδελφός/g0080) here, he was speaking to the Jewish leaders. They ruled over several synagogues in Rome.

See: [Synagogue](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/synagogue.md)

See Map: Rome

#### What was the hope of Israel?

[28:20]

Scholars say the hope of Israel was two things.

They had hope of becoming alive again after death. This was made possible because Jesus died and became alive again.

They had hope of the coming of the messiah. This hope was fulfilled when Jesus came to earth.

See: [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/fulfill.md); [Resurrect (Resurrection)](../articles/resurrect.md) ; [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md); [Fulfill (Fulfillment)](../articles/fulfill.md)

#### What was the “sect” about which the Jewish leaders spoke?

[28:22]

The Jewish leaders wanted to hear from Paul regarding the “sect.” That is, they wanted to know about Christianity and about the things he believed and taught. The Jewish leaders also heard the “sect” was called the Nazarenes.

**Advice to translators**: A sect is a group of religious people who believe the same thing.

#### What was meant by the words, “testified about the kingdom of God”?

[28:23]

When Luke wrote that Paul “testified about the kingdom of God,'' he meant that Paul taught the Jewish leaders about Jesus. He taught them that Jesus is the messiah whom God promised to Israel.

See: [Messiah (Christ)](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/messiahchrist.md); [Kingdom of God](../articles/kingdomofgod.md); [Messiah (Christ)](../articles/messiahchrist.md)

#### Why did Paul say the same thing Isaiah wrote?

[28:25]

Scholars think Paul said the same thing Isaiah wrote because he wanted people to know something. He wanted them to remember what happened when Isaiah lived. At that time, people would not understand what God said to them through the prophets. Now, Paul wanted people to know that the Jewish leaders did not understand what God said to them through the apostles and prophets (see: Isaiah 6:9-10).

See: [Prophet](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/prophet.md); [Prophet](../articles/prophet.md)

#### What did it mean that the people’s hearts had become “dull”?

[28:27]

Some scholars think that when the people’s hearts had become “dull” it meant that the people simply refused to listen and understand God’s messengers. Other scholars think the people’s hearts were dull because they had been disobedient to God’s word for so long, they could no longer understand the things God wanted them to know.

See: [Word of God](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/wordofgod.md); [Word of God](../articles/wordofgod.md)

#### What did Luke write in verse 29?

[28:29]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words in verse 29. Older and more ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have the words of verse 29. Scholars do not think Luke wrote these words.

See: [Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible](https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en_bc/src/branch/master/articles/differencesbible.md)

#### 28:30-31

#### What did Luke mean when he wrote that Paul taught the things about Jesus “with all boldness”?

[28:31]

Scholars think that during these two years Paul was able to teach anyone and anywhere, and no one attempted to stop him from teaching.

#### Acts 28:1

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Paul, the writer, and those who traveled with them, but not to the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

After the shipwreck, people on the island of Malta helped Paul and everyone on the ship. They stay there for 3 months.

##### When we were brought safely through

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When we arrived safely"

##### we learned

Paul and Luke learned the name of the island. Alternate translation: "we learned from the people" or "we found out from the residents"

##### the island was called Malta

Malta is an island located south of the modern-day island of Sicily.

#### Acts 28:2

##### The native people

"The local people"

##### offered to us not just ordinary kindness

Being kind to someone is spoken of as if it were an object that someone offers. Alternate translation: "were not only very kind to us"

##### not just ordinary kindness

This phrase is used to emphasize the opposite of what is said. Alternate translation: "a great deal of kindness"

##### they lit a fire

"they put together twigs and branches and burned them"

##### welcomed us all

Possible meanings are 1) "welcomed all of the people from the ship" or 2) "welcomed Paul and all his companions."

#### Acts 28:3

##### a viper came out

"a poisonous snake came out of the bundle of sticks"

##### fastened onto his hand

"bit Paul's hand and did not let go"

#### Acts 28:4

##### This man certainly is a murderer

"For sure, this man is a murderer" or "This man is truly a murderer"

##### Justice

"Justice" was the name of a goddess that the people on the island worshiped. Alternate translation: "the goddess called Justice"

#### Acts 28:5

##### shook the animal into the fire

"shook his hand so that the snake fell from his hand into the fire"

##### suffered no harm

"Paul was not hurt at all"

#### Acts 28:6

##### waiting for him to swell up

They they that his body would swell because of the snake venom.

##### nothing was wrong with him

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "everything about him was as it should be"

##### they changed their minds

To think differently about a situation is spoken of as if a person is changing his mind. Alternate translation: "they thought again"

##### said that he was a god.

Perhaps the people believed that someone who lived after a poisonous snake bite was divine or a god. This can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "said, 'This man must be a god.'"

#### Acts 28:7

##### General Information:

Here the words "us" and we" refer to Paul, Luke, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### Now in a nearby place

"Now" is used to introduce a new person or event in the account.

##### chief man of the island

Possible meanings are 1) the main leader of the people or 2) someone who was the most important person on the island, perhaps because of his wealth.

#### Acts 28:8

##### It happened that the father of Publius ... fever and dysentery

This is background information about Publius' father that is important to understanding the story.

##### was lying afflicted

"was in bed, ill"

##### afflicted with a fever and dysentery

Dysentery is an infectious disease of the intestines.

##### placed his hands on him

"touched him with his hands"

#### Acts 28:9

##### were healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he healed them too"

#### Acts 28:10

##### honored us with many honors

Probably they honored Paul and those with him by giving them gifts.

#### Acts 28:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul's journey to Rome continues.

##### that had spent the winter at the island

"that the crew left at the island for the cold season"

##### a ship of Alexandria

Possible meanings are this refers to 1) a ship that came from Alexandria, or 2) a ship that was registered or licensed in Alexandria.

##### the twin gods

On the bow of the ship, there was a carving of the two idols called "the twin gods." Their names were Castor and Pollux.

#### Acts 28:12

##### city of Syracuse

Syracuse is a city on the southeast coast of the modern-day island of Sicily, just southwest of Italy.

#### Acts 28:13

##### city of Rhegium

This is the port city located at the southwestern tip of Italy.

##### a south wind sprang up

"the wind began to blow from the south"

##### city of Puteoli

Puteoli is located in modern-day Naples on the west coast of Italy.

#### Acts 28:14

##### There we found

"There we met"

##### brothers

These were followers of Jesus, including both men and women. Alternate translation: "fellow believers"

##### were invited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they invited us"

##### In this way we came to Rome

Once Paul reached Puteoli, the rest of the journey to Rome was on land. Alternate translation: "And after we stayed seven days with them, we went to Rome"

#### Acts 28:15

##### General Information:

The Market of Appius was a popular market village about 60 kilometers south of the city of Rome on a road called the Appian Way. The Three Taverns was another village about 50 kilometers south of Rome.

##### after they heard about us

"after they heard we were coming"

##### he thanked God and took courage

Courage is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could take. Alternate translation: "this encouraged him, and he thanked God"

#### Acts 28:16

##### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader.

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul arrives in Rome as a prisoner but with the freedom to stay in his own place. He calls the local Jews together to explain what has happened to him.

##### When we entered Rome, Paul was allowed to

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After we had arrived in Rome, the Roman authorities gave Paul permission to"

#### Acts 28:17

##### Then it came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### the leaders among the Jews

These are the Jewish civil or religious leaders present in Rome.

##### Brothers

Here this means "Fellow Jews."

##### against the people

"against our people" or "against the Jews"

##### I was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some of the Jews arrested me in Jerusalem and placed me in the custody of the Roman authorities"

##### into the hands of the Romans

Here "hands" stands for power or control.

#### Acts 28:18

##### there was no reason for the death penalty in my case

"there was no reason for them to execute me" or "I had done nothing to cause them to kill me"

#### Acts 28:19

##### the Jews

This does not mean all of the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders"

##### spoke against their desire

"complained about what the Roman authorities wanted to do"

##### I was forced to appeal to Caesar

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I had to ask for Caesar to judge me"

##### although it is not as if I were bringing any accusation against my nation

The abstract noun "accusation" can be stated as the verb "accuse." Here "nation" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "but it was not because I wanted to accuse the people of my nation before Caesar"

#### Acts 28:20

##### the hope of Israel

Here the word "hope" is what a person desires to happen and is confident will happen. In this case it is what the people of Israel hope for. Alternate translation: "what Israel joyfully waits for" or "what the people of Israel confidently expect"

##### the hope of Israel

Paul did not state clearly what Israel hoped for. He may have been referring 1) to their hope that the Messiah would come or 2) to their hope that God would cause those who have died to live again.

##### Israel

Here "Israel" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" or "the Jews"

##### that I am now wearing this chain

Here "wearing this chain" stands for being a prisoner. Alternate translation: "that I am a prisoner"

#### Acts 28:21

##### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers to the Jewish leaders in Rome.

##### Connecting Statement:

The Jewish leaders respond to Paul.

##### nor did any of the brothers

Here "brothers" stands for fellow Jews. Alternate translation: "nor did any of our fellow Jews"

#### Acts 28:22

##### General Information:

Here the words "we" and "us" refer to the Jewish leaders in Rome.

##### you think about this sect

A sect is a smaller group within a larger group. Here it refers to those who believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: "you think about this group to which you belong"

##### because it is known by us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because we know"

##### it is spoken against everywhere

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "many Jews all over the Roman Empire are saying bad things about it"

#### Acts 28:23

##### General Information:

Here all instances of "they" and "them" refer to the Jewish leaders in Rome. All instances of "him," "his," and "He" refer to Paul (Acts 28:17).

##### had appointed a day for him

"had chosen a time for him to speak to them"

##### testified about the kingdom of God

Here "kingdom of God" stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "told them about God's rule as king" or "told them how God would show himself as king"

##### from the prophets

Here "the prophets" refers to what they wrote. Alternate translation: "from what the prophets wrote"

#### Acts 28:24

##### Some were convinced about the things which were said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Paul was able to convince some of them"

#### Acts 28:25

##### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the Jewish leaders in Rome (Acts 28:17). The word "your" refers to the people to whom Paul had been speaking.

##### Connecting Statement:

As the Jewish leaders were ready to leave, Paul quoted the Old Testament scriptures that were appropriate for this time.

##### after Paul had spoken this one word

Here "word" stands for a message or statement. Alternate translation: "after Paul had said one more thing" or "after Paul had made this statement"

##### The Holy Spirit spoke well through Isaiah the prophet to your fathers.

This sentence contains quotations within quotations.

#### Acts 28:26

##### General Information:

Paul begins to quote the book that the prophet Isaiah wrote.

##### He said, 'Go to this people and say, "Hearing you will hear, but you will never understand; seeing, you will see, but you will never know.

This is the end of the sentence that begins with the words "The Holy Spirit spoke" in verse 25 and that contains quotations within quotations. You can translate one of the inner quotations as an indirect quotation, or you can translate two of the inner quotations as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "The Spirit told Isaiah to go tell them that they will hear but will not understand and they will see but they will not know"

##### Hearing you will hear ... seeing, you will see

The words "hear" and "see" are repeated for emphasis. "You will listen carefully ... you will look intently"

##### but you will never understand ... but you will never know

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that the Jewish people will not understand God's plan.

#### Acts 28:27

##### General Information:

Translate Paul's quotation of Isaiah as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation according to how you translated it in [Acts 28:25-26](./25.md).

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes quoting Isaiah the prophet.

##### For the heart of this people has become dull

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if their heart is dull. Here "heart" is a metonym for the mind.

##### with their ears they hardly hear, and they have shut their eyes

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if they are unable to hear and are shutting their eyes so that they will not see.

##### understand with their heart

Here "heart" stands for the mind.

##### turn again

To start obeying God is spoken of as though the person were physically turning toward God.

##### I would heal them

This does not mean God would only heal them physically. He would also heal them spiritually by forgiving their sins.

#### Acts 28:28

##### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes speaking to the Jewish leaders in Rome.

##### this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles

God's message about how he saves people is spoken of as if it were an object that is sent. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is sending his messengers to the Gentiles to tell them about how he will save them"

##### they will listen

"some of them will listen." This response of the Gentiles is in contrast to the way the Jews of that time responded.

#### Acts 28:29

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 28:30

##### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Acts 28:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Luke ends the story of Paul in the book of Acts.

##### He was proclaiming the kingdom of God

Here "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "He was preaching about God's rule as king" or "He was preaching about how God will show himself as king"

### ULB Translation Questions

#### Acts 28:2

##### How did the native people on the island of Malta treat Paul and the crew of the ship?

The native people offered to Paul and the crew not just ordinary kindness, but they also lit a fire and welcomed them all.

#### Acts 28:4

##### What did the people think when they saw the viper hanging from Paul's hand?

The people thought that Paul was a murderer who was not being permitted to live by justice.

#### Acts 28:6

##### What did the people think when they saw Paul was not killed by the viper?

The people thought that Paul was a god.

#### Acts 28:8

##### What happened after Paul healed the father of Publius, the chief man of the island?

The rest of the people on the island who were sick also came and were healed.

#### Acts 28:9

##### What happened after Paul healed the father of Publius, the chief man of the island?

The rest of the people on the island who were sick also came and were healed.

#### Acts 28:11

##### How long did Paul and the crew remain on the island of Malta?

Paul and the crew remained on the island of Malta for three months.

#### Acts 28:15

##### What did Paul do when he saw the brothers from Rome who had come to meet him?

When he saw the brothers, Paul thanked God and took courage.

#### Acts 28:16

##### What were Paul's living arrangements in Rome as a prisoner?

Paul was allowed to live by himself with a soldier who was guarding him.

#### Acts 28:20

##### For what reason did Paul tell the Jewish leaders in Rome he had been chained?

Paul told the Jewish leaders in Rome he had been chained for the confidence of Israel.

#### Acts 28:22

##### What did the Jewish leaders in Rome know about the sect of the Christians?

The Jewish leaders in Rome knew that the sect was spoken against everywhere.

#### Acts 28:23

##### When the Jewish leaders came again to Paul at his dwelling place, what did Paul try to do from morning until evening?

Paul tried to persuade them about Jesus, from both the law of Moses and from the prophets.

#### Acts 28:24

##### What was the response of the Jewish leaders to Paul's presentation?

Some of the Jewish leaders were convinced, while others did not believe.

#### Acts 28:26

##### What did the final scripture quoted by Paul say about the Jewish leaders who did not believe?

The final scripture Paul quoted said that those who did not believe would not understand nor perceive what they heard and saw.

#### Acts 28:28

##### Where did Paul say God's message of salvation had been sent, and what would be the response?

Paul said that God's message of salvation had been sent to the Gentiles, and they would listen.

#### Acts 28:31

##### What did Paul do while a prisoner in Rome?

Paul preached the kingdom of God and taught about the Lord Jesus Christ with all boldness.

##### Who stopped Paul from preaching and teaching while he was a prisoner in Rome for two years?

No one stopped him.

# ULB Translation Words

### Aaron

#### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

* Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
* While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
* God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priests for the people of Israel.

(See also: [priest](#en-priest), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Israel](#en-Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:14
* Acts 07:38-40
* Exodus 28:1-3
* Luke 01:05
* Numbers 16:45

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H175, G2

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aaron, Aaron's

### Abraham

#### Related Words:

Abram

#### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

* The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
* "Abraham" means "father of many."
* God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
* Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
* Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Chaldeans](#en-Chaldeans), [Sarah](#en-Sarah), [Isaac](#en-Isaac))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:08
* Genesis 11:29-30
* Genesis 21:04
* Genesis 22:02
* James 02:23
* Matthew 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H87, H85, G11

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

### Andrew

#### Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

* Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
* Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
* Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [disciple](#en-disciple), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 01:40
* Mark 01:17
* Mark 01:29-31
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 04:19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Andrew, Andrew's

### Annas

#### Facts:

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

* Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
* After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office, so Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
* During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(See also: [high priest](#en-high priest), [priest](#en-priest))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:5-7
* John 18:22-24
* Luke 03:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G452

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Annas, Annas'

### Antioch

#### Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

* The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called "Christians." The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
* The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn't have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
* Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(See also:[Barnabas](#en-Barnabas), [Colossae](#en-Colossae), [John Mark](#en-John Mark), [Paul](#en-Paul), [province](#en-province), [Rome](#en-Rome), [Syria](#en-Syria))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 06:5-6
* Acts 11:19-21
* Acts 11:26
* Galatians 02:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G491

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Antioch

### Apollos

#### Facts:

Apollos was a Jew from the city of Alexandria in Egypt who had a special ability in teaching people about Jesus.

* Apollos was well educated in the Hebrew Scriptures and was a gifted speaker.
* He was instructed by two Christians in Ephesus named Aquila and Priscilla.
* Paul emphasized that he and Apollos, as well as other evangelists and teachers, were working toward the same goal of helping people to believe in Jesus.

(See also: [Aquila](#en-Aquila), [Ephesus](#en-Ephesus), [Priscilla](#en-Priscilla), [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:13
* 1 Corinthians 16:12
* Acts 18:25
* Titus 03:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Apollos, Apollos'

### Aquila

#### Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

* Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy, for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius, forced all Jews to leave Rome.
* After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
* They worked as tentmakers with Paul and also helped him with his missionary work.
* Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(See also: [Apollos](#en-Apollos), [Corinth](#en-Corinth), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:02
* Acts 18:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aquila, Aquila's

### Arabia

#### Related Words:

Arab, Arabian

#### Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

* The term "Arabian" is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
* The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham's son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
* The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
* After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
* In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(See also: [Esau](#en-Esau), [Galatia](#en-Galatia), [Ishmael](#en-Ishmael), [Shem](#en-Shem), [Sinai](#en-Sinai))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:14-15
* Acts 02:11
* Galatians 01:15-17
* Galatians 04:24-25
* Jeremiah 25:24-26
* Nehemiah 02:19-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Arab, Arabia, Arabian, Arabians

### Asia

#### Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
* To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
* All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(See also: [Rome](#en-Rome), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Ephesus](#en-Ephesus))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* 2 Timothy 01:15-18
* Acts 06:8-9
* Acts 16:07
* Acts 27:1-2
* Revelation 01:4-6
* Romans 16:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asia

### Babylon

#### Related Words:

Babylonia, Babylonian

#### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

* Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
* Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
* The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
* Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [[rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-synecdoche])
* In the New Testament, the term "Babylon" is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
* The phrase "Babylon the Great" or "great city of Babylon" refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-metaphor))

(See also: [Babel](#en-Babel), [Chaldeans](#en-Chaldeans), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Nebuchadnezzar](#en-Nebuchadnezzar))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:01
* 2 Kings 17:24-26
* Acts 07:43
* Daniel 01:02
* Ezekiel 12:13
* Matthew 01:11
* Matthew 01:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Babylon, Babylon's, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians

### Barnabas

#### Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

* Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
* When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
* Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
* His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(See also: [Christian](#en-Christian), [Cyprus](#en-Cyprus), [good news](#en-good news), [Levi](#en-Levi), [Paul](#en-Paul))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:36
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 13:03
* Acts 15:33
* Colossians 04:10-11
* Galatians 02:9-10
* Galatians 02:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G921

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Barnabas, Barnabas'

### Bartholomew

#### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

* Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
* He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
* A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [good news](#en-good news), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [miracle](#en-miracle), [Pentecost](#en-Pentecost), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G918

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bartholomew, Bartholomew's

### Benjamin

#### Related Words:

Benjamite

#### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

* He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
* The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The term "Benjamite" refers to a person who belonged to the tribe of Benjamin.
* King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
* The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Rachel](#en-Rachel), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 02:08
* Acts 13:21-22
* Genesis 35:18
* Genesis 42:04
* Genesis 42:35-36
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1144, G958

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Benjamin, Benjamin's, Benjamite, Benjamites

### Berea

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Berea (or Beroea) was a prosperous Greek city in southeast Macedonia, about 80 kilometers south of Thessalonica.

* Paul and Silas fled to the city of Berea after their fellow Christians helped them escape from certain Jews who had caused trouble for them in Thessalonica.
* When the people living in Berea heard Paul preach, they researched the Scriptures to confirm that what he was telling them was true.

(See also: [Macedonia](#en-Macedonia), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Silas](#en-Silas), [Thessalonica](#en-Thessalonica))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 17:11
* Acts 17:13-15
* Acts 20:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G960

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Berea

### Caesar

#### Related Words:

the emperor

#### Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

* The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
* About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
* Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
* When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
* When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
* In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.
* An emperor is the ruler of an empire.

(See also: [king](#en-king), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:06
* Luke 02:01
* Luke 20:23-24
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:17
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2541, G4575

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesar, Caesar's, the emperor

### Caesarea

#### Related Words:

Caesarea Philippi

#### Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

* These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
* The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
* The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
* Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
* Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(See also: [Caesar](#en-Caesar), [Gentile](#en-Gentile), [the sea](#en-the sea), [Carmel](#en-Carmel), [Hermon](#en-Hermon), [Rome](#en-Rome), [Tarsus](#en-Tarsus))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:30
* Acts 10:1-2
* Acts 25:01
* Acts 25:14
* Mark 08:27
* Matthew 16:13-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2542, G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

### Caiaphas

#### Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

* Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
* The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
* Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(See also: [Annas](#en-Annas), [high priest](#en-high priest))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:5-7
* John 18:12
* Luke 03:02
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:57-58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2533

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caiaphas, Caiaphas'

### Cana

#### Facts:

Cana was a village or town in the province of Galilee, located about nine miles north of Nazareth.

* Cana was the hometown of Nathanael, one of the Twelve.
* Jesus attended a wedding feast in Cana and performed his first miracle there when he turned water into wine.
* Some time after that, Jesus came back to Cana and met an official there from Capernaum who requested healing for his son.

(See also: [Capernaum](#en-Capernaum), [Galilee](#en-Galilee), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:1-2
* John 04:46-47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2580

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cana

### Canaan

#### Related Ideas:

Canaanite

#### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

* The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
* This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
* God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(See also: [Ham](#en-Ham), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:19-20
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 09:18
* Genesis 10:19-20
* Genesis 13:07
* Genesis 47:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

### Chaldeans

#### Related Words:

Chaldea

#### Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

* The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
* King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
* After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Shinar](#en-Shinar), [Ur](#en-Ur))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:4-5
* Ezekiel 01:01
* Genesis 11:27-28
* Genesis 11:31-32
* Genesis 15:6-8
* Isaiah 13:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans, Chaldeans'

### Christ

#### Related Ideas:

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

#### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

* Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
* In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
* Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
* Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
* The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
* For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
* This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
* Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
* The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
* Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
* Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [David](#en-David), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [anoint](#en-anoint))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:1-3
* Acts 02:35
* Acts 05:40-42
* John 01:40-42
* John 03:27-28
* John 04:25
* Luke 02:10-12
* Matthew 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

### Christian

#### Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name "Christian" which means, "follower of Christ."

* It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus' followers were first called "Christians."
* A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
* In our modern times, often the term "Christian" is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of "Christian" in the Bible.
* Because the term "Christian" in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a "believer."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "Christ-follower" or "follower of Christ" or perhaps something like, "Christ-person."
* Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
* Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [Antioch](#en-Antioch), [Christ](#en-Christ), [church](#en-church), [disciple](#en-disciple), [believe](#en-believe), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [Son of God](#en-Son of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:7-8
* 1 Peter 04:16
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 26:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5546

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christian, Christians

### Cilicia

#### Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

* The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
* Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
* Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(See also: [Paul](#en-Paul), [Stephen](#en-Stephen), [Tarsus](#en-Tarsus))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:8-9
* Acts 15:41
* Acts 27:3-6
* Galatians 01:21-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2791

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cilicia

### Corinth

#### Related Words:

Corinth, Corinthians

#### Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

* Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
* The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
* On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
* Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
* Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(See also: [Apollos](#en-Apollos), [Timothy](#en-Timothy), [Titus](#en-Titus))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:03
* 2 Corinthians 01:23-24
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2881, G2882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Corinth, Corinthians

### Cornelius

#### Facts:

Cornelius was a Gentile, or non-Jewish man, who was a military officer in the Roman army.

* He prayed regularly to God and was very generous in giving to the poor.
* When Cornelius and his family heard the apostle Peter explain the gospel, they became believers in Jesus.
* The people of Cornelius' household were the first non-Jewish people to become believers.
* This showed Jesus' followers that he had come to save all people, including Gentiles.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [believe](#en-believe), [Gentile](#en-Gentile), [good news](#en-good news), [Greek](#en-Greek), [centurion](#en-centurion))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:01
* Acts 10:08
* Acts 10:18
* Acts 10:22
* Acts 10:24
* Acts 10:26
* Acts 10:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2883

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cornelius, Cornelius'

### Crete

#### Related Words:

Cretan

#### Facts:

Crete is an island that is located off the southern coast of Greece. A "Cretan" is someone who lives on this island.

* The apostle Paul traveled to the island of Crete during his missionary journeys.
* Paul left his co-worker Titus on Crete to teach the Christians and to help appoint leaders for the church there.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:11
* Acts 27:08
* Amos 09:7-8
* Titus 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2912, G2914

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cretan, Cretans, Crete

### Cyprus

#### Facts:

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about 64 kilometers south of the modern-day country of Turkey.

* Barnabas was from Cyprus so it is probable that his cousin John Mark was also from there.
* Paul and Barnabas preached together on the island of Cyprus at the beginning of their first missionary journey. John Mark came along to help them on that trip.
* Later on, Barnabas and Mark visited Cyprus again.
* In the Old Testament, Cyprus is mentioned as being a rich source of cypress trees.

(See also: [Barnabas](#en-Barnabas), [John Mark](#en-John Mark), [the sea](#en-the sea))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:36-37
* Acts 13:05
* Acts 15:41
* Acts 27:04
* Ezekiel 27:6-7
* Isaiah 23:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2953, G2954

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyprus

### Cyrene

#### Related Ideas:

Cyrenian

#### Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

* In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
* Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(See also: [Crete](#en-Crete))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 11:19-21
* Matthew 27:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2956, G2957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyrene, Cyrenians

### Damascus

#### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

* Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
* During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
* Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
* Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
* In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(See also: [Aram](#en-Aram), [Assyria](#en-Assyria), [believe](#en-believe), [Syria](#en-Syria))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
* Acts 09:1-2
* Acts 09:03
* Acts 26:12
* Galatians 01:15-17
* Genesis 14:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1834, G1154

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Damascus

### David

#### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

* When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
* David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
* King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
* David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
* Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](#en-Goliath), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 17:12-13
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Samuel 05:02
* 2 Timothy 02:08
* Acts 02:25
* Acts 13:22
* Luke 01:32
* Mark 02:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1732, G1138

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

David, David's

### Egypt

#### Related Words:

Egyptian

#### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

* In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
* Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
* Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
* For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
* Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(See also: [Herod the Great](#en-Herod the Great), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Nile River](#en-Nile River), [patriarch](#en-patriarch))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 04:7-9
* Acts 07:10
* Exodus 03:07
* Genesis 41:29
* Genesis 41:57
* Matthew 02:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4692, H4693, H4713, H4714, G124, G125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Egypt, Egypt's, Egyptian, Egyptians, Egyptians'

### Elam

#### Related Words:

Elamite

#### Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

* The descendants of Elam were called "Elamites," and they lived in a region that was also called "Elam."
* The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(See also: [Noah](#en-Noah), [Shem](#en-Shem))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
* Acts 02:09
* Ezra 08:4-7
* Isaiah 22:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elam, Elamites

### Ephesus

#### Related Words:

Ephesian

#### Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

* During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
* Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
* A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
* Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
* The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(See also: [Asia](#en-Asia), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Timothy](#en-Timothy))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:32
* 1 Timothy 01:03
* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Acts 19:01
* Ephesians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ephesian, Ephesians, Ephesus

### Ethiopia

#### Related Words:

Ethiopian

#### Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

* Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
* In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
* The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
* God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(See also: [Cush](#en-Cush), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [eunuch](#en-eunuch), [Philip](#en-Philip))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:27
* Acts 08:30
* Acts 08:32-33
* Acts 08:36-38
* Isaiah 18:1-2
* Nahum 03:09
* Zephaniah 03:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G128

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

### Eve

#### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

* God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
* Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
* Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](#en-Adam), [life](#en-life), [Satan](#en-Satan))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:13
* 2 Corinthians 11:03
* Genesis 03:20
* Genesis 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2332, G2096

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

### Galatia

#### Related Words:

Galatian

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
* The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
* One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
* The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(See also: [Asia](#en-Asia), [believe](#en-believe), [Cilicia](#en-Cilicia), [good news](#en-good news), [Paul](#en-Paul), [work](#en-work))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* 2 Timothy 04:9-10
* Acts 16:6-8
* Galatians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1053, G1054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galatia, Galatians

### Galilee

#### Related Words:

Galilean

#### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

* Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
* Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
* Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
* Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#en-Nazareth), [Samaria](#en-Samaria), [Sea of Galilee](#en-Sea of Galilee))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:32
* Acts 13:31
* John 02:1-2
* John 04:03
* Luke 13:03
* Mark 03:07
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galilee, Galilean, Galileans

### Gaza

#### Related Words

Gazite

#### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

* Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
* Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
* Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
* Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.
* A Gazite was a person from the city of Gaz.

(See also: [Ashdod](#en-Ashdod), [Philip](#en-Philip), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Ethiopia](#en-Ethiopia), [Gath](#en-Gath))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:24-25
* Acts 08:26
* Genesis 10:19
* Joshua 10:40-41
* Judges 06:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gaza, Gazites

### Gentile

#### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

* In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
* Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
* The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
* Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
* Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Jew](#en-Jew))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 14:5-7
* Galatians 02:16
* Luke 02:32
* Matthew 05:47
* Matthew 06:5-7
* Romans 11:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gentile, Gentiles

### God

#### Related Ideas:

the living God

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

* God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
* He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
* God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
* He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
* People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
* God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
* The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
* Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
* Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
* Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
* Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
* The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](#en-create), [god](#en-god), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [god](#en-god), [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 10:7-8
* 1 Timothy 04:10
* Colossians 01:16
* Deuteronomy 29:14-16
* Ezra 03:1-2
* Genesis 01:02
* Hosea 04:11-12
* Isaiah 36:6-7
* James 02:20
* Jeremiah 05:05
* John 01:03
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Lamentations 03:43
* Micah 04:05
* Philippians 02:06
* Proverbs 24:12
* Psalms 047:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

### Greece

#### Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

* Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
* The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.

(See also: [Corinth](#en-Corinth), [Gentile](#en-Gentile), [Greek](#en-Greek), [Hebrew](#en-Hebrew), [Philippi](#en-Philippi), [Thessalonica](#en-Thessalonica))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 08:21
* Daniel 10:20-21
* Daniel 11:1-2
* Zechariah 09:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3120, G1671

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greece

### Greek

#### Related Words:

Grecian

#### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

* Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
* The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
* Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
* When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](#en-Aram), [Gentile](#en-Gentile), [Greece](#en-Greece), [Hebrew](#en-Hebrew), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:29
* Acts 11:20
* Acts 14:1-2
* Colossians 03:11
* Galatians 02:3-5
* John 07:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

### Hades

#### Related Ideas:

Sheol

#### Definition:

The terms "Hades" and "Sheol" are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

* The Hebrew term "Sheol" is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
* In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going "down" to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going "up" to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
* The term "Hades" is coupled with the term "death" in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The Old Testament term "Sheol" could be translated as "place of the dead" or "place for dead souls." Some translations translate this as "the pit" or "death," depending on the context.
* The New Testament term "Hades" could also be translated as "place for unbelieving dead souls" or "place of torment for the dead" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
* Some translations keep the words "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation.
* A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(See also: [death](#en-death), [heaven](#en-heaven), [hell](#en-hell), [tomb](#en-tomb))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:31
* Genesis 44:29
* Jonah 02:02
* Luke 10:15
* Luke 16:23
* Matthew 11:23
* Matthew 16:18
* Revelation 01:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7585, G86

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hades, Sheol

### Ham

#### Related Words:

Hamite

#### Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

* During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
* After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(See also: [ark](#en-ark), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [dishonor](#en-dishonor), [Noah](#en-Noah))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:10
* Genesis 07:13-14
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 10:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2526

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ham, Hamite, Hamites

### Hamor

#### Facts:

Hamor was a Canaanite man living in the city of Shechem when Jacob and his family were living in nearby Sukkoth. He was a Hivite.

* Jacob bought a family burial ground from Hamor's sons.
* While they were there, Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah.
* Dinah's brothers took revenge on Hamor's family and killed all the men in the city of Shechem.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Hivite](#en-Hivite), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Shechem](#en-Shechem), [Sukkoth](#en-Sukkoth))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:14-16
* Genesis 34:02
* Genesis 34:21
* Joshua 24:32-33
* Judges 09:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hamor, Hamor's

### Haran

#### Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

* Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
* A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
* A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Caleb](#en-Caleb), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Levi](#en-Levi), [Lot](#en-Lot), [Terah](#en-Terah), [Ur](#en-Ur))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 19:12
* Acts 07:1-3
* Genesis 11:31
* Genesis 27:43-45
* Genesis 28:10-11
* Genesis 29:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2039

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Haran

### Hebrew

#### Facts:

The "Hebrews" were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a "Hebrew."

* The term "Hebrew" also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
* In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Jewish people" or "Israelites." It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [Jew](#en-Jew), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:12-14
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Genesis 40:15
* Genesis 41:12-13
* John 05:1-4
* John 19:13
* Jonah 01:8-10
* Philippians 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5680, G1445, G1446, G1447

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hebrew, Hebrews, Hebrews'

### Holy One

#### Related Ideas:

holy one

#### Definition:

The term "Holy One" is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

* In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase "Holy One of Israel."
* In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the "Holy One."
* The term "holy one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal term is "the Holy" (with "One" being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as "One" or "God").
* This term could also be translated as "God, who is holy" or "the Set Apart One."
* The phrase "the Holy One of Israel" could be translated as "the Holy God whom Israel worships" or "the Holy One who rules Israel."
* It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate "holy."

(See also: [holy](#en-holy), [God](#en-God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 2 Kings 19:22
* Acts 02:27
* Acts 03:13-14
* Isaiah 05:15-17
* Isaiah 41:14
* Luke 04:33-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6918, G40, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy One, holy ones

### Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

#### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

* The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
* Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
* Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
* When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
* The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
* Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: [holy](#en-holy), [spirit](#en-spirit), [God](#en-God), [lord](#en-lord), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [gift](#en-gift))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
* Acts 08:17
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 01:1-2
* Isaiah 63:10
* Job 33:04
* Matthew 12:31
* Matthew 28:18-19
* Psalms 051:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy Spirit, Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

### Iconium

#### Facts:

Iconium was a city in the south central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* On Paul's first missionary journey, he and Barnabas went to Iconium after the Jews forced them to leave the city of Antioch.
* Then the unbelieving Jews and Gentiles in Iconium also planned to stone Paul and his coworkers, but they escaped to the nearby city of Lystra.
* After that the people from both Antioch and Iconium came to Lystra and stirred up the people there to stone Paul.

(See also: [Barnabas](#en-Barnabas), [Lystra](#en-Lystra), [stone](#en-stone))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 14:01
* Acts 14:19-20
* Acts 16:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2430

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Iconium

### Isaac

#### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

* The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
* But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
* God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
* When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
* Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [descendant](#en-descendant), [eternity](#en-eternity), [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Sarah](#en-Sarah), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:28-29
* Genesis 25:9-11
* Genesis 25:19
* Genesis 26:1
* Genesis 26:08
* Genesis 28:1-2
* Genesis 31:18
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaac, Isaac's

### Isaiah

#### Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

* He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
* The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
* Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
* Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
* Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(See also: [Ahaz](#en-Ahaz), [Assyria](#en-Assyria), [Christ](#en-Christ), [Hezekiah](#en-Hezekiah), [Jotham](#en-Jotham), [Judah](#en-Judah), [prophet](#en-prophet), [Uzziah](#en-Uzziah))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:1-3
* Acts 28:26
* Isaiah 01:1
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 01:01
* Mark 07:06
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 04:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3470, G2268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaiah, Isaiah's

### Israel

#### Related Ideas:

Israelite

#### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

* The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
* God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
* The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
* Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
* Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [Judah](#en-Judah), [nation](#en-nation), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:01
* 1 Kings 08:02
* Acts 02:36
* Acts 07:24
* Acts 13:23
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 24:21
* Mark 12:29
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 27:09
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

### Jacob

#### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

* Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
* Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
* Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
* Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
* Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
* A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [deceive](#en-deceive), [Esau](#en-Esau), [Isaac](#en-Isaac), [Israel](#en-Israel), [Rebekah](#en-Rebekah), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:11
* Acts 07:46
* Genesis 25:26
* Genesis 29:1-3
* Genesis 32:1-2
* John 04:4-5
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3290, G2384

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jacob, Jacob's

### James son of Alphaeus

#### Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve disciples. Jesus also called these men apostles.

* His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
* He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [disciple](#en-disciple), [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Mark 14:32-34
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2385

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

James son of Alphaeus

### Jerusalem

#### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

* The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
* Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
* It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
* Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
* People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Christ](#en-Christ), [David](#en-David), [Jebus](#en-Jebus), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [Solomon](#en-Solomon), [temple](#en-temple), [Zion](#en-Zion))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26-27
* John 02:13
* Luke 04:9-11
* Luke 13:05
* Mark 03:7-8
* Mark 03:20-22
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

### Jesse

#### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

* Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
* He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
* The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#en-Bethlehem), [Boaz](#en-Boaz), [descendant](#en-descendant), [fruit](#en-fruit), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [king](#en-king), [prophet](#en-prophet), [Ruth](#en-Ruth), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:12
* 1 Kings 12:16
* 1 Samuel 16:1
* Luke 03:32
* Matthew 01:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3448, G2421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesse, Jesse's

### Jesus

#### Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

#### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

* In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
* Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
* Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [God](#en-God), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [high priest](#en-high priest), [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God), [Mary](#en-Mary), [Savior](#en-Savior), [Son of God](#en-Son of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:11
* 1 John 02:02
* 1 John 04:15
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* 2 Peter 01:02
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* 2 Timothy 01:10
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 05:30
* Acts 10:36
* Hebrews 09:14
* Hebrews 10:22
* Luke 24:20
* Matthew 01:21
* Matthew 04:03
* Philippians 02:05
* Philippians 02:10
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

### Jew

#### Related Ideas:

Jewish, person of Judah

#### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

* People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
* Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
* Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Israel](#en-Israel), [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:05
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 14:5-7
* Colossians 03:11
* John 02:14
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jew, Jewish, Jews, Jews', a person of Judah, the language of Judah, the people of Judah

### Joel

#### Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

* The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
* The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
* In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(See also: [Joash](#en-Joash), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Pentecost](#en-Pentecost))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
* 1 Samuel 08:1-3
* Acts 02:16
* Ezra 10:43
* Joel 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3100, G2493

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joel, Joel's

### Joppa

#### Facts:

In Bible times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

* The ancient site of Joppa is the location of the present-day city of Jaffa, which is now part of the city of Tel Aviv.
* In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
* In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter brought her back to life.

(See also: [the sea](#en-the sea), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [Sharon](#en-Sharon), [Tarshish](#en-Tarshish))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:37
* Acts 10:08
* Acts 11:4-6
* Acts 11:11
* Jonah 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3305, G2445

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joppa

### Joshua

#### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

* Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
* Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
* Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
* In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
* The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
* Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
* There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Haggai](#en-Haggai), [Jericho](#en-Jericho), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
* Deuteronomy 03:21
* Exodus 17:10
* Joshua 01:03
* Numbers 27:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1954, H3091, G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joshua, Joshua's

### Judas son of James

#### Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

* Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
* Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
* The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
* It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#en-Judas Iscariot), [son](#en-son), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judas son of James

### Judea

#### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

* Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
* Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
* If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(See also: [Galilee](#en-Galilee), [Edom](#en-Edom), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Samaria](#en-Samaria))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14
* Acts 02:09
* Acts 09:32
* Acts 12:19
* John 03:22-24
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 04:44
* Luke 05:17
* Mark 10:1-4
* Matthew 02:01
* Matthew 02:05
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 19:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judea

### Levi

#### Facts:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

* The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
* All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
* The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
* Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
* Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#en-Matthew), [priest](#en-priest), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [temple](#en-temple), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 08:3-5
* Acts 04:36-37
* Genesis 29:34
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

### Lystra

#### Facts:

Lystra was a city in ancient Asia Minor that Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia, which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

* Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
* In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
* After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(See also: [evangelist](#en-evangelist), [Iconium](#en-Iconium), [Timothy](#en-Timothy))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 14:06
* Acts 14:08
* Acts 14:21-22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3082

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lystra

### Macedonia

#### Related Words

Macedonian

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

* Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
* Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
* Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
* In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [Berea](#en-Berea), [faith](#en-faith), [good news](#en-good news), [Greece](#en-Greece), [Philippi](#en-Philippi), [Thessalonica](#en-Thessalonica))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* 1 Timothy 01:3-4
* Acts 16:10
* Acts 20:1-3
* Philippians 04:14-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3109, G3110

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Macedonia, Macedonians

### Mary

#### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

* The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
* An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
* Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
* Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
* Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
* Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
* When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
* The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(See also: [Cana](#en-Cana), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Herod the Great](#en-Herod the Great), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [virgin](#en-virgin))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:04
* John 02:12
* Luke 01:29
* Luke 01:35
* Mark 06:03
* Matthew 01:16
* Matthew 01:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Matthew

#### Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi son of Alphaeus.

* Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
* Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
* There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [Levi](#en-Levi), [tax](#en-tax))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 05:27
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 02:14
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 09:09
* Matthew 10:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3017, G3156

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Matthew, Levi

### Mesopotamia

Related Words:

Aram Naharaim

#### Facts:

Mesopotamia is the area of land between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. Its location is in the region of the modern day country of Iraq.

* In the Old Testament, this region was also called "Aram Naharaim."
* The word "Mesopotamia" means "between rivers." The phrase "Aram Naharaim" means "Aram of two rivers."
* Abraham lived in the Mesopotamian cities of Ur and Haran before moving on to the land of Canaan.
* Babylon was another important city in Mesopotamia.
* The region called "Chaldea" was also part of Mesopotamia.

(See also: [Aram](#en-Aram), [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Chaldeans](#en-Chaldeans), [Euphrates](#en-Euphrates))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:09
* Acts 07:1-3
* Genesis 24:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H763, G3318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim

### Midian

#### Related Words

Midianite

#### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. Midian was also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

* When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
* Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
* Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
* Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#en-Arabia), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [flock](#en-flock), [Gideon](#en-Gideon), [Jethro](#en-Jethro), [Moses](#en-Moses))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:16
* Genesis 25:1-4
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Genesis 37:28
* Judges 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Midian, Midianite, Midianites, Midian's

### Molech

#### Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are "Moloch" and "Molek."

* People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
* Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [evil](#en-evil), [god](#en-god), [God](#en-God), [god](#en-god), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [true](#en-true), [worship](#en-worship), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:07
* 2 Kings 23:10
* Acts 07:43
* Jeremiah 32:33-35
* Leviticus 18:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4428, H4432, G3434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Molech

### Moses

#### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

* When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
* God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
* After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
* Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](#en-Miriam), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land), [Ten Commandments](#en-Ten Commandments))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:21
* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:10
* Exodus 09:01
* Matthew 17:04
* Romans 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

### Most High

#### Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

* The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
* The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
* If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#en-God))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:47-50
* Acts 16:16-18
* Daniel 04:17-18
* Deuteronomy 32:7-8
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Hebrews 07:1-3
* Hosea 07:16
* Lamentations 03:35
* Luke 01:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5945, G5310

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Most High

### Nazareth

#### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it took about three to five days to travel on foot.

* Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
* Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
* Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareths synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
* The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [Galilee](#en-Galilee), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Mary](#en-Mary))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:9-11
* John 01:43-45
* Luke 01:26-29
* Mark 16:5-7
* Matthew 02:23
* Matthew 21:9-11
* Matthew 26:71-72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazareth, Nazarene

### Passover

#### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

* The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
* The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
* God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
* It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:07
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* 2 Kings 23:23
* Deuteronomy 16:02
* Exodus 12:26-28
* Ezra 06:21-22
* John 13:01
* Joshua 05:10-11
* Leviticus 23:4-6
* Numbers 09:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6453, G3957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Passover

### Paul

#### Related Words

Saul

#### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

* Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
* Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
* Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
* Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
* Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
* Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
* Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(See also: [Christian](#en-Christian), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:03
* Acts 08:03
* Acts 09:26
* Acts 13:10
* Galatians 01:01
* Philemon 01:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3972, G4569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Paul, Saul, Paul's

### Pentecost

#### Related Ideas:

Festival of Weeks

#### Facts:

The "Festival of Weeks" was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as "Pentecost."

* The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called "Pentecost" which has "fifty" as part of its meaning.
* The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
* In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(See also: [festival](#en-festival), [firstfruit](#en-firstfruit), [harvest](#en-harvest), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [raise](#en-raise))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
* Acts 02:01
* Acts 20:15-16
* Deuteronomy 16:16-17
* Numbers 28:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2282, H7620, G4005

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Festival of Weeks, Pentecost

### Peter

#### Related Words:

Cephas, Simon

#### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

* Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
* Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
* God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
* Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(See also: [disciple](#en-disciple), [apostle](#en-apostle))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:25
* Galatians 02:6-8
* Galatians 02:12
* Luke 22:58
* Mark 03:16
* Matthew 04:18-20
* Matthew 08:14
* Matthew 14:30
* Matthew 26:33-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas, Simon son of Jonah, Simon, Simon's

### Pharaoh

#### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

* Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
* These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
* Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
* Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(See also: [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [king](#en-king))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 07:13
* Acts 07:21
* Genesis 12:15
* Genesis 40:07
* Genesis 41:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharaoh, king of Egypt, Pharaoh's

### Pharisee

#### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

* Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
* Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
* They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
* The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
* The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#en-council), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [Sadducee](#en-Sadducee))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:04
* John 03:1-2
* Luke 11:44
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 05:20
* Matthew 09:11
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:38
* Philippians 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5330

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharisee, Pharisees

### Philip

#### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

* God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
* Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
* Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(See also: [Philip](#en-Philip))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:5-6
* Acts 08:06
* Acts 08:13
* Acts 08:31
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 08:40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the evangelist

### Philip

#### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

* Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
* Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
* At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
* Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(See also: [Philip](#en-Philip))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:14
* John 01:44
* John 06:06
* Luke 06:14
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the apostle, the apostle Philip

### Philippi

#### Related Words

Philippians

#### Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. The people of Philippi were called "Philippians."

* Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
* While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
* The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
* Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: [Caesarea](#en-Caesarea), [Christian](#en-Christian), [church](#en-church), [Macedonia](#en-Macedonia), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Silas](#en-Silas))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
* Acts 16:11
* Matthew 16:13-16
* Philippians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5374, G5375

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philippi, Philippians

### Phoenicia

#### Facts:

In ancient times, Phoenicia was a wealthy nation located in Canaan along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel.

* Phoenicia occupied an area of land that was in the western region of what is the present-day country of Lebanon.
* In New Testament times, the capital of Phoenicia was Tyre. Another important Phoenician city was Sidon. Phoenicia was near Syria, so people from that area were called "Syrophoenician."
* Phoenicians were well-known for their woodworking skills using their country's plentiful cedar trees, for their production of a costly purple dye, and for their ability to travel and trade by sea. They were also highly skilled boat builders.
* One of the earliest alphabets was created by the Phoenician people. Their alphabet was widely used because of their contact with many people groups through trading.

(See also: [cedar](#en-cedar), [purple](#en-purple), [Sidon](#en-Sidon), [Tyre](#en-Tyre))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 11:19-21
* Acts 15:3-4
* Acts 21:02
* Isaiah 23:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3667, G4949, G5403

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Phoenicia, Syrophoenician

### Pilate

#### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

* Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
* The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
* Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(See also: [crucify](#en-crucify), [governor](#en-governor), [guilt](#en-guilt), [Judea](#en-Judea), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:27-28
* Acts 13:28
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 15:02
* Matthew 27:13
* Matthew 27:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4091, G4194

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pilate, Pontius Pilate

### Pontus

#### Facts:

Pontus was a Roman province during the time of the Roman Empire and the early Church. It was located along the southern coast of the Black Sea, in the northern part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* As recorded in the book of Acts, people from the province of Pontus were in Jerusalem when the Holy Spirit first came to the apostles on the Day of Pentecost.
* A believer named Aquila was from Pontus.
* When Peter was writing to Christians who were scattered into different regions, Pontus was one of the regions he mentioned.

(See also: [Aquila](#en-Aquila), [Pentecost](#en-Pentecost))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* Acts 02:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4193, G4195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pontus

### Priscilla

#### Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work. She was also known as Prisca.

* Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
* Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
* When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
* From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
* They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [Christian](#en-Christian), [Corinth](#en-Corinth), [Ephesus](#en-Ephesus), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Rome](#en-Rome), [Syria](#en-Syria))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:01
* Acts 18:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's:

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Priscilla, Prisca

### Rome

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

* The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
* The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
* The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
* The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](#en-good news), [the sea](#en-the sea), [Pilate](#en-Pilate), [Paul](#en-Paul))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 01:15-18
* Acts 22:25
* Acts 28:14
* John 11:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4514, G4516

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rome, Roman, Romans

### Sabbath

#### Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

* After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
* The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
* Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
* Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
* Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
* Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [rest](#en-rest))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
* Acts 13:26-27
* Exodus 31:14
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Lamentations 02:06
* Leviticus 19:03
* Luke 13:14
* Mark 02:27
* Matthew 12:02
* Nehemiah 10:32-33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sabbath, Sabbaths

### Sadducee

#### Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

* Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
* The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
* The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
* Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](#en-chief priests), [council](#en-council), [high priest](#en-high priest), [hypocrite](#en-hypocrite), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities), [Pharisee](#en-Pharisee), [priest](#en-priest))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:03
* Acts 05:17-18
* Luke 20:27
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4523

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sadducee, Sadducees

### Samaria

#### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The Plain of Sharon is west of this region, and the Jordan River is east of this region. The people of Samaria were called Samaritans.

* In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
* When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
* The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
* Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
* The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
* In New Testament times, the region of Galilee was north of Samaria, and the region of Judea was south of Samaria.

(See also: [Assyria](#en-Assyria), [Galilee](#en-Galilee), [Judea](#en-Judea), [Sharon](#en-Sharon), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:1-3
* Acts 08:05
* John 04:4-5
* Luke 09:51-53
* Luke 10:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samaria, Samaria's, Samaritan, Samaritans

### Samuel

#### Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

* Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
* Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
* Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
* To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
* God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(See also: [Hannah](#en-Hannah), [judge](#en-judge), [prophet](#en-prophet), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 01:19
* 1 Samuel 09:24
* 1 Samuel 12:17
* Acts 03:24
* Acts 13:20
* Hebrews 11:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8050, G4545

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samuel, Samuel's

### Satan

#### Related Ideas:

devil, evil one

#### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

* The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
* Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
* God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
* The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
* The word "devil" means "accuser."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
* "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
* These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
* Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon](#en-demon), [evil](#en-evil), [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God), [tempt](#en-tempt))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:08
* 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
* 1 Timothy 05:15
* Acts 13:10
* Job 01:08
* Mark 08:33
* Zechariah 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7854, G1140, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Satan, devil, devil's, evil one

### Saul

#### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

* Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
* Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
* In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(See also: [king](#en-king))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
* 1 Samuel 09:01
* 2 Samuel 01:1-2
* Acts 13:22
* Psalm 018:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7586, G4549

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Saul, Saul's

### Savior

#### Definitions:

The term "savior" refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

* In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
* In the New Testament, "Savior" is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, "Savior" should be translated with a word that is related to the words "save" and "salvation."
* Ways to translate this term could include "the One who saves" or "God, who saves" or "who delivers from danger" or "who rescues from enemies" or "Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin."

(See also: [deliver](#en-deliver), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [save](#en-save), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 04:10
* 2 Peter 02:20
* Acts 05:29-32
* Isaiah 60:15-16
* Luke 01:47
* Psalms 106:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3467, G4990

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Savior, savior

### Sea of Reeds

#### Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

* The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
* The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
* The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
* This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: [Arabia](#en-Arabia)**.** [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Egypt](#en-Egypt))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:35-37
* Exodus 13:17-18
* Joshua 04:22-24
* Numbers 14:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Sharon

#### Related Words

Lasharon

#### Facts:

Sharon was the name of a flat, fertile area of land along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, south of Mount Carmel. It is also known as the "Plain of Sharon."

* Several cities mentioned in the Bible were located on the Plain of Sharon, including Joppa, Lydda, and Caesarea.
* This could be translated as "the plain called Sharon" or "Sharon Plain."
* People who lived in the region of Sharon were called "Sharonites."
* "Lasharon" is probably another name for "Sharon."

(See also: [Caesarea](#en-Caesarea), [Carmel](#en-Carmel), [Joppa](#en-Joppa), [the sea](#en-the sea))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:16-17
* Acts 09:35
* Isaiah 33:9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8289, H8290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sharon, Plain of Sharon, Lasharon

### Shechem

#### Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

* The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
* Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
* Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [Hamor](#en-Hamor)

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Esau](#en-Esau), [Hamor](#en-Hamor), [Hivite](#en-Hivite), [Jacob](#en-Jacob))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:14-16
* Genesis 12:6-7
* Genesis 33:19
* Genesis 37:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7928, H7930

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shechem, Shechem's

### Sidon

#### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

* The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
* The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
* In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Noah](#en-Noah), [Phoenicia](#en-Phoenicia), [the sea](#en-the sea), [Tyre](#en-Tyre))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Acts 27:3-6
* Genesis 10:15-18
* Genesis 10:19
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sidon, Sidonians

### Silas

#### Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem. He was also known as Silvanus.

* The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
* Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
* Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(See also: [Antioch](#en-Antioch), [Barnabas](#en-Barnabas), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Philippi](#en-Philippi), [prison](#en-prison), [testimony](#en-testimony))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:12
* 1 Thessalonians 01:1
* 2 Thessalonians 01:01
* Acts 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4609, G4610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Silas, Silvanus

### Simeon

#### Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

* In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel. They were the Simeonites.
* The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
* When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Christ](#en-Christ), [dedicate](#en-dedicate), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Judah](#en-Judah), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:33
* Genesis 34:25
* Genesis 42:35-36
* Genesis 43:21-23
* Luke 02:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Simeon, Simeon's, Simeonites

### Simon the Zealot

#### Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

* Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
* Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
* The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
* Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [disciple](#en-disciple), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Simon the Zealot, Simon ... Zealot

### Sinai

#### Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

* Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
* The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
* God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: [desert](#en-desert), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Horeb](#en-Horeb), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land), [Ten Commandments](#en-Ten Commandments))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:29-30
* Exodus 16:1-3
* Galatians 04:24
* Leviticus 27:34
* Numbers 01:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5514, G3735, G4614

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sinai, Mount Sinai

### Solomon

#### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

* When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
* Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
* Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
* Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(See also: [Bathsheba](#en-Bathsheba), [David](#en-David), [Israel](#en-Israel), [Judah](#en-Judah), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:47-50
* Luke 12:27
* Matthew 01:7-8
* Matthew 06:29
* Matthew 12:42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8010, G4672

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Solomon, Solomon's, King Solomon, King Solomon's

### Son of God

#### Related Ideas:

the Son

#### Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

* Unlike anyone else, God the Father, the Son of God, and the Holy Spirit are all one God.
* God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all fully and equally God.
* The Son of God has the same character as God the Father.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
* Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
* Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
* The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [father](#en-father), [God](#en-God), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [son](#en-son), [sons of God](#en-sons of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:10
* Acts 09:20
* Colossians 01:17
* Galatians 02:20
* Hebrews 04:14
* John 03:18
* Luke 10:22
* Matthew 11:27
* Revelation 02:18
* Romans 08:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of God, the Son

### Son of Man

#### Related Ideas:

mankind, son of man

#### Definition:

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

* In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
* Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
* The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
* Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
* These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
* Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
* Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
* When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: [heaven](#en-heaven), [son](#en-son), [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:56
* Daniel 07:14
* Ezekiel 43:6-8
* John 03:12-13
* Luke 06:05
* Mark 02:10
* Matthew 13:37
* Psalms 080:17-18
* Revelation 14:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of Man, mankind, son of man

### Stephen

#### Facts:

Stephen is most remembered as the first Christian martyr, that is, the first person to be killed because of his faith in Jesus. The facts about his life and death are recorded in the book of Acts.

* Stephen was appointed by the early Church in Jerusalem to serve the Christians as a deacon by providing food for widows and other Christians in need.
* Certain Jews falsely accused Stephen of speaking against God and against the laws of Moses.
* Stephen boldly spoke the truth about Jesus the Messiah, beginning with the history of God's dealings with the people of Israel.
* The Jewish leaders were furious and executed Stephen by stoning him to death outside the city.
* His execution was witnessed by Saul of Tarsus, who later became the apostle Paul.
* Stephen is also well-known for his last words before he died, "Lord, please do not hold this sin against them," which showed the love he had for others.

(See also: [appoint](#en-appoint), [deacon](#en-deacon), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [Paul](#en-Paul), [stone](#en-stone), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:05
* Acts 06:09
* Acts 06:10-11
* Acts 06:12
* Acts 07:59
* Acts 11:19
* Acts 22:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4736

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Stephen, Stephen's

### Syria

#### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

* In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
* Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
* Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
* Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
* Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(See also: [Aram](#en-Aram), [commander](#en-commander), [Damascus](#en-Damascus), [descendant](#en-descendant), [Elisha](#en-Elisha), [leper](#en-leper), [Naaman](#en-Naaman), [persecute](#en-persecute), [prophet](#en-prophet))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:23
* Acts 15:41
* Acts 20:03
* Galatians 01:21-24
* Matthew 04:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H758, G4947, G4948

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Syria, Syrian

### Tarsus

#### Facts:

Tarsus was a prosperous city in the Roman province of Cilicia, in what is now south central Turkey.

* Tarsus was located along a major river and near the Mediterranean Sea, so it was part of an important trade route.
* At one time it was the capital of Cilicia.
* In the New Testament, Tarsus was best known as the hometown of Paul the apostle.

(See also: [Cilicia](#en-Cilicia), [Paul](#en-Paul), [province](#en-province), [the sea](#en-the sea))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:11
* Acts 09:30
* Acts 11:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5018, G5019

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tarsus

### Thessalonica

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the "Thessalonians."

* The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
* Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
* Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(See also: [Macedonia](#en-Macedonia), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:1
* 2 Thessalonians 01:01
* 2 Timothy 04:9-10
* Acts 17:01
* Philippians 04:14-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2331, G2332

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians

### Thomas

#### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

* Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
* After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [disciple](#en-disciple), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 11:15-16
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2381

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thomas, Thomas'

### Timothy

#### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

* Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
* The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
* Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(See also: [appoint](#en-appoint), [believe](#en-believe), [church](#en-church), [Greek](#en-Greek), [minister](#en-minister))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:02
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* Acts 16:03
* Colossians 01:01
* Philemon 01:01
* Philippians 01:01
* Philippians 02:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5095

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Timothy, Timothy's

### Troas

#### Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

* Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
* On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
* When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(See also: [Asia](#en-Asia), [preach](#en-preach), [province](#en-province), [raise](#en-raise), [Rome](#en-Rome), [scroll](#en-scroll), [Timothy](#en-Timothy))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 02:13
* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Acts 16:08
* Acts 20:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5174

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Troas

### Tychicus

#### Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

* Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
* Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
* Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(See also: [Asia](#en-Asia), [beloved](#en-beloved), [Colossae](#en-Colossae), [Ephesus](#en-Ephesus), [faithful](#en-faithful), [good news](#en-good news), [minister](#en-minister))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Colossians 04:09
* Titus 03:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5190

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tychicus, Tychicus'

### Tyre

#### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

* Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
* Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
* King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
* Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
* Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [cedar](#en-cedar), [Israel](#en-Israel), [the sea](#en-the sea), [Phoenicia](#en-Phoenicia), [Sidon](#en-Sidon))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tyre, Tyrians

### accuse

#### Related Ideas:

accusation, accuser

#### Definition:

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

* A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
* In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 19:40
* Hosea 04:04
* Jeremiah 02:9-11
* Luke 06:6-8
* Romans 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2778, H3198, H6818, G1458, G2649, G2723, G2724

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accusation, accusations, accuse, accused, accuser, accusers, accuses, accusing

### acknowledge

#### Related Ideas:

admit

#### Definitions:

The term "acknowledge" means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

* To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
* People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
* To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of acknowledging that something is true, "acknowledge" could be translated as "admit" or "declare" or "confess to be true" or "believe."
* When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as "accept" or "recognize the value of" or "tell others that (the person) is faithful."
* In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as "believe and obey God" or "declare who God is" or "tell other people about how great God is" or "confess that what God says and does is true."

(See also: [obey](#en-obey), [glory](#en-glory), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:38-39
* Jeremiah 09:4-6
* Job 34:26-28
* Leviticus 22:32
* Psalm 029:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3045, H3046, H5046, H5234, H6942, G1492, G1921, G3140, G3670

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acknowledge, acknowledged, acknowledges, admit, admitted

### adopt

#### Related Ideas:

adoption

#### Definition:

The terms "adopt" and "adoption" refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

* The Bible uses "adoption" and "adopt" in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
* As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
* The phrase "experience adoption as sons" could be translated as "be adopted by God as his children" or "become God's (spiritual) children."
* To "wait for the adoption of sons" could be translated as "look forward to becoming God's children" or "wait expectantly for God to receive as children."
* The phrase "adopt them" could be translated as "receive them as his own children" or "make them his own (spiritual) children."

(See also: [heir](#en-heir), [inherit](#en-inherit), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 01:5
* Galatians 04:3-5
* Romans 08:14-15
* Romans 08:23
* Romans 09:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5206

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adopt, adopted, adoption

### afflict

#### Related Ideas:

affliction, difficulty

#### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

* God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
* God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
* To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
* In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
* A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
* When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
* Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
* The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leper](#en-leper), [plague](#en-plague), [suffer](#en-suffer))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:06
* Amos 05:12
* Colossians 01:24
* Exodus 22:22-24
* Genesis 12:17-20
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 29:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

### age

#### Related Ideas:

aged, from ancient times, old age

#### Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

* Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
* There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
* Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
* The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
* The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
* The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:28
* 1 Corinthians 02:07
* Hebrews 06:05
* Job 05:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

### alms

#### Related Ideas:

merciful deeds for the poor

#### Definition:

The term "alms" refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

* Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
* Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
* This term could be translated as "money" or "gifts to poor people" or "help for the poor."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:1-3
* Matthew 06:01
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1654

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alms, merciful deeds ... for the poor

### altar

#### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

* During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
* Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
* Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#en-altar of incense), [god](#en-god), [grain offering](#en-grain offering), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 08:20
* Genesis 22:09
* James 02:21
* Luke 11:49-51
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

altar, altars

### amazed

#### Related Ideas:

amazement, appalled, astonished, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marvelous, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful

#### Definition:

Some of these terms mean to be very surprised because of something very unusual that happened. Many of these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened. Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.

* The words "amazed," "astonished," and "astounded" describe someone who is very surprised because of something very unusual that happened.
* The word "appalled" describes someone who is amazed or horrified by something that is bad or evil.
* The word "perplexed" describes someone who is to be amazed and troubled, not knowing what to think or how to act.
* People "marvel" and "wonder" when they are surprised by something very unusual.
* "Amazement" and "wonder" are what people feel when they are amazed.

Some of these terms describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The words "amazing", "astonishing," "marvelous," "remarkable," and "wonderful" describe things that are very unusual and surprise people. \* The word "appalling" describes something that is very bad and causes people to be amazed or horrified. \* The word "incomprehensible" describes something that is so great that people cannot ever understand it. \* A "wonder" is an extraordinary and surprising thing that happens.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
* Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."

(See also: [miracle](#en-miracle), [sign](#en-sign))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:9-11
* Acts 09:20-22
* Galatians 01:06
* Mark 02:10-12
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 15:29-31
* Matthew 19:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H943, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8047, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1411, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amazed, amazement, amazing events, amazing things, appalled, appalling, astonish, astonished, astonishing, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, marvelous things, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful, wondering, wonders

### amen

#### Related Ideas:

let it be so

#### Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

* When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
* In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
* When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as "verily" or "truly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
* When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
* When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
* The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

(See also: [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 27:15
* John 05:19
* Jude 01:24-25
* Matthew 26:33-35
* Philemon 01:23-25
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H543, G281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amen, let it be so

### angel

#### Related Ideas:

archangel

#### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

* The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
* The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
* In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
* Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
* Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
* Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
* A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
* The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
* Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
* The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](#en-chief), [head](#en-head), [messenger](#en-messenger), [Michael](#en-Michael), [ruler](#en-ruler), [servant](#en-servant))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 12:23
* Colossians 02:18-19
* Genesis 48:16
* Luke 02:13
* Mark 08:38
* Matthew 13:50
* Revelation 01:20
* Zechariah 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

### anger

#### Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

#### Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

* When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
* God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
* The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
* A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
* To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](#en-wrath))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 04:26
* Exodus 32:11
* Isaiah 57:16-17
* John 06:52-53
* Mark 10:14
* Matthew 26:08
* Psalms 018:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

### anguish

#### Related Ideas:

anxious, pain

#### Definition:

The term "anguish" refers to severe pain or distress.

* Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
* Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
* For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
* The term "anguish" could also be translated as "emotional distress" or "deep sorrow" or "severe pain."

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 06:24
* Jeremiah 19:09
* Job 15:24
* Luke 16:24
* Psalms 116:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2342, H2470, H2479, H3510, H3708, H4164, H4689, H4691, H5100, H6695, H6862, H6869, H7267, H7581, G928, G3600, G4928

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anguish, inflicts pain, pain, severe pain

### anoint

#### Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

#### Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

* In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
* Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
* In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
* The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
* After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
* The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
* To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
* In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
* A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [consecrate](#en-consecrate), [high priest](#en-high priest), [King of the Jews](#en-King of the Jews), [priest](#en-priest), [prophet](#en-prophet) )

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 1 John 02:27
* 1 Samuel 16:2-3
* Acts 04:27-28
* Amos 06:5-6
* Exodus 29:5-7
* James 05:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

### apostle

#### Related Ideas:

apostleship

#### Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

* The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
* Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
* By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
* It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
* Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [disciple](#en-disciple), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [Paul](#en-Paul), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Jude 01:17-19
* Luke 09:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

### appoint

#### Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

#### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

* To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
* The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
* The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
* To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
* The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
* The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:11
* Acts 03:20
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 13:48
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Numbers 03:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

* In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
* Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
* The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
* In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [basket](#en-basket))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* Exodus 16:33-36
* Exodus 30:06
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Luke 17:27
* Matthew 24:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

### ash

#### Related Ideas:

powder

#### Definitions:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

* In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
* An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
* In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
* When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
* Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
* Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
* When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
* Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](#en-fire), [sackcloth](#en-sackcloth))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:10
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Psalms 102:09
* Psalms 113:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ash, ashes, powder

### asleep

#### Related Ideas:

sleep, sleeper

#### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

* To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
* The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
* To "sleep with one’s fathers" means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.
* To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
* The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
* Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
* Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:27-29
* 1 Thessalonians 04:14
* Acts 07:60
* Daniel 12:02
* Psalms 044:23
* Romans 13:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

### assembly

#### Related Ideas:

assemble together, bring together, call together, come together, community, congregation, crowd, gather, gathering, group, meet, meeting

#### Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

* An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
* In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
* Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
* A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."
* In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
* When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
* The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone."

(See also: [council](#en-council))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:14
* Acts 07:38
* Ezra 10:12-13
* Hebrews 12:22-24
* Leviticus 04:20-21
* Nehemiah 08:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7125, G1218, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assemble, assembled, assembled together, assemblies, assembling, assembly, bring ... together, brought ... together, called ... together, came together, come together, comes together, community, community's, congregation, crowd, gather, gather ... together, gathered, gathered ... together, gathering, gathers, group, joyful assembly, meet, meeting, meetings, met

### assign

#### Related Ideas:

assignment, portion, reassign

#### Definitions:

The term "assign" or "assigned" refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

* The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would "assign" the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
* Moses "assigned" to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
* Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
* Depending on the context, "assign" could be translated as "give" or "appoint" or "choose for the task of."
* The term "assigned" could be translated as "appointed" or "given the task."

(See also: [appoint](#en-appoint), [Samuel](#en-Samuel), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:48
* Daniel 12:13
* Jeremiah 43:11
* Joshua 18:02
* Numbers 04:27-28
* Psalms 078:55

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1486, H2505, H2506, H2706, H3335, H4487, H4864, H4888, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5344, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G3307

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assign, assigned, assigned portion, assigning, assignment, assignments, given ... portion, place assigned, portion, portions, reassign

### authority

#### Related Ideas:

authority to judge, place in charge, put in charge, right

#### Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

* Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
* The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
* The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
* Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
* Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
* Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
* When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
* The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
* The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: [citizen](#en-citizen), [command](#en-command), [obey](#en-obey), [power](#en-power), [ruler](#en-ruler))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:10
* Esther 09:29
* Genesis 41:35
* Jonah 03:6-7
* Luke 12:05
* Luke 20:1-2
* Mark 01:22
* Matthew 08:09
* Matthew 28:19
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2940, H4475, H4910, H4915, H6486, H6666, H6680, H7980, H7990, H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2525, G2715, G2917, G2963, G5247

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

authorities, authority, authority to judge, places ... in charge, put ... in charge, puts ... in charge, right, was ... in charge, were ... in charge

### avenge

#### Related Ideas:

avenger, revenge, see justice done, vengeance, vengefully

#### Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

* Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong.
* When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
* When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
* When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
* Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
* When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
* When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#en-punish), [justice](#en-justice), [righteous](#en-righteous))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:12-13
* Ezekiel 25:15
* Isaiah 47:3-5
* Leviticus 19:17-18
* Psalms 018:47
* Romans 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5352, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

avenge, avenged, avenger, avenges, avenging, have revenge, revenge, see ... justice ... done, vengeance, vengefully

### baptize

#### Related Ideas:

baptism

#### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

* Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
* The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
* Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
* The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
* When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [repent](#en-repent), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:38
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 09:18
* Acts 10:48
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:14
* Matthew 28:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G907

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

baptism, baptize, baptized, baptizing

### basket

#### Related Ideas:

basketful, cage

#### Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

* In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
* A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
* When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
* The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."
* A "cage" is a container in which people keep animals.

(See also: [ark](#en-ark), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Nile River](#en-Nile River), [Noah](#en-Noah))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:33
* Acts 09:25
* Amos 08:01
* John 06:13-15
* Judges 06:19-20
* Matthew 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H8392, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

basket, basketfuls, baskets, cage

### bear

#### Related Ideas:

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

#### Definitions:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

* When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
* To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
* To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
* A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
* The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
* The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
* In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](#en-burden), [Elisha](#en-Elisha), [endure](#en-endure), [fruit](#en-fruit), [iniquity](#en-iniquity), [report](#en-report), [sheep](#en-sheep), [strength](#en-strength), [testimony](#en-testimony), [testimony](#en-testimony))

#### Bible References:

* Lamentations 03:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

### bear

#### Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

* These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
* In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
* While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
* Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [Elisha](#en-Elisha))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1677, G715

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bears

### beast

#### Related Ideas:

animal

#### Definitions:

In the Bible, the term "beast" is often just another way of saying "animal."

* A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
* A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term "livestock" is used to refer to this kind of animal.
* The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God.
* Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
* Ways to translate this could include "creature" or "created thing" or "animal" or "wild animal," depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [Daniel](#en-Daniel), [livestock](#en-livestock), [nation](#en-nation), [power](#en-power), [reveal](#en-reveal), [Beelzebul](#en-Beelzebul))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:32
* 1 Samuel 17:44
* 2 Chronicles 25:18
* Jeremiah 16:1-4
* Leviticus 07:21
* Psalms 049:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H4806, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

animal, animal's, animals, beast, beast's, beasts

### beg

#### Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

#### Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

* Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
* A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](#en-plead))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 16:20
* Mark 06:56
* Matthew 14:36
* Psalm 045:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### believe

#### Related Ideas:

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

#### Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

* believe
* To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
* To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
* To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
* believe in
* To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
* When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
* The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
* To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

* The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
* The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

* In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
* A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":  
\* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right." \* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":  
\* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ." \* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him." \* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus." \* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever": \* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing." \* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [apostle](#en-apostle), [Christian](#en-Christian), [disciple](#en-disciple), [faith](#en-faith), [trust](#en-trust))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:06
* Genesis 45:26
* Job 09:16-18
* Habakkuk 01:5-7
* Mark 06:4-6
* Mark 01:14-15
* Luke 09:41
* John 01:12
* Acts 06:05
* Acts 09:42
* Acts 28:23-24
* Romans 03:03
* 1 Corinthians 06:01
* 1 Corinthians 09:05
* 2 Corinthians 06:15
* Hebrews 03:12
* 1 John 03:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

### beloved

#### Related Ideas:

dear, lovely, treasured

#### Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

* The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
* God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
* In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
* Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
* In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
* Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#en-love))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:14
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 John 04:07
* Mark 01:11
* Mark 12:06
* Revelation 20:09
* Romans 16:08
* Song of Solomon 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

### betray

#### Related Ideas:

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

#### Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

* Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
* The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
* "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
* The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#en-Judas Iscariot), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities), [apostle](#en-apostle))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* John 06:64
* John 13:22
* Matthew 10:04
* Matthew 26:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

### bind

#### Related Ideas:

bond, bound, chain, fetter, put in bonds, put on, restrain, tie, wrap

#### Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

* To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
* In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
* The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
* In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
* The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
* A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
* The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
* A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
* For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.
* The term "bind" can also refer to forbidding an activity.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
* Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
* A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
* The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
* Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
* The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
* To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
* To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
* Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [peace](#en-peace), [prison](#en-prison), [servant](#en-servant), [vow](#en-vow))

#### Bible References:

* Leviticus 08:07
* Matthew 16:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H247, H481, H612, H615, H631, H632, H640, H2296, H3729, H4147, H5178, H6029, H6123, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7576, H8244, G254, G1195, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1249, G1402, G2611, G3784, G4019, G4029, G4886, G4887

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bind, binding, bond, bonds, bound, chain, chained, chains, fetters, is bound, put ... in bonds, puts on, restrain, tie, tie up, tied, tied up, tying, wrapped

### blameless

#### Related Ideas:

blamelessly, faultless, without blame

#### Definition:

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

* Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
* A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
* According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:10
* 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
* 2 Peter 03:14
* Colossians 01:22
* Genesis 17:1-2
* Philippians 02:15
* Philippians 03:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1368, H2135, H2136, H8535, H8549, G273, G274, G298, G299, G410, G423, G677

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blameless, blamelessly, faultless, without blame

### bless

#### Related Ideas:

happier, happy

#### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

* Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
* In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
* When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
* The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
* "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
* "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
* "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
* Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
* In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](#en-praise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 10:16
* Acts 13:34
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 14:20
* Isaiah 44:03
* James 01:25
* Luke 06:20
* Matthew 26:26
* Nehemiah 09:05
* Romans 04:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

### blood

#### Related Ideas:

bleeding

#### Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

* Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
* When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
* Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
* The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
* The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
* Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
* If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](#en-flesh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 14:32
* Acts 02:20
* Acts 05:28
* Colossians 01:20
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 04:11
* Psalms 016:4
* Psalms 105:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bleeding, blood

### body

#### Related Ideas:

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

#### Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

* Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
* When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
* In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
* Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
* When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
* When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
* Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#en-head), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:12
* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* Ephesians 04:04
* Judges 14:08
* Numbers 06:6-8
* Psalm 031:09
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

### bold

#### Related Ideas:

boldly, boldness, emboldened

#### Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

* A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
* In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
* The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: [confidence](#en-confidence), [good news](#en-good news), [redeem](#en-redeem))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
* 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
* Acts 04:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bold, boldly, boldness, emboldened

### bow

#### Related Ideas:

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

#### Note

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](./bowweapon.md).

#### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

* Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
* Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
* Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
* Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
* In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
* The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
* The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
* Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#en-humble), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 05:18
* Exodus 20:05
* Genesis 24:26
* Genesis 44:14
* Isaiah 44:19
* Luke 24:05
* Matthew 02:11
* Revelation 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

### bread

#### Related Ideas:

food, loaf of bread

#### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

* When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
* Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
* Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
* Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
* The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
* The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
* Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
* When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
* Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](#en-Passover), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple), [unleavened bread](#en-unleavened bread), [yeast](#en-yeast))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:46
* Acts 27:35
* Exodus 16:15
* Luke 09:13
* Mark 06:38
* Matthew 04:04
* Matthew 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

### breath

#### Related Ideas:

breathe

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "breathe" and "breath" are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

* The Bible teaches that God "breathed into" Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
* When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to "receive the Spirit," he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
* Sometimes the terms "breathing" and "breathing out" are used to refer to speaking.
* The figurative expression "breath of God" or "breath of Yahweh" often refers to God's wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The expression "breathed his last" is a figurative way of saying "he died." It could also be translated as "he took his last breath" or "he stopped breathing and died" or "he breathed in air one last time."
* Describing the Scriptures as "God-breathed" means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate "God-breathed" somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
* If a literal translation of "God-breathed" is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include "inspired by God" or "authored by God" or "spoken by God." It could also be said that "God breathed out the words of Scripture."
* The expressions "put breath in" or "breathe life into" or "gives breath to" could be translated as "cause to breathe" or "make alive again" or "enable them to live and breathe" or "give life to."
* If possible, it is best to translate "breath of God" with the literal word that is used for "breath" in the language. If God cannot be said to have "breath," this could be translated as "God's power" or "God's speech."
* The expression "catch my breath" or "get my breath" could be translated as "relax in order to breathe more slowly" or "stop running in order to breathe normally."
* The expression "is only a breath" means "lasts a very short time."
* Similarly the expression "man is a single breath" means "people live a very short time" or "the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath" or "compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air."

(See also: [Adam](#en-Adam), [Paul](#en-Paul), [word of God](#en-word of God), [life](#en-life))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 17:17
* Ecclesiastes 08:08
* Job 04:09
* Revelation 11:11
* Revelation 13:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, G1720, G4157

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

breath, breathe, breathed, breathes, breathing

### bribe

#### Related Ideas:

bribery, payoff

#### Definition:

To "bribe" means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

* The soldiers who guarded Jesus' empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
* Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
* The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
* The term, "bribe" could be translated as, "dishonest payment" or "payment for lying" or "price for breaking the rules."
* To "bribe" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, to "pay to influence (someone)" or to "pay to have a dishonest favor done" or to "pay for a favor."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:1-3
* Ecclesiastes 07:7
* Isaiah 01:23
* Micah 03:9-11
* Proverbs 15:27-28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8021, H8641, G5260

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bribe, bribed, bribery, bribes, payoffs

### brother

#### Related Ideas:

brotherhood

#### Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

* In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
* In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
* A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
* In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
* If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
* Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
* Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [sister](#en-sister), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Genesis 29:10
* Leviticus 19:17
* Nehemiah 03:01
* Philippians 04:21
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

### burden

#### Related Ideas:

burdensome, heavy, load

#### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

* A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
* A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
* A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
* The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
* The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God," usually an important or unpleasant one, that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
* The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
* Galatians 06:1-2
* Galatians 06:03
* Genesis 49:15
* Matthew 11:30
* Matthew 23:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H4931, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, H6231, G4, G916, G922, G1912, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burden, burdened, burdens, burdensome, heavy, load, loaded, loaded up, loads

### call

#### Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

#### Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

* To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
* Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
* God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
* When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
* This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
* To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
* A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
* To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
* To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
* The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
* When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
* "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
* "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
* To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
* The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
* To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
* To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
* To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
* The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
* When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](#en-pray))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:24
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 01:09
* Ephesians 04:01
* Galatians 01:15
* Matthew 02:15
* Philippians 03:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

### census

#### Related Ideas:

register

#### Definition:

The term "census" refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

* The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
* Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
* For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
* When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Possible ways to translate this term could include, "name counting" or "list of names" or "enrollment."
* The phrase "take a census" could be translated as "register people's names" or "enroll people" or "write down people's names."

(See also: [nation](#en-nation), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:37
* Exodus 30:12
* Exodus 38:26
* Luke 02:03
* Numbers 04:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1538, H3789, H4662, H5674, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

census, register, registered

### centurion

#### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

* This could also be translated with a term that means, "leader of a hundred men" or "army leader" or "officer in charge of a hundred."
* One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
* The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
* God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:01
* Acts 27:01
* Acts 27:42-44
* Luke 07:04
* Luke 23:47
* Mark 15:39
* Matthew 08:07
* Matthew 27:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1543, G2760

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

centurion, centurions

### chariot

#### Related Ideas:

charioteer

#### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

* People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
* In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
* The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.
* A "charioteer" was a person who drove a chariot.

(See also: [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:22
* 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
* Acts 08:29
* Acts 08:38
* Daniel 11:40-41
* Exodus 14:25
* Genesis 41:43

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chariot, charioteer, charioteers, chariots

### chief

#### Related Ideas:

finest, first of all, important, prominent

#### Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

* Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," "chief tax collector" and "chief ruler."
* It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
* When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](#en-chief priests), [priest](#en-priest), [tax](#en-tax))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:11-13
* Ezekiel 26:15-16
* Luke 19:02
* Psalm 004:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H117, H441, H3629, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G3175, G4410, G4413, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief, chiefs, finest, first of all, important, most important, prominent

### chief priests

#### Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

* The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
* They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
* The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: [chief](#en-chief), [high priest](#en-high priest), [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities), [priest](#en-priest))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 22:30
* Acts 26:12-14
* Luke 20:01
* Mark 08:31
* Matthew 16:21
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:59
* Matthew 27:41-42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief priests

### children

#### Related Ideas:

child, childhood, childless

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. \* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child. \* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children. \* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

* In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
* Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
* The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
* children of the light
* children of obedience
* children of the devil
* This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
* Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
* If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
* When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
* When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
* The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [promise](#en-promise), [son](#en-son), [spirit](#en-spirit), [believe](#en-believe), [beloved](#en-beloved))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 3 John 01:04
* Galatians 04:19
* Genesis 45:11
* Joshua 08:34-35
* Nehemiah 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

child, childhood, childless, children

### church

#### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

* This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
* When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.
* Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
* In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
* The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
* Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
* The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
* Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation.

(See also: [assembly](#en-assembly), [believe](#en-believe), [Christian](#en-Christian))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:12
* 1 Thessalonians 02:14
* 1 Timothy 03:05
* Acts 09:31
* Acts 14:23
* Acts 15:41
* Colossians 04:15
* Ephesians 05:23
* Matthew 16:18
* Philippians 04:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

church, churches

### circumcise

#### Related Ideas:

circumcision, uncircumcision

#### Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

* God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
* God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
* The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
* In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
* The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

* Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."

* The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
* The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
* Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
* In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
* Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [covenant](#en-covenant))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:11
* Genesis 17:14
* Exodus 12:48
* Leviticus 26:41
* Joshua 05:03
* Judges 15:18
* 2 Samuel 01:20
* Jeremiah 09:26
* Ezekiel 32:25
* Acts 10:44-45
* Acts 11:03
* Acts 15:01
* Acts 11:03
* Romans 02:27
* Galatians 05:03
* Ephesians 02:11
* Philippians 03:03
* Colossians 02:11
* Colossians 02:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### citizen

#### Related Ideas:

citizenship

#### Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

* Depending on the context, this could also be translated as "inhabitant" or "official resident."
* A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called "citizens" of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

( See: [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [Paul](#en-Paul), [province](#en-province), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 21:39-40
* Isaiah 03:03
* Luke 15:15
* Luke 19:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

citizen, citizens, citizenship

### clean

#### Related Ideas:

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

#### Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

* "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
* In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
* A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
* Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

* God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
* People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
* If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
* Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
* This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
* In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "clean": \* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty). \* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God." \* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify." \* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean"" \* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled." \* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled." \* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#en-defile), [demon](#en-demon), [holy](#en-holy), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 07:02
* Genesis 07:08
* Deuteronomy 12:15
* Psalms 051:07
* Proverbs 20:30
* Ezekiel 24:13
* Matthew 23:27
* Luke 05:13
* Acts 08:07
* Acts 10:27-29
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

### comfort

#### Related Ideas:

comforter, console, consolation

#### Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

* A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
* In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
* In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
* The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
* Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.
* To "appease" someone is to do something that causes that person to no longer be angry about the wrong that someone else has done to him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
* A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
* The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
* When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
* The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
* An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: [courage](#en-courage), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
* 2 Corinthians 01:04
* 2 Samuel 10:1-3
* Acts 20:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

comfort, comforted, comforter, comforters, comforting, comforts, consolation, consolations, consoling, uncomforted

### command

#### Related Ideas:

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

#### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

* Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
* A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
* To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
* To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

#### Translation Suggestions

* It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
* Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
* Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#en-decree), [statute](#en-statute), [law](#en-law), [Ten Commandments](#en-Ten Commandments))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:06
* Matthew 01:24
* Matthew 22:38
* Matthew 28:20
* Numbers 01:17-19
* Romans 07:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

### commander

#### Related Ideas:

captain, leader, military officer, one who leads

#### Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

* A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
* This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
* Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
* The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#en-command), [ruler](#en-ruler), [centurion](#en-centurion))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
* 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
* Daniel 02:14
* Mark 06:21-22
* Proverbs 06:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H1368, H2710, H2951, H1169, G4755, H5057, H5257, H6260, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7860, H7990, H8269, G758, G2233, G4291, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

captain, captains, commander, commanders, leader, leaders, leading, military officers, one who leads

### commit

#### Related Ideas:

commitment

#### Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

* A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
* To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
* To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
* To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
* The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
* The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
* The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [faithful](#en-faithful), [promise](#en-promise), [sin](#en-sin))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 28:07
* 1 Peter 02:21-23
* Jeremiah 02:12-13
* Matthew 13:41
* Psalm 058:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

### companion

#### Related Ideas:

associate, company, fellow worker, friend, partner, private advisor

#### Definitions:

The term "companion" refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term "fellow worker" refers to someone who works with another person.

* Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
* Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, "friend" or "fellow traveler" or "supporting-person who goes with" or "person who works with."
* The word "company" refers to a person's companions.
* The word "associates" refers to companions who are involved in official activities.

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 37:16
* Hebrews 01:09
* Proverbs 02:17
* Psalms 038:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H5712, H6116, H6951, H7474, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G3657, G4898, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

associates, companion, companions, company, fellow worker, fellow workers, friend, friends, keeps company with, partner, partners, private advisor

### condemn

#### Related Ideas:

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

#### Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

* Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
* Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
* To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
* The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
* The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
* The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](#en-judge), [punish](#en-punish))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:20
* Job 09:29
* John 05:24
* Luke 06:37
* Matthew 12:07
* Proverbs 17:15-16
* Psalms 034:22
* Romans 05:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

### confess

#### Related Ideas:

confession, profess

#### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

* The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
* The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
* James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
* Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
* Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: [faith](#en-faith), [testimony](#en-testimony))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:8-10
* 2 John 01:7-8
* James 05:16
* Leviticus 05:5-6
* Matthew 03:4-6
* Nehemiah 01:6-7
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Psalms 038:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

confess, confessed, confesses, confessing, confession, profess

### conscience

#### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

* God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
* A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
* If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
* If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
* Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:19
* 1 Timothy 03:09
* 2 Corinthians 05:11
* 2 Timothy 01:03
* Romans 09:01
* Titus 01:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4893

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

conscience, consciences

### cornerstone

#### Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

* All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
* It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
* In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
* In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
* Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
* Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."
* It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:11
* Ephesians 02:20
* Matthew 21:42
* Psalms 118:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cornerstone, cornerstones

### council

#### Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

* A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
* The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
* There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
* The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
* Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
* To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
* Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means, "advice."

(See also: [assembly](#en-assembly), [counsel](#en-counsel), [Pharisee](#en-Pharisee), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [priest](#en-priest), [Sadducee](#en-Sadducee), [scribe](#en-scribe))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 24:20
* John 03:02
* Luke 22:68
* Mark 13:09
* Matthew 05:22
* Matthew 26:59

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

council, councils

### courage

#### Related Ideas:

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

#### Definitions:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

* The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
* A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
* The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
* When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
* The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
* Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
* To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

* A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
* The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
* The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](#en-confidence), [exhort](#en-exhort), [fear](#en-fear), [strength](#en-strength))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:37-38
* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 1 Chronicles 17:25
* Matthew 09:20-22
* 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
* 2 Corinthians 07:13
* Acts 05:12-13
* Acts 16:40
* Hebrews 03:12-13
* Hebrews 13:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

### court

#### Related Ideas:

courtyard

#### Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

* The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
* The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
* These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
* The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
* The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
* Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
* The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: [Gentile](#en-Gentile), [judge](#en-judge), [king](#en-king), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:4-5
* Exodus 27:09
* Jeremiah 19:14-15
* Luke 22:55
* Matthew 26:69-70
* Numbers 03:26
* Psalms 065:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

### covenant

#### Related Ideas:

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

#### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

* This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
* When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
* Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
* Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
* In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
* In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

* God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
* This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
* The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
* God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
* The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
* Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."

Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

* The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#en-covenant), [promise](#en-promise))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:12
* Genesis 17:07
* Genesis 31:44
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Joshua 24:24-26
* 2 Samuel 23:5
* 2 Kings 18:11-12
* Mark 14:24
* Luke 01:73
* Luke 22:20
* Acts 07:08
* 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
* 2 Corinthians 03:06
* Galatians 03:17-18
* Hebrews 12:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

### create

#### Related Ideas:

creation, creator, workmanship

#### Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

* When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
* When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
* Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
* The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.
* "Workmanship" is anything that a person makes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
* The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
* A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
* To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
* The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
* Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
* The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
* Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](#en-God), [good news](#en-good news), [world](#en-world))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
* 1 Peter 04:17-19
* Colossians 01:15
* Galatians 06:15
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 14:19-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1254, H3335, H4639, H6213, H7069, G2041, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2938, G2939, G5480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

create, created, created thing, creates, creation, creator, thing that has been created, workmanship

### crime

#### Related Ideas:

criminal

#### Definition:

The term "crime" usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term "criminal" refers to someone who has committed a crime.

* Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone's property.
* A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
* In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: [thief](#en-thief))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:09
* Hosea 06:8-9
* Job 31:26-28
* Luke 23:32
* Matthew 27:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G2556, G2557, G4467

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crime, crimes, criminal, criminals

### cross

#### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

* During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
* Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
* Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
* Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
* Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](#en-crucify), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:17
* Colossians 02:15
* Galatians 06:12
* John 19:18
* Luke 09:23
* Luke 23:26
* Matthew 10:38
* Philippians 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4716

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cross

### cry

#### Related Ideas:

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

#### Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

* The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
* This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
* An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](#en-call), [plead](#en-plead))

#### Bible References:

* Job 27:09
* Mark 05:5-6
* Mark 06:48-50
* Psalm 022:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

### cut off

#### Related Ideas:

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

#### Definition:

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

* In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
* God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

#### Picture of Cut Off From People:

<image: https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png>

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
* Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
* In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:14
* Judges 21:06
* Proverbs 23:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

### darkness

#### Related Ideas:

dark, darken, gloom

#### Definition:

The terms "darkness" and "gloom" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of these terms:

* As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
* It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
* The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
* The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death.
* People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
* God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
* The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."
* The term "gloom" can be used as a metaphor for sadness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
* For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](#en-corrupt), [dominion](#en-dominion), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [light](#en-light), [redeem](#en-redeem), [righteous](#en-righteous))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:06
* 1 John 02:08
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* 2 Samuel 22:12
* Colossians 01:13
* Isaiah 05:30
* Jeremiah 13:16
* Joshua 24:7
* Matthew 08:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, H6751, H6937, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4654, G4655, G4656

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dark, darken, darkened, darker, darkness, gloom, thick darkness, turned dark

### day

#### Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

#### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

* For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
* Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
* Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
* Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](#en-judgment day), [last day](#en-last day))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:06
* Daniel 10:04
* Ezra 06:15
* Ezra 06:19
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

### day of the Lord

#### Related Ideas:

day of Christ Jesus, day of Jesus Christ, day of Yahweh, day of Yahweh's wrath

#### Description:

The Old Testament term "day of Yahweh" is used to refer to one or more specific times when God would punish people for their sin.

* The New Testament term "day of the Lord" usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
* This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the "last day." This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
* The word "day" in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a "time" or "occasion" that is longer than a day.
* Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a "pouring out of God's wrath" upon those who do not believe.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "day of Yahweh" could include "time of Yahweh" or "time when Yahweh will punish his enemies" or "time of Yahweh's wrath."
* Other ways to translate "day of the Lord" could include "time of the Lord's judgment" or "time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people."

(See also: [day](#en-day), [judgment day](#en-judgment day), [lord](#en-lord), [resurrection](#en-resurrection), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 Thessalonians 05:02
* 2 Peter 03:10
* 2 Thessalonians 02:02
* Acts 02:20-21
* Philippians 01:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H3117, G2250, G2962

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

day of Christ Jesus, day of Jesus Christ, day of Yahweh, day of Yahweh's wrath, day of our Lord Jesus, day of our Lord Jesus Christ, day of the Lord

### death

#### Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

#### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

#### 1. Physical death

* To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
* A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
* When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
* The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
* The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
* Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

#### 2. Spiritual death

* Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
* Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
* Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To translate the words "die," death," and dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when “death” refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
* In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
* The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
* The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [faith](#en-faith), [life](#en-life), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:21
* 1 Thessalonians 4:17
* Acts 10:42
* Acts 14:19
* Colossians 2:15
* Colossians 2:20
* Genesis 2:15-17
* Genesis 34:27
* Matthew 16:28
* Romans 5:10
* Romans 5:12
* Romans 6:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

### deceive

#### Related Ideas:

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

#### Definition:

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

* The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
* A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
* The words “deceitful” and “deceptive” can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
* To “entice” someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
* To “defraud” someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
* To “flatter” someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
* To “lie” to someone or to tell a “lie” is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, “deceive” could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
* "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
* Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
* The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 1:8
* 1 Timothy 2:14
* 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
* Genesis 3:12-13
* Genesis 31:26-28
* Leviticus 19:11-12
* Matthew 27:64
* Micah 6:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

### declare

#### Related Ideas:

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

#### Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

* A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
* For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
* Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
* In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
* The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
* The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
* The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
* The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
* The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](#en-preach))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:24
* 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
* 1 Samuel 24:17-18
* Amos 02:16
* Ezekiel 05:11-12
* Matthew 07:21-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

### decree

#### Related Ideas:

prohibition

#### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

* God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
* Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
* An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
* To decree something, or to "issue a decree," means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
* Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."
* A "prohibition" is a decree that tells people that they cannot do something they would otherwise do.

(See also: [command](#en-command), [declare](#en-declare), [law](#en-law), [preach](#en-preach))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
* 1 Kings 08:57-58
* Acts 17:5-7
* Daniel 02:13
* Esther 01:22
* Luke 02:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3983, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6600, H6680, H7010, H7761, H8421, G1378, G3724

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

decree, decreed, decrees, prohibition

### defile

#### Related Ideas:

pollute, pollution, stain

#### Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

* God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
* Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
* God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
* There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
* A "stain" is a dirty mark that is hard to clean.
* In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
* To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: [clean](#en-clean), [clean](#en-clean))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:08
* Exodus 20:24-26
* Genesis 34:27
* Genesis 49:04
* Isaiah 43:27-28
* Leviticus 11:43-45
* Mark 07:14-16
* Matthew 15:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4695

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are defiled, be defiled, defile, defiled, defiles, defiling, polluted, pollutes, pollution, stain, stained, was defiled, were defiled

### deliver

#### Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

#### Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

* In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
* These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
* God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
* The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
* When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
* The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
* When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](#en-judge), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:10
* Acts 07:35
* Galatians 01:04
* Judges 10:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

### descendant

#### Related Ideas:

descend, posterity

#### Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

* For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
* A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
* A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [father](#en-father), [Jacob](#en-Jacob), [Noah](#en-Noah), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:4-5
* Acts 13:23
* Deuteronomy 02:20-22
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 28:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

### desecrate

#### Definition:

The term "desecrate" means to damage or contaminate a sacred place or object in such a way that it is unacceptable for use in worship.

* Often desecrating something involves showing great disrespect for it.
* For example, pagan kings desecrated special dishes from God's temple by using them for parties at their palace.
* Bones from dead people were used by enemies to desecrate the altar in God's temple.
* This term could be translated as "cause to be unholy" or "dishonor by making impure" or "disrespectfully profane" or "cause to be impure."

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [defile](#en-defile), [dishonor](#en-dishonor), [profane](#en-profane), [pure](#en-pure), [temple](#en-temple), [holy](#en-holy))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 24:4-6
* Isaiah 30:22
* Psalms 074:7-8
* Psalms 089:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2490, H2610, H2930, G953

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desecrate, desecrated, desecrating

### desert

#### Related Ideas:

remote place, solitary place, wilderness

#### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

* A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
* Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
* "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
* This word can also be translated as "deserted place," "remote place," "solitary place," or "uninhabited place."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:16-18
* Acts 21:38
* Exodus 04:27-28
* Genesis 37:21-22
* John 03:14
* Luke 01:80
* Luke 09:12-14
* Mark 01:03
* Matthew 04:01
* Matthew 11:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desert, deserts, remote places, solitary place, wilderness, wildernesses

### desolate

#### Related Ideas:

alone, deserted, desolation, desolations, isolated, left alone, left without, lonely

#### Definition:

The terms "desolate" and "desolation" refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

* When referring to a person, the term "desolate" describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
* A widow is desolate because she has no man to provide for her and therefore often lacks food, shelter, and clothing.
* The term "desolation" is the state or condition of being desolated.
* If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
* A "desolate region" refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
* A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
* If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
* A person who is "lonely" is alone. He has no friends or family or other people with whom he can enjoy being.
* The term "deserted" describes a place that everyone has left.

(See also: [desert](#en-desert), [devastated](#en-devastated), [ruin](#en-ruin), [waste](#en-waste))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 22:19
* Acts 01:20
* Daniel 09:17-19
* Lamentations 03:11
* Luke 11:17
* Matthew 12:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5221, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7604, H7673, H7701, H7722, H7909, H7921, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2047, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alone, deserted, deserted place, deserted places, desolate, desolation, desolations, isolated, left ... alone, left ... without, lonely, made ... desolate, making ... desolate, uninhabited

### destroy

#### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

#### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

* The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
* This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
* When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
* In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
* The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [firstborn](#en-firstborn), [Passover](#en-Passover))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:23
* Hebrews 11:28
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Judges 16:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

### disciple

#### Definition:

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

* The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
* John the Baptist also had disciples.
* During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
* Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
* Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the twelve."
* Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
* Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
* Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
* The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [believe](#en-believe), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [the twelve](#en-the twelve))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:26-27
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 14:22
* John 13:23
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 11:03
* Matthew 26:33-35
* Matthew 27:64

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disciple, disciples

### dishonor

#### Related Ideas:

dishonorable, lightly esteemed

#### Definition:

The term "dishonor" means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

* The term "dishonorable" describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
* Sometimes "dishonorable" is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
* Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
* The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
* The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
* This could be translated as to "not honor" or to "treat with no respect."
* The noun "dishonor" could be translated as "disrespect" or "loss of honor."
* Depending on the context, "dishonorable" could also be translated as "not honorable" or "shameful" or "not worthwhile" or "not valuable."
* A person who is "lightly esteemed" is dishonored by people who refuse to give him the honor he deserves.

(See also: [disgrace](#en-disgrace), [honor](#en-honor))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:10
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
* Ezekiel 22:07
* John 08:48
* Leviticus 18:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6173, H7034, H7036, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G2617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dishonor, dishonorable, dishonored, dishonors, lightly esteemed

### disobey

#### Related Ideas:

disobedient

#### Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

* A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
* To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
* The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
* The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
* A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [evil](#en-evil), [sin](#en-sin), [obey](#en-obey))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 13:21
* Acts 26:19
* Colossians 03:07
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 06:49
* Psalms 089:30-32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disobedience, disobedient, disobey, disobeyed, disobeying, disobeys

### divination

#### Related Ideas:

divine, diviner, enchantment, interpret omens, soothsayer, spells

#### Definition:

The terms "divination" and "soothsaying" refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a "diviner" or "soothsayer."

* In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
* God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
* Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
* A person who "interprets omens" seeks supernatural knowledge from such things as tea leaves and animal organs and the weather.
* An "enchantment" or "spell" is a set of words that people believe have magic power.
* In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [god](#en-god), [magic](#en-magic), [sorcery](#en-sorcery))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 06:1-2
* Acts 16:16
* Ezekiel 12:24-25
* Genesis 44:05
* Jeremiah 27:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1870, H3049, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

divination, divinations, divine, diviner, diviners, divining, enchantments, interpret omens, interprets omens, practice ... divination, soothsayer, soothsaying, spells

### dominion

#### Related Ideas:

control, dominate, subjugate

#### Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

* Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
* Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
* At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
* The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [power](#en-power))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:10-11
* Colossians 01:13
* Jude 01:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4474, H4475, H4910, G4912, H4915, H7287, H7985, G1849, G2634, G2904, G2963

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

control, controls, dominate, dominion, dominions, subjugate

### dream

#### Related Ideas:

dreamer

#### Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

* Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
* Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
* In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
* A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#en-vision))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:16-17
* Daniel 01:17-18
* Daniel 02:01
* Genesis 37:06
* Genesis 40:4-5
* Matthew 02:13
* Matthew 02:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dream, dreamed, dreamer, dreamers, dreaming, dreams

### drunk

#### Related Ideas:

intoxicated, drink much, drunkard, drunkenness

#### Definitions:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

* A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
* The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
* The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
* Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: [wine](#en-wine))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
* 1 Samuel 25:36
* Jeremiah 13:13
* Luke 07:34
* Luke 21:34
* Proverbs 23:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7686, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be ... intoxicated, became drunk, become drunk, drank freely, drink much, drunk, drunkard, drunkards, drunkenness, get drunk

### earth

#### Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

#### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

* "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
* This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
* The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
* The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
* The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
* Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
* When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
* Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](#en-spirit), [world](#en-world))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:38-40
* 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
* Daniel 04:35
* Luke 12:51
* Matthew 06:10
* Matthew 11:25
* Zechariah 06:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

### elder

#### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

* The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
* In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
* In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
* In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
* Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
* This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
* 1 Timothy 03:1-3
* 1 Timothy 04:14
* Acts 05:19-21
* Acts 14:23
* Mark 11:28
* Matthew 21:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

elder, elders

### envy

#### Related Ideas:

covet, covetousness, envious, greed

#### Definition:

The term "envy" refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities.

* Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
* To "covet" means to have a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse. Often a person who covets something is willing to sin to get it.
* "Greed" is a strong, selfish desire to have something. Often a person who is greedy wants more of what he already has.

(See also: [jealous](#en-jealous))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
* 1 Peter 02:01
* Exodus 20:17
* Mark 07:20-23
* Proverbs 03:31-32
* Romans 01:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H183, H2530, H7065, H7068, H7342, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

covet, coveted, coveting, covetousness, envied, envious, envy, envying, greed, greedy

### eunuch

#### Definition:

Usually the term "eunuch" refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

* Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
* In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings' servants who were set as guards over the women's quarters.
* Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: [Philip](#en-Philip))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:27
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 08:39
* Isaiah 39:7-8
* Jeremiah 34:17-19
* Matthew 19:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5631, G2134, G2135

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eunuch, eunuchs

### evangelist

#### Definition:

An "evangelist" is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

* The literal meaning of "evangelist" is "someone who preaches the good news."
* Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God's kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
* All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
* Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called "evangelists."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "evangelist" could be translated as "someone who preaches the good news" or "teacher of the good news" or "person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)" or "good news proclaimer."

(See also: [good news](#en-good news), [spirit](#en-spirit), [gift](#en-gift))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:05
* Ephesians 04:11-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2099

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

evangelist, evangelists

### evil

#### Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

#### Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

* While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
* The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
* The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
* Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
* Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#en-disobey), [sin](#en-sin), [good](#en-good), [righteous](#en-righteous), [demon](#en-demon))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:11
* 1 Timothy 06:10
* 3 John 01:10
* Genesis 02:17
* Genesis 06:5-6
* Job 01:01
* Job 08:20
* Judges 09:57
* Luke 06:22-23
* Matthew 07:11-12
* Proverbs 03:07
* Psalms 022:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

### exalt

#### Related Ideas:

exaltation, high position, leadership position, lifted up

#### Definition:

To exalt is to lift up. Often exalt means to praise or honor someone or something. It can also mean to put someone in an honored position of leadership.

* In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for honoring God.
* When a person exalts himself, it means he thinks about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
* In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
* "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
* "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: [praise](#en-praise), [worship](#en-worship), [glory](#en-glory), [boast](#en-boast), [proud](#en-proud))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:5-7
* 2 Samuel 22:47
* Acts 05:31
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Psalms 018:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1361, H1362, H1364, H4791, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exalt, exaltation, exalted, exalting, exalts, high position, leadership positions, lifted up, lofty

### exhort

#### Related Ideas:

exhortation, urge

#### Definition:

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

* The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
* The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
* Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
* In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
* Usually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 1 Timothy 05:02
* Luke 03:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5927, H6484, G3867, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exhort, exhortation, exhortations, exhorted, exhorting, urge, urged

### face

#### Related Ideas:

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

#### Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

* The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
* In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
* To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
* Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
* When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
* To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
* The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
* The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
* The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
* The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
* Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
* The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
* The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
* To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
* The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
* The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 05:04
* Genesis 33:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

### faith

#### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

* To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
* To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
* True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
* Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
* In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
* For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
* The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
* The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
* The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [faithful](#en-faithful))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:07
* Acts 06:7
* Galatians 02:20-21
* James 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

### faithful

#### Related Ideas:

faithfully, faithfulness, reliable

#### Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

* A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
* A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
* Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

* The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
* In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
* God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "faithful" and "faithfulness" \* In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable." \* In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God." \* Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

Translating "unfaithful" and "unfaithfulness" \* Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal." \* The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God." \* The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying." \* In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [believe](#en-believe), [disobey](#en-disobey), [faith](#en-faith), [believe](#en-believe))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:49
* Leviticus 26:40
* Numbers 12:07
* Joshua 02:14
* Judges 02:16-17
* 1 Samuel 02:9
* Psalm 012:1
* Proverbs 11:12-13
* Isaiah 01:26
* Jeremiah 09:7-9
* Hosea 05:07
* Luke 12:46
* Luke 16:10
* Colossians 01:07
* 1 Thessalonians 05:24
* 3 John 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H2181, H2616, H2623, H4603, H4820, G569, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faithful, faithful one, faithful people, faithfully, faithfulness, reliable, show ... self ... faithful

### false prophet

#### Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

* The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
* False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
* This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
* The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [prophet](#en-prophet), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:1-3
* 2 Peter 02:01
* Acts 13:6-8
* Luke 06:26
* Matthew 07:16
* Matthew 24:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

false prophet, false prophets

### family

#### Related Ideas:

family line, genealogical record

#### Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

* The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
* Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
* Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
* Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
* The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
* A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](#en-clan), [father](#en-father), [house](#en-house))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 18:18
* Exodus 01:21
* Joshua 02:12-13
* Luke 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

### famine

#### Related Ideas:

famished, hunger

#### Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain. The term "famished" means extremely hungry. \* Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects. \* Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops. \* In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him. \* In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
* Acts 07:11
* Genesis 12:10
* Genesis 45:06
* Jeremiah 11:21-23
* Luke 04:25
* Matthew 24:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042, G3521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

famine, famines, famished, hunger

### fast

#### Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

* Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
* Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
* Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
* The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
* The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish authorities](#en-Jewish authorities))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 21:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 20:03
* Acts 13:1-3
* Jonah 03:4-5
* Luke 05:34
* Mark 02:19
* Matthew 06:18
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

### father

#### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. \* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father. \* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather. \* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor. \* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father. \* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan. \* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

* The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
* The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
* "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
* When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
* Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
* When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
* The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](#en-God the Father), [son](#en-son), [Son of God](#en-Son of God))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:02
* Acts 07:32
* Acts 07:45
* Acts 22:03
* Genesis 31:30
* Genesis 31:42
* Genesis 31:53
* Hebrews 07:4-6
* John 04:12
* Joshua 24:3-4
* Malachi 03:07
* Mark 10:7-9
* Matthew 01:07
* Matthew 03:09
* Matthew 10:21
* Matthew 18:14
* Romans 04:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### favor

#### Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

#### Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

* The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoratism is considered unfair.
* Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
* The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
* When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
* A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
* The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
* The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:25-26
* 2 Chronicles 19:07
* 2 Corinthians 01:11
* Acts 24:27
* Genesis 41:16
* Genesis 47:25
* Genesis 50:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

### fear

#### Related Ideas:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid

#### Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

* The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
* The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
* The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
* "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
* To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
* "Dread" is great fear.
* Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
* Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
* The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
* The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
* The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
* Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [amazed](#en-amazed), [awe](#en-awe), [lord](#en-lord), [power](#en-power), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* Acts 02:43
* Acts 19:15-17
* Genesis 50:21
* Isaiah 11:3-5
* Job 06:14
* Jonah 01:09
* Luke 12:05
* Matthew 10:28
* Proverbs 10:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

### fellowship

#### Related Ideas:

alliance, associate with, association, allied with, contribution, participants with, partnership, share, united

#### Definition:

In general, the term "fellowship" refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

* In the Bible, the term "fellowship" usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
* Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
* The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God's Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
* Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.
* An "alliance" is a kind of fellowship between governments in which the governments agree to work together, usually to fight common enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "fellowship" could include "a sharing together" or "relationship" or "companionship" or "Christian community."

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* Philippians 01:3-6
* Philippians 02:01
* Philippians 03:10
* Psalms 055:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2266, H2270, H4541, H6148, H8641, G2842, G2844, G3352, G3353, G4790

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alliance, alliances, associate with, association, be allied with, be participants with, contribution, contributions, fellowship, participant, participants, partnership, share, sharers, shares, sharing, united

### fig

#### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

* Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
* Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
* Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
* In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
* The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
* Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

#### Bible References:

* Habakkuk 03:17
* James 03:12
* Luke 13:07
* Mark 11:14
* Matthew 07:17
* Matthew 21:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

### filled with the Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

full of the Holy Spirit

#### Definition:

The term "filled with the Holy Spirit" is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God's will.

* The expression "filled with" is an expression that often means "controlled by."
* People are "filled with the Holy Spirit" when they follow the Holy Spirit's leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "empowered by the Holy Spirit" or "controlled by the Holy Spirit." But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
* A sentence such as "he was filled with the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "he was living fully by the Spirit's power" or "he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely."
* This term is similar in meaning to the expression "live by the Spirit," but "filled with the Holy Spirit" emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:31
* Acts 05:17
* Acts 06:8-9
* Luke 01:15
* Luke 01:39-41
* Luke 04:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4390, H4392, H7646, H8003, G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

filled ... with the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Spirit

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

* Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
* In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
* Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](#en-cedar), [cypress](#en-cypress))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Isaiah 37:24-25
* Isaiah 41:19-20
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:12-13
* Psalms 104:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

### fire

#### Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

#### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

* A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
* A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
* To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
* To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
* To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
* The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively. \* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification. \* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified." \* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](#en-pure))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:18-20
* 2 Kings 01:10
* 2 Thessalonians 01:08
* Acts 07:29-30
* John 15:06
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:12
* Nehemiah 01:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

### flesh

#### Related Ideas:

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

* The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
* The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
* The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
* When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
* When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
* The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
* Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
* The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:16
* 2 John 01:07
* Ephesians 06:12
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 02:24
* John 01:14
* Matthew 16:17
* Romans 08:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

### flock

#### Related Ideas:

herd

#### Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

* Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
* For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
* The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
* Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
* For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#en-goat), [cow](#en-cow), [pig](#en-pig), [sheep](#en-sheep), )

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:28-29
* 2 Chronicles 17:11
* Deuteronomy 14:22-23
* Luke 02:8-9
* Matthew 08:30
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H504, H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7473, H7716, H7462, H7794, G34, G4167, G4168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flock, flocking, flocks, herd, herds

### footstool

#### Definition:

The term "footstool" refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

* People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a "footstool" was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
* When God says "I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet" he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
* To "worship at God's footstool" means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
* David refers to the temple as God's "footstool." This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:49
* Isaiah 66:1
* Luke 20:43
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 22:44
* Psalm 110:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

footstool

### foreigner

#### Related Ideas:

alien, barbarian, foreign, sojourn, sojourner, stranger, tenant

#### Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

* In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
* A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
* For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
* The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
* Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.
* A "sojourner" is a person who is living in one country that is not his but waiting for the chance to move to his own country.
* A "barbarian" is a person from another country who does not speak the local language or obey the local customs and so the natives do not like or respect him.
* A "strangers" are persons who do not know each other.
* To be "alienated" is to no longer be living in loving relationship with another. For example, a husband and wife who are no longer living together but are not divorced are "alienated" or "estranged."
* A "tenant" is a person who rents his dwelling place.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:17
* Acts 07:29-30
* Deuteronomy 01:15-16
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 17:27
* Luke 17:18
* Matthew 17:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H312, H628, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G246, G526, G915, G3581, G3927, G3941

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alien, alienated, alienates, barbarian, foreign, foreigner, foreigners, live as a foreigner, living as foreigners, sojourn, sojourned, sojourner, sojourners, sojourning, stranger, strangers, tenant, tenants

### foreknow

#### Related Ideas:

foreknowledge

#### Definition:

The verb "foreknow" means to know something before it happens.

* God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
* This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "foreknew" could also be translated as, "knew before" or "knew ahead of time" or "knew beforehand" or "already knew."
* The term "foreknowledge" could be translated as, "knowing before" or "knowing ahead of time" or "already knowing" or "knowing in advance."

(See also: [know](#en-know), [predestine](#en-predestine))

#### Bible References:

* Romans 08:29
* Romans 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4267, G4268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

foreknew, foreknowledge, foreknown

### forgive

#### Related Ideas:

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

#### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

* Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
* This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
* When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
* Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

* This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
* In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
* Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
* The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
* If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#en-guilt))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 50:17
* Numbers 14:17-19
* Deuteronomy 29:20-21
* Joshua 24:19-20
* 2 Kings 05:17-19
* Psalms 025:11
* Psalms 025:17-19
* Isaiah 55:6-7
* Isaiah 40:02
* Luke 05:21
* Acts 08:22
* Ephesians 04:31-32
* Colossians 03:12-14
* 1 John 02:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

### found

#### Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

#### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

* The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
* The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
* A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
* To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
* The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
* Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](#en-cornerstone), [create](#en-create))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:37-38
* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* Ezekiel 13:13-14
* Luke 14:29
* Matthew 13:35
* Matthew 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

### free

#### Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

#### Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

* The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
* In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
* Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
* To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
* The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
* The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
* A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#en-bind), [enslave](#en-enslave), [servant](#en-servant))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26
* Galatians 05:01
* Isaiah 61:1
* Leviticus 25:10
* Romans 06:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

### fruit

#### Related Ideas:

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

#### Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. \* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit. \* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains. \* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for for food. \* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively. \* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise. \* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children. \* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like. \* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him. \* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
* Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
* The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
* When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
* The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
* Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
* Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
* The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
* The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [grain](#en-grain), [grape](#en-grape), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [vine](#en-vine), [womb](#en-womb))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 01:11
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 03:08
* Matthew 07:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### fulfill

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

#### Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

* When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
* If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
* To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
* The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
* Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](#en-prophet), [Christ](#en-Christ), [minister](#en-minister), [call](#en-call))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:27
* Acts 03:17-18
* Leviticus 22:17-19
* Luke 04:21
* Matthew 01:22-23
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalms 116:12-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

### gate

#### Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

* A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
* A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
* A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
* To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
* A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
* The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:24
* Acts 10:18
* Deuteronomy 21:18-19
* Genesis 19:01
* Genesis 24:60
* Matthew 07:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

### generation

#### Definition:

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

* A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
* Parents and their children are from two different generations.
* In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
* "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
* The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
* "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [evil](#en-evil), [father](#en-father))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:19-21
* Exodus 03:13-15
* Genesis 15:16
* Genesis 17:07
* Mark 08:12
* Matthew 11:16
* Matthew 23:34-36
* Matthew 24:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

generation, generations

### gift

#### Related Ideas:

give, gracious gift

#### Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

* Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
* In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
* The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
* In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
* In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](#en-spirit), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:01
* 2 Samuel 11:08
* Acts 08:20
* Acts 10:04
* Acts 11:17
* Acts 24:17
* James 01:17
* John 04:9-10
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 08:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

### glory

#### Related Ideas:

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

#### Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

* Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
* For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
* Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
* The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

* People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
* They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
* When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
* God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
* Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
* The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
* The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."

The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."

"Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."

* The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
* The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](#en-exalt), [obey](#en-obey), [praise](#en-praise))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 24:17
* Numbers 14:9-10
* Isaiah 35:02
* Luke 18:43
* Luke 02:09
* John 12:28
* Acts 03:13-14
* Acts 07:1-3
* Romans 08:17
* 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
* Philippians 02:14-16
* Philippians 04:19
* Colossians 03:1-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:05
* James 02:1-4
* 1 Peter 04:15-16
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

### god

#### Related Ideas:

disgusting figure, false god, goat idols, goddess, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

#### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

* These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
* People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
* In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
* Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
* Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
* Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

* People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
* These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
* Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
* Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
* An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
* The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
* The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
* In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
* Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
* Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#en-God), [Asherah](#en-Asherah), [Baal](#en-Baal), [Molech](#en-Molech), [demon](#en-demon), [image](#en-image), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 35:02
* Exodus 32:01
* Psalms 031:06
* Psalms 081:8-10
* Isaiah 44:20
* Acts 07:41
* Acts 07:43
* Acts 15:20
* Acts 19:27
* Romans 02:22
* Galatians 04:8-9
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1140, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgusting figure, disgusting figures, false god, goat idols, god, goddess, gods, idol, idol's, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry, idols, idols'

### godly

#### Related Ideas:

godless, godless actions, godlessness, godliness, ungodliness, ungodly

#### Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

* A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
* The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms "ungodly" and "godless" describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called "ungodliness" or "godlessness."

* The meanings of these words are very similar. However, "godless" and "godlessness" may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
* God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "the godly" could be translated as "godly people" or "people who obey God."
* The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."
* The phrase "in a godly manner" could be translated as "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."

Ways to translate "godliness" could include "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."

Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."

* The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."
* Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also [evil](#en-evil), [honor](#en-honor), [obey](#en-obey), [righteous](#en-righteous), [righteous](#en-righteous))

#### Bible References:

* Job 27:10
* Proverbs 11:09
* Acts 03:12
* 1 Timothy 01:9-11
* 1 Timothy 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:12
* Hebrews 12:14-17
* Hebrews 11:7
* 1 Peter 04:18
* Jude 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, H5760, H7563, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2317

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

godless, godless actions, godlessness, godliness, godly, godly life, ungodliness, ungodly

### gold

#### Related Ideas:

golden, goldsmith, purest gold

#### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

* In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
* These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
* In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
* Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
* When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
* Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.
* A "goldsmith" is a person who takes gold and makes it into useful things like jewelry.

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [god](#en-god), [silver](#en-silver), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:07
* 1 Timothy 02:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 01:15
* Acts 03:06
* Daniel 02:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6337, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gold, golden, goldsmith, goldsmiths, purest gold

### good

#### Related Ideas:

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

#### Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

* In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
* Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
* Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
* A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
* A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
* In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
* The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
* The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
* Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
* "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
* To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
* "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
* The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
* To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](#en-evil), [holy](#en-holy), [profit](#en-profit), [righteous](#en-righteous))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:22-24
* Genesis 01:12
* Genesis 02:09
* Genesis 02:17
* James 03:13
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

### good news

#### Related Ideas:

gospel

#### Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

* In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
* In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."
* The writers of the New Testament use a verb based on this noun to talk about telling or proclaiming good news or preaching the gospel.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news about" or "good message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Acts 08:25
* Colossians 01:23
* Galatians 01:06
* Luke 08:1-3
* Mark 01:14
* Philippians 02:22
* Romans 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, G2097, G2098, G4283

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce good news, announced the good news, announcing ... the good news, being told good news, bring ... good news, brings ... good news, brought ... good news, good news, gospel, gospel's, had ... good news proclaimed, preach the gospel, preached the gospel beforehand, preaching ... the gospel, proclaim ... gospel, proclaimed the good news, proclaimed the gospel, proclaiming ... good news, proclaiming the gospel, telling ... good news, were told the good news

### governor

#### Related Ideas:

deputy, govern government, high officials, proconsul

#### Definition:

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

* The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
* In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
* A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
* Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
* The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
* The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [king](#en-king), [power](#en-power), [province](#en-province), [Rome](#en-Rome), [ruler](#en-ruler))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 23:22
* Acts 26:30
* Mark 13:9-10
* Matthew 10:18
* Matthew 27:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H323, H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5333, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deputy, govern, government, governments, governor, governors, high officials, proconsul, proconsuls, provincial governors

### grace

#### Related Ideas:

generous, gracious, graciously

#### Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

* God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
* The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
* The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
* The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
* The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:33
* Acts 06:08
* Acts 14:04
* Colossians 04:06
* Colossians 04:18
* Genesis 43:28-29
* James 04:07
* John 01:16
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

### grain

#### Related Ideas:

grainfields, standing grain

#### Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

* In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
* A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
* Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#en-head), [wheat](#en-wheat))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 42:03
* Genesis 42:26-28
* Genesis 43:1-2
* Luke 06:02
* Mark 02:24
* Matthew 13:7-9
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

### groan

#### Related Ideas:

sigh

#### Definition:

The term to "groan" refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

* A person can groan because of feeling grief.
* Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
* Other ways to translate "groan" could include, "give a low cry of pain" or "grieve deeply."
* As a noun, this could be translated as, "a low cry of distress" or "a deep murmur of pain."

(See also: [cry](#en-cry))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 05:02
* Hebrews 13:17
* Job 23:02
* Psalms 032:3-4
* Psalms 102:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H584, H585, H602, H603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G4726, G4727, G4959

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

groan, groaned, groaning, groanings, groans, sigh, sighed, sighed deeply, sighing

### hand

#### Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

#### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

* To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
* The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"
* Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.

Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:

To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."

* To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
* The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."

The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.

Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.

* The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
* When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

#### Translation Suggestions

* These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
* The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
* When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
* An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
* To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
* The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
* In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](#en-adversary), [bless](#en-bless), [captive](#en-captive), [honor](#en-honor), [power](#en-power))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:25
* Acts 08:17
* Acts 11:21
* Genesis 09:05
* Genesis 14:20
* John 03:35
* Mark 07:32
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

### hang

#### Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

* Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
* Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
* To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 17:23
* Acts 10:39
* Galatians 03:13
* Genesis 40:22
* Matthew 27:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

### hard

#### Related Ideas:

hardly, hardness, hardship

#### Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

* An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
* Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
* When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
* A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
* A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively \* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent. \* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
* The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
* "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
* Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
* In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
* The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
* To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
* A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#en-disobey), [evil](#en-evil), [heart](#en-heart), [labor pains](#en-labor pains), [stiff-necked](#en-stiff-necked))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:23
* Deuteronomy 15:07
* Exodus 14:04
* Hebrews 04:07
* John 12:40
* Matthew 19:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

### harp

#### elated Ideas:

harpist, lyre

#### Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

* In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
* Players of harps and lyres would hold them in the hands and play them by strumming or plucking while walking.
* In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
* David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
* He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.
* A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [fir](#en-fir), [psalm](#en-psalm), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Picture of a Harp:

<image: https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/h/Harp2.png>

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
* Amos 05:23-24
* Daniel 03:05
* Psalm 033:1-3
* Revelation 05:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3658, H5035, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harp, harpist, harpists, harps, lyre, lyres

### head

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

* Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
* Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
* The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
* The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
* The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
* The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
* The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
* The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
* The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
* The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](#en-grain))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 09:22
* Colossians 02:10
* Colossians 02:19
* Numbers 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

### heal

#### Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

#### Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

* A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
* Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
* However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
* For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
* The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
* A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
* Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](#en-miracle))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:16
* Acts 08:06
* Luke 05:13
* Luke 06:19
* Luke 08:43
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 09:35
* Matthew 13:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

### heart

#### Related Ideas:

kidneys

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

* To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
* The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
* The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
* The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
* The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
* Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
* If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
* Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
* The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
* The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
* Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#en-hard))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:17
* 1 Thessalonians 02:04
* 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
* Acts 08:22
* Acts 15:09
* Luke 08:15
* Mark 02:06
* Matthew 05:08
* Matthew 22:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

### heaven

#### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

#### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

* The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
* The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
* In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
* For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
* The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
* The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:22-24
* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:17
* Deuteronomy 09:01
* Ephesians 06:9
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 07:11
* John 03:12
* John 03:27
* Matthew 05:18
* Matthew 05:46-48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

### heir

#### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

* In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
* The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
* As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
* The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#en-firstborn), [inherit](#en-inherit))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:1-2
* Galatians 04:07
* Genesis 15:01
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 20:14
* Mark 12:07
* Matthew 21:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

### high priest

#### Related Ideas:

high priesthood

#### Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

* The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
* The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
* When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: [Annas](#en-Annas), [Caiaphas](#en-Caiaphas), [chief priests](#en-chief priests), [priest](#en-priest), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:27
* Acts 07:01
* Acts 09:01
* Exodus 30:10
* Hebrews 06:19-20
* Leviticus 16:32
* Luke 03:02
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:51-54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

high priest, high priesthood, high priests

### holy

#### Related Ideas:

holiness, sacred, unholy

#### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

* Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
* A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
* An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
* People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
* In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
* God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
* Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
* When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

* This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
* A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

* In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
* "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
* The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
* The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

* In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [consecrate](#en-consecrate), [sanctify](#en-sanctify), [set apart](#en-set apart))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 28:22
* 2 Kings 03:02
* Lamentations 04:01
* Ezekiel 20:18-20
* Matthew 07:6
* Mark 08:38
* Acts 07:33
* Acts 11:08
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
* Colossians 01:22
* 1 Thessalonians 03:13
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:15
* 1 Timothy 05:10
* 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
* Revelation 16:06
* Revelation 20:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

### holy place

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "the holy place" and "the most holy place" refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

* The "holy place" was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special "bread of the presence" on it.
* The "most holy place" was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
* A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
* The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
* Sometimes "holy place" refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "holy place" could also be translated as "room set apart for God" or "special room for meeting God" or "place reserved for God."
* The term "most holy place" could be translated as "room that is the most set apart for God" or "most special room for meeting God."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression "a holy place" could include "a consecrated place" or "a place that God has set apart" or "a place in the temple complex, which is holy" or "a courtyard of God's holy temple."

(See also: [altar of incense](#en-altar of incense), [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [bread](#en-bread), [consecrate](#en-consecrate), [court](#en-court), [curtain](#en-curtain), [holy](#en-holy), [set apart](#en-set apart), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:16-18
* Acts 06:12-15
* Exodus 26:33
* Exodus 31:10-11
* Ezekiel 41:01
* Ezra 09:8-9
* Hebrews 09:1-2
* Leviticus 16:18
* Matthew 24:15-18
* Revelation 15:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holy place

### honor

#### Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

#### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

* Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
* God instructs Christians to honor others.
* Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
* The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
* Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
* To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
* The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#en-dishonor), [glory](#en-glory), [glory](#en-glory), [praise](#en-praise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:8
* Acts 19:17
* John 04:44
* John 12:26
* Mark 06:04
* Matthew 15:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### hope

#### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

* In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
* To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
* The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
* To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
* The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
* The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
* Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: [bless](#en-bless), [confidence](#en-confidence), [good](#en-good), [obey](#en-obey), [trust](#en-trust), [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
* 1 Thessalonians 02:19
* Acts 24:14-16
* Acts 26:06
* Acts 27:20
* Colossians 01:05
* Job 11:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H1891, H2976, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G1679, G1680, G2070, G4276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hope, hoped, hopes, look to ... in hope, uselessly hope

### horse

#### Related Ideas:

horseback, warhorse

#### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

* Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
* Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
* In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
* Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#en-chariot), , [donkey](#en-donkey), [Solomon](#en-Solomon))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:04
* 2 Kings 02:11
* Exodus 14:23-25
* Ezekiel 23:5-7
* Zechariah 06:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horse, horseback, horses, horses', strong horses, warhorse, warhorses

### hour

#### Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

* When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
* The phrase "that hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
* When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
* The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
* The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."
* Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him" or "it was the appointed time for him."

(See also: [hour (biblical time)](#en-hour (biblical time)))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 14:35
* 1 Corinthians 15:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appointed time, hour, hours, moment, time, while

### house

#### Related Ideas:

home, residence

#### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

* Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
* Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
* The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
* In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
* A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
* The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
* Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
* The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
* "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [descendant](#en-descendant), [house of God](#en-house of God), [household](#en-household), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:42
* Acts 07:49
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 08:39
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 15:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

### household

#### Related Ideas:

household members

#### Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

* Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
* Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#en-house))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:10
* Galatians 06:10
* Genesis 07:01
* Genesis 34:19
* John 04:53
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 10:36
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

household, household members, households, members of household

### image

#### Related Ideas:

carved figure, cast metal figure, statue

#### Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

* A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
* A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
* These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
* The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
* It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.

(See also: [god](#en-god), [God](#en-God), [god](#en-god), [image of God](#en-image of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:9-10
* Acts 07:43
* Isaiah 21:8-9
* Matthew 22:21
* Romans 01:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1544, H1823, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carved figure, carved figures, carved image, carved images, cast metal figure, cast metal figures, cast metal images, castings, figure, figures, image, images, statue

### in Christ

#### Related Ideas:

in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

#### Definition:

The phrase "in Christ" and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

* Other related terms include "in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ."
* Possible meanings for the term "in Christ" could include "because you belong to Christ" or "through the relationship you have with Christ" or "based on your faith in Christ."
* These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
* Note: Sometimes the word "in" belongs with the verb. For example, "share in Christ" means to "share in" the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To "glory in" Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To "believe in" Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "in Christ" and "in the Lord" (and related phrases) could include:

"who belong to Christ"

* "because you believe in Christ"
* "because Christ has saved us"
* "in service to the Lord"
* "relying on the Lord"

"because of what the Lord has done."

People who "believe in" Christ or who "have faith in" Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like "believe in" or "share in" or "trust in."

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [lord](#en-lord), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [believe](#en-believe), [faith](#en-faith))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:05
* 2 Corinthians 02:17
* 2 Timothy 01:01
* Galatians 01:22
* Galatians 02:17
* Philemon 01:06
* Revelation 01:10
* Romans 09:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2962, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

in Christ, in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in him, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

### inherit

#### Related Ideas:

heritage, inheritance,legacy

#### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

* A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
* A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
* The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
* God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
* There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
* In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.

There are other figurative meanings for these terms:

The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."

* To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
* This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
* Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
* Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
* When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
* The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
* The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#en-heir), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Promised Land](#en-Promised Land))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* 1 Peter 01:04
* 2 Samuel 21:03
* Acts 07:4-5
* Deuteronomy 20:16
* Galatians 05:21
* Genesis 15:07
* Hebrews 09:15
* Jeremiah 02:07
* Luke 15:11
* Matthew 19:29
* Psalm 079:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

### innocent

#### Related Ideas:

guiltless, innocence

#### Definition:

The term "innocent" means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

* A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
* Sometimes the term "innocent" is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking "innocent people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most contexts, the term "innocent" can be translated as "not guilty" or "not responsible" or "not to blame" for something.
* When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as "who have done nothing wrong" or "who are not involved in evil."
* The frequently occurring expression "innocent blood" could be translated as "people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed."
* The expression "shed innocent blood" could be translated as "kill innocent people" or "kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it."
* In the context of someone being killed, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not guilty for the death of."
* When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not" or "not responsible for whether they accept this message."
* When Judas said "I have betrayed innocent blood," he was saying "I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong" or "I have caused the death of a man who was sinless."
* When Pilate said about Jesus "I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man," this could be translated as "I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it."

(See also: [guilt](#en-guilt))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:04
* 1 Samuel 19:05
* Acts 20:26
* Exodus 23:07
* Jeremiah 22:17
* Job 09:23
* Romans 16:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6662, H6663, H8535, G53, G121, G172, G185, G338, G1342, G2513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

declared innocent, guiltless, innocence, innocent

### instruct

#### Related Ideas:

instruction, instructor

#### Definitions:

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

* To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
* When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
* Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
* The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
* When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: [command](#en-command), [decree](#en-decree), [teach](#en-teach))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 14:04
* Genesis 26:05
* Hebrews 11:22
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 11:01
* Proverbs 01:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H631, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H3948, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1291, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2012, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3807, G3810, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822, G4929

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gave ... instructions, instruct, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructor, instructors, instructs

### is written

#### Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

* Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
* Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
* This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
* Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#en-command), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [prophet](#en-prophet), [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:13-15
* Acts 13:29
* Exodus 32:15-16
* John 21:25
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 09:12
* Matthew 04:06
* Revelation 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H874, H3789, G1125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are ... written, had ... been written, has ... been written, have ... been written, is ... written, is it ... written, it is written, it was written, Moses ... wrote, was written, were ... written

### jealous

#### Related Ideas:

jealousy

#### Definition:

The terms "jealous" and "jealousy" refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

* These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
* When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God's strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
* God is also "jealous" for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
* Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word "envious."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "jealous" could include "strong protective desire" or "possessive desire."
* The term "jealousy" could be translated as "strong protective feeling" or "possessive feeling."
* When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
* In the context of people's wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms "envious" and "envy" could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#en-envy))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 12:20
* Deuteronomy 05:09
* Exodus 20:05
* Ezekiel 36:05
* Joshua 24:19
* Nahum 01:2-3
* Romans 13:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G2206, G3863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

jealous, jealousy

### joy

#### Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

#### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

* A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
* God is the one who gives true joy to people.
* Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
* Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
* To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
* "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

* This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
* It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
* When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
* The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
* A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
* A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
* A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

#### Bible References:

* Nehemiah 08:10
* Psalm 048:02
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Jeremiah 15:15-16
* Matthew 02:9-10
* Luke 15:07
* Luke 19:37-38
* John 03:29
* Acts 16:32-34
* Romans 05:1-2
* Romans 15:30-32
* Galatians 05:23
* Philippians 04:10-13
* 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
* 1 Thessalonians 05:16
* Philemon 01:4-7
* James 01:02
* 3 John 01:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

### judge

#### Related Ideas:

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

#### Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

* The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
* God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
* The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
* Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
* In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
* "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.
* The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
* The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
* In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](#en-decree), [judge](#en-judge), [judgment day](#en-judgment day), [justice](#en-justice), [law](#en-law), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:17
* 1 Kings 03:09
* Acts 10:42-43
* Isaiah 03:14
* James 02:04
* Luke 06:37
* Micah 03:9-11
* Psalm 054:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

### judge

#### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
* After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
* The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#en-governor), [judge](#en-judge), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:08
* Acts 07:27
* Luke 11:19
* Luke 12:14
* Luke 18:1-2
* Matthew 05:25
* Ruth 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

### justice

#### Related Ideas:

honest, injustice, just, justification, justify, maintain someone's rights, vindicate, vindication

#### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

* To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
* To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
* To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
* Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."
* To "vindicate" someone whom others have accused of wrongdoing is to show that he has actually done what is right.

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

* An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
* Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
* Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

* When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
* "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
* The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
* To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."

In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."

* The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
* The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."

Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly."

Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."

* The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
* The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
* The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](#en-forgive), [guilt](#en-guilt), [judge](#en-judge), [righteous](#en-righteous))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 44:16
* 1 Chronicles 18:14
* Isaiah 04:3-4
* Jeremiah 22:03
* Ezekiel 18:16-17
* Micah 03:8
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 11:19
* Matthew 23:23-24
* Luke 18:03
* Luke 18:08
* Luke 18:13-14
* Luke 21:20-22
* Luke 23:41
* Acts 13:38-39
* Acts 28:04
* Romans 04:1-3
* Galatians 03:6-9
* Galatians 03:11
* Galatians 05:3-4
* Titus 03:6-7
* Hebrews 06:10
* James 02:24
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3476, H3477, H4941, H5766, H5767, H6415, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8199, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G95, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1556, G1557, G1738, G2118, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desire for justice, dishonest, honest, injustice, injustices, just, justice, justification, justified, justifies, justify, justly, maintain ... rights, unjust, unjustly, vindicate, vindicated, vindication

### kin

#### Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

#### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

* "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
* In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
* This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

#### Bible References:

* Romans 16:9-11
* Ruth 02:20
* Ruth 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

### kind

#### Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

* In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
* Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
* The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

#### Picture showing Kinds:

<image: https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png>

#### Translation Suggestions

* Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 01:21
* Genesis 01:24
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

### king

#### Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

#### Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

* A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
* When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
* In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
* Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
* The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
* Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
* When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
* This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
* The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [Herod Antipas](#en-Herod Antipas), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 06:15-16
* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 05:03
* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 13:22
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 22:24-25
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 14:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### kingdom

#### Related Ideas:

power to rule

#### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

* A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
* The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
* God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
* The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
* In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
* One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
* The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
* Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [king](#en-king), [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God), [kingdom of Israel](#en-kingdom of Israel), [Judah](#en-Judah), [Judah](#en-Judah), [priest](#en-priest))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 2 Timothy 04:17-18
* Colossians 01:13-14
* John 18:36
* Mark 03:24
* Matthew 04:7-9
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 16:28
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

### kingdom of God

#### Related Ideas:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of heaven

#### Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

* The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly.
* In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
* The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
* The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
* The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
* Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
* A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: [God](#en-God), [heaven](#en-heaven), [king](#en-king), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [King of the Jews](#en-King of the Jews), [reign](#en-reign))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:05
* Acts 08:12-13
* Acts 28:23
* Colossians 04:11
* John 03:03
* Luke 07:28
* Luke 10:09
* Luke 12:31-32
* Matthew 03:02
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 05:10
* Romans 14:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### kiss

#### Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

* Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
* A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
* The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
* Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
* Genesis 27:26-27
* Genesis 29:11
* Genesis 31:28
* Genesis 45:15
* Genesis 48:10
* Luke 22:48
* Mark 14:45
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kiss, kissed, kisses, kissing

### know

#### Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

* The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
* To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
* To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
* To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
* To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
* Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
* The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
* If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
* Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
* The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
* To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
* The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
* The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
* To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [reveal](#en-reveal), [understand](#en-understand), [wise](#en-wise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
* 1 Samuel 17:46
* 2 Corinthians 02:15
* 2 Peter 01:3-4
* Deuteronomy 04:39-40
* Genesis 19:05
* Luke 01:77

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

### labor

#### Related Ideas:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

#### Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

* In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
* A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
* In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
* Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
* "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
* An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
* Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](#en-hard), [labor pains](#en-labor pains))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:09
* 1 Thessalonians 03:05
* Galatians 04:10-11
* James 05:04
* John 04:38
* Luke 10:02
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

### lamb

#### Related Ideas:

Lamb of God

#### Definition:

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

* These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
* God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
* Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
* "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
* If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [sheep](#en-sheep), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 12:03
* Ezra 08:35-36
* Isaiah 66:3
* Jeremiah 11:19
* John 01:29
* John 01:36
* Leviticus 14:21-23
* Leviticus 17:1-4
* Luke 10:03
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H6251, H7716, G721, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamb, Lamb of God, lamb, lambs

### lament

#### Related Ideas:

dirge, lamentation

#### Definition:

The terms "lament" and "lamentation" refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

* Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
* A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "lament" could be translated as to "deeply mourn" or to "wail in grief" or to "be sorrowful."
* A "lamentation" (or a "lament") could be translated as "loud wailing and weeping" or "deep sorrow" or "sorrowful sobbing" or "mournful moaning."
* A "dirge" is a song that people sing at a funeral because they are sad that someone they love has died.

#### Bible References:

* Amos 08:9-10
* Ezekiel 32:1-2
* Jeremiah 22:18
* Job 27:15-17
* Lamentations 02:05
* Lamentations 02:08
* Micah 02:04
* Psalm 102:1-2
* Zechariah 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H56, H578, H592, H1058, H2201, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6969, H7015, G2354, G2870, G2875

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dirge, lament, lamentation, lamentations, lamented, lamenting, laments, sing dirges

### lamp

#### Related Ideas:

torch

#### Definition:

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

* An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
* For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
* An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
* In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.
* A torch is a light that is meant to be carried around outside. It might be a long piece of wood that burns at the top. It might also be a pole with an oil lamp or a cloth soaked in oil at the top.

(See also: [lampstand](#en-lampstand), [life](#en-life), [light](#en-light))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:36
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Luke 08:16-18
* Matthew 05:15
* Matthew 06:22
* Matthew 25:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lamp, lamps, torch, torches

### last day

#### Related Ideas:

last times, latter days

#### Definition:

The term "last days" or "latter days" refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

* This time period will have an unknown duration.
* The "last days" are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "last days" can also be translated as "final days" or "end times."
* In some contexts, this could be translated as "end of the world" or "when this world ends."

(See also: [day of the Lord](#en-day of the Lord), [judge](#en-judge), [turn](#en-turn), [world](#en-world))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:3-4
* Daniel 10:14-15
* Hebrews 01:02
* Isaiah 02:02
* James 05:03
* Jeremiah 23:19-20
* John 11:24-26
* Micah 04:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

last day, last days, last times, latter days

### law

#### Related Ideas:

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

#### Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

* Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
* God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
* A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
* Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
* A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:02
* Esther 03:8-9
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Genesis 26:05
* John 18:31
* Romans 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### law of Moses

#### Related Ideas:

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of God, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:

the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites

* all the laws given to Moses
* the first five books of the Old Testament
* the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).

all of God's instructions and will

The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

#### Translation Suggestions:

* These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
* The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
* Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
* Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
* The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."
* There were people in the Bible who were experts in the Law of Moses, they were called "lawyers."

(See also: [instruct](#en-instruct), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Ten Commandments](#en-Ten Commandments), [lawful](#en-lawful), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:06
* Daniel 09:13
* Exodus 28:42-43
* Ezra 07:25-26
* Galatians 02:15
* Luke 24:44
* Matthew 05:18
* Nehemiah 10:29
* Romans 03:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G976, G2316, G3544, G3551, G3565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law, the law of God, your law

### lawful

#### Related Ideas:

lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, permitted, unlawful

#### Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

* In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
* To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
* Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
* The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

* In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
* Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
* When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
* When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

* A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
* The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
* Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
* The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
* The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
* The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
* The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
* It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
* Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#en-law), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Sabbath](#en-Sabbath))

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 07:21-23
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:04
* Matthew 12:10
* Mark 03:04
* Luke 06:02
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 22:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:03
* Titus 02:14
* 1 John 03:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lawful, lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, not lawful, permitted, unlawful

### letter

#### Related Ideas:

epistle

#### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

* In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
* The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
* Ways to translate this term could include "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: [courage](#en-courage), [exhort](#en-exhort), [teach](#en-teach))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:27
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* Acts 09:1-2
* Acts 28:21-22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G1121, G1992

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

epistle, letter, letters

### life

#### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

* Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
* A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
* Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
* It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
* The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
* In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
* To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
* A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
* The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
* Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
* The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

#### 2. Spiritual life

* A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
* This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
* The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
* Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
* The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
* The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
* The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
* Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](#en-death), [eternity](#en-eternity))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:03
* Acts 10:42
* Genesis 02:07
* Genesis 07:22
* Hebrews 10:20
* Jeremiah 44:02
* John 01:04
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 12:23
* Matthew 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

### light

#### Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

#### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

* Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
* Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
* The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
* Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
* Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
* "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
* It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
* Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#en-darkness), [holy](#en-holy), [righteous](#en-righteous), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 John 02:08
* 2 Corinthians 04:06
* Acts 26:18
* Isaiah 02:05
* John 01:05
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 06:23
* Nehemiah 09:12-13
* Revelation 18:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

* To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
* The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
* To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
* People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
* To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
* The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
* The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
* The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
* The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
* "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
* The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#en-beast), [flesh](#en-flesh), [image of God](#en-image of God), [image](#en-image), [perish](#en-perish))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:05
* Mark 08:24
* Matthew 17:02
* Matthew 18:03
* Psalms 073:05
* Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### lion

#### Related Ideas:

lioness

#### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

* Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
* Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
* Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
* When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
* Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
* A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](#en-David), [leopard](#en-leopard), [Samson](#en-Samson), [sheep](#en-sheep))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
* 1 Kings 07:29
* Proverbs 19:12
* Psalms 017:12
* Revelation 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

### loins

#### Related Ideass:

side, thigh, waist

#### Definition:

The term "loins" refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

* The expression "gird up the loins" refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
* The term "loins" is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
* In the Bible, the term "loins" often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man's reproductive organs as the source of his descendants.
* The expression "will come from your loins" could also be translated as, "will be your offspring" or "will be born from your seed" or "God will cause to come from you."
* When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as "abdomen" or "hips" or "waist," depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [gird](#en-gird), [offspring](#en-offspring))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:13
* 2 Chronicles 06:09
* Deuteronomy 33:11
* Genesis 37:34
* Job 15:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

loins, hips, side, thigh, thighs, waist

### lord

#### Related Ideas:

landowner, Lord, master, master of the house, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir

#### Definition:

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

* This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
* Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

* In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
* In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
* The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
* In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "lord": \* \* The term "lord" can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for. \* When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master." \* If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.

Translating "Lord": \* When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English. \* In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God. \* When "Lord" refers to Jesus Christ (the Son of God), it should be translated with the same word that is used for "Lord" when it refers to God the Father. Or if it is translated with different words, both words should express the same degree of honor. \* Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule. \* For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(See also: [God](#en-God), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [ruler](#en-ruler), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 39:02
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Psalms 086:15-17
* Jeremiah 27:04
* Lamentations 02:02
* Ezekiel 18:29
* Daniel 09:09
* Daniel 09:17-19
* Malachi 03:01
* Matthew 07:21-23
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 16:13
* Romans 06:23
* Ephesians 06:9
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Colossians 03:23
* Hebrews 12:14
* James 02:01
* 1 Peter 01:03
* Jude 01:05
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H1404, H4756, H5633, H7218, H7980, H8323, G1203, G2634, G2961, G2962, G3617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lord, Lord's, landowner, lord, lord's, lords, master, master of the house, master's, masters, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir, sirs

### lots

#### Related Ideas:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up by lot

#### Definition:

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

* Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
* Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
* The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
* As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
* The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
* The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
* Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
* If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."
* To allot things to people can mean to divide those things and to toss lots to decide who gets each portion.
* To allot something to someone can mean to assign it to him or give it to him. (See also: [Elizabeth](#en-Elizabeth), [priest](#en-priest), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jonah 01:07
* Luke 01:8-10
* Luke 23:34
* Mark 15:22
* Matthew 27:35-37
* Psalms 022:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1486, G2819, G2975

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up ... by lot, lot, lots

### love

#### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

#### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.

1. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.

In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.

The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
* Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
* Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
* In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
* Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
* Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#en-covenant), [death](#en-death), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [save](#en-save), [sin](#en-sin))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:07
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 29:18
* Isaiah 56:06
* Jeremiah 02:02
* John 03:16
* Matthew 10:37
* Nehemiah 09:32-34
* Philippians 01:09
* Song of Solomon 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

### lowly

#### Related Ideas:

bring down, low condition, low position, lowliest, lowliness

#### Definition:

The terms "lowly" and "lowliness" refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

* Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
* Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
* Ways to translate "lowly" could include "humble" or "of low status" or "unimportant."
* The word "lowliness" could also be translated as "humility" or "little importance."

(See also: [humble](#en-humble), [proud](#en-proud))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:19
* Ezekiel 17:14
* Luke 01:48-49
* Romans 12:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6041, H6819, H7034, H8213, H8216, H8217, G5011, G5012, G5014

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring ... down, bring ... low, brings ... down, brings ... low, brought low, low condition, low position, low positions, lowliest, lowliness, lowly, of low condition

### magic

#### Related Ideas:

magical, magician, spiritist, those who talk with spirits

#### Definition:

The term "magic" refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A "magician" is someone who practices magic.

* In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh's magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
* Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
* God commands his people not to do any of these practices of magic or divination.
* A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.
* A spiritist is a person who talks with spirits.

(See also: [divination](#en-divination), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Pharaoh](#en-Pharaoh), [power](#en-power), [sorcery](#en-sorcery))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 41:08
* Genesis 41:22-24
* Genesis 44:3-5
* Genesis 44:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H2748, H2749, H3049, G3097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

magic, magical, magician, magicians, spiritist, spiritists, those who talked with spirits, who talk with spirits, who talks with spirits

### magistrate

#### Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

* In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "ruling judge" or "legal officer" or "city leader."

(See also: [judge](#en-judge), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:20
* Acts 16:35
* Daniel 03:1-2
* Luke 12:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8200, H8614, G758, G4755

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

magistrate, magistrates

### member

#### Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

* The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
* Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
* Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](#en-body), [Pharisee](#en-Pharisee), [council](#en-council))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:15
* 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
* Numbers 16:02
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

### memorial offering

#### Related Ideas:

memorial

#### Definition:

The term "memorial" refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

* This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a "memorial offering," a "memorial portion" of a sacrifice or "memorial stones."
* In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
* God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God's faithfulness to them.
* In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a "memorial" before God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "lasting reminder."
* A "memorial stone" could be translated as a "stone to remind them (of something)."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:04
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Isaiah 66:3
* Joshua 04:6-7
* Leviticus 23:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2142, H2146, G3422

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

memorial, memorial offering

### mighty

#### Related Ideas:

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

#### Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

* Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
* The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
* The phrase "the Might One" refers to God.
* The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
* The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
* This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
* The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
* In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
* Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
* The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
* Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](#en-Almighty), [miracle](#en-miracle), [power](#en-power), [strength](#en-strength))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:22
* Genesis 06:4
* Mark 09:38-39
* Matthew 11:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

### mind

#### Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

#### Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

* The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
* To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
* To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
* To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
* To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
* To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
* To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
* A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking to much wine.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
* The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
* The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
* The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
* The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [heart](#en-heart), [soul](#en-soul))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 10:27
* Mark 06:51-52
* Matthew 21:29
* Matthew 22:37
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

### miracle

#### Related Ideas:

miraculous

#### Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

* Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
* Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
* The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
* Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
* Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
* Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
* Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
* God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
* God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
* The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
* Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#en-power), [prophet](#en-prophet), [apostle](#en-apostle), [sign](#en-sign))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
* Acts 04:17
* Acts 04:22
* Daniel 04:1-3
* Deuteronomy 13:01
* Exodus 03:19-22
* John 02:11
* Matthew 13:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4159, H6381, H6382, G1411, G1605, G4592, G5059

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miracle, miracles, miraculous

### mock

#### Related Ideas:

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

#### Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

* Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
* The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
* A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
* The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
* A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
* A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:04
* Acts 02:12-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Luke 22:63-65
* Mark 10:34
* Matthew 09:23-24
* Matthew 20:19
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts

### month

#### Related Ideas:

monthly

#### Definition:

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

* In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
* The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
* All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
* The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 20:34
* Acts 18:9-11
* Hebrews 11:23
* Numbers 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

month, monthly, months

### multiply

#### Related Ideas:

abound, abundance, abundant, even more, exceeding, grow in number, increase, make to grow, multiplication, multitudes, numerous

#### Definition:

The term "multiply" means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

* God told animals and human beings to "multiply" and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
* Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
* An "abundance" of something is a large quantity of something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as "increase" or "cause to increase" or "greatly increase in number" or "become greater in number" or "become more numerous."
* The phrase "greatly multiply your pain" could also be translated as "cause your pain to become more severe" or "cause you to experience much more pain."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 08:01
* Genesis 09:07
* Genesis 22:17
* Hosea 04:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1879, H2122, H2123, H3254, H3493, H3513, H3527, H5607, H6105, H6280, H6555, H7227, H7230, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abound, abounding, abundance, abundant, even more, exceeding, exceedingly, exceeds, grew ... numbers, grow ... numbers, increase, increased, increases, increasing, make ... grow, make ... many, makes ... grow, many, multiplication, multiplied, multiplies, multiply, multiplying, multitudes, numerous

### name

#### Related Ideas:

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

* In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
* The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
* Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
* The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
* People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
* A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
* Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
* The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
* The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
* The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
* The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#en-call))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:12
* 2 Timothy 02:19
* Acts 04:07
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 09:27
* Genesis 12:02
* Genesis 35:10
* Matthew 18:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

### nation

#### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

* A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
* In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
* Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
* Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
* The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
* If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
* The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
* In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](#en-Assyria), [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [Gentile](#en-Gentile), [Greek](#en-Greek), [people group](#en-people group), [Philistines](#en-Philistines), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
* 2 Chronicles 15:06
* 2 Kings 17:11-12
* Acts 02:05
* Acts 13:19
* Acts 17:26
* Acts 26:04
* Daniel 03:04
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Genesis 27:29
* Genesis 35:11
* Genesis 49:10
* Luke 07:05
* Mark 13:7-8
* Matthew 21:43
* Romans 04:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nation, nations

### neighbor

#### Related Ideas:

neighborhood, neighboring

#### Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

* A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
* In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
* If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
* A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
* "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](#en-adversary), [parable](#en-parable), [people group](#en-people group), [Samaria](#en-Samaria))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26-28
* Ephesians 04:25-27
* Galatians 05:14
* James 02:08
* John 09:8-9
* Luke 01:58
* Matthew 05:43
* Matthew 19:19
* Matthew 22:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

### noble

#### Related Ideas:

nobility, nobleman

#### Definition:

The term "noble" describes someone or something that is excellent or of high quality.

* A "nobleman" or a "noble" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
* The "nobility" refers to the people who belong to a high political or social class.
* A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

Translation Suggestion

* The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
* Daniel 04:36
* Ecclesiastes 10:17
* Luke 19:12
* Psalm 016:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H193, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nobility, noble, nobleman, noblemen, nobles

### oak

#### Related Ideas:

terebinth

#### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

* Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
* The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
* The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
* Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
* If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
* See:

(See also: [holy](#en-holy))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:3-4
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 14:13-14
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

### oath

#### Related Ideas:

swear, swear by

#### Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

* In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
* In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
* The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
* Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
* Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
* Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
* God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
* A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
* To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
* Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
* To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
* Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelek](#en-Abimelek), [covenant](#en-covenant), [vow](#en-vow))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:23
* Genesis 24:03
* Genesis 31:51-53
* Genesis 47:31
* Luke 01:73
* Mark 06:26
* Matthew 05:36
* Matthew 14:6-7
* Matthew 26:72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

### obey

#### Related Ideas:

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

#### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

* Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
* For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
* Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
* When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
* To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
* Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
* The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#en-citizen), [command](#en-command), [disobey](#en-disobey), [kingdom](#en-kingdom), [law](#en-law))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:32
* Acts 06:7
* Genesis 28:6-7
* James 01:25
* James 02:10
* Luke 06:47
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 19:20-22
* Matthew 28:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

### official

#### Related Ideas:

officer

#### Definition:

The terms "official" and "officer" refer to people who hold positions within a government or organization. Leaders within the government or organization give the official or officer certain authority and duties to perform as long as he remains in the position.

* A king often had many officials to serve him.
* When someone makes an "official visit," it means a person with authority is visiting a person or place as part of his job.
* An officer is a person who carries out the orders of an official or a judge and issues orders only to officers of lesser rank and to people subject to the government.

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 39:1
* Ester 01:03
* Jeremiah 01:18
* Matthew 09:18
* Acts 25:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5461, H5631, H6496, H7860, H8269, G758, G3175, G4173, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

officer, officers, official, officials

### offspring

#### Definition:

The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

* Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
* The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [seed](#en-seed))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 17:29
* Exodus 13:11-13
* Genesis 24:07
* Isaiah 41:8-9
* Job 05:25
* Luke 03:7
* Matthew 12:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H2233, H4138, H5209, H6363, H6529, H6631, G1081, G1085, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

offspring

### oppress

#### Related Ideas:

oppression, oppressive, oppressor, ruthless

#### Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

* The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
* The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
* Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.
* The term "ruthless" describes who show no pity or compassion to others. Oppressors are ruthless.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
* Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
* The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
* The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: [bind](#en-bind), [enslave](#en-enslave), [persecute](#en-persecute))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:17-19
* Deuteronomy 26:07
* Ecclesiastes 04:1
* Job 10:03
* Judges 02:18-19
* Nehemiah 05:14-15
* Psalms 119:134

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H2556, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, H8496, G2561, G2616, G2669

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oppress, oppressed, oppresses, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors, ruthless

### ordain

#### Related Ideas:

ordination

#### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

* The term "ordain" often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
* For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
* It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
* Depending on the context, to "ordain" could be translated as to "assign" or to "appoint" or to "command" or to "make a rule" or to "institute."

(See also: [command](#en-command), [covenant](#en-covenant), [decree](#en-decree), [law](#en-law), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [priest](#en-priest))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 12:31-32
* 2 Samuel 17:13-14
* Exodus 28:40-41
* Numbers 03:03
* Psalms 111:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G2525, G4270, G4282, H6822

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ordain, ordained, ordination

### overseer

#### Related Ideas:

overseer, supervise, supervisor, visitation

#### Definition:

The term "overseer" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

* In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
* In the New Testament, overseers were leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
* Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
* The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
* In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.
* The word "supervisor" is another word for an overseer.
* The word "visitation" refers to an overseer coming to make sure that the workers over whom he has charge are working well.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways to translate this term could be "caretaker" or "manager."
* When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: [church](#en-church), [elder](#en-elder), [pastor](#en-pastor), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
* 1 Timothy 03:02
* Acts 20:28
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Philippians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3256, H6485, H6486, H6496, H7287, H7860, H8104, H8269, G1983, G1984, G1985

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oversee, overseeing, overseen, overseer, overseers, oversees, supervise, supervised, supervisor, supervisors, visitation

### partial

#### Related Ideas:

partiality

#### Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

* This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
* Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
* God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
* In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
* The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](#en-favor))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:17
* Malachi 02:09
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:16
* Romans 02:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

### patient

#### Related Ideas:

impatient, patience

#### Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

* When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
* The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
* Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.
* The term "impatient" means not patient.

(See also: [endure](#en-endure), [forgive](#en-forgive), [persevere](#en-persevere))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* 2 Peter 03:8-9
* Hebrews 06:11-12
* Matthew 18:28-29
* Psalms 037:7
* Revelation 02:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3803, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impatient, patience, patient, patiently

### patriarch

#### Definition:

The term "patriarch" in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

* It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the 12 patriarchs of the 12 tribes of Israel.
* The term "patriarch" has a similar meaning to "forefather," but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: [father](#en-father))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:29-31
* Acts 07:6-8
* Acts 07:09
* Ezra 03:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H7218, G3962, G3966

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

patriarch, patriarchs

### peace

#### Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

#### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

* "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
* To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
* A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
* To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
* A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
* The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
* The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
* A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
* To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
* Acts 07:26
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Colossians 03:15
* Galatians 05:23
* Luke 07:50
* Luke 12:51
* Mark 04:39
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 10:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

### perfect

#### Related Ideas:

perfecter, perfection, perfectly

#### Definition:

The term "perfect" describes something that has no flaw. To "perfect" something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

* Only God and what he does is absolutely perfect.
* When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they become perfect and mature because they become more like Christ in their character.
* Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient; it does not mean that he is sinless.
* The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "perfect" could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."
* The term "perfectly" could be translated "completely" or "fully."

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 12:02
* James 03:02
* Matthew 05:46-48
* Psalms 019:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3615, H3632, H3634, H4359, H4390, H8003, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G2005, G2038, G2675, G2676, G3647, G4135, G4137, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly

### perish

#### Related Ideas:

imperishable, perishable

#### Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster.

* The word "perish" can also be a metaphor for being punished in hell either presently or in the future.
* Something that is "imperishable" will never perish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die" or "be destroyed" or "be punished in hell" or "will be punished in hell."
* When perish is a metaphor, make sure that the translation of "perish" does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#en-death), [eternity](#en-eternity))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:23
* 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Psalms 049:18-20
* Zechariah 09:5-7
* Zechariah 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H1197, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H7921, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

imperishable, perish, perishable, perished, perishes, perishing

### persecute

#### Related Ideas:

persecution, persecutor

#### Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

* Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
* The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
* People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
* The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
* After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
* Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment."

(See also: [Christian](#en-Christian), [church](#en-church), [oppress](#en-oppress), [Rome](#en-Rome))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* Acts 13:50
* Galatians 01:13-14
* John 05:16-18
* Mark 10:30
* Matthew 05:10
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 10:22
* Matthew 13:20-21
* Philippians 03:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

### perverse

#### Related Ideas:

crooked, perversion, perversity, pervert, twisted

#### Definition:

The terms "perverse," "crooked," and "twisted" are used to describe a person or action that is morally bad. The term "perversely" means "in a perverse manner." To "pervert" something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good. "Perversity" is perverse thoughts, words, and actions.

* Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
* In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
* Any action which is against God's standards or behavior is considered perverse.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "perverse" could include "morally twisted" or "immoral" or "turning away from God's straight path," depending on the context.
* "Perverse speech" could be translated as "speaking in an evil way" or "deceitful talk" or "immoral way of talking."
* "Perverse people" could be described as "immoral people" or "people who are morally deviant" or "people who continually disobey God."
* The phrase "acting perversely" could be translated as "behaving in an evil way" or "doing things against God's commands" or "living in a way that rejects God's teachings."
* The term "pervert" could also be translated as "cause to be corrupt" or "turn into something evil."

(See also: [corrupt](#en-corrupt), [deceive](#en-deceive), [disobey](#en-disobey), [evil](#en-evil), [turn](#en-turn))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:47
* 1 Samuel 20:30
* Job 33:27-28
* Luke 23:02
* Psalms 101:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1942, H2015, H2555, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G1294, G1612, G3344, G4646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crooked, crooked ways, perverse, perverse words, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, perversity, pervert, perverted, perverting, perverts, twisted

### pierce

#### Related Ideas:

gore, thrust through

#### Definition:

The term "pierce" means to stab something or to make a hole with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

* A soldier pierced Jesus' side when he was hanging on the cross.
* In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
* Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.
* To "thrust someone through" or "thrust a sword through someone" is to push a sword all the way through him so the sword comes out the other side.
* To "gore" is for an animal to thrust a horn into another animal or a person.

(See also: [cross](#en-cross), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [servant](#en-servant), [Simeon](#en-Simeon))

#### Bible References:

* Job 16:13
* Job 20:23-25
* John 19:37
* Psalms 022:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1856, H1920, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H5055, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gore, gored, holes, pierce, pierced, pierces, piercing, thrust ... through

### plead

#### Related Ideas:

appeal, ask earnestly, humble request, plea

#### Definitions:

The terms "plead" and "pleading" refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A "plea" is an urgent request.

* Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
* People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
* Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.
* The word translated "humble request" refers specifically to a humble request for favor or mercy.
* To "plead someone's cause" is to testify in court before a judge that the judge should rule in favor of the person whose cause it is.
* A "legal plea" or "cause" is what someone who is trying to get justice tells a judge in a court trial.
* An "earnest appeal" is a serious, humble request.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "plead" could also be translated as "beg" or "implore" or "urgently ask."
* The term "plea" could also be translated as "urgent request" or "strong urging."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
* Judges 06:31
* Luke 04:39
* Proverbs 18:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1162, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal, asked ... earnestly, cause, earnest appeal, earnest appeals, earnestly appeal, earnestly appealed, humble request, humble requests, legal plea, moved by ... plea, plea, plea for favor, plead, plead ... cause, pleaded, pleading, pleadings, pleads, pleas

### possess

#### Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

#### Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

* In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
* When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
* Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
* The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
* The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
* "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
* The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
* When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
* The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
* The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
* The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:70
* 1 Kings 09:17-19
* Acts 02:45
* Deuteronomy 04:5-6
* Genesis 31:36-37
* Matthew 13:44

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

### power

#### Related Ideas:

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

#### Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

* The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
* God has complete power over everything that he has created.
* God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
* Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
* Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
* An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [miracle](#en-miracle))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Colossians 01:11-12
* Genesis 31:29
* Jeremiah 18:21
* Jude 01:25
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 26:64
* Philippians 03:21
* Psalm 080:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

### pray

#### Related Ideas:

prayer

#### Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

* People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
* Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
* Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
* People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
* Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
* Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
* This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [god](#en-god), [forgive](#en-forgive), [praise](#en-praise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:09
* Acts 08:24
* Acts 14:26
* Colossians 04:04
* John 17:09
* Luke 11:1
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 14:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

### preach

#### Related Ideas:

preacher

#### Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

* Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
* "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
* "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
* The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
* What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: [good news](#en-good news), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [kingdom of God](#en-kingdom of God))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:1-2
* Acts 08:4-5
* Acts 10:42-43
* Acts 14:21-22
* Acts 20:25
* Luke 04:42
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 12:41
* Matthew 24:14
* Acts 09:20-22
* Acts 13:38-39
* Jonah 03:1-3
* Luke 04:18-19
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 10:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G312, G518, G1344, G2097, G2511, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3870, G4283

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

preach, preached, preacher, preaching

### priest

#### Related Ideas:

priesthood, priestly office

#### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

* In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
* The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
* The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
* Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
* The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
* In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
* Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
* In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
* In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
* The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
* Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
* The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#en-Aaron), [chief priests](#en-chief priests), [high priest](#en-high priest), [mediator](#en-mediator), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Genesis 47:22
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:31
* Mark 01:44
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 08:4
* Matthew 12:04
* Micah 03:9-11
* Nehemiah 10:28-29
* Nehemiah 10:34-36
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest

### prison

#### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

#### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

* The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
* The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
* Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
* To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
* A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Another word for "prison" is "jail."
* The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
* The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](#en-captive))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:04
* Ephesians 04:01
* Luke 12:58
* Luke 22:33-34
* Mark 06:17
* Matthew 05:26
* Matthew 14:03
* Matthew 25:34-36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

### profit

#### Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

#### Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

* More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
* Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
* 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

* It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
* Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
* This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](#en-worthy))

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
* The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
* To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
* In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

#### Bible References:

* Job 15:03
* Proverbs 10:16
* Jeremiah 02:08
* Ezekiel 18:12-13
* John 06:63
* Mark 08:36
* Matthew 16:26
* 2 Peter 02:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

### promise

#### Related Ideas:

binding promise

#### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

* The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
* Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
* A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
* To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#en-covenant), [oath](#en-oath), [vow](#en-vow))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:15-16
* Genesis 25:31-34
* Hebrews 11:09
* James 01:12
* Numbers 30:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

### prophet

#### Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

#### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

* Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
* A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
* Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
* Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
* In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
* For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
* An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
* Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
* A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
* The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
* Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
* The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
* The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
* When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](#en-Baal), [divination](#en-divination), [god](#en-god), [false prophet](#en-false prophet), [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [vision](#en-vision))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* Acts 03:25
* John 01:43-45
* Malachi 04:4-6
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 02:18
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

### province

#### Related Ideas:

provincial

#### Definitions:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term "provincial" describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

* For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
* During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
* Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a "provincial official" or "provincial governor."
* The terms "province" and "provincial" could also be translated as "region" and "regional."

(See also: [Asia](#en-Asia), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Esther](#en-Esther), [Galatia](#en-Galatia), [Galilee](#en-Galilee), [Judea](#en-Judea), [Macedonia](#en-Macedonia), [Media](#en-Media), [Rome](#en-Rome), [Samaria](#en-Samaria), [Syria](#en-Syria))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 19:30
* Daniel 03:02
* Daniel 06:02
* Ecclesiastes 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

province, provinces, provincial

### provoke

#### Related Ideas:

provocation

#### Definitions:

The term "provoke" means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

* To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to "cause to become angry" or to "anger."
* When used in a phrase such as, "do not provoke him," this could be translated as "do not anger him" or "do not cause him to be angry" or "do not make him angry with you."

(See also: [anger](#en-anger))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 20:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

provocation, provoke, provoke ... to anger, provoked, provoked ... to anger, provokes, provoking

### punish

#### Related Ideas:

bring down judgment, deal with, inflict punishment, judgment, punishment, unpunished

#### Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

* Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
* God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
* God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
* Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
* The expression "leave someone unpunished" means to decide not to punish someone for their wrongdoing.
* The expression "go unpunished" means to sin and not be punished for it. God often allows people to go unpunished as he waits for them to repent.
* To "bring down judgment" on someone is to punish him after declaring him guilty of wrongful behavior.
* Sometimes "judgment" refers to punishment.
* Sometimes "deal with" means punish.

(See also: [justice](#en-justice), [repent](#en-repent), [righteous](#en-righteous), [sin](#en-sin))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* 2 Thessalonians 01:09
* Acts 04:21
* Acts 07:59-60
* Genesis 04:15
* Luke 23:16
* Matthew 25:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2403, H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5352, H5414, H5771, H6031, H6213, H6485, H6486, H7451, H7561, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G2851, G2917, G2920, G3811, G5097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring down judgment, go ... unpunished, inflicted punishment, inflicting punishment, judgment, leave ... unpunished, punish, punished, punishes, punishing, punishment, unpunished

### purple

#### Definitions:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

* In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
* Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
* Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
* Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
* Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
* Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(See also: [ephod](#en-ephod), [Philippi](#en-Philippi), [royal](#en-royal), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
* Daniel 05:7
* Daniel 05:29-31
* Proverbs 31:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

purple

### push

#### Definition:

The term "push" literally means to physically move something away using force. There are also several figurative meanings of this term.

* The expression "push away" can mean "reject" or "refuse to help."
* To "push down" can mean to "oppress" or "persecute" or "defeat."
* To "push someone out" can mean to get rid of someone or send someone away.
* The expression "push ahead" means to persevere or to continue doing something without really making sure it is right or safe.

(See also: [oppress](#en-oppress), [persecute](#en-persecute), [reject](#en-reject))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1556, H1760, H1920, H3276, H3423, H5055, H5186, H5493, G683, G4261

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

push, push ... away, pushed, pushed ... away, pushed ... down, pushing

### queen

#### Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

* Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Xerxes.
* Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
* The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
* A term such as "queen mother" usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Xerxes](#en-Xerxes), [Athaliah](#en-Athaliah), [Esther](#en-Esther), [king](#en-king). [Persia](#en-Persia) [ruler](#en-ruler), [Sheba](#en-Sheba))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:10
* 1 Kings 11:18-19
* 2 Kings 10:12-14
* Acts 08:27
* Esther 01:17
* Luke 11:31
* Matthew 12:42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

queen, queens

### rage

#### Related Ideas:

enrage

#### Definitions:

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

* Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
* When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
* When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
* To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
* "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
* To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
* To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
* When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively. \* The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [anger](#en-anger), [self-control](#en-self-control))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:25
* Daniel 03:13
* Luke 04:28
* Numbers 25:11
* Proverbs 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

### raise

#### Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

#### Definition:

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

* The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
* "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

* When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
* If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
* Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
* A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
* To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
* To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
* The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
* Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
* The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
* Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](#en-resurrection), [appoint](#en-appoint), [exalt](#en-exalt))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* 2 Samuel 07:12
* Acts 10:40
* Colossians 03:01
* Deuteronomy 13:1-3
* Jeremiah 06:01
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 07:22
* Matthew 20:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### rebel

#### Related Ideas:

rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

#### Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

* A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
* A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
* Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
* The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
* "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
* The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
* The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [governor](#en-governor))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 12:18-19
* 1 Samuel 12:14
* 1 Timothy 01:9-11
* 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
* Acts 21:38
* Luke 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4754, H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7300, H7846, G436, G485, G498, G506, G3893, G4955

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rebel, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, rebels, revolt

### receive

#### Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

#### Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

* To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
* There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
* To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
* To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
* When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
* The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
* The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
* The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [lord](#en-lord), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:09
* 1 Thessalonians 01:06
* 1 Thessalonians 04:01
* Acts 08:15
* Jeremiah 32:33
* Luke 09:05
* Malachi 03:10-12
* Psalms 049:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

### reed

#### Definitions:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

* The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
* These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
* The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [Moses](#en-Moses), [Nile River](#en-Nile River))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:15
* Luke 07:24
* Matthew 11:07
* Matthew 12:20
* Psalm 068:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

### reign

#### Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

* The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
* God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
* When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
* This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: [kingdom](#en-kingdom))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 19:26-27
* Matthew 02:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, G936, G2231, G4821

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reign, reigned, reigning, reigns, set ... to reign

### reject

#### Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

#### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

* To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
* To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
* To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
* An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
* In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
* In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
* In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](#en-command), [disobey](#en-disobey), [obey](#en-obey), [stiff-necked](#en-stiff-necked))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:12-14
* Hosea 04:6-7
* Isaiah 41:09
* John 12:48-50
* Mark 07:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

### remnant

#### Related Ideas:

remaining

#### Definition:

The term "remnant" literally refers to people or things that are "remaining" or "left over" from a larger amount or group.

* Often a "remnant" refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
* Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
* Paul talks about there being a "remnant" of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
* The term "remnant" implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.
* An "escaped remnant" is a small number of people who did not die when most of their people did die in a war.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A phrase such as "the remnant of this people" could be translated as "the rest of these people" or "the people who remain faithful" or "the people who are left."
* The "whole remnant of people" could be translated by "all the rest of the people" or "the remaining people."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:17
* Amos 09:12
* Ezekiel 06:8-10
* Genesis 45:07
* Isaiah 11:11
* Micah 04:6-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3498, H3499, H4422, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8300, G2640, G3005

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

escaped remnant, remain, remained, remaining, remains, remnant

### repent

#### Related Ideas:

change his mind, hold back, regret, relent, repentance

#### Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

* To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
* In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
* When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.
* A person who "relents" decides not to punish another person.
* A person who "regrets" having done something wishes he had never done that thing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
* Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
* Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: [forgive](#en-forgive), [sin](#en-sin), [turn](#en-turn))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:19-20
* Luke 03:3
* Luke 03:8
* Luke 05:32
* Luke 24:47
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 03:11
* Matthew 04:17
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5162, H8133, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

change ... mind, changed ... mind, hold back, regret, regretted, relent, relented, relenting, repent, repentance, repented, repents

### report

#### Related Ideas:

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

#### Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

* "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
* The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
* Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
* A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:22-23
* John 12:38
* Luke 05:15
* Luke 08:34-35
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

### rest

#### Related Ideas:

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

#### Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

* God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
* To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
* To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
* To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
* "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
* If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
* God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
* The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](#en-remnant), [Sabbath](#en-Sabbath))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 02:03
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Matthew 11:29
* Revelation 14:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

### restore

#### Related Ideas:

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

#### Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

* When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
* When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
* When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
* When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
* A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
* A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
* Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
* Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 5:10
* Acts 3:21
* Acts 15:15-18
* Isaiah 49:5-6
* Jeremiah 15:19-21
* Lamentations 05:22
* Leviticus 6:5-7
* Luke 19:8
* Matthew 12:13
* Psalm 80:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

### resurrection

#### Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

* To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
* The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
* When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
* The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#en-life), [death](#en-death), [raise](#en-raise))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:13
* 1 Peter 03:21
* Hebrews 11:35
* John 05:28-29
* Luke 20:27
* Luke 20:36
* Matthew 22:23
* Matthew 22:30
* Philippians 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

resurrection

### return

#### Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

* To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
* To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
* When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
* When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
* To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#en-turn))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

### reveal

#### Related Ideas:

revelation

#### Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

* God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
* God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
* When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
* In the New Testament book "Revelation," God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
* Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
* The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: [dream](#en-dream), [vision](#en-vision))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:1-2
* Ephesians 03:05
* Galatians 01:12
* Lamentations 02:13-14
* Matthew 10:26
* Philippians 03:15
* Revelation 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1541, H1540, H5046, H7200, G601, G602, G1213, G1453, G3377, G5318, G5319, G5537

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reveal, revealed, revealing, reveals, revelation, revelations

### right hand

#### Related Ideas:

righthand side

#### Definition:

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

* The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
* The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
* A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
* To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
* Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
* The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
* Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
* The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
* The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](#en-accuse), [evil](#en-evil), [honor](#en-honor), [mighty](#en-mighty), [punish](#en-punish), [rebel](#en-rebel))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:33
* Colossians 03:01
* Galatians 02:09
* Genesis 48:14
* Hebrews 10:12
* Lamentations 02:03
* Matthew 25:33
* Matthew 26:64
* Psalms 044:03
* Revelation 02:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

right hand, right hands, righthand side

### righteous

#### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

#### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

* These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
* Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
* When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

* These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
* Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
* Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
* "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

* The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
* A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
* Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
* God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
* When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
* The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
* Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good

Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
* The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
* The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."

If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."

Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."

* The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
* The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](#en-evil), [faithful](#en-faithful), [good](#en-good), [holy](#en-holy), [integrity](#en-integrity), [justice](#en-justice), [law](#en-law), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [obey](#en-obey), [pure](#en-pure), [sin](#en-sin), [lawful](#en-lawful))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:16
* Job 01:08
* Psalms 037:30
* Psalms 049:14
* Psalms 107:42
* Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
* Isaiah 48:1-2
* Ezekiel 33:13
* Malachi 02:06
* Matthew 06:01
* Acts 03:13-14
* Romans 01:29-31
* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* Galatians 03:07
* Colossians 03:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* 1 Peter 03:18-20
* 1 John 01:09
* 1 John 05:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

### rod

#### Related Ideas:

measuring rod

#### Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

* A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
* In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
* A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
* Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
* In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
* In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](#en-staff), [sheep](#en-sheep), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:21
* 1 Samuel 14:43-44
* Acts 16:23
* Exodus 27:9-10
* Revelation 11:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

### royal

#### Related Ideas:

kings', royalty

#### Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

* Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
* A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
* A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
* In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."
* The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: [king](#en-king). [palace](#en-palace), [priest](#en-priest), [purple](#en-purple), [queen](#en-queen), [robe](#en-robe))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:13
* 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
* Amos 07:13
* Genesis 49:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H643, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kings', royal, royal official, royalty

### ruin

#### Related Ideas:

rubble, ruins

#### Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

* The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
* The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
* Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
* The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
* 2 Kings 19:25-26
* Acts 15:16
* Isaiah 23:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1091, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2015, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2721, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5307, H5327, H5422, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H6561, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2506, G2647, G2679, G2692, G3089, G3639, G4485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allowed to become ruined, rubble, ruin, ruined, ruining, ruins

### ruler

#### Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

#### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

* In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
* God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
* In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
* Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
* Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
* The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
* To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [governor](#en-governor), [king](#en-king), [synagogue](#en-synagogue))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:17-18
* Acts 07:35-37
* Luke 12:11
* Luke 23:35
* Mark 10:42
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 20:25
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

### run

#### Related Ideas:

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

#### Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

* To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
* To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
* To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
* "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
* The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
* Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
* The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [god](#en-god), [persevere](#en-persevere), [refuge](#en-refuge), [turn](#en-turn))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:18
* Galatians 02:02
* Galatians 05:07
* Philippians 02:16
* Proverbs 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

### sacrifice

#### Related Ideas:

offering

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

* The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
* Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
* The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
* Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
* Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
* The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
* Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
* The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
* Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [burnt offering](#en-burnt offering), [drink offering](#en-drink offering), [god](#en-god), [fellowship offering](#en-fellowship offering), [freewill offering](#en-freewill offering) [peace offering](#en-peace offering), [priest](#en-priest), [sin offering](#en-sin offering), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:06
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 21:25
* Genesis 04:3-5
* James 02:21-24
* Mark 01:43-44
* Mark 14:12
* Matthew 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

### sandal

#### Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

* A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
* Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
* John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33
* Deuteronomy 25:10
* John 01:27
* Joshua 05:15
* Mark 06:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sandal, sandals

### save

#### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

#### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

* In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
* In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
* People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

* In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
* The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
* In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

* "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
* "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](#en-cross), [deliver](#en-deliver), [punish](#en-punish), [sin](#en-sin), [Savior](#en-Savior))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:18
* Genesis 47:25-26
* Psalms 080:03
* Jeremiah 16:19-21
* Micah 06:3-5
* Luke 02:30
* Luke 08:36-37
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 28:28
* Acts 02:21
* Romans 01:16
* Romans 10:10
* Ephesians 06:17
* Philippians 01:28
* 1 Timothy 01:15-17
* Revelation 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

### scribe

#### Related Ideas:

clerk, scholar

#### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

* Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
* They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
* At times, scribes were important government officials.
* Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
* In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
* In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [Pharisee](#en-Pharisee))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:05
* Luke 07:29-30
* Luke 20:47
* Mark 01:22
* Mark 02:16
* Matthew 05:19-20
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 12:38
* Matthew 13:52

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clerk, scholar, scribe, scribes

### seed

#### Related Words:

semen

#### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

* The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called "semen."
* Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
* This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
* In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
* The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
* The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
* For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
* For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: [descendant](#en-descendant), [offspring](#en-offspring))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:32
* Genesis 01:11
* Jeremiah 02:21
* Matthew 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G2848, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seed, seeds, semen

### seek

#### Related Ideas:

go to find, look out for, search, try

#### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

* To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
* To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
* To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
* To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
* To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
* To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
* To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
* To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [justice](#en-justice), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:14
* Acts 17:26-27
* Hebrews 11:06
* Luke 11:09
* Psalms 027:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

### seize

#### Related Ideas:

seizure

#### Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

* When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
* When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
* In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
* This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
* The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.
* The term "seizure" refers to the action of taking someone or something by force.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:19-21
* Exodus 15:14
* John 10:37-39
* Luke 08:29
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H1204, H1497, H1589, H2254, H2388, H2488, H3027, H3423, H3680, G3860, H3920, H3947, H4672, H4685, H5337, H5367, H5375, H5860, H5927, H7760, H8610, G724, G726, G1949, G2638, G2666, G2902, G2983, G3346, G4023, G4084, G4815, G4884, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seize, seized, seizes, seizing, seizure

### self-control

#### Related Ideas:

self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

#### Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

* It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
* Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
* A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.
* "Self-indulgence" is the opposite of self-control. Someone who is full of self-indulgence does whatever he wants.

(See also: [fruit](#en-fruit), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
* 2 Peter 01:5-7
* 2 Timothy 03:1-4
* Galatians 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4993, G4997, G4998

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

self-control, self-controlled, self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

### send

#### Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

* Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
* Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
* The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
* To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
* To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
* Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](#en-appoint), [redeem](#en-redeem))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33-34
* Acts 08:14-17
* John 20:21-23
* Matthew 09:37-38
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 10:40
* Matthew 21:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

### servant

#### Related Ideas:

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

#### Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

* A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
* In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
* In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
* In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
* In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
* Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

* In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
* To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
* People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](#en-commit), [enslave](#en-enslave), [household](#en-household), [lord](#en-lord), [obey](#en-obey), [righteous](#en-righteous), [covenant](#en-covenant), [law](#en-law))

#### Bible References

* Acts 04:29-31
* Acts 10:7-8
* Colossians 01:7-8
* Colossians 03:22-25
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 12:47-48
* Mark 09:33-35
* Matthew 10:24-25
* Matthew 13:27-28
* 2 Timothy 02:3-5
* Acts 06:2-4
* Genesis 25:23
* Luke 04:8
* Luke 12:37-38
* Luke 22:26-27
* Mark 08:7-10
* Matthew 04:10-11
* Matthew 06:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### sexual immorality

#### Related Ideas:

fornicate, fornication, immoral

#### Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

* This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
* One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
* Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
* This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
* This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
* The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [god](#en-god), [prostitute](#en-prostitute), [faithful](#en-faithful))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:20
* Acts 21:25-26
* Colossians 03:5-8
* Ephesians 05:03
* Genesis 38:24-26
* Hosea 04:13-14
* Matthew 05:31-32
* Matthew 19:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fornicate, fornicates, fornication, fornications, immoral, immorality, sexual immorality

### shadow

#### Related Ideas:

overshadow, shade

#### Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

* The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
* The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

* The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
* Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
* Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
* The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
* It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#en-darkness), [light](#en-light))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:09
* Genesis 19:08
* Isaiah 30:02
* Jeremiah 06:04
* Psalms 017:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows

### sheep

#### Related Ideas:

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

#### Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

* A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
* The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
* People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
* Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
* In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
* A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
* A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [lamb](#en-lamb), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [shepherd](#en-shepherd))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:32
* Genesis 30:32
* John 02:14
* Luke 15:05
* Mark 06:34
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 12:12
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### shepherd

#### Definition:

* A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.

* In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.
* David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.
* In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.
* Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
* The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
* When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
* In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
* The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
* In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [church](#en-church), [Moses](#en-Moses), [pastor](#en-pastor), [sheep](#en-sheep), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:24
* Luke 02:09
* Mark 06:34
* Mark 14:26-27
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 25:32
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsmen, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

### sign

#### Related Ideas:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

#### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

"Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:

The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.

God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.

Signs can reveal or point to something:

An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.

Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

Signs can prove that something is true:

* The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.

The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.

* An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
* To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
* In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#en-miracle), [apostle](#en-apostle), [Christ](#en-Christ), [covenant](#en-covenant), [circumcise](#en-circumcise))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:18-19
* Exodus 04:8-9
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Genesis 01:14
* Genesis 09:12
* John 02:18
* Luke 02:12
* Mark 08:12
* Psalms 089:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

### silver

#### Related Ideas:

money

#### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

* The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
* Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
* In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
* Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
* Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [temple](#en-temple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
* 1 Samuel 02:36
* 2 Kings 25:13-15
* Acts 03:06
* Matthew 26:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

money, silver

### sin

#### Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

#### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

* Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
* Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
* Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
* A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
* Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
* The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
* To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
* Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
* Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
* The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
* Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
* In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
* Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
* The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#en-disobey), [evil](#en-evil), [flesh](#en-flesh), [tax](#en-tax))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
* 1 John 01:10
* 1 John 02:02
* 2 Samuel 07:12-14
* Acts 03:19
* Daniel 09:24
* Genesis 04:07
* Hebrews 12:02
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 18:23
* Leviticus 04:14
* Luke 15:18
* Matthew 12:31
* Romans 06:23
* Romans 08:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### sister

#### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person’s sister or the sister of that other person.

* In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
* Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
* If possible, it is best to use a family term.
* If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
* When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](#en-brother) [in Christ](#en-in Christ), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
* Deuteronomy 27:22
* Philemon 01:02
* Romans 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H269, G27, G79

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

### slaughter

#### Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

* When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
* The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
* 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
* "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
* The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
* Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [cow](#en-cow), [disobey](#en-disobey), [Ezekiel](#en-Ezekiel), [servant](#en-servant), [slain](#en-slain))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 21:10-11
* Hebrews 07:01
* Isaiah 34:02
* Jeremiah 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

slaughter, slaughtered, slaughtering, slaughters

### son

#### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

* "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
* The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
* Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
* God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
* The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
* The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
* Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
* When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
* When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
* Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
* The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](#en-Azariah), [descendant](#en-descendant), [father](#en-father), [firstborn](#en-firstborn), [Son of God](#en-Son of God), [sons of God](#en-sons of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:15
* 1 Kings 13:02
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* Galatians 04:07
* Hosea 11:01
* Isaiah 09:06
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 08:12
* Nehemiah 10:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

### sorcery

#### Related Ideas:

sorcerer, sorceress, witchcraft

#### Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is a man who does these powerful, magical things. A "sorceress" is a woman who does these things.

* The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
* In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
* The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
* Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
* Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [demon](#en-demon), [divination](#en-divination), [god](#en-god), [magic](#en-magic), [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:9-11
* Exodus 07:11-13
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Revelation 09:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G5331, G5332, G5333

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorceries, sorcery, witchcraft

### soul

#### Related Ideas:

person

#### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

* The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
* When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
* The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means,"I am tired."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
* In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
* Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
* Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
* In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Acts 02:27-28
* Acts 02:41
* Genesis 49:06
* Isaiah 53:10-11
* James 01:21
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Jonah 02:7-8
* Luke 01:47
* Matthew 22:37
* Psalms 019:07
* Revelation 20:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5315, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

person, persons, soul, souls

### spear

#### Related Ideas:

javelin, spearmen

#### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

* Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
* A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
* Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
* Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance." A javelin is a light spear that is thrown.
* Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey](#en-prey), [Rome](#en-Rome), [sword](#en-sword), [warrior](#en-warrior))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 13:19-21
* 2 Samuel 21:19
* Nehemiah 04:12-14
* Psalm 035:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H4294, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

javelin, spear, spearmen, spears

### spirit

#### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

#### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

* The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
* A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
* In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
* In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
* For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
* God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
* Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
* The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
* Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
* In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
* Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
* The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
* Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
* The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
* The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
* The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#en-angel), [demon](#en-demon), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [soul](#en-soul), [divination](#en-divination))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 John 04:03
* 1 Thessalonians 05:23
* Acts 05:09
* Colossians 01:09
* Ephesians 04:23
* Genesis 07:21-22
* Isaiah 04:04
* Mark 01:23-26
* Matthew 26:41
* Philippians 01:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### stiff-necked

#### Related Ideas:

stiffen his neck, stubborn, stubbornness

#### Definition:

The term "stiff-necked" is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God's authority.

* Similarly, the term "stubborn" describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
* The Old Testament described the Israelites as "stiff-necked" because they did not listen to the many messages from God's prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
* If a neck is "stiff" it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is "unbending" in that he refuses to change his ways.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "pridefully stubborn" or "arrogant and unyielding" or "refusing to change."
* If a person "stiffens his neck," he becomes stubborn.

(See also: [arrogant](#en-arrogant), [proud](#en-proud), [repent](#en-repent))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:51
* Deuteronomy 09:13-14
* Exodus 13:14-16
* Jeremiah 03:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H3513, H5637, H6203, H6484, H7185, H7190, H8307, G483, G4644, G4645

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

stiff neck, stiff-necked, stiffen ... necks, stiffened ... neck, stiffened ... necks, stiffens ... neck, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness

### stone

#### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

* In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
* God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
* In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
* Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
* In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#en-adultery), [commit](#en-commit), [crime](#en-crime), [death](#en-death), [Lystra](#en-Lystra), [testimony](#en-testimony))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 07:59-60
* Acts 14:05
* Acts 14:19-20
* John 08:4-6
* Luke 13:34
* Luke 20:06
* Matthew 23:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

### strength

#### Related Ideas:

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### Definitions:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

* "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
* A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
* One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
* If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### Translation Suggestions

* In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
* In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."

The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.

"puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."

* "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
* "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
* "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
* "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
* "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
* "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
* "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
* "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
* "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
* "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](#en-faithful), [persevere](#en-persevere), [right hand](#en-right hand), [save](#en-save))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 2 Peter 02:11
* Luke 10:27
* Psalm 021:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### suffer

#### Related Ideas:

misery

#### Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

* When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
* Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
* Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
* 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
* Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
* The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
* To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* Acts 07:11-13
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 06:6-8
* Matthew 16:21
* Psalms 022:24
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

### sword

#### Related Ideas:

dagger, swordsmen

#### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

* In ancient times the length of a sword’s blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
* Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
* Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
* Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
* A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

#### Translation Suggestions

* A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
* One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
* Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
* If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
* A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [tongue](#en-tongue), [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:02
* Genesis 27:40
* Genesis 34:25
* Luke 02:33-35
* Luke 21:24
* Matthew 10:34
* Matthew 26:55
* Revelation 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

### synagogue

#### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

* Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
* The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
* Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
* The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#en-heal), [Jerusalem](#en-Jerusalem), [Jew](#en-Jew), [pray](#en-pray), [temple](#en-temple), [word of God](#en-word of God), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:09
* Acts 14:1-2
* Acts 15:21
* Acts 24:10-13
* John 06:59
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 06:1-2
* Matthew 09:35-36
* Matthew 13:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G656, G752, G4864

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

synagogue, synagogues

### tabernacle

#### Related Ideas:

dwelling place, habitation

#### Definition:

The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place."

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

* God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
* Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
* The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
* The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
* The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
* The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.
* Another word for "dwelling place" is "habitation."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "tabernacle" could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
* Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: [altar](#en-altar), [altar of incense](#en-altar of incense), [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [temple](#en-temple), [tent of meeting](#en-tent of meeting))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 21:30
* 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
* Acts 07:43
* Acts 07:45
* Exodus 38:21
* Joshua 22:19-20
* Leviticus 10:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H168, H4908, H7900, G3613, G4633

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dwelling place, dwellings, habitation, tabernacle

### teach

#### Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

#### Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

* A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
* When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
* Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
* The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
* The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
* Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
* A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
* A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
* A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](#en-instruct), [teacher](#en-teacher), [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* John 07:14
* Luke 04:31
* Matthew 04:23
* Psalms 032:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

### teacher

#### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

* In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
* People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
* In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
* Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](#en-disciple), [preach](#en-preach))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
* Ephesians 04:11-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Habakkuk 02:18
* James 03:02
* John 01:37-39
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 12:38-40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

teacher, teachers

### temple

#### Related Ideas:

shrine

#### Definitions:

A temple is a special building in which people worship their god or gods. The most important temple in the Bible was where the Israelites worshiped the true God with prayers and sacrifices. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

* Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
* The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
* God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
* King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
* In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.
* A "shrine" is a small place where people worship or an object of worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
* Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
* Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
* Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [Solomon](#en-Solomon), [Babylon](#en-Babylon), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [court](#en-court), [Zion](#en-Zion), [house](#en-house))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:02
* Acts 03:08
* Ezekiel 45:18-20
* Luke 19:46
* Nehemiah 10:28
* Psalm 079:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1002, H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3624, G3485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shrine, shrines, temple, temples

### tempt

#### Related Ideas:

temptation, tempter

#### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

* A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
* People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
* Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
* Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
* Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
* Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
* To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#en-disobey), [Satan](#en-Satan), [sin](#en-sin), [test](#en-test))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
* Hebrews 04:15
* James 01:13
* Luke 04:02
* Luke 11:04
* Matthew 26:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

* Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
* For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
* The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
* The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
* When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
* The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
* To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
* To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](#en-Abraham), [Canaan](#en-Canaan), [curtain](#en-curtain), [Paul](#en-Paul), [Sinai](#en-Sinai), [tabernacle](#en-tabernacle), [tent of meeting](#en-tent of meeting))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:10
* Daniel 11:45
* Exodus 16:18
* Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

### test

#### Related Ideas:

put to the test

#### Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

* God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
* God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
* Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
* To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
* In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
* Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
* Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
* To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
* In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
* In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](#en-tempt))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:01
* 1 Thessalonians 05:21
* Acts 15:10
* Genesis 22:01
* Isaiah 07:13
* James 01:12
* Lamentations 03:40-43
* Malachi 03:10
* Philippians 01:10
* Psalm 026:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

### testimony

#### Related Ideas:

eyewitness, testify, witness

#### Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

* Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
* A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
* Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
* In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

* To "witness" something means to see it happen.
* At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
* Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
* A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
* The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "testify" and "testimony": \* The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "tell what happened." \* Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "what has been said." \* The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true." \* The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong." \* To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

Translating "witness" and "eyewitness": \* The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)." \* Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true." \* The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach." \* To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened." \* To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something that happens" or to "experience something that happens."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#en-ark of the covenant), [guilt](#en-guilt), [judge](#en-judge), [prophet](#en-prophet), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 31:28
* Micah 06:03
* Matthew 26:60
* Mark 01:44
* John 01:07
* John 03:33
* Acts 04:32-33
* Acts 07:44
* Acts 13:31
* Romans 01:09
* 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
* 1 Timothy 05:19-20
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* 2 Peter 01:16-18
* 1 John 05:6-8
* 3 John 01:12
* Revelation 12:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H6315, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testified, testifies, testify, testify against, testifying, testimony, witness, witnessed, witnesses

### tetrarch

#### Definition:

The term "tetrarch" refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

* The title "tetrarch" means "one of four joint rulers."
* Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
* The kingdom of of Herod "the Great," who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as "tetrarchs," or "rulers of a fourth."
* Each division had one or more smaller parts called "provinces," such as Galilee or Samaria.
* "Herod the tetrarch" is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as "Herod Antipas."
* The term "tetrarch" could also be translated as "regional governor" or "provincial ruler" or "ruler" or "governor."

(See also: [governor](#en-governor), [Herod Antipas](#en-Herod Antipas), [province](#en-province), [Rome](#en-Rome), [ruler](#en-ruler))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:1-2
* Luke 09:07
* Matthew 14:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5075, G5076

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tetrarch

### the sea

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

* The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
* This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
* Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](#en-Israel), [people group](#en-people group), [prosper](#en-prosper))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:15-17
* Ezekiel 47:18-20
* Joshua 15:3-4
* Numbers 13:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### the twelve

#### Related Ideas:

the eleven

#### Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

* Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
* The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
* Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
* "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
* Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [disciple](#en-disciple))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
* Acts 06:02
* Luke 09:01
* Luke 18:31
* Mark 10:32-34
* Matthew 10:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1427, G1733

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the eleven, the twelve

### throne

#### Related Ideas:

enthroned, seat of authority

#### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

* A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
* The word "throne" is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
* In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
* Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."
* "Seat of authority" is another way to refer to a throne.
* "Enthroned" means "sitting on a throne." In the Bible, this talks about Yahweh ruling from heaven or his presence being between the cherubim on the ark of the covenant.

(See also: [authority](#en-authority), [power](#en-power), [king](#en-king), [reign](#en-reign))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:15-17
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 01:32
* Luke 22:30
* Matthew 05:34
* Matthew 19:28
* Revelation 01:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enthroned, seat of authority, throne, thrones

### time

#### Definitions:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

* In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
* In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
* "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
* To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
* Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](#en-age), [tribulation](#en-tribulation))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:07
* Daniel 12:1-2
* Mark 11:11
* Matthew 08:29
* Psalms 068:28-29
* Revelation 14:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

### tomb

#### Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

#### Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

* The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
* In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
* If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
* A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
* The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#en-bury), [death](#en-death))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:29-31
* Genesis 23:06
* Genesis 50:05
* John 19:41
* Luke 23:53
* Mark 05:1-2
* Matthew 27:53
* Romans 03:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

### tongue

#### Related Ideas:

language

#### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

* In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
* Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
* Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
* The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
* In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person.
* The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-metonymy))

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
* When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
* The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
* The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
* Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](#en-gift), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [joy](#en-joy), [praise](#en-praise), [joy](#en-joy), [spirit](#en-spirit))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* 1 John 03:18
* 2 Samuel 23:02
* Acts 02:26
* Ezekiel 36:03
* Philippians 02:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

language, languages, tongue, tongues

### tradition

#### Definition:

The term "tradition" refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

* Often in the Bible the word "traditions" referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God's laws. The expression "tradition of men" or "human tradition" makes this clear.
* Phrases such as "traditions of the elders" or "traditions of my fathers" referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
* The apostle Paul used the term "tradition" in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
* In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#en-apostle), [believe](#en-believe), [Christian](#en-Christian), [father](#en-father), [generation](#en-generation), [Jew](#en-Jew), [law of Moses](#en-law of Moses), [Moses](#en-Moses))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
* Colossians 02:08
* Galatians 01:13-14
* Mark 07:02
* Matthew 15:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3862

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tradition, traditions

### tremble

#### Related Ideas:

shake

#### Definition:

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

* This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
* Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
* The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
* This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#en-earth), [fear](#en-fear), [lord](#en-lord))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 07:15
* 2 Samuel 22:44-46
* Acts 16:29-31
* Jeremiah 05:22
* Luke 08:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5425, H5568, H6206, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, G1790, G4579, G5141, G5156, G5425

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shake, shakes, shook, tremble, trembled, trembles, trembling

### trial

#### Related Ideas:

case, on trial, plead a case

#### Definition:

The term "trial" refers to a situation in which something or someone is "tried" or tested.

* A "trial" can be a judicial hearing in a court in which evidence is given to prove whether the person "on trial" is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
* A "case" is a person's problem or complaint and the reasons he thinks he is right. A judge listens to the case during a trial and decides what should be done.
* To "plead" someone's case is to represent his case in court, telling why the person is right about what happened and about what should be done.

The term "trial" is also used figuratively.

* The term "trial" can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is "testing. "Temptation" is a particular kind of trial.
* Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](#en-tempt), [test](#en-test), [innocent](#en-innocent), [guilt](#en-guilt))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:34
* Ezekiel 21:12-13
* Lamentations 03:58-61
* Proverbs 25:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3198, H4531, H4941, H7378, H7379, G178, G350, G1383, G2919, G3986, G4822

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

case, on trial, plead ... case, trial, trials

### tribe

#### Related Ideas:

tribal

#### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

* People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
* In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
* A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#en-clan), [nation](#en-nation), [people group](#en-people group), [twelve tribes of Israel](#en-twelve tribes of Israel))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:19
* 2 Kings 17:16-18
* Genesis 25:16
* Genesis 49:17
* Luke 02:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H4294, H4940, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribal, tribe, tribes

### tribulation

#### Related Ideas:

distress

#### Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

* It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
* "The Great Tribulation" is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
* The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: [earth](#en-earth), [teach](#en-teach), [wrath](#en-wrath))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 04:17
* Mark 13:19
* Matthew 13:20-21
* Matthew 24:09
* Matthew 24:29
* Romans 02:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4689, H4691, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7185, H7451, G1453, G1568, G2347, G3076, G4912, G4928

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

distress, distressed, distresses, tribulation, tribulations

### tribute

#### Definition:

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

* A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
* In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
* Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: [gold](#en-gold), [king](#en-king), [ruler](#en-ruler), [tax](#en-tax))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
* 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 2 Kings 17:03
* Luke 23:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H4864, H6066, H7862, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribute

### trouble

#### Related Ideas:

troublesome

#### Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

* Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
* In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
* The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
* The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
* "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
* The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
* Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](#en-afflict), [persecute](#en-persecute))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:18-19
* 2 Chronicles 25:19
* Luke 24:38
* Matthew 24:06
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

### true

#### Related Ideas:

certain, certainly, certainty, indeed, real, sure, surely, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

#### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

* True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
* The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
* To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
* The word "truly" is used to emphasize what the speaker is saying. "Truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly."
* Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
* Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
* God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.
* The word "certainty" refers to a truth about which one can be certain that it is true.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
* Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
* The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
* The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
* To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [faithful](#en-faithful), [fulfill](#en-fulfill), [obey](#en-obey), [prophet](#en-prophet), [understand](#en-understand))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 1 John 01:5-7
* 1 John 02:08
* 3 John 01:08
* Acts 26:24-26
* Colossians 01:06
* Genesis 47:29-31
* James 01:18
* James 03:14
* James 05:19
* Jeremiah 04:02
* John 01:9
* John 01:16-18
* John 01:51
* John 03:31-33
* Joshua 07:19-21
* Lamentations 05:19-22
* Matthew 08:10
* Matthew 12:17
* Psalm 026:1-3
* Revelation 01:19-20
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H543, H551, H571, H3330, H5229, H6664, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G281, G803, G804, G1103, G3483, G4103, G4137, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

certainly, certainty, for certain, indeed, real, sure, surely, true, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

### trust

#### Related Ideas:

entrust, trustworthiness, trustworthy

#### Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

* Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
* Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
* To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
* A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.
* For one person to "entrust" something to a second person is for the first person to give that thing to the second person and expect that the second person will do what the first person tells him to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
* The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
* The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [confidence](#en-confidence), [faith](#en-faith), [faithful](#en-faithful), [true](#en-true))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 1 Timothy 04:09
* Hosea 10:12-13
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Nehemiah 13:13
* Psalm 031:05
* Titus 03:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H539, H540, H571, H982, H1556, H2620, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3860, G3982, G4100, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrust, entrusted, entrusting, trust, trusted, trusting, trusts, trustworthiness, trustworthy

### tunic

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

* A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
* Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
* A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
* This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See Also: [robe](#en-robe))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 03:21-23
* Isaiah 22:21
* Leviticus 08:12-13
* Luke 03:11
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tunic, tunics

### turn

#### Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

#### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

* The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
* To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
* To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
* To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
* To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
* To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
* To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
* To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
* To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
* "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
* An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
* The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
* In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
* The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
* The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
* When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
* Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
* When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
* The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
* The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
* "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
* The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [god](#en-god), [leper](#en-leper), [worship](#en-worship))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:02
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 11:21
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 01:17
* Malachi 04:06
* Revelation 11:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

### understand

#### Related Ideas:

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

#### Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

* The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
* To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
* A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
* While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
* Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
* Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
* "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
* "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
* An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
* To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](#en-believe), [know](#en-know), [wise](#en-wise))

#### Bible References:

* Job 34:16-17
* Luke 02:47
* Luke 08:10
* Matthew 13:12
* Matthew 13:14
* Proverbs 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

### unleavened bread

#### Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

* When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
* Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
* Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
* In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#en-bread), [Egypt](#en-Egypt), [feast](#en-feast), [Passover](#en-Passover), [servant](#en-servant), [sin](#en-sin), [yeast](#en-yeast))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* Acts 12:03
* Exodus 23:14-15
* Ezra 06:21-22
* Genesis 19:1-3
* Judges 06:21
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4682, G106

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

unleavened bread

### virgin

#### Related Ideas:

virginity

#### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

* The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
* Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
* Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin.
* If a person has their "virginity", it means they have never had sexual relations.

(See also: [Christ](#en-Christ), [Isaiah](#en-Isaiah), [Jesus](#en-Jesus), [Mary](#en-Mary))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:15-16
* Luke 01:27
* Luke 01:35
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 25:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

virgin, virginity, virgins

### vision

#### Definitions:

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

* Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
* God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

#### Translation Suggestion

* The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
* Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: [dream](#en-dream))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:10-12
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 10:11
* Acts 12:9-10
* Luke 01:22
* Luke 24:23
* Matthew 17:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vision, visions

### voice

#### Related Ideas:

rumbling, sound

#### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

* God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
* This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert…."
* To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
* Sometimes the word "voice" isused for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](#en-call), [preach](#en-preach), [splendor](#en-splendor))

#### Bible References:

* John 05:36-38
* Luke 01:42
* Luke 09:35
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

### vow

#### Definition:

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

* After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
* The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
* Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
* But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
* A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: [promise](#en-promise), [oath](#en-oath))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
* Acts 21:23
* Genesis 28:21
* Genesis 31:12-13
* Jonah 01:14-16
* Jonah 02:9-10
* Proverbs 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vow, vowed, vows

### walk

#### Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

* "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
* To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
* To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
* When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
* To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
* To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
* Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
* The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
* To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
* The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [honor](#en-honor))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Kings 02:04
* Colossians 02:07
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 17:01
* Isaiah 02:05
* Jeremiah 13:10
* Micah 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

### watch

#### Related Ideas:

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

#### Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

* To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
* To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
* To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
* A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

* To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
* The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
* Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:06
* Hebrews 13:17
* Jeremiah 31:4-6
* Mark 08:15
* Mark 13:33-34
* Matthew 25:10-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

### water

#### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

* The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
* The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
* To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
* The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
* When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
* Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](#en-life), [spirit](#en-spirit), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [power](#en-power))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:36-38
* Exodus 14:21
* John 04:10
* John 04:14
* John 04:15
* Matthew 14:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

### week

#### Related Ideas:

sevens

#### Definition:

The term "week" literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

* In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
* In the Bible, the term "week" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
* The "Festival of Weeks" is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called "Pentecost."
* The word "sevens" can refer to either seven days, seven weeks, or seven years.

(See also: [Pentecost](#en-Pentecost))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:7-8
* Deuteronomy 16:09
* Leviticus 23:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sevens, week, weeks

### well

#### Related Ideas:

cistern

#### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

* A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
* A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
* Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
* Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
* Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
* Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
* Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
* Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
* These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
* The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](#en-Jeremiah), [prison](#en-prison), [strife](#en-strife))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:17
* 2 Samuel 17:17-18
* Genesis 16:14
* Luke 14:4-6
* Numbers 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### wheat

#### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

* The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
* After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
* After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
* People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#en-barley), [chaff](#en-chaff), [grain](#en-grain), [seed](#en-seed), [thresh](#en-thresh), [winnow](#en-winnow))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 27:36-38
* Exodus 34:21-22
* John 12:24
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Matthew 13:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

wheat

### will of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's will, desire of God, he wishes, his will, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord

#### Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

* God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
* It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
* The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15-17
* 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
* Colossians 04:12-14
* Ephesians 01:1-2
* John 05:30-32
* Mark 03:33-35
* Matthew 06:8-10
* Psalms 103:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's will, desires of God, he desires, he wishes, his will, will of God, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord, will of your Father, you are willing, your will

### wine

#### Related Ideas:

new wine, wineskin

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

* The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
* To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
* In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
* Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
* A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
* Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](#en-grape), [vine](#en-vine), [vineyard](#en-vineyard), [winepress](#en-winepress))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:23
* Genesis 09:21
* Genesis 49:12
* John 02:3-5
* John 02:10
* Matthew 09:17
* Matthew 11:18

smashed

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

### wise

#### Related Ideas:

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

#### Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

* Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
* People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
* A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
* "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
* In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
* "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
* It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#en-obey), [fruit](#en-fruit))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:03
* Colossians 03:15-17
* Exodus 31:06
* Genesis 03:06
* Isaiah 19:12
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Matthew 07:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

### womb

#### Related Ideas:

pregnant

#### Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

* This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct.
* A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
* Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
* Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.
* A woman is pregnant" if she has a baby growing her her womb."

#### Picture showing location of a Womb:

<image: https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/w/Womb.png>

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 25:23
* Genesis 25:24-26
* Genesis 38:27-28
* Genesis 49:25
* Luke 02:21
* Luke 11:27
* Luke 23:29
* Matthew 19:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H2030, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pregnant, womb, wombs

### word

#### Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

* An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
* Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
* Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
* A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#en-word of God)

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](#en-word of God))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:02
* Acts 08:04
* Colossians 04:03
* James 01:18
* Jeremiah 27:04
* John 01:03
* John 01:14
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 02:08
* Matthew 07:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

### word of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's word, his words, my word, scripture, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, writings

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

* The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
* The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
* Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
* In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

* God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
* This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
* It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
* The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
* The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
* When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."

"Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."

* It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#en-prophet), [true](#en-true), [word](#en-word), [Yahweh](#en-Yahweh))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:01
* 1 Kings 13:01
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 08:11
* John 05:39
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 12:24
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 06:07
* Ephesians 01:13
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* James 01:18
* James 02:8-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's word, God's words, his words, my word, scripture, scriptures, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, words of God, writings

### work

#### Related Ideas:

act, deed, fellow worker

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

* God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
* The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
* The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
* People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
* The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
* When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
* The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
* The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
* The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
* The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](#en-fruit), [Holy Spirit](#en-Holy Spirit), [miracle](#en-miracle))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Acts 02:8-11
* Daniel 04:37
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Galatians 02:15-16
* James 02:17
* Matthew 16:27-28
* Micah 02:07
* Romans 03:28
* Titus 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

### world

#### Related Ideas:

universe, worldly

#### Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

* In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
* In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
* Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
* The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
* People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
* The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
* Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
* Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
* The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
* In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](#en-corrupt), [heaven](#en-heaven), [Rome](#en-Rome), [godly](#en-godly))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15
* 1 John 04:05
* 1 John 05:05
* John 01:29
* Matthew 13:36-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

universe, world, world's, worldly

### worship

#### Related Ideas:

worshiper

#### Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

* When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
* Often people bow down when they worship someone.
* Some people worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
* In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](#en-sacrifice), [praise](#en-praise), [honor](#en-honor))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:18-19
* Deuteronomy 29:18
* Exodus 03:11-12
* Luke 04:07
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

### worthy

#### Related Ideas:

deserve, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

#### Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important.

* Being "worthy" is related to being valuable or having importance.
* To do something "worthily" means to do something in a worthy way.
* To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition.
* To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.
* To "nullify" something is to make it worth nothing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
* The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
* The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
* The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
* Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
* The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: [honor](#en-honor))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:04
* 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
* Acts 13:25
* Acts 25:25-27
* Acts 26:31
* Colossians 01:9-10
* Jeremiah 08:19
* Mark 01:07
* Matthew 03:10-12
* Philippians 01:25-27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1100, H2428, H3276, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H5541, H6994, H7385, H7386, H7723, H7939, H8602, G96, G514, G515, G516, G888, G1777, G2425, G2480, G2661, G3152, G4186, G5092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deserve, deserved, deserves, deserving, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

### wrong

#### Related Ideas:

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

#### Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

* Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
* The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."
* The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
* The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
* Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Exodus 22:21
* Genesis 16:05
* Luke 06:28
* Matthew 20:13-14
* Psalms 071:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

### year

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

* A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
* In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
* In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](#en-month))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:31
* Acts 19:8-10
* Daniel 08:01
* Exodus 12:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

year, years

### yoke

#### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

* The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
* Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
* The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
* In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
* Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#en-bind), [burden](#en-burden), [oppress](#en-oppress), [persecute](#en-persecute), [servant](#en-servant))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:10
* Galatians 05:01
* Genesis 27:40
* Isaiah 09:04
* Jeremiah 27:04
* Matthew 11:30
* Philippians 04:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3627, H4132, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

yoke, yoked, yoked ... together, yokes

### zeal

#### Related Ideas:

diligence, diligent, eager, eagerness, zealous, zealously

#### Definition:

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

* Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
* Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
* The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
* The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
* The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple" or "fervent desire to take care of your house."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:31
* 1 Kings 19:9-10
* Acts 22:03
* Galatians 04:17
* Isaiah 63:15
* John 02:17-19
* Philippians 03:06
* Romans 10:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2734, H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G4710

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligence, diligent, eager, eagerness, making ... effort, zeal, zealous, zealously